.bookmarks . . . 6
1.1 Development Cycle . . . 6
Creating and Deleting Indexes . . . 6
C Sharp Language Center . . . 6
Diagnostic Tools . . . 6
Django and MongoDB . . . 6
Getting Started . . . 7
International Documentation . . . 7
Monitoring . . . 7
Older Downloads . . . 7
PyMongo and mod_wsgi . . . 7
Python Tutorial . . . 7
Recommended Production Architectures . . . 8
v0.8 Details . . . 8
Building SpiderMonkey . . . 8
Documentation . . . 8
Dot Notation . . . 9
Dot Notation . . .
Getting the Software . . . 9
Language Support . . . 9
Mongo Administration Guide . . . 9
Working with Mongo Objects and Classes in Ruby . . . 9
MongoDB Language Support . . . 10
Community Info . . . 10
Internals . . . 10
TreeNavigation . . . 10
Old Pages . . . 11
- Storing Data . . . 11
- Indexes in Mongo . . . 11
- HowTo . . . 11
- Searching and Retrieving . . . 11
  - Locking . . . 11
- Mongo Developers' Guide . . . 11
- Locking in Mongo . . . 11
- Mongo Database Administration . . . 12
- Mongo Concepts and Terminology . . . 12
- MongoDB - A Developer's Tour . . . 12
- Updates . . . 12
- Structuring Data for Mongo . . . 12
- Design Overview . . . 13
- Document-Oriented Datastore . . . 13
- Why so many "Connection Accepted" messages logged? . . .
- Why are my datafiles so large? . . . 13
- Storing Files . . . 13
- Introduction - How Mongo Works . . . 13
- Optimizing Mongo Performance . . . 13
- Mongo Usage Basics . . . 14
- Server-Side Processing . . . 14

Home . . . 14
- Introduction . . . 15
- Quickstart . . . 16
  - Quickstart OS X . . . 17
  - Quickstart Unix . . . 18
  - Quickstart Windows . . . 19
- Downloads . . . 20
  - 1.0 Changelist . . . 21
  - 1.2.x Release Notes . . . 21
  - 1.4 Release Notes . . . 21
  - 1.6 Release Notes . . . 22
  - 1.8 Release Notes . . . 23
    - Upgrading to 1.8 . . . 25
  - CentOS and Fedora Packages . . . 27
  - Ubuntu and Debian packages . . . 28
  - Version Numbers . . . 29
    - What's New by Version . . . 29
- Drivers . . . 30
  - Haskell Language Center . . . 31
  - C Language Center . . . 31
    - C Tutorial . . . 32
  - CSharp Language Center . . . 38
    - CSharp Community Projects . . . 39
    - CSharp Driver Serialization Tutorial . . . 39
    - CSharp Driver Tutorial . . . 51
      - CSharp getLastError and SafeMode . . . 71
  - Erlang Language Center . . . 71

Tools and Libraries . . . 71
Driver Syntax Table . . . 71
Javascript Language Center . . . 72
node.JS . . . 72
JVM Languages . . . 73
Python Language Center . . . 73
PHP Language Center . . . 73
Installing the PHP Driver . . . 74
PHP Libraries, Frameworks, and Tools . . . 74
PHP - Storing Files and Big Data . . . 77
Troubleshooting the PHP Driver . . . 77
Ruby Language Center . . . 77
Ruby Tutorial . . . 79
Replica Sets in Ruby . . . 84
GridFS in Ruby . . . 85
Rails - Getting Started . . . 88
Rails 3 - Getting Started . . . 90
MongoDB Data Modeling and Rails . . . 92
Ruby External Resources . . . 96
Frequently Asked Questions - Ruby . . . 97
Java Language Center . . . 100
Java Driver Concurrency . . . 101
Java - Saving Objects Using DBObject . . . 102
Java Tutorial . . . 102
Java Types . . . 107
Replica Set Semantics . . . 109
C++ Language Center . . . 109
BSON Arrays in C++ . . . 110
C++ BSON Library . . . 111
C++ Driver Compiling and Linking . . . 113
C++ Driver Download . . . 114
C++ getLastError . . . 114
C++ Tutorial . . . 114
Connecting . . . 119
Perl Language Center . . . 119
Contributing to the Perl Driver . . . 120
Perl Tutorial . . . 121
Online API Documentation . . . 121
Writing Drivers and Tools . . . 122
Overview - Writing Drivers and Tools . . . 122
Mongo Driver Requirements . . . 122
Spec, Notes and Suggestions for Mongo Drivers . . . 126
Feature Checklist for Mongo Drivers . . . 126
Conventions for Mongo Drivers . . . 126
Driver Testing Tools . . . 127
Mongo Wire Protocol . . . 127
BSON . . . 132
Mongo Extended JSON . . . 135
GridFS Specification . . . 136
Implementing Authentication in a Driver . . . 138
Notes on Pooling for Mongo Drivers . . . 140
Driver and Integration Center . . . 142
Connecting Drivers to Replica Sets . . . 142
Error Handling in Mongo Drivers . . . 142
Developer Zone . . . 143
cookbook.mongodb.org . . . 144
Tutorial . . . 144
Manual . . . 150
Connections . . . 151
Databases . . . 153
Commands . . . 153
Mongo Metadata . . . 164
Collections . . . 164
Capped Collections . . . 165
Using a Large Number of Collections . . . 167
Data Types and Conventions . . . 167
Timestamp Data Type . . . 168
Internationalized Strings . . . 169
Object IDs . . . 169
Database References . . . 171
GridFS . . . 173
When to use GridFS . . . 174
Indexes . . . 174
Using Multikeys to Simulate a Large Number of Indexes . . . 179
Geospatial Indexing . . . 179

Indexing as a Background Operation . . . 185
Multikeys . . . 186
Indexing Advice and FAQ . . . 188
Inserting . . . 191
Legal Key Names . . . 192
Schema Design . . . 192
Trees in MongoDB . . . 194
Optimization . . . 198
Explain . . . 200
Optimizing Object IDs . . . 201
Optimizing Storage of Small Objects . . . 201
Query Optimizer . . . 202
Querying . . . 202
Mongo Query Language . . . 205
Querying and nulls . . . 205
Retrieving a Subset of Fields . . . 205
Advanced Queries . . . 207
Dot Notation (Reaching into Objects) . . . 215
Full Text Search in Mongo . . . 217
min and max Query Specifiers . . . 218
OR operations in query expressions . . . 219
Queries and Cursors . . . 220
Server-side Code Execution . . . 223
Sorting and Natural Order . . . 227
Aggregation . . . 227
Removing . . . 231
Updating . . . 231
Atomic Operations . . . 236
findAndModify Command . . . 239
Padding Factor . . . 241
two-phase commit . . . 242
Updating Data in Mongo . . . 245
MapReduce . . . 247
Troubleshooting MapReduce . . . 253
Data Processing Manual . . . 255
mongo - The Interactive Shell . . . 256
Scripting the shell . . . 256
Overview - The MongoDB Interactive Shell . . . 257
dbshell Reference . . . 262
Developer FAQ . . . 264
Do I Have to Worry About SQL Injection . . . 265
How does concurrency work . . . 266
SQL to Mongo Mapping Chart . . . 267
SQL to Shell to C++ . . . 270
What is the Compare Order for BSON Types . . . 273
Admin Zone . . . 274
Components . . . 274
Journaling . . . 275
Journaling Administration Notes . . . 276
Production Notes . . . 277
iostat . . . 279
Replication . . . 279
About the local database . . . 280
Verifying Propagation of Writes with getLastError . . . 280
Replica Sets . . . 281
Replica Sets - Basics . . . 282
Replica Sets - Oplog . . . 284
Replica Sets - Priority . . . 285
Replica Sets - Voting . . . 286
Why Replica Sets . . . 287
Moving or Replacing a Member . . . 287
Replica Set Versions and Compatibility . . . 287
Replica Set Design Concepts . . . 288
Replica Set Tutorial . . . 288
Replica Set Configuration . . . 292
Replica Set Authentication . . . 301
Upgrading to Replica Sets . . . 302
Replica Set Admin UI . . . 304
Replica Set Commands . . . 305
Connecting to Replica Sets from Clients . . . 309
Replica Set FAQ . . . 309
Replica Sets Troubleshooting . . . 310
Replica Sets Limits . . . 313
Replica Set Internals . . . 313
Master Slave . . . 316

Halted Replication . . . 320
Replica Pairs . . . 321
Replication Oplog Length . . . 323
Sharding . . . 324
Changing Config Servers . . . 324
Simple Initial Sharding Architecture . . . 325
Sharding Introduction . . . 328
Configuring Sharding . . . 332
A Sample Configuration Session . . . 335
Choosing a Shard Key . . . 337
Upgrading from a Non-Sharded System . . . 339
Sharding Administration . . . 340
Backing Up Sharded Cluster . . . 343
Sharding and Failover . . . 344
Sharding Limits . . . 344
Sharding Internals . . . 345
Moving Chunks . . . 346
Sharding Config Schema . . . 347
Sharding Design . . . 349
Sharding Use Cases . . . 350
Shard Ownership . . . 350
Splitting Chunks . . . 351
Sharding FAQ . . . 352
Hosting Center . . . 354
Amazon EC2 . . . 354
Joyent . . . 356
RedHat OpenShift . . . 356
VMware CloudFoundry . . . 356
Monitoring and Diagnostics . . . 357
Checking Server Memory Usage . . . 358
collStats Command . . . 360
Database Profiler . . . 361
Munin configuration examples . . . 364
serverStatus Command . . . 367
Http Interface . . . 369
mongostat . . . 372
mongosniff . . . 373
Wireshark Support for MongoDB Protocol . . . 373
Backups . . . 375
EC2 Backup & Restore . . . 376
How to do Snapshotted Queries in the Mongo Database . . . 381
Import Export Tools . . . 382
mongoexport . . . 386
Durability and Repair . . . 387
Security and Authentication . . . 389
Admin UIs . . . 392
Starting and Stopping Mongo . . . 400
Logging . . . 402
Command Line Parameters . . . 403
Command Line --quiet . . . 404
Directory Per DB . . . 405
File Based Configuration . . . 406
GridFS Tools . . . 408
DBA Operations from the Shell . . . 408
Architecture and Components . . . 410
Windows . . . 410
MongoDB on Azure . . . 411
Azure Configuration . . . 413
Azure Deployment . . . 414
Troubleshooting . . . 417
Excessive Disk Space . . . 417
Out of Memory OOM Killer . . . 419
Too Many Open Files . . . 419
Contributors . . . 420
JS Benchmarking Harness . . . 420
MongoDB kernel code development rules . . . 420
Git Commit Rules . . . 421
Kernel class rules . . . 421
Kernel code style . . . 422
Kernel concurrency rules . . . 425
Kernel exception architecture . . . 425
Kernel logging . . . 425
Kernel string manipulation . . . 426
Memory management . . . 426
Writing tests . . . 426

Project Ideas . . . 427
Roadmap . . . 428
UI . . . 428
Source Code . . . 429
Building . . . 429
Building Boost . . . 429
Building for FreeBSD . . . 430
Building for Linux . . . 430
Building for OS X . . . 432
Building for Solaris . . . 436
Building for Windows . . . 436
Boost 1.41.0 Visual Studio 2010 Binary . . . 436
Boost and Windows . . . 436
Building the Mongo Shell on Windows . . . 437
Building with Visual Studio 2008 . . . 438
Building with Visual Studio 2010 . . . 439
Building Spider Monkey . . . 440
scons . . . 442
Database Internals . . . 443
Caching . . . 443
Durability Internals . . . 443
Parsing Stack Traces . . . 444
Cursors . . . 445
Error Codes . . . 445
Internal Commands . . . 446
Replication Internals . . . 446
Smoke Tests . . . 447
Pairing Internals . . . 449
Contributing to the Documentation . . . 449
Emacs tips for MongoDB work . . . 449
Mongo Documentation Style Guide . . . 450
Community . . . 452
Technical Support . . . 453
MongoDB Commercial Services Providers . . . 453
Visit the 10gen Offices . . . 455
User Feedback . . . 456
Job Board . . . 457
About . . . 457
Philosophy . . . 457
Use Cases . . . 458
How MongoDB is Used in Media and Publishing . . . 459
Use Case - Session Objects . . . 460
Production Deployments . . . 461
Mongo-Based Applications . . . 484
Events . . . 485
MongoDB User Groups (MUGs) . . . 488
Video & Slides from Recent Events and Presentations . . . 489
Slide Gallery . . . 491
Articles . . . 492
Benchmarks . . . 492
FAQ . . . 492
Misc . . . 493
Demo App in Python . . . 493
MongoDB, CouchDB, MySQL Compare Grid . . . 493
Comparing Mongo DB and Couch DB . . . 494
Licensing . . . 495
International Docs . . . 496
Books . . . 496
Slides and Video . . . 497
Doc Index . . . 498

.bookmarks

Recent bookmarks in MongoDB

This page is a container for all the bookmarks in this space. Do not delete or move it or you will lose all your bookmarks.
Bookmarks in MongoDB | Links for MongoDB

The 15 most recent bookmarks in MongoDB

There are no bookmarks to display.

1.1 Development Cycle

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to [1.2.0 Release Notes].

Creating and Deleting Indexes

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to Indexes.

C Sharp Language Center

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to CSharp Language Center.

Diagnostic Tools

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to Monitoring and Diagnostics.

Django and MongoDB

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to Python Language Center.

Getting Started

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to Quickstart.

International Documentation

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to International Docs.

Monitoring

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to Monitoring and Diagnostics.

Older Downloads

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to Downloads.

PyMongo and mod_wsgi

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to Python Language Center.

Python Tutorial

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to Python Language Center.

Recommended Production Architectures

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to Production Notes.

v0.8 Details

Existing Core Functionality

- Basic Mongo database functionality: inserts, deletes, queries, indexing.
- Master / Slave Replication
- Replica Pairs
- Server-side javascript code execution

New to v0.8

- Drivers for Java, C++, Python, Ruby.
- db shell utility
- (Very) basic security
- $or
- Clean up logging
- Performance test baseline
- getlasterror
- Large capped collections
- Bug fixes (compound index keys, etc.)
- Import/Export utility
- Allow any _id that is unique, and verify uniqueness

Wanted, but may not make it

- AMI's
- Unlock eval()?
- Better disk full handling
- better replica pair negotiation logic (for robustness)

Building SpiderMonkey

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to Building Spider Monkey.

Documentation

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to Home.

Dot Notation

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to Dot Notation (Reaching into Objects).

Dot Notation

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to Dot Notation (Reaching into Objects).

Getting the Software

Placeholder - $$$ TODO

Language Support

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to Drivers.

Mongo Administration Guide

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to Admin Zone.

Working with Mongo Objects and Classes in Ruby

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to Ruby Language Center.

MongoDB Language Support

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to Language Support.

Community Info

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to Community.

Internals

Cursors

Tailable Cursors

See *p/db/dbclient.h* for example of how, on the client side, to support tailable cursors.

Set

```
Option_CursorTailable = 2
```

in the `queryOptions int` field to indicate you want a tailable cursor.

If you get back no results when you query the cursor, keep the cursor live if cursorid is still nonzero. Then, you can issue future `getMore` requests for the cursor.

If a `getMore` request has the `resultFlag ResultFlag_CursorNotFound` set, the cursor is not longer valid. It should be marked as "dead" on the client side.

```
ResultFlag_CursorNotFound = 1
```

See the Queries and Cursors section of the Mongo Developers' Guide for more information about cursors.

See Also

- The Queries and Cursors section of the Mongo Developers' Guide for more information about cursors

TreeNavigation

Old Pages

Storing Data

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to Inserting.

Indexes in Mongo

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to Indexes.

HowTo

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to Developer FAQ.

Searching and Retrieving

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to Querying.

Locking

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to Atomic Operations.

Mongo Developers' Guide

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to Manual.

Locking in Mongo

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to Developer FAQ.

Mongo Database Administration

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to Admin Zone.

Mongo Concepts and Terminology

See the Manual page for information on the following:

- BSON
- Collections
- Cursors
- Databases
- Documents
- GridFS (for files and very large objects)
- Indexes
- Transactions / Atomic Operations

Other Concepts

- Durability / [Journaling. Write-ahead logging for crash safety.
- Member. A member (server) in a replica set.
- mongod, mongos, mongo. MongoDB processes.
- Object IDs. Mongo documents include an `_id` field in each document.
- Oplog. High level log of operations used by replication.
- Replication. Duplicating data on multiple servers for HA, safety, disaster recovery, and a bit of scaling. Sharding and replication are used together.
- Sharding. The partioning / distribution of data among machines in a cluster. Each shard has different data. Sharding is the mechanism in MongoDB for building very large clusters. Note: we recommend you begin using MongoDB without sharding. It is easy to transition over to sharding later.
- Shard, Chunk, Shard Key, Config Server. See the sharding intro page.

MongoDB - A Developer's Tour

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to Manual.

Updates

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to Updating.

Structuring Data for Mongo

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to Inserting.

Design Overview

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to Developer Zone.

Document-Oriented Datastore

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to Databases.

Why so many "Connection Accepted" messages logged?

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to Developer FAQ.

Why are my datafiles so large?

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to Developer FAQ.

Storing Files

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to GridFS.

Introduction - How Mongo Works

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to Developer Zone.

Optimizing Mongo Performance

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to Optimization.

Mongo Usage Basics

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to Tutorial.

Server-Side Processing

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to Server-side Code Execution.

Home

Getting Started

- Quickstart | Downloads | Tutorial | Features
- SQL to Mongo Mapping Chart

Development

- Manual
- C | C# | C++ | C# & .NET | ColdFusion | Erlang | Haskell | Factor | Java | Javascript | PHP | Python | Ruby | Perl | More...

Production

- Production Notes | Replication | Sharding | Security | Backup

Support

- Forum | IRC | Bug tracker | Commercial support | Training | Consulting | Hosting

Community

- Blog | Articles | Twitter | Forum | Facebook | LinkedIn | Job Board
- User groups: NY, SF, DC, Chicago, London, Stockholm and more.

Meta

- Use Cases | Philosophy | License | Events

Translations

- Deutsch | Español | Français | |Italiano | | Português | | |
- If you are interested in translating, start your contribution by sending an email to docs@10gen.com and letting us know of your interest.

Introduction

> *MongoDB wasn't designed in a lab. We built MongoDB from our own experiences building large scale, high availability, robust systems. We didn't start from scratch, we really tried to figure out what was broken, and tackle that. So the way I think about MongoDB is that if you take MySql, and change the data model from relational to document based, you get a lot of great features: embedded docs for speed, manageability, agile development with schema-less databases, easier horizontal scalability because joins aren't as important. There are lots of things that work great in relational databases: indexes, dynamic queries and updates to name a few, and we haven't changed much there. For example, the way you design your indexes in MongoDB should be exactly the way you do it in MySql or Oracle, you just have the option of indexing an embedded field.*
>
> *– Eliot Horowitz, 10gen CTO and Co-founder*

Why MongoDB?

- **Document-oriented**
  - Documents (objects) map nicely to programming language data types
  - Embedded documents and arrays reduce need for joins
  - Dynamically-typed (schemaless) for easy schema evolution
  - No joins and no multi-document transactions for high performance and easy scalability
- **High performance**
  - No joins and embedding makes reads and writes fast
  - Indexes including indexing of keys from embedded documents and arrays
  - Optional asynchronous writes
- **High availability**
  - Replicated servers with automatic master failover
- **Easy scalability**
  - Automatic sharding (auto-partitioning of data across servers)
    - Reads and writes are distributed over shards
    - No joins or multi-document transactions make distributed queries easy and fast
  - Eventually-consistent reads can be distributed over replicated servers
- **Rich query language**

Large MongoDB deployment

1. One or more shards, each shard holds a portion of the total data (managed automatically). Reads and writes are automatically routed to the appropriate shard(s). Each shard is backed by a replica set – which just holds the data for that shard.

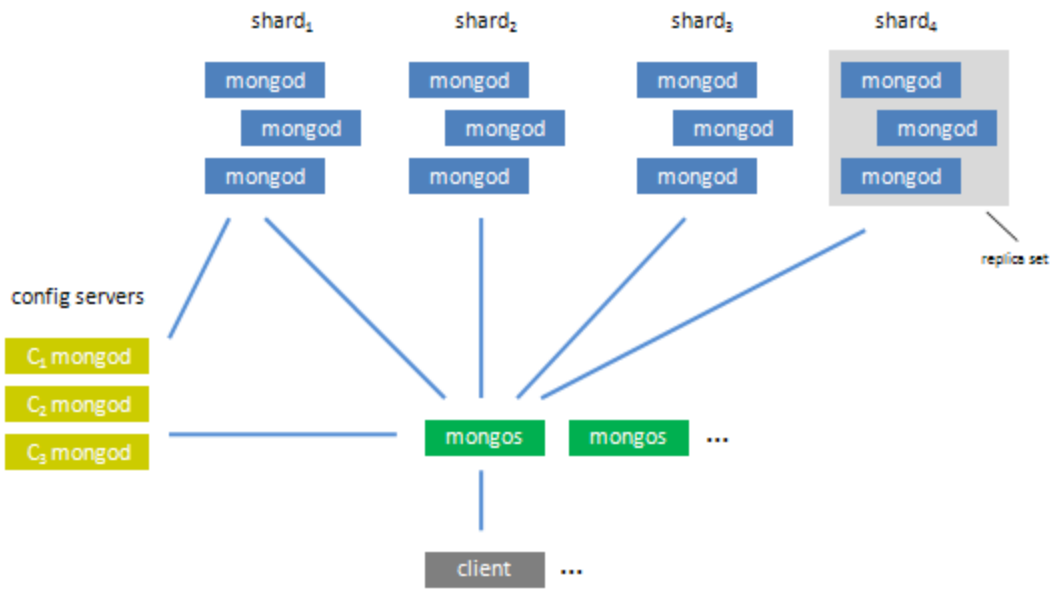
A replica set is one or more servers, each holding copies of the same data. At any given time one is primary and the rest are secondaries. If the primary goes down one of the secondaries takes over automatically as primary. All writes and consistent reads go to the primary, and all eventually consistent reads are distributed amongst all the secondaries.

2. Multiple config servers, each one holds a copy of the meta data indicating which data lives on which shard.

3. One or more routers, each one acts as a server for one or more clients. Clients issue queries/updates to a router and the router routes them to the appropriate shard while consulting the config servers.

4. One or more clients, each one is (part of) the user's application and issues commands to a router via the mongo client library (driver) for its language.

`mongod` is the server program (data or config). **`mongos`** is the router program.



Small deployment (no partitioning)

1. One replica set (automatic failover), or one server with zero or more slaves (no automatic failover).

2. One or more clients issuing commands to the replica set as a whole or the single master (the driver will manage which server in the replica set to send to).

Mongo data model

- A Mongo system (see deployment above) holds a set of databases
- A **database** holds a set of collections
- A **collection** holds a set of documents
- A **document** is a set of fields
- A **field** is a key-value pair
- A **key** is a name (string)
- A **value** is a
  - basic type like string, integer, float, timestamp, binary, etc.,
  - a document, or
  - an array of values

Mongo query language

To retrieve certain documents from a db collection, you supply a query document containing the fields the desired documents should match. For example, `{name: {first: 'John', last: 'Doe'}}` will match all documents in the collection with name of John Doe. Likewise, `{name.last: 'Doe'}` will match all documents with last name of Doe. Also, `{name.last: /^D/}` will match all documents with last name starting with 'D' (regular expression match).

Queries will also match inside embedded arrays. For example, `{keywords: 'storage'}` will match all documents with 'storage' in its keywords array. Likewise, `{keywords: {$in: ['storage', 'DBMS']}}` will match all documents with 'storage' or 'DBMS' in its keywords array.

If you have lots of documents in a collection and you want to make a query fast then build an index for that query. For example, `ensureIndex({name.last: 1})` or `ensureIndex({keywords: 1})`. Note, indexes occupy space and slow down updates a bit, so use them only when the tradeoff is worth it.

See also:

- Philosophy

Quickstart

- Quickstart OS X
- Quickstart Unix
- Quickstart Windows

For an even quicker start go to http://try.mongodb.org/.

See Also

- SQL to Mongo Mapping Chart
- Tutorial

Quickstart OS X

Install MongoDB

The easiest way to install MongoDB is to use a package manager or the pre-built binaries:

Package managers

If you use the Homebrew package manager, run:

```
$ brew update
$ brew install mongodb
```

If you use MacPorts you can install with:

```
$ sudo port install mongodb
```

This will take a while to install.

32-bit binaries

Note: 64-bit is recommended (if you have a 64-bit system).

```
$ curl http://downloads.mongodb.org/osx/mongodb-osx-i386-x.y.z.tgz > mongo.tgz
$ tar xzf mongo.tgz
```

Replace *x.y.z* with the current stable version.

64-bit binaries

```
$ curl http://downloads.mongodb.org/osx/mongodb-osx-x86_64-x.y.z.tgz > mongo.tgz
$ tar xzf mongo.tgz
```

Replace *x.y.z* with the current stable version.

Create a data directory

By default MongoDB will store data in `/data/db`, but it won't automatically create that directory. To create it, do:

```
$ mkdir -p /data/db
```

You can also tell MongoDB to use a different data directory, with the `--dbpath` option.

Run and connect to the server

First, start the MongoDB server in one terminal:

```
$ ./mongodb-xxxxxxx/bin/mongod
```

In a separate terminal, start the shell, which will connect to localhost by default:

```
$ ./mongodb-xxxxxxx/bin/mongo
> db.foo.save( { a : 1 } )
> db.foo.find()
```

Congratulations, you've just saved and retrieved your first document with MongoDB!

Learn more

Once you have MongoDB installed and running, head over to the Tutorial.

Quickstart Unix

Download

> If you are running an old version of Linux and the database doesn't start, or gives a floating point exception, try the "legacy static" version on the Downloads page instead of the versions listed below.

Via package manager

Ubuntu and Debian users can now install nightly snapshots via apt. See Ubuntu and Debian packages for details.

CentOS and Fedora users should head to the CentOS and Fedora Packages page.

32-bit Linux binaries

Note: 64 bit is recommended.

```
$ # replace "1.6.4" in the url below with the version you want
$ curl http://downloads.mongodb.org/linux/mongodb-linux-i686-1.6.4.tgz > mongo.tgz
$ tar xzf mongo.tgz
```

64-bit Linux binaries

```
$ # replace "1.6.4" in the url below with the version you want
$ curl http://downloads.mongodb.org/linux/mongodb-linux-x86_64-1.6.4.tgz > mongo.tgz
$ tar xzf mongo.tgz
```

Other Unixes

See the Downloads page for some binaries, and also the Building page for information on building from source.

Create a data directory

By default MongoDB will store data in `/data/db`, but it won't automatically create that directory. To create it, do:

```
$ sudo mkdir -p /data/db/
$ sudo chown `id -u` /data/db
```

You can also tell MongoDB to use a different data directory, with the `--dbpath` option.

Run and connect to the server

First, start the MongoDB server in one terminal:

```
$ ./mongodb-xxxxxxx/bin/mongod
```

In a separate terminal, start the shell, which will connect to localhost by default:

```
$ ./mongodb-xxxxxxx/bin/mongo
> db.foo.save( { a : 1 } )
> db.foo.find()
```

Congratulations, you've just saved and retrieved your first document with MongoDB!

Learn more

Once you have MongoDB installed and running, head over to the Tutorial.

Quickstart Windows

- Download
  - 32-bit binaries
  - 64-bit binaries
- Unzip
- Create a data directory
- Run and connect to the server
- Writing Apps
- Learn more

Download

The easiest (and recommended) way to install MongoDB is to use the pre-built binaries. Note: 64-bit is recommended, although you must have a 64-bit version of Windows to run that version.

32-bit binaries

Download and extract the 32-bit .zip. The "Production" build is recommended.

64-bit binaries

Download and extract the 64-bit .zip.

Unzip

Unzip the downloaded binary package to the location of your choice. You may want to rename mongo-xxxxxxx to just "mongo" for convenience.

Create a data directory

By default MongoDB will store data in `\data\db`, but it won't automatically create that folder, so we do so here:

```
C:\> mkdir \data
C:\> mkdir \data\db
```

Or you can do this from the Windows Explorer, of course.

If you prefer to place datafiles elsewhere, use the `--dbpath` command line parameter when starting mongod.exe.

Run and connect to the server

The important binaries for a first run are:

- `mongod.exe` - the database server. Try `mongod --help` to see startup options.
- `mongo.exe` - the administrative shell

To run the database, click `mongod.exe` in Explorer, or run it from a CMD window.

```
C:\> cd \my_mongo_dir\bin
C:\my_mongo_dir\bin> mongod
```

Note: It is also possible to run the server as a Windows Service. But we can do that later.

Now, start the administrative shell, either by double-clicking `mongo.exe` in Explorer, or from the CMD prompt. By default mongo.exe connects to a `mongod` server running on `localhost` and uses the database named `test`. Run `mongo --help` to see other options.

```
C:\> cd \my_mongo_dir\bin
C:\my_mongo_dir\bin> mongo
> // the mongo shell is a javascript shell connected to the db
> // by default it connects to database 'test' at localhost
> 3+3
6
> db
test
> // the first write will create the db:
> db.foo.insert( { a : 1 } )
> db.foo.find()
{ _id : ..., a : 1 }
> show dbs
...
> show collections
...
> help
```

Congratulations, you've just saved and retrieved your first document with MongoDB!

Writing Apps

You can write apps that use MongoDB in virtual any programming language. See the Drivers page for a full list, and also the C# page if writing .NET applications.

Learn more

- The MongoDB Tutorial (not Windows specific)
- Main MongoDB Windows Doc Page
- [More on using the mongo shell]

Downloads

	OS X 32-bit note	OS X 64-bit	Linux 32-bit note	Linux 64-bit	Windows 32-bit note	Windows 64-bit	Solaris i86pc note	Solaris 64	Source
Production Release (Recommended)									
1.8.1 4/6/2011 Changelog	download	download	download *legacy-static	download *legacy-static	download	download	download	download	tgz zip

Release Notes									
Nightly Changelog	download	download	download *legacy-static	download *legacy-static	download	download	download	download	tgz zip
Previous Release									
1.6.5 12/9/2010 Changelog	download	download	download *legacy-static	download *legacy-static	download	download	download	download	tgz zip
Release Notes									
Nightly Changelog	download	download	download *legacy-static	download *legacy-static	download	download	download	download	tgz zip
Development Release (Unstable)									
Nightly Changelog	download	download	download *legacy-static	download *legacy-static	download	download	download	download	tgz zip
Archived Releases									
	list	list	list	list	list	list	list	list	list

1.0 Changelist

Wrote MongoDB. See documentation.

1.2.x Release Notes

New Features

- More indexes per collection
- Faster index creation
- Map/Reduce
- Stored JavaScript functions
- Configurable fsync time
- Several small features and fixes

DB Upgrade Required

There are some changes that will require doing an upgrade if your previous version is <= 1.0.x. If you're already using a version >= 1.1.x then these changes aren't required. There are 2 ways to do it:

- --upgrade
  - stop your mongod process
  - run ./mongod --upgrade
  - start mongod again
- use a slave
  - start a slave on a different port and data directory
  - when its synced, shut down the master, and start the new slave on the regular port.

Ask in the forums or IRC for more help.

Replication Changes

- There have been minor changes in replication. If you are upgrading a master/slave setup from <= 1.1.2 you have to update the slave first.

mongoimport

- mongoimportjson has been removed and is replaced with mongoimport that can do json/csv/tsv

field filter changing

- We've changed the semantics of the field filter a little bit. Previously only objects with those fields would be returned. Now the field filter only changes the output, not which objects are returned. If you need that behavior, you can use $exists

other notes

http://www.mongodb.org/display/DOCS/1.1+Development+Cycle

1.4 Release Notes

We're pleased to announce the 1.4 release of MongoDB. 1.4 is a drop in replacement for 1.2. To upgrade you just need to shutdown mongod, then restart with the new binaries. (Users upgrading from release 1.0 should review the 1.2 release notes, in particular the instructions for upgrading the DB format.)

Release 1.4 includes the following improvements over release 1.2:

Core server enhancements

- concurrency improvements
- indexing memory improvements
- background index creation
- better detection of regular expressions so the index can be used in more cases

Replication & Sharding

- better handling for restarting slaves offline for a while
- fast new slaves from snapshots (--fastsync)
- configurable slave delay (--slavedelay)
- replication handles clock skew on master
- $inc replication fixes
- sharding alpha 3 - notably 2 phase commit on config servers

Deployment & production

- configure "slow threshold" for profiling
- ability to do fsync + lock for backing up raw files
- option for separate directory per db (--directoryperdb)
- `http://localhost:28017/_status` to get serverStatus via http
- REST interface is off by default for security (--rest to enable)
- can rotate logs with a db command, logRotate
- enhancements to serverStatus command (db.serverStatus()) - counters and replication lag stats
- new mongostat tool

Query language improvements

- $all with regex
- $not
- partial matching of array elements $elemMatch
- $ operator for updating arrays
- $addToSet
- $unset
- $pull supports object matching
- $set with array indices

Geo

- 2d geospatial search
- geo $center and $box searches

1.6 Release Notes

MongoDB 1.6 is a drop-in replacement for 1.4. To upgrade, simply shutdown `mongod` then restart with the new binaries.*

> ⚠ MongoDB v1.8 is now available.

* *Please note that you should upgrade to the latest version of whichever driver you're using. Certain drivers, including the Ruby driver, will require the upgrade, and all the drivers will provide extra features for connecting to replica sets.*

Sharding

Sharding is now production-ready, making MongoDB horizontally scalable, with no single point of failure. A single instance of *mongod* can now be upgraded to a distributed cluster with zero downtime when the need arises.

- Sharding Tutorial
- Sharding Documentation
- Upgrading a Single Server to a Cluster

Replica Sets

Replica sets, which provide automated failover among a cluster of *n* nodes, are also now available.

Plese note that replica *pairs* are now deprecated; we strongly recommend that replica pair users upgrade to replica sets.

- Replica Set Tutorial
- Replica Set Documentation
- Upgrading Existing Setups to Replica Sets

Other Improvements

- The w option (and wtimeout) forces writes to be propagated to *n* servers before returning success (this works especially well with replica sets)
- $or queries
- Improved concurrency
- $slice operator for returning subsets of arrays
- 64 indexes per collection (formerly 40 indexes per collection)
- 64-bit integers can now be represented in the shell using NumberLong
- The findAndModify command now supports upserts. It also allows you to specify fields to return
- $showDiskLoc option to see disk location of a document
- Support for IPv6 and UNIX domain sockets

Installation

- Windows service improvements
- The C++ client is a separate tarball from the binaries

1.6.x Release Notes

- 1.6.5

1.5.x Release Notes

- 1.5.8
- 1.5.7
- 1.5.6
- 1.5.5
- 1.5.4
- 1.5.3
- 1.5.2
- 1.5.1
- 1.5.0

You can see a full list of all changes on Jira.

Thank you everyone for your support and suggestions!

1.8 Release Notes

MongoDB 1.8 is a drop-in replacement for 1.6, except:

- *replica set nodes should be upgraded in a particular order*.

- The options to the Map/Reduce command have changed in 1.8, causing incompatibility with previous releases. If you use MapReduce, please see Map Reduce Output Options page. If using map/reduce, this likely also means you need a recent version of your client driver.

To upgrade, shutdown the old `mongod` and the restart with the new binaries. See Upgrading to 1.8.x for more details.

MongoDB Download Page

What's New

Journaling

MongoDB now supports write-ahead journaling to facilitate fast crash recovery and durability in the storage engine. With journaling enabled, a `mongod` can be quickly restarted following a crash without needing to repair the collections.

- Journaling Documentation

Sparse and Covered Indexes

Sparse Indexes are indexes that only include documents that contain the fields specified in the index. Documents missing the field will not appear in the index at all. This can significantly reduce index size for attributes that are contained in a subset of documents within a collection.

Covered Indexes enable queries to be answered entirely from the index when the query only requests fields that are contained in the index.

- Sparse Index Documentation
- Covered Index Documentation

Incremental Map/Reduce Support

Map/Reduce supports new output options that enable incrementally updating existing collections. Previously, a Map/Reduce job could either output to a temporary collection a named permanent collection; which it would overwrite with new data.

You now have several options for the output of your map/reduce jobs

- You can merge Map/Reduce output into an existing collection. Output from the Reduce phase will replace existing keys in the output collection if it already exists. Other keys will remain in the collection.
- You can now re-reduce your output with the contents of an existing collection. Each key output by the reduce phase will be reduced with the existing document in the output collection.
- You can replace the existing output collection with the new results of the Map/Reduce job (equivalent to setting a permanent output collection in previous releases)
- You can compute map/reduce inline and return results to the caller without persisting the results of the job. This is similar to the temporary collections generated in previous releases, except results are limited to 8MB.

The new map/reduce options are documented here.

Additional Changes and Enhancements

1.8.1

- sharding migrate fix when moving larger chunks
- durability fix with background indexing
- fixed mongos concurrency issue with many incoming connections

1.8.0

- All changes from 1.7.x series.

1.7.6

- bug fixes

1.7.5

- journaling
- extent allocation improvements
- improved replica set connectivity for mongos
- getLastError improvements for sharding

1.7.4

- mongos will route SLAVE_OK queries to secondaries in replica sets
- new map/reduce output options
- sparse indexes

1.7.3

- initial covered index support
- distinct can use data from indexes when possible
- map/reduce can merge or reduce results into an existing collection
- mongod tracks and mongostat displays network usage
- sharding stability improvements

1.7.2

- $rename operator to allow renaming of attributes in a document
- option to `db.eval` not to block
- geo queries with sharding

- mongostat --discover option
- chunk splitting enhancements
- replica sets network enhancements for servers behind a nat

1.7.1

- Many sharding performance enhancements
- better support for $elemMatch on primitives in embedded arrays
- Query optimizer enhancements on range queries
- Window service enhancements
- Replica set setup improvements
- $pull works on primitives in arrays

1.7.0

- sharding performance improvements for heavy insert loads
- slave delay support for replica sets
- getLastErrorDefaults for replica sets
- auto completion in the shell
- spherical distance for geo search
- all fixes from 1.6.1 and 1.6.2

Release Announcement Forum Pages

- 1.8.1 1.8.0

- 1.7.6 1.7.5 1.7.4 1.7.3 1.7.2 1.7.1 1.7.0

See Also

- Download MongoDB v1.8
- Upgrading to 1.8.x
- Full list of changes on jira

Upgrading to 1.8

- Upgrading Replica Sets
- Upgrading Sharded Clusters
- Returning to 1.6
  - Journaling
- See Also
- Download

First, upgrade your shell (`mongo`) to the 1.8.x shell.

Upgrading Replica Sets

1.8.x secondaries **can** replicate from 1.6.x primaries.

1.6.x secondaries **cannot** replicate from 1.8.x primaries.

Thus, the trick is to replace all of your secondaries, then the primary.

For example, suppose we have a typical replica set with 1 primary, 1 secondary, and 1 arbiter. To upgrade this set, do the following:

1. For each arbiter:
   - Shut down the arbiter
   - Start it back up with the 1.8 binary
2. Change your config (optional)
   It is possible that, when you start shutting down members of the set, a new primary will be elected. If you wish to prevent this, you can give all of the slaves a priority of 0 before upgrading, then change them back afterwards.
   - Record your current config. Run rs.conf() and paste the results into a text file.
   - Update your config so that all secondaries have priority 0. For example:

```
> config = rs.conf()
{
     "_id" : "foo",
     "version" : 3,
     "members" : [
             {
                     "_id" : 0,
                     "host" : "ubuntu:27017"
             },
             {
                     "_id" : 1,
                     "host" : "ubuntu:27018"
             },
             {
                     "_id" : 2,
                     "host" : "ubuntu:27019",
                     "arbiterOnly" : true
             }
             {
                     "_id" : 3,
                     "host" : "ubuntu:27020"
             },
             {
                     "_id" : 4,
                     "host" : "ubuntu:27021"
             },
     ]
}
> config.version++
3
> rs.isMaster()
{
     "setName" : "foo",
     "ismaster" : false,
     "secondary" : true,
     "hosts" : [
             "ubuntu:27017",
             "ubuntu:27018"
     ],
     "arbiters" : [
             "ubuntu:27019"
     ],
     "primary" : "ubuntu:27018",
     "ok" : 1
}
> // for each slave
> config.members[0].priority = 0
> config.members[3].priority = 0
> config.members[4].priority = 0
> rs.reconfig(config)
```

3. For each slave:
    - Shut down the slave
    - Start it back up with the 1.8 binary
4. If you changed the config, change it back to its original state

```
> config = rs.conf()
> config.version++
> config.members[0].priority = 1
> config.members[3].priority = 1
> config.members[4].priority = 1
> rs.reconfig(config)
```

5. Shut down the primary (the final 1.6 server) and restart it with the 1.8 binary.

Upgrading Sharded Clusters

1. Turn off the balancer:

```
$ mongo <a_mongos_hostname>
> use config
> db.settings.update({_id:"balancer"},{$set : {stopped:true}}, true)
```

2. For each shard:
   - If the shard is a replica set, follow the directions above for replica sets.
   - If the shard is a single mongod process, shut it down and start it back up with the 1.8 binary.
3. For each `mongos`:
   - Shut down the mongos process
   - Restart with the 1.8 binary
4. For each config server:
   - Shut down the config server process
   - Restart with the 1.8 binary
5. Turn on the balancer

```
> use config
> db.settings.update({_id:"balancer"},{$set : {stopped:false}})
```

Returning to 1.6

If something goes wrong and you wish to move back to 1.6, follow the steps above in reverse. Please be careful that you have not inserted any documents larger than 4MB while running on 1.8 (where the max size has increased to 16MB); if you have you will get errors when the server tries to read those documents.

Journaling

Returning to 1.6 after using 1.8 journaling works fine, as journaling does not change anything about the data file format. Suppose you are running 1.8.0 with journaling enabled and something isn't working for you, so you decide to switch back to 1.6. There are two scenarios:

1. If you shut down cleanly with 1.8.x, just restart with the 1.6 mongod binary.
2. If 1.8.x shut down uncleanly, start 1.8.x up again and let the journal files run to fix any damage (incomplete writes) that may have existed at the crash. Then shut down 1.8.0 cleanly and restart with the 1.6 mongod binary.

See Also

- 1.8 Release Notes page for details on changes in v1.8 to map/reduce.

Download

- Download v1.8

CentOS and Fedora Packages

10gen publishes yum-installable RPM packages that for x86 and x86_64 platforms. The packages are named mongo-10gen and mongo-10gen-server for production releases (versions with even middle numbers), and mongo-10gen-unstable and mongo-10gen-unstable-server for development releases (odd middle version numbers, except for some release candidates).

For all 64-bit RPM-based distros with yum, put this at /etc/yum.repos.d/10gen.repo:

```
[10gen]
name=10gen Repository
baseurl=http://downloads-distro.mongodb.org/repo/redhat/os/x86_64
gpgcheck=0
```

For all 32-bit RPM-based distros with yum, put this at /etc/yum.repos.d/10gen.repo:

```
[10gen]
name=10gen Repository
baseurl=http://downloads-distro.mongodb.org/repo/redhat/os/i686
gpgcheck=0
```

Note: for users upgrading from our older (pre-2/2011) packaging scheme, it may be necessary to uninstall your existing "mongo-stable", "mongo-stable-server", "mongo-unstable", "mongo-unstable-server" packages before installing the new mongo-10gen, mongo-10gen-server pacakges.

For the moment, these packages aren't signed. (If anybody knows how to automate signing RPMs, please let us know!)

Ubuntu and Debian packages

Please read the notes on the Downloads page.

10gen publishes apt-gettable packages. Our packages are generally fresher than those in Debian or Ubuntu. We publish 2 distinct packages, named **mongodb-10gen**, **mongodb-10gen-unstable** corresponding to our latest stable release, our latest development release. Each of these packages conflicts with the others, and with the **mongodb** package in Debian/Ubuntu.

The packaging is still a work-in-progress, so we invite Debian and Ubuntu users to try them out and let us know how the packaging might be improved.

Installing

To use the packages, add a line to your /etc/apt/sources.list, then 'aptitude update' and one of 'aptitude install mongodb-10gen', 'aptitude install mongodb-10gen-unstable' . Make sure you add the 10gen GPG key, or apt will disable the repository (apt uses encryption keys to verify the repository is trusted and disables untrusted ones). To add the GPG key, run this command:

```
sudo apt-key adv --keyserver keyserver.ubuntu.com --recv 7F0CEB10
```

Then, if you're on a Debianoid with SysV style init scripts (e.g., Debian Lenny or older Ubuntus), add this line verbatim to your /etc/apt/sources.list

```
deb http://downloads-distro.mongodb.org/repo/debian-sysvinit dist 10gen
```

If you're on a Debianoid with Upstart (e.g., recent Ubuntus), use this line in your sources.list:

```
deb http://downloads-distro.mongodb.org/repo/ubuntu-upstart dist 10gen
```

GPG Key

The public gpg key used for signing these packages follows. It should be possible to import the key into apt's public keyring with a command like this:

```
sudo apt-key adv --keyserver keyserver.ubuntu.com --recv 7F0CEB10
```

Configuration

To configure these packages beyond the defaults, have a look at */etc/mongodb.conf*, and/or the initialization script, (*/etc/init.d/mongodb* on older, non-Upstart systems, */etc/init/mongodb.conf* on Upstart systems). Most MongoDB operational settings are in */etc/mongodb.conf*; a few other settings are in the initialization script. Note that if you customize the *userid* in the initialization script or the *dbpath* or *logpath* settings in */etc/mongodb.conf*, you must ensure that the directories and files you use are writable by the userid you run the server as.

Packages for other distros coming soon!

```
-----BEGIN PGP PUBLIC KEY BLOCK-----
Version: GnuPG v1.4.10 (Darwin)


mQENBEtsQe8BCACm5G0/ei0IxyjVEp6EEtbEbWK1Q4dKaONtiCODwB8di+L8tlUd
Ra5QYxeyV90C+dqdh34o79enXxT6idHfYYqDdob2/kAPE6vFi4sLmrWIVGCRY++7
RPclZuezPm1sxG1TRAYEsW0VZUE9ofdoQ8xlUZDyn2BSjG8OCT2e4orRg1pHgzw2
n3hnWqJNuJS4jxcRJOxI049THIGUtqBfF8bQoZw8C3Wg/R6pGghUfNjpA6uF9KAH
gnqrC0swZ1/vwIJt9fnvAlzkqLrssYtKH0rMdn5n4g5tJLqY5q/NruHMq2rhoy3r
4MC1w8GTbP7qR83wAyaLJ7xACOKqxB3SrDFJABEBAAG0I1JpY2hhcmQgS3JldXRl
ciA8cmljaGFyZEAxMGdlbi5jb20+iQE4BBMBAgAiBQJLbEHvAhsDBgsJCAcDAgYV
CAIJCgsEFgIDAQIeAQIXgAAKCRCey+xGfwzrEGXbB/4nrmf/2rEnztRelmup3duI
eepzEtw1cv3uHg2oZXGS6S7o5Fsk+amngaWelWKfkSw5La7aH5vL4tKFKUfuaME1
avInDIU/0IEs8jLrdSWq601HowLQcxAhqNPdaGONDtHw56Qhs0Ba8GA6329vLWgZ
ODnXweiNSCDrv3xbIN6IjPyyO5AoUkxmJfD0mVtp3u5Ar7kfIw7ieGGxokaHewNL
Xzqcp9rPiUR6dFw2uRvDdVRrXFUPlgVugaHKytm15JpHmQfyzQiMdYXnIz0oofJO
WM/PY1iw+QJZ2M7PnfbTJeADXIc/EoOAJDRggih533SjhiCaT6FdPMMk6rCZ5cgl
uQENBEtsQe8BCADlNPIJZVSL2i6H9X19YK4CpEqsjIUGISMB1cDT311WFSnhfuMs
GL9xYRb8dlbyeJFFOyHNkIBmH5ekCvGRfS6qJYpcUQZZcWSjEMqBYQV5cw1efd0B
ek64jfvrsLz8+YhKzn+NI8O3nyGvpEEWvOhN4hNjwkDhYbXLvAlsqagbnSMf+Htf
3lgCGYa2gLiNIqNKWCsEVAan/Er6KS39WANGXi6ih0yjReBiU8WR6Qh2ylMi2xKw
yHnTOsbWxP0hqALUa7N4AEGCXS/qn+vUz/hcIbt+eUNy45qoZcTT3dZsWGfJqknh
RFMIuPiej7/WY4Ugzes5NG02ecDkDkpJvrSNABEBAAGJAR8EGAECAAkFAktsQe8C
GwwACgkQnsvsRn8M6xABeggAlNkqbqa12L1bgaCgnGGdCiuXB3F6/VFmSQdUKpts
EuqWH6rSp30r67PupzneX++ouh+9WD5O7gJ0kP3VQJpmXjT/QnN5ANjI4kAtRZUW
qCXlXOxVAeXHL5oiKz0NM23Xc2rNAyfBQY8+SUYrKBalNBq5m68g8oogX8QD5u2F
x+6C+QK9G2EBDD/NWgkKN3GOxpQ5DTdPHI5/fjwYFs1leIaQjjiyJwAifxB/1+w0
VCHe2LDVpRXY5uBTefF2guhVYisKY6n5wNDaQpBmA8w17it5Yp8ge0HMN1A+aZ+6
L6MsuHbG2OYDZgAk8eKhvyd0y/pAhZpNuQ82MMGBmcueSA==
=74Cu
-----END PGP PUBLIC KEY BLOCK-----
```


Install

In order to complete the installation of the packages, you need to update the sources and then install the desired package

```
sudo apt-get update
```

```
sudo apt-get install mongodb-10gen
```

Version Numbers

MongoDB uses the odd-numbered versions for development releases.

There are 3 numbers in a MongoDB version: *A.B.C*

- *A* is the major version. This will rarely change and signify very large changes
- *B* is the release number. This will include many changes including features and things that possible break backwards compatibility. Even Bs will be stable branches, and odd Bs will be development.
- *C* is the revision number and will be used for bugs and security issues.

For example:

- 1.0.0 : first GA release
- 1.0.x : bug fixes to 1.0.x - highly recommended to upgrade, very little risk
- 1.1.x : development release. this will include new features that are not fully finished, and works in progress. Some things may be different than 1.0
- 1.2.x : second GA release. this will be the culmination of the 1.1.x release.

What's New by Version

This is a summary of high level features only. See jira and release notes for full details.

- 1.4
  - Geospatial
  - Background indexing
  - --directoryperdb
  - Log rotate
  - $not
  - $ operator for updating arrays
  - $addToSet
  - $unset
- 1.6
  - Sharding
  - Replica Sets
  - getLastError w param
  - $or
  - $slice
  - 64 indexes per collection
  - IPv6
- 1.8
  - Journaling
  - Sparse and covered indexes
  - $rename
  - mongos (i.e., sharded environment) will route SLAVE_OK queries to secondaries in replica sets

Drivers

MongoDB currently has client support for the following programming languages:

mongodb.org Supported

- C
- C# and .NET
- C++
- Erlang
- Haskell
- Java
- Javascript
- Perl
- PHP
- Python
- Ruby
- Scala (via Casbah)

Community Supported

- REST
- ActionScript3
  - http://github.com/argoncloud
- C
  - libmongo-client
- C# and .NET
- Clojure
- ColdFusion
  - Blog post: Part 1 | Part 2 | Part 3
  - http://github.com/virtix/cfmongodb/tree/0.9
  - http://mongocfc.riaforge.org/
- D
  - Port of the MongoDB C Driver for D
- Delphi
  - pebongo - Early stage Delphi driver for MongoDB
  - TMongoWire - Maps all the VarTypes of OleVariant to the BSON types, implements IPersistStream for (de)serialization, and uses TTcpClient for networking
- Erlang
  - emongo - An Erlang MongoDB driver that emphasizes speed and stability. "The most emo of drivers."
  - Erlmongo - an almost complete MongoDB driver implementation in Erlang
- Factor
  - http://github.com/slavapestov/factor/tree/master/extra/mongodb/
- Fantom
  - http://bitbucket.org/liamstask/fantomongo/wiki/Home
- F#

    - http://gist.github.com/218388
- Go
    - gomongo
    - mongogo
    - go-mongo
    - mgo
- Groovy
    - See Java Language Center
- Javascript
- Lisp
    - https://github.com/fons/cl-mongo
- Lua
    - LuaMongo
- MatLab
    - No direct adapter but apparently usable via the Java Driver
- node.js
- Objective C
    - NuMongoDB
- PHP
    - Asynchronous PHP driver using libevent
- PowerShell
    - Blog post
- Python
- R
    - RMongo - R client to interface with MongoDB
- Ruby
    - MongoMapper
    - rmongo - An event-machine-based Ruby driver for MongoDB
    - jmongo A thin ruby wrapper around the mongo-java-driver for vastly better jruby performance.
    - em-mongo EventMachine MongoDB Driver (based off of RMongo).
- Scala
    - See JVM Languages
- Racket (PLT Scheme)
    - http://planet.plt-scheme.org/display.ss?package=mongodb.plt&owner=jaymccarthy
    - docs
- Smalltalk
    - Squeaksource Mongotalk
    - Dolphin Smalltalk

Get Involved, Write a Driver!

- Writing Drivers and Tools

Haskell Language Center

The Haskell driver and its API documentation reside on Hackage

C Language Center

C Driver

The MongoDB C Driver is the 10gen-supported driver for MongoDB. It's written in pure C. The goal is to be super strict for ultimate portability, no dependencies, and generic embeddability.

The driver is still considered alpha but is undergoing active development. Support for replica sets was just added in v0.3.

- Tutorial
- C Driver README
- History
- JIRA
- Source Code

Download and build

The C driver is hosted at GitHub. You can download the latest stable version: v0.3.1:

Then consult the README for detailed instructions on building the driver.

Notable Projects

NuMongodb – An Objective-C wrapper around the MongoDB C driver. It is intended for use with Nu but may be useful in other Objective-C programming applications.

If you're working on a project that you'd like to have included, let us know.

C Tutorial

This document is an introduction to usage of the MongoDB database from a C program.

> This document applies to the C driver v0.3. When building from Github source, be sure to check out the v0.3 tag.

First, install Mongo -- see the Quickstart for details.

Next, you may wish to take a look at the Developer's Tour guide for a language independent look at how to use MongoDB. Also, we suggest some basic familiarity with the `mongo shell` -- the shell is one's primary database administration tool and is useful for manually inspecting the contents of a database after your C program runs.

A working C program complete with examples from this tutorial can be found here.

- Writing Client Code
  - Connecting
    - Connecting to a replica set
  - Building
  - BSON
  - Inserting
    - Single
    - Batch
  - Querying
    - Simple Queries
    - Complex Queries
      - Sorting
      - Hints
      - Explain
  - Indexing
  - Updating
- Further Reading

Writing Client Code

Connecting

Let's make a tutorial.c file that connects to the database:

```
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <stdio.h>
#include <string.h>
#include "bson.h"
#include "mongo.h"

int main() {
    mongo_connection conn[1]; /* ptr */

    status = mongo_connect( conn, "localhost", 27017 );

    switch (status) {
        case mongo_conn_success: printf( "connection succeeded\n" ); break;
        case mongo_conn_bad_arg: printf( "bad arguments\n" ); return 1;
        case mongo_conn_no_socket: printf( "no socket\n" ); return 1;
        case mongo_conn_fail: printf( "connection failed\n" ); return 1;
        case mongo_conn_not_master: printf( "not master\n" ); return 1;
    }

    /* CODE WILL GO HERE */

    mongo_destroy( conn );
    printf( "\nconnection closed\n" );

    return 0;
}
```

Connecting to a replica set

The API for connecting to a replica set is slightly different. First you initialize the connection object, specifying the replica set's name, then you add seed nodes, and finally you connect. Here's an example:

```
#include "mongo.h"

int main() {
    mongo_connection conn[1]; /* ptr */

    mongo_replset_init_conn( conn, "replset-my-app");
    mongo_replset_add_seed( "10.4.3.22", 27017 );
    mongo_replset_add_seed( "10.4.3.32", 27017 );

    status = mongo_replset_connect( conn );
}
```

You'd then proceed to check the status as we did in the previous example.

Building

If you are using gcc on Linux or OS X, you would compile with something like this, depending on location of your include files:

```
$ gcc -Isrc --std=c99 /path/to/mongo-c-driver/src/*.c -I /path/to/mongo-c-driver/src/ tutorial.c -o
tutorial
$ ./tutorial
connection succeeded
connection closed
$
```

BSON

The Mongo database stores data in BSON format. BSON is a binary object format that is JSON-like in terms of the data which can be stored (some extensions exist, for example, a Date datatype).

To save data in the database we must create `bson` objects. We use `bson_buffer` to make `bson` objects, and `bson_iterator` to enumerate `bson` objects.

Let's now create a BSON "person" object which contains name and age. We might invoke:

```
bson b[1];
bson_buffer buf[1];

bson_buffer_init( buf )
bson_append_string( buf, "name", "Joe" );
bson_append_int( buf, "age", 33 );
bson_from_buffer( b, buf );
```

Use the `bson_append_new_oid()` helper to add an object id to your object. The server will add an _id automatically if it is not included explicitly.

```
bson b[1];
bson_buffer buf[1];

bson_buffer_init( buf );
bson_append_new_oid( buf, "_id" );
bson_append_string( buf, "name", "Joe" );
bson_append_int( buf, "age", 33 );
bson_from_buffer( b, buf );
```

`bson_buffer_new_oid( ..., "_id" )` should be at the beginning of the generated object.

When you are done using the object remember to use `bson_destroy()` to free up the memory allocated by the buffer.

```
bson_destroy( b )
```

Inserting

Single

We now save our person object in a persons collection in the database:

```
mongo_insert( conn, "tutorial.persons", b );
```

The first parameter to `mongo_insert` is the pointer to the `mongo_connection` object. The second parameter is the namespace. *tutorial* is the database and *persons* is the collection name. The third parameter is a pointer to the `bson` "person" object that we created before.

Batch

We can do batch inserts as well:

```
static void tutorial_insert_batch( mongo_connection *conn ) {
    bson *p, **ps;
    bson_buffer *p_buf;
    char *names[4];
    int ages[] = { 29, 24, 24, 32 };
    int i, n = 4;
    names[0] = "Eliot"; names[1] = "Mike"; names[2] = "Mathias"; names[3] = "Richard";

    ps = ( bson ** )malloc( sizeof( bson * ) * n);

    for ( i = 0; i < n; i++ ) {
        p = ( bson * )malloc( sizeof( bson ) );
        p_buf = ( bson_buffer * )malloc( sizeof( bson_buffer ) );
        bson_buffer_init( p_buf );
        bson_append_new_oid( p_buf, "_id" );
        bson_append_string( p_buf, "name", names[i] );
        bson_append_int( p_buf, "age", ages[i] );
        bson_from_buffer( p, p_buf );
        ps[i] = p;
        free( p_buf );
    }

    mongo_insert_batch( conn, "tutorial.persons", ps, n );

    for ( i = 0; i < n; i++ ) {
        bson_destroy( ps[i] );
        free( ps[i] );
    }
}
```

Querying

Simple Queries

Let's now fetch all objects from the persons collection, and display them.

```
static void tutorial_empty_query( mongo_connection *conn) {
    mongo_cursor *cursor;
    bson empty[1];
    bson_empty( empty );

    cursor = mongo_find( conn, "tutorial.persons", empty, empty, 0, 0, 0 );
    while( mongo_cursor_next( cursor ) ) {
        bson_print( &cursor->current );
    }

    mongo_cursor_destroy( cursor );
    bson_destroy( empty );
}
```

`empty` is the empty BSON object -- we use it to represent {} which indicates an empty query pattern (an empty query is a query for all objects).

We use `bson_print()` above to print out information about each object retrieved. `bson_print()` is a diagnostic function which prints an abbreviated JSON string representation of the object.

> ⚠ `mongo_find()` returns a `mongo_cursor` which must be destroyed after use.

Let's now write a function which prints out the name (only) of all persons in the collection whose age is a given value:

```
static void tutorial_simple_query( mongo_connection *conn ) {
    bson query[1];
    bson_buffer query_buf[1];
    mongo_cursor *cursor;

    bson_buffer_init( query_buf );
    bson_append_int( query_buf, "age", 24 );
    bson_from_buffer( query, query_buf );

    cursor = mongo_find( conn, "tutorial.persons", query, NULL, 0, 0, 0 );
    while( mongo_cursor_next( cursor ) ) {
        bson_iterator it[1];
        if ( bson_find( it, &cursor->current, "name" )) {
                printf( "name: %s\n", bson_iterator_string( it ) );
        }
    }

    bson_destroy( query );
}
```

Our query above, written as JSON, is of the form

```
{ age : <agevalue> }
```

Queries are BSON objects of a particular format.

In the mongo shell (which uses javascript), we could invoke:

```
use tutorial;
db.persons.find( { age : 24 } );
```

Complex Queries

Sometimes we want to do more then a simple query. We may want the results to be sorted in a special way, or what the query to use a certain index.

Sorting

Let's now make the results from previous query be sorted alphabetically by name. To do this, we change the query statement from:

```
bson_buffer_init( query_buf );
bson_append_int( query_buf, "age", 24 );
bson_from_buffer( query, query_buf );
```

to:

```
bson_buffer_init( query_buf );
bson_append_start_object( query_buf, "$query" );
bson_append_int( query_buf, "age", 24 );
bson_append_finish_object( query_buf );
bson_append_start_object( query_buf, "$orderby" );
bson_append_int( query_buf, "name", 1);
bson_append_finish_object( query_buf );
bson_from_buffer( query, query_buf );
```

Hints

While the mongo query optimizer often performs very well, explicit "hints" can be used to force mongo to use a specified index, potentially

improving performance in some situations. When you have a collection indexed and are querying on multiple fields (and some of those fields are indexed), pass the index as a hint to the query:

```
bson_buffer_init( query_buf );
bson_append_start_object( query_buf, "$query" );
bson_append_int( query_buf, "age", 24 );
bson_append_string( query_buf, "name", "Mathias" );
bson_append_finish_object( query_buf );
bson_append_start_object( query_buf, "$hint" );
bson_append_int( query_buf, "name", 1);
bson_append_finish_object( query_buf );
bson_from_buffer( query, query_buf );
```

Explain

A great way to get more information on the performance of your database queries is to use the $explain feature. This will return "explain plan" type info about a query from the database.

```
bson_buffer_init( query_buf );
bson_append_start_object( query_buf, "$query" );
bson_append_int( query_buf, "age", 33 );
bson_append_finish_object( query_buf );
bson_append_bool( query_buf, "$explain", 1);
bson_from_buffer( query, query_buf );
```

Indexing

Let's suppose we want to have an index on age so that our queries are fast. We would use:

```
static void tutorial_index( mongo_connection * conn ) {
    bson key[1];
    bson_buffer key_buf[1];

    bson_buffer_init( key_buf );
    bson_append_int( key_buf, "name", 1 );
    bson_from_buffer( key, key_buf );

    mongo_create_index( conn, "tutorial.persons", key, 0, NULL );

    bson_destroy( key );

    printf( "simple index created on \"name\"\n" );

    bson_buffer_init( key_buf );
    bson_append_int( key_buf, "age", 1 );
    bson_append_int( key_buf, "name", 1 );
    bson_from_buffer( key, key_buf );

    mongo_create_index( conn, "tutorial.persons", key, 0, NULL );

    bson_destroy( key );

    printf( "compound index created on \"age\", \"name\"\n" );
}
```

Updating

Use the `mongo_update()` method to perform a database update . For example the following update in the mongo shell :

```
> use tutorial
> db.persons.update( { name : 'Joe', age : 33 },
...                  { $inc : { visits : 1 } } )
```

is equivalent to running the following C function:

```
static void tutorial_update( mongo_connection *conn ) {
    bson cond[1], op[1];
    bson_buffer cond_buf[1], op_buf[1];

    bson_buffer_init( cond_buf );
    bson_append_string( cond_buf, "name", "Joe");
    bson_append_int( cond_buf, "age", 33);
    bson_from_buffer( cond, cond_buf );

    bson_buffer_init( op_buf );
    bson_append_start_object( op_buf, "$inc" );
    bson_append_int( op_buf, "visits", 1 );
    bson_append_finish_object( op_buf );
    bson_from_buffer( op, op_buf );

    mongo_update(conn, "tutorial.persons", cond, op, 0);

    bson_destroy( cond );
    bson_destroy( op );
}
```

Further Reading

This overview just touches on the basics of using Mongo from C. There are many more capabilities. For further exploration:

- See the language-independent Developer's Tour;
- Experiment with the `mongo` shell;
- Consider getting involved to make the product (either C driver, tools, or the database itself) better!

CSharp Language Center

MongoDB C# / .NET Driver

The MongoDB C# Driver is the 10gen-supported C# / .NET driver for MongoDB.

- C# Driver Tutorial
- C# Driver Serialization Tutorial
- API Documentation
- C# Driver README
- Source Code

> Several other C# drivers have been developed by the community. This is the official C# Driver supported by 10gen. It is similar in many ways to the various drivers that came before it, but it is **not** a direct replacement for any of them. Most people have found it easy to convert to using the official C# Driver, but you should expect to have to make some changes. Version 1.1 of the official C# driver does not yet support LINQ, so if LINQ is important to you then you might choose to wait a bit before switching to the official C# driver.

Downloading the Driver

The C# Driver is hosted at github.com. Instructions for downloading the source code are at: Download Instructions

You can also download binary builds in either .msi or .zip formats from:
http://github.com/mongodb/mongo-csharp-driver/downloads.

Note: if you download the .zip file Windows might require you to "Unblock" the help file. If Windows asks "Do you want to open this file?" when you double click on the CSharpDriverDocs.chm file, clear the check box next to "Always ask before opening this file" before pressing the Open

button. Alternatively, you can right click on the CSharpDriverDocs.chm file and select Properties, and then press the Unblock button at the bottom of the General tab. If the Unblock button is not present then the help file does not need to be unblocked.

Visual Studio Versions Supported

The current version of the C# Driver has been built and tested using

- Visual Studio 2010
- Visual Studio 2008

See Also

- CSharp Community Projects

Presentations

- C# Development with MongoDB - MongoSF (May 2011)
- More C#-related presentations

CSharp Community Projects

Community Supported C# Drivers

- mongodb-csharp driver
- simple-mongodb driver
- NoRM

- See also: the 10gen supported MongoDB C# driver

F#

- F# Example

Community Articles

- Experimenting with MongoDB from C#
- Using MongoDB from C#
- Introduction to MongoDB for .NET
- Using Json.NET and Castle Dynamic Proxy with MongoDB
- Implementing a Blog Using ASP.NET MVC and MongoDB
- Intro Article using a Post and Comments Example

Tools

- MongoDB.Emitter Document Wrapper
- log4net appender

Support

- http://groups.google.com/group/mongodb-csharp
- http://groups.google.com/group/mongodb-user
- IRC: #mongodb on freenode

See Also

- C++ Language Center

CSharp Driver Serialization Tutorial

- Introduction
- Creating a class map
- Conventions
- Field or property level serialization options
    - Element name
    - Element order
    - Identifying the Id field or property
    - Selecting an IdGenerator to use for an Id field or property

    - Ignoring a field or property
    - Ignoring null values
    - Default values
    - Ignoring a member based on a ShouldSerializeXyz method
    - Identifying required fields
    - Representation
    - DateTime serialization options
- Class level serialization options
    - Ignoring extra elements
    - Supporting extra elements
    - Polymorphic classes and discriminators
    - Setting the discriminator value
    - Specifying known types
    - Scalar and hierarchical discriminators
- Customizing serialization
    - Supplementing the default serializer
    - Make a class responsible for its own serialization
    - Write a custom serializer
    - Write a custom Id generator
    - Write a custom convention

Introduction

This document refers to version 1.1 of the C# Driver.

This section of the C# Driver Tutorial discusses serialization (and deserialization) of instances of C# classes to and from BSON documents. Serialization is the process of mapping an object to a BSON document that can be saved in MongoDB, and deserialization is the reverse process of reconstructing an object from a BSON document. For that reason the serialization process is also often referred to as "Object Mapping."

Serialization is handled by the BSON Library. The BSON Library has an extensible serialization architecture, so if you needed to take control of serialization you can. The BSON Library provides a default serializer which should meet most of your needs, and you can supplement the default serializer in various ways to handle your particular needs.

The main way the default serializer handles serialization is through "class maps". A class map is a structure that defines the mapping between a class and a BSON document. It contains a list of the fields and properties of the class that participate in serialization and for each one defines the required serialization parameters (e.g., the name of the BSON element, representation options, etc...).

The default serializer also has built in support for many .NET data types (primitive values, arrays, lists, dictionaries, etc...) for which class maps are not used.

Before an instance of a class can be serialized a class map must exist. You can either create this class map yourself or simply allow the class map to be created automatically when first needed (called "automapping"). You can exert some control over the automapping process either by decorating your classes with serialization related attributes or by using initialization code (attributes are very convenient to use but for those who prefer to keep serialization details out of their domain classes be assured that anything that can be done with attributes can also be done without them).

Creating a class map

To create a class map in your intialization code write:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<MyClass>();
```

which results in MyClass being automapped. In this case you could just as well have allowed the class to be automapped by the serializer (when first serialized or deserialized). The one case where you must call RegisterClassMap yourself (even without arguments) is when you are using a polymorphic class hierarchy: in this case you must register all the known subclasses to guarantee that the discriminators get registered.

If you want to control the creation of the class map you can provide your own initialization code in the form of a lambda expression:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<MyClass)(cm => {
    cm.MapProperty(c => c.SomeProperty);
    cm.MapProperty(c => c.AnotherProperty);
});
```

When your lamba expression is executed the cm (short for class map) parameter is passed an empty class map for you to fill in. In this example two properties are added to the class map by calling the MapProperty method. The arguments to MapProperty are themselves lambda expressions which identify the property of the class. The advantage of using a lambda expression instead of just a string parameter with the name of the property is that Intellisense and compile time checking ensure that you can't misspell the name of the property.

It is also possible to use automapping and then override some of the results. We will see examples of that later on.

Note that a class map must only be registered once (an exception will be thrown if you try to register the same class map more than once). Usually you call RegisterClassMap from some code path that is known to execute only once (the Main method, the Application_Start event handler, etc...). If you must call RegisterClassMap from a code path that executes more than once, you can use IsClassMapRegistered to check whether a class map has already been registered for a class:

```
if (!BsonClassMap.IsClassMapRegistered(typeof(MyClass))) {
    // register class map for MyClass
}
```

Conventions

When automapping a class there are a lot of decisions that need to be made. For example:

- Which fields or properties of the class should be serialized
- Which field or property of the class is the "Id"
- What element name should be used in the BSON document
- If the class is being used polymorphically what discriminator values are used
- What should happen if a BSON document has elements we don't recognize
- Does the field or property have a default value
- Should the default value be serialized or ignored
- Should null values be serialized or ignored

Answers to these questions are represented by a set of "conventions". For each convention there is a default convention that is the most likely one you will be using, but you can override individual conventions (and even write your own) as necessary.

If you want to use your own conventions that differ from the defaults simply create an instance of ConventionProfile and set the values you want to override and then register that profile (in other words, tell the default serializer when your special conventions should be used). For example:

```
var myConventions = new ConventionProfile();
// override any conventions you want to be different
BsonClassMap.RegisterConventions(
    myConventions,
    t => t.FullName.StartsWith("MyNamespace.")
);
```

The second parameter is a filter function that defines when this convention profile should be used. In this case we are saying that any classes whose full names begin with "MyNamespace." should use myConventions.

ConventionProfile provides the following methods to allow you to set individual conventions:

- SetDefaultValueConvention
- SetElementNameConvention
- SetExtraElementsMemberConvention
- SetIdGeneratorConvention
- SetIdMemberConvention
- SetIgnoreExtraElementsConvention
- SetIgnoreIfNullConvention
- SetMemberFinderConvention
- SetSerializeDefaultValueConvention

Field or property level serialization options

There are many ways you can control serialization. The previous section discussed conventions, which are a convenient way to control serialization decisions for many classes at once. You can also control serialization at the individual class or field or property level.

Serialization can be controlled either by decorating your classes and fields or properties with serialization related attributes or by writing code to initialize class maps appropriately. For each aspect of serialization you can control we will be showing both ways.

Element name

To specify an element name using attributes, write:

```
public class MyClass {
    [BsonElement("sp")]
    public string SomeProperty { get; set; }
}
```

The same result can be achieved without using attributes with the following initialization code:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<MyClass>(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.GetMemberMap(c => c.SomeProperty).SetElementName("sp");
});
```

Note that we are first automapping the class and then overriding one particular piece of the class map. If you didn't call AutoMap first then GetMemberMap would throw an exception because there would be no member maps.

Element order

If you want precise control over the order of the elements in the BSON document you can use the Order named parameter to the BsonElement attribute:

```
public class MyClass {
    [BsonElement("sp", Order = 1)]
    public string SomeProperty { get; set; }
}
```

Or using initialization code instead of attributes:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<MyClass>(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.GetMemberMap(c => c.SomeProperty).SetElementName("sp").SetOrder(1);
});
```

Any fields or properties that do not have an explicit Order will occur after those that do have an Order.

Identifying the Id field or property

To identify which field or property of a class is the Id you can write:

```
public class MyClass {
    [BsonId]
    public string SomeProperty { get; set; }
}
```

Or using initialization code instead of attributes:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<MyClass>(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.SetIdMember(cm.GetMemberMap(c => c.SomeProperty));
});
```

When not using AutoMap, you can also map a field or property and identify it as the Id in one step as follows:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<MyClass>(cm => {
    cm.MapIdProperty(c => c.SomeProperty);
    // mappings for other fields and properties
});
```

Selecting an IdGenerator to use for an Id field or property

When you Insert a document the C# driver checks to see if the Id member has been assigned a value, and if not, generates a new unique value for it. Since the Id member can be of any type, the driver requires the help of a matching IdGenerator to check whether the Id has a value assigned to it and to generate a new value if necessary. The driver has the following IdGenerators built-in:

- BsonObjectIdGenerator
- CombGuidGenerator
- GuidGenerator

- NullIdChecker
- ObjectIdGenerator
- StringObjectIdGenerator
- ZeroIdChecker<T>

Some of these IdGenerators are used automatically for commonly used Id types:

- BsonObjectIdGenerator is used for BsonObjectId
- GuidGenerator is used for Guid
- ObjectIdGenerator is used for ObjectId
- StringObjectIdGenerator is used for strings represented externally as ObjectId

To select an IdGenerator to use for your Id field or property write:

```
public class MyClass {
    [BsonId(IdGenerator = typeof(CombGuidGenerator))]
    public Guid Id { get; set; }
}
```

Or using intialization code instead of attributes:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<MyClass>(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.IdMemberMap.SetIdGenerator(CombGuidGenerator.Instance);
});
```

You could also say that you want to use the CombGuidGenerator for all Guids. In this case you would write:

```
BsonSerializer.RegisterIdGenerator(
    typeof(Guid),
    ComGuidGenerator.Instance
);
```

The NullIdChecker and ZeroIdChecker<T> IdGenerators can be used when you don't have an IdGenerator for an Id type but you want to enforce that the Id is not null or zero. These pseudo-IdGenerators throw an exception if their GenerateId method is called. You can select it for an individual member just like a CombGuidGenerator was selected in the previous example, or you can turn on one or both of these IdGenerators for all types as follows:

```
BsonSerializer.UseNullIdChecker = true; // used for reference types
BsonSerializer.UseZeroIdChecker = true; // used for value types
```

Note: in version 1.0 of the C# Driver NullIdChecker and ZeroIdChecker<T> were always used, but it was decided that their use should be optional, since null and zero are valid values for an Id as far as the server is concerned, so they should only be considered an error if the developer has specifically said they should be.

Ignoring a field or property

When constructing a class map manually you can ignore a field or property simply by not adding it to the class map. When using AutoMap you need a way to specify that a field or property should be ignored. To do so using attributes write:

```
public class MyClass {
    [BsonIgnore]
    public string SomeProperty { get; set; }
}
```

Or using initialization code instead of attributes:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<MyClass>(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.UnmapProperty(c => c.SomeProperty);
});
```

In this case AutoMap will have initially added the property to the class map automatically but then UnmapProperty will remove it.

Ignoring null values

By default null values are serialized to the BSON document as a BSON Null. An alternative is to serialize nothing to the BSON document when the field or property has a null value. To specify this using attributes write:

```
public class MyClass {
    [BsonIgnoreIfNull]
    public string SomeProperty { get; set; }
}
```

Or using initialization code instead of attributes:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<MyClass>(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.GetMemberMap(c => c.SomeProperty).SetIgnoreIfNull(true);
});
```

Default values

You can specify a default value for a field or property as follows:

```
public class MyClass {
    [BsonDefaultValue("abc")]
    public string SomeProperty { get; set; }
}
```

Or using initialization code instead of attributes:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<MyClass>(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.GetMemberMap(c => c.SomeProperty).SetDefaultValue("abc");
});
```

You can also control whether default values are serialized or not (the default is yes). To not serialize default values using attributes write:

```
public class MyClass {
    [BsonDefaultValue("abc", SerializeDefaultValue = false)]
    public string SomeProperty { get; set; }
}
```

Or using initialization code instead of attributes:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<MyClass>(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.GetMemberMap(c => c.SomeProperty).SetDefaultValue("abc", false);
});
```

or equivalently:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<MyClass>(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.GetMemberMap(c => c.SomeProperty)
        .SetDefaultValue("abc")
        .SetSerializeDefaultValue(false);
});
```

Ignoring a member based on a ShouldSerializeXyz method

Sometimes the decision whether to serialize a member or not is more complicated than just whether the value is null or equal to the default value. You can write a method that determines whether a value should be serialized. Usually the method for member Xyz is named ShouldSerializeXyz. If you follow this naming convention then AutoMap will automatically detect the method and use it. For example:

```
public class Employee {
    public ObjectId Id { get; set; }
    [BsonDateTimeOptions(DateOnly = true)]
    public DateTime DateOfBirth { get; set; }

    public bool ShouldSerializeDateOfBirth() {
        return DateOfBirth > new DateTime(1900, 1, 1);
    }
}
```

Or using initialization code instead of naming conventions:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<Employee>(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.GetMemberMap(c => c.DateOfBirth).SetShouldSerializeMethod(
        obj => ((Employee) obj).DateOfBirth > new DateTime(1900, 1, 1)
    );
});
```

Identifying required fields

Normally, the deserializer doesn't care if the document being deserialized doesn't have a matching element for every field or property of the class. The members that don't have a matching element simply get assigned their default value (or null if they don't have a default value).

If you want to make an element in the document be required, you can mark an individual field or property like this:

```
public class MyClass {
    public ObjectId Id { get; set; }
    [BsonRequired]
    public string X { get; set; }
}
```

Or using initialization code instead attributes:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<MyClass>(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.GetMemberMap(c => c.X).SetIsRequired(true);
});
```

Representation

For some .NET primitive types you can control what BSON type you want used to represent the value in the BSON document. For example, you can specify whether a char value should be represented as a BSON Int32 or as a one-character BSON String:

```
public class MyClass {
    [BsonRepresentation(BsonType.Int32)]
    public char RepresentAsInt32 { get; set; }
    [BsonRepresentation(BsonType.String)]
    public char RepresentAsString { get; set; }
}
```

Or using initialization code instead of attributes:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<MyClass>(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.GetMemberMap(c => c.RepresentAsInt32)
        .SetRepresentation(BsonType.Int32);
    cm.GetMemberMap(c => c.RepresentAsString)
        .SetRepresentation(BsonType.String);
});
```

One case that deserves special mention is representing a string externally as an ObjectId. For example:

```
public class Employee {
    [BsonRepresentation(BsonType.ObjectId)]
    public string Id { get; set; }
    // other properties
}
```

In this case the serializer will convert the ObjectId to a string when reading data from the database and will convert the string back to an ObjectId when writing data to the database (the string value must be a valid ObjectId). Typically this is done when you want to keep your domain classes free of any dependencies on the C# driver, so you don't want to declare the Id as an ObjectId. String serves as a neutral representation that is at the same time easily readable for debugging purposes. To keep your domain classes free of dependencies on the C# driver you also won't want to use attributes, so you can accomplish the same thing using initialization code instead of attributes:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<Employee>(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.IdMemberMap.SetRepresentation(BsonType.ObjectId);
});
```

DateTime serialization options

Representation is just one specialized type of serialization option, and is only used for simple types for which the choice of representation is the only option you can specify. In other cases, specific attributes and classes are used to hold options appropriate to that particular class. For example, serialization of DateTime values can be controlled using either the BsonDateTimeOptionsAttribute or the DateTimeSerializationOptions class. For example:

```
public class MyClass {
    [BsonDateTimeOptions(DateOnly = true)]
    public DateTime DateOfBirth { get; set; }
    [BsonDateTimeOptions(Kind = DateTimeKind.Local)]
    public DateTime AppointmentTime { get; set; }
}
```

Here we are specifying that the DateOfBirth value holds a date only (so the TimeOfDay component must be zero). Additionally, because this is a date only no timezone conversions at all will be performed. The AppointmentTime value is in local time and will be converted to UTC when it is serialized and converted back to local time when it is deserialized.

This same configuration could be achieved using intialization code:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<MyClass>(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.GetMemberMap(c => c.DateOfBirth)
        .SetSerializationOptions(
            new DateTimeSerializationOptions { DateOnly = true });
    cm.GetMemberMap(c => c.AppointmentTime)
        .SetSerializationOptions(
            new DateTimeSerializationOptions { Kind = DateTimeKind.Local });
});
```

Class level serialization options

There are several serialization options that are related to the class itself instead of to any particular field or property. You can set these class level options either by decorating the class with serialization related attributes or by writing initialization code. As usual, we will show both ways in the examples.

Ignoring extra elements

When a BSON document is deserialized the name of each element is used to look up a matching field or property in the class map. Normally, if no matching field or property is found, an exception will be thrown. If you want to ignore extra elements during deserialization, use the following attribute:

```
[BsonIgnoreExtraElements]
public MyClass {
    // fields and properties
}
```

Or using initialization code instead of attributes:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<MyClass>(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.SetIgnoreExtraElements(true);
});
```

Supporting extra elements

You can design your class to be capable of handling any extra elements that might be found in a BSON document during deserialization. To do so, you must have a property of type BsonDocument and you must identify that property as the one that should hold any extra elements that are found (or you can name the property "ExtraElements" so that the default ExtraElementsMemberConvention will find it automatically). For example:

```
public MyClass {
    // fields and properties
[BsonExtraElements]
    public BsonDocument CatchAll { get; set; }
}
```

Or using initialization code instead of attributes:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<MyClass>(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.SetExtraElementsMember(cm.GetMemberMap(c => c.CatchAll));
});
```

When a BSON document is deserialized any extra elements found will be stored in the extra elements BsonDocument property. When the class is serialized the extra elements will be serialized also. One thing to note though is that the serialized class will probably not have the elements in exactly the same order as the original document. All extra elements will be serialized together when the extra elements member is serialized.

Polymorphic classes and discriminators

When you have a class hierarchy and will be serializing instances of varying classes to the same collection you need a way to distinguish one from another. The normal way to do so is to write some kind of special value (called a "discriminator") in the document along with the rest of the elements that you can later look at to tell them apart. Since there are potentially many ways you could discriminate between actual types, the default serializer uses conventions for discriminators. The default serializer provides two standard discriminators: ScalarDiscriminatorConvention and HierarchicalDiscriminatorConvention. The default is the HierarchicalDiscriminatorConvention, but it behaves just like the ScalarDiscriminatorConvention until certain options are set to trigger its hierarchical behavior (more on this later).

The default discriminator conventions both use an element named "_t" to store the discriminator value in the BSON document. This element will normally be the second element in the BSON document (right after the "_id"). In the case of the ScalarDiscriminatorConvention the value of "_t" will be a single string. In the case of the HierarchicalDiscriminatorConvention the value of "_t" will be an array of discriminator values, one for each level of the class inheritance tree (again, more on this later).

While you will normally be just fine with the default discriminator convention, you might have to write a custom discriminator convention if you must inter-operate with data written by another driver or object mapper that uses a different convention for its discriminators.

Setting the discriminator value

The default value for the discriminator is the name of the class (without the namespace part). You can specify a different value using attributes:

```
[BsonDiscriminator("myclass")]
public MyClass {
    // fields and properties
}
```

Or using initialization code instead of attributes:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<MyClass>(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.SetDiscriminator("myclass");
});
```

Specifying known types

When deserializing polymorphic classes it is important that the serializer know about all the classes in the hierarchy before deserialization begins. If you ever see an error message about an "Unknown discriminator" it is because the deserializer can't figure out the class for that discriminator. If you are mapping your classes programmatically simply make sure that all classes in the hierarchy have been mapped before beginning deserialization. When using attributes and automapping you will need to inform the serializer about known types (i.e. subclasses) it should create class maps for. Here is an example of how to do this:

```
[BsonKnownTypes(typeof(Cat), typeof(Dog)]
public class Animal {
}

[BsonKnownTypes(typeof(Lion), typeof(Tiger)]
public class Cat : Animal {
}

public class Dog : Animal {
}

public class Lion : Cat {
}

public class Tiger : Cat {
}
```

The BsonKnownTypes attribute lets the serializer know what subclasses it might encounter during deserialization, so when Animal is automapped the serializer will also automap Cat and Dog (and recursively, Lion and Tiger as well).

Or using initialization code instead of attributes:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<Animal>();
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<Cat>();
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<Dog>();
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<Lion>();
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<Tiger>();
```

Scalar and hierarchical discriminators

Normally a discriminator is simply the name of the class (although it could be different if you are using a custom discriminator convention or have explicitly specified a discriminator for a class). So a collection containing a mix of different type of Animal documents might look like:

```
{ _t : "Animal", ... }
{ _t : "Cat", ... }
{ _t : "Dog", ... }
{ _t : "Lion", ... }
{ _t : "Tiger", ... }
```

Sometimes it can be helpful to record a hierarchy of discriminator values, one for each level of the hierarchy. To do this, you must first mark a base class as being the root of a hierarchy, and then the default HierarchicalDiscriminatorConvention will automatically record discriminators as array values instead.

To identify Animal as the root of a hierarchy use the BsonDiscriminator attribute with the RootClass named parameter:

```
[BsonDiscriminator(RootClass = true)]
[BsonKnownTypes(typeof(Cat), typeof(Dog)]
public class Animal {
}

// the rest of the hierarchy as before
```

Or using initialization code instead of attributes:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<Animal>(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.SetIsRootClass(true);
});
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<Cat>();
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<Dog>();
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<Lion>();
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<Tiger>();
```

Now that you have identified Animal as a root class, the discriminator values will look a little bit different:

```
{ _t : "Animal", ... }
{ _t : ["Animal", "Cat"], ... }
{ _t : ["Animal", "Dog"], ... }
{ _t : ["Animal", "Cat", "Lion"], ... }
{ _t : ["Animal", "Cat", "Tiger"], ... }
```

The main reason you might choose to use hierarchical discriminators is because it makes it possibly to query for all instances of any class in the hierarchy. For example, to read all the Cat documents we can write:

```
var query = Query.EQ("_t", "Cat");
var cursor = collection.FindAs<Animal>(query);
foreach (var cat in cursor) {
    // process cat
}
```

This works because of the way MongoDB handles queries against array values.

Customizing serialization

There are several ways you can customize serialization:

1. Supplementing the default serializer
2. Make a class responsible for its own serialization
3. Write a custom serializer
4. Write a custom Id generator
5. Write a custom convention

Supplementing the default serializer

You can register your own serialization provider to supplement the default serializer. Register it like this:

```
IBsonSerializationProvider myProvider;
BsonSerializer.RegisterSerializationProvider(myProvider);
```

You should register your provider as early as possible. Your provider will be called first before the default serializer. You can delegate handling of any types your custom provider isn't prepared to handle to the default serializer by returning null from GetSerializer.

Make a class responsible for its own serialization

One way you can customize how a class is serialized is to make it responsible for its own serialization. You do so by implementing the

IBsonSerializable interface:

```
public class MyClass : IBsonSerializable {
    // implement Deserialize method
// implement Serialize method
}
```

You also must implement the GetDocumentId and SetDocumentId methods. If your class is never used as a root document these methods can just be stubs that throw a NotSupportedException. Otherwise, return true from GetDocumentId if the value passed in has an Id, and set the Id value in SetDocumentId.

There is nothing else you have to do besides implementing this interface. The BSON Library automatically checks whether objects being serialized implement this interface and if so routes calls directly to the classes.

This can be a very efficient way to customize serialization, but it does have the drawback that it pollutes your domain classes with serialization details, so there is also the option of writing a custom serializer as described next.

Write a custom serializer

A custom serializer can handle serialization of your classes without requiring any changes to those classes. This is a big advantage when you either don't want to modify those classes or can't (perhaps because you don't have control over them). You must register your custom serializer so that the BSON Library knows of its existence and can call it when appropriate.

To implement and register a custom serializer you would:

```
// MyClass is the class for which you are writing a custom serializer
public MyClass {
}

// MyClassSerializer is the custom serializer for MyClass
public MyClassSerializer : IBsonSerializer {
    // implement Deserializer
// implement Serialize
}

// register your custom serializer
BsonSerializer.RegisterSerializer(
    typeof(MyClass),
    new MyClassSerializer()
);
```

You also must implement GetDocumentId and SetDocumentId, but these methods can be stubs that do nothing if your class does not have an Id member.

Write a custom Id generator

You can write your own IdGenerator. For example, suppose you wanted to generate integer Employee Ids:

```
public class EmployeeIdGenerator : IIdGenerator {
    // implement GenerateId
// implement IsEmpty
}
```

You can specify that this generator be used for Employee Ids using attributes:

```
public class Employee {
    [BsonId(IdGenerator = typeof(EmployeeIdGenerator)]
    public int Id { get; set; }
    // other fields or properties
}
```

Or using initialization code instead of attributes:

```
BsonClassMap.RegisterClassMap<Employee >(cm => {
    cm.AutoMap();
    cm.IdMember.SetIdGenerator(new EmployeeIdGenerator());
});
```

Alternatively, you can get by without an Id generator at all by just assigning a value to the Id property before calling Insert or Save.

Write a custom convention

Earlier in this tutorial we discussed replacing one or more of the default conventions. You can either replace them with one of the provided alternatives or you can write your own convention. Writing your own convention varies slightly from convention to convention.

As an example we will write a custom convention to find the Id member of a class (the default convention looks for a member named "Id"). Our custom convention will instead consider any public property whose name ends in "Id" to be the Id for the class. We can implement this convention as follows:

```
public class EndsWithIdConvention : IIdMemberConvention {
    public string FindIdMember(Type type) {
        foreach (var property in type.GetProperties()) {
            if (property.Name.EndsWith("Id")) {
                return property.Name;
            }
        }
        return null;
    }
}
```

And we can configure this convention to be used with all of our own classes by writing:

```
var myConventions = new ConventionProfile();
myConventions.SetIdMemberConvention(new EndsWithIdConvention());
BsonClassMap.RegisterConventions(
    myConventions,
    t => t.FullName.StartsWith("MyNamespace.")
);
```

Warning: because GetProperties is not guaranteed to return properties in any particular order this convention as written will behave unpredictably for a class that contains more than one property whose name ends in "Id".

CSharp Driver Tutorial

- C# Driver version v1.1
- Introduction
- Downloading
- Building
  - Dependencies
  - Running unit tests
- Installing
- References and namespaces
- The BSON Library
  - BsonType
  - BsonValue and subclasses
    - BsonType property
    - As[Type] Properties
    - Is[Type] Properties
    - To[Type] conversion methods
    - Static Create methods
      - Implicit conversions
    - BsonMaxKey, BsonMinKey, BsonNull and BsonUndefined
    - ObjectId and BsonObjectId
  - BsonElement
  - BsonDocument
    - BsonDocument constructor
    - Create a new document and call Add and Set methods
    - Create a new document and use the fluent interface Add and Set methods
    - Create a new document and use C#'s collection initializer syntax (recommended)

        - Creating nested BSON documents
        - Add methods
        - Accessing BsonDocument elements
    - BsonArray
        - Constructors
        - Add and AddRange methods
        - Indexer
- The C# Driver
    - Thread safety
    - MongoServer class
        - Connection strings
        - Create method
        - GetDatabase method
        - RequestStart/RequestDone methods
        - Other properties and methods
    - MongoDatabase class
        - GetCollection method
        - Other properties and methods
    - MongoCollection<TDefaultDocument> class
        - Insert<TDocument> method
        - InsertBatch method
        - FindOne and FindOneAs methods
        - Find and FindAs methods
        - Save<TDocument> method
        - Update method
        - FindAndModify method
        - MapReduce method
        - Other properties and methods
    - MongoCursor<TDocument> class
        - Enumerating a cursor
        - Modifying a cursor before enumerating it
        - Modifiable properties of a cursor
        - Other methods
    - SafeMode class

C# Driver version v1.1

This tutorial is for v1.1 of the C# Driver.

Introduction

This tutorial introduces the 10gen supported C# Driver for MongoDB. The C# Driver consists of two libraries: the BSON Library and the C# Driver. The BSON Library can be used independently of the C# Driver if desired. The C# Driver requires the BSON Library.

You may also be interested in the C# Driver Serialization Tutorial. It is a separate tutorial because it covers quite a lot of material.

Downloading

The C# Driver is available in source and binary form. While the BSON Library can be used independently of the C# Driver they are both stored in the same repository.

The source may be downloaded from github.com.

We use msysgit as our Windows git client. It can be downloaded from: http://code.google.com/p/msysgit/.

To clone the repository run the following commands from a git bash shell:

```
$ cd <parentdirectory>
$ git config --global core.autocrlf true
$ git clone git://github.com/mongodb/mongo-csharp-driver.git
$ cd mongo-csharp-driver
$ git config core.autocrlf true
```

You must set the global setting for core.autocrlf to true before cloning the repository. After you clone the repository, we recommend you set the local setting for core.autocrlf to true (as shown above) so that future changes to the global setting for core.autocrlf do not affect this repository. If you then want to change your global setting for core.autocrlf to false run:

```
$ git config --global core.autocrlf false
```

The typical symptom of problems with the setting for core.autocrlf is git reporting that an entire file has been modified (because of differences in the line endings). It is rather tedious to change the setting of core.autocrlf for a repository after it has been created, so it is important to get it right from the start.

You can download a zip file of the source files (without cloning the repository) by clicking on the Downloads button at:

http://github.com/mongodb/mongo-csharp-driver

You can download binaries (in both .msi and .zip formats) from:

http://github.com/mongodb/mongo-csharp-driver/downloads

Building

We are currently building the C# Driver with Visual Studio 2008 and Visual Studio 2010. There are two solution files, one for each version of Visual Studio. The names of the solution files are `CSharpDriver-2008.sln` and `CSharpDriver-2010.sln`. The project files are shared by both solutions.

Dependencies

The unit tests depend on NUnit 2.5.9, which is included in the dependencies folder of the repository. You can build the C# Driver without installing NUnit, but you must install NUnit before running the unit tests (unless you use a different test runner).

Running unit tests

There are three projects containing unit tests:

1. BsonUnitTests
2. DriverUnitTests
3. DriverOnlineUnitTests

The first two do not connect to a MongoDB server. DriverOnlineUnitTests connects to an instance of MongoDB running on the default port on localhost.

An easy way to run the unit tests is to set one of the unit test projects as the startup project and configure the project settings as follows (using BsonUnitTests as an example):

- On the Debug tab:
    1. Set Start Action to Start External Program
    2. Set external program to: `C:\Program Files (x86)\NUnit 2.5.9\bin\net-2.0\nunit.exe`
    3. Set command line aguments to: `BsonUnitTests.csproj /run`
    4. Set working directory to: the directory where BsonUnitTest.csproj is located

The exact location of the nunit.exe program might vary slightly on your machine.

To run the DriverUnitTests or DriverOnlineUnitTests perform the same steps (modified as necessary).

Installing

If you want to install the C# Driver on your machine you can use the setup program (see above for download instructions). The setup program is very simple and just:

1. Copies the DLLs to `C:\Program Files (x86)\MongoDB\CSharpDriver 1.1`
2. Installs the DLLs in the Global Assembly Cache (the GAC)
3. Configures Visual Studio to include the C# Driver DLLs in the .NET tab of the Add Reference dialog

If you downloaded the binaries zip file simply extract the files and place them wherever you want them to be.

Note: if you download the .zip file Windows might require you to "Unblock" the help file. If Windows asks "Do you want to open this file?" when you double click on the CSharpDriverDocs.chm file, clear the check box next to "Always ask before opening this file" before pressing the Open button. Alternatively, you can right click on the CSharpDriverDocs.chm file and select Properties, and then press the Unblock button at the bottom of the General tab. If the Unblock button is not present then the help file does not need to be unblocked.

References and namespaces

To use the C# Driver you must add references to the following DLLs:

1. `MongoDB.Bson.dll`
2. `MongoDB.Driver.dll`

You also will likely want to add the following using statements to your source files:

```
using MongoDB.Bson;
using MongoDB.Driver;
```

You might need to add some of the following using statements if you are using some of the optional parts of the C# Driver:

```
using MongoDB.Bson.IO;
using MongoDB.Bson.Serialization;
using MongoDB.Bson.Serialization.Attributes;
using MongoDB.Bson.Serialization.Conventions;
using MongoDB.Bson.Serialization.IdGenerators;
using MongoDB.Bson.Serialization.Options;
using MongoDB.Bson.Serialization.Serializers;
using MongoDB.Driver.Builders;
using MongoDB.Driver.GridFS;
using MongoDB.Driver.Wrappers;
```

The BSON Library

The C# Driver is built on top of the BSON Library, which handles all the details of the BSON specification, including: I/O, serialization, and an in-memory object model of BSON documents.

The important classes of the BSON object model are: BsonType, BsonValue, BsonElement, BsonDocument and BsonArray.

BsonType

This enumeration is used to specify the type of a BSON value. It is defined as:

```
public enum BsonType {
    Double = 0x01,
    String = 0x02,
    Document = 0x03,
    Array = 0x04,
    Binary = 0x05,
    Undefined = 0x06,
    ObjectId = 0x07,
    Boolean = 0x08,
    DateTime = 0x09,
    Null = 0x0a,
    RegularExpression = 0x0b,
    JavaScript = 0x0d,
    Symbol = 0x0e,
    JavaScriptWithScope = 0x0f,
    Int32 = 0x10,
    Timestamp = 0x11,
    Int64 = 0x12,
    MinKey = 0xff,
    MaxKey = 0x7f
}
```

BsonValue and subclasses

BsonValue is an abstract class that represents a typed BSON value. There is a concrete subclass of BsonValue for each of the values defined by the BsonType enum. There are several ways to obtain an instance of BsonValue:

- Use a public constructor (if available) of a subclass of BsonValue
- Use a static Create method of BsonValue
- Use a static Create method of a subclass of BsonValue
- Use a static property of a subclass of BsonValue
- Use an implicit conversion to BsonValue

The advantage of using the static Create methods is that they can return a pre-created instance for frequently used values. They can also return null (which a constructor cannot) which is useful for handling optional elements when creating BsonDocuments using functional construction. The static properties refer to pre-created instances of frequently used values. Implicit conversions allow you to use primitive .NET values wherever a BsonValue is expected, and the .NET value will automatically be converted to a BsonValue.

BsonValue has the following subclasses:

- `BsonArray`
- `BsonBinaryData`
- `BsonBoolean`
- `BsonDateTime`
- `BsonDocument`
- `BsonDouble`
- `BsonInt32`
- `BsonInt64`
- `BsonJavaScript`
- `BsonJavaScriptWithScope` (a subclass of `BsonJavaScript`)
- `BsonMaxKey`
- `BsonMinKey`
- `BsonNull`
- `BsonObjectId`
- `BsonRegularExpression`
- `BsonString`
- `BsonSymbol`
- `BsonTimestamp`
- `BsonUndefined`

BsonType property

BsonValue has a property called BsonType that you can use to query the actual type of a BsonValue. The following example shows several ways to determine the type of a BsonValue:

```
BsonValue value;
if (value.BsonType == BsonType.Int32) {
    // we know value is an instance of BsonInt32
}
if (value is BsonInt32) {
    // another way to tell that value is a BsonInt32
}
if (value.IsInt32) {
    // the easiest way to tell that value is a BsonInt32
}
```

As[Type] Properties

BsonValue has a number of properties that cast a BsonValue to one of its subclasses or a primitive .NET type:

- `AsBoolean (=> bool)`
- `AsBsonArray`
- `AsBsonBinaryData`
- `AsBsonDateTime`
- `AsBsonDocument`
- `AsBsonJavaScript // also works if BsonType == JavaScriptWithScope`
- `AsBsonJavaScriptWithScope`
- `AsBsonMaxKey`
- `AsBsonMinKey`
- `AsBsonNull`
- `AsBsonRegularExpression`
- `AsBsonSymbol`
- `AsBsonTimestamp`
- `AsBsonUndefined`
- `AsByteArray (=> byte[])`
- `AsDateTime (=> DateTime)`
- `AsDouble (=> double)`
- `AsGuid (=> Guid)`
- `AsInt32 (=> int)`
- `AsInt64 (=> long)`
- `AsNullableBoolean (=> bool?)`
- `AsNullableDateTime (=> DateTime?)`
- `AsNullableDouble (=> double?)`
- `AsNullableGuid (=> Guid?)`
- `AsNullableInt32 (=> int?)`
- `AsNullableInt64 (=> long?)`
- `AsNullableObjectId (=> ObjectId?)`
- `AsObjectId (=> ObjectId)`
- `AsRegex (=> Regex)`
- `AsString (=> string)`

It is important to note that these all are casts, not conversions. They will throw an InvalidCastException if the BsonValue is not of the corresponding type. See also the To[Type] methods which do conversions, and the Is[Type] properties which you can use to query the type of a BsonValue before attempting to use one of the As[Type] properties.

Sample code using these properties:

```
BsonDocument document;
string name = document["name"].AsString;
int age = document["age"].AsInt32;
BsonDocument address = document["address"].AsBsonDocument;
string zip = address["zip"].AsString;
```

Is[Type] Properties

BsonValue has the following boolean properties you can use to test what kind of BsonValue it is:

- `IsBoolean`
- `IsBsonArray`
- `IsBsonBinaryData`
- `IsBsonDateTime`
- `IsBsonDocument`
- `IsBsonJavaScript`
- `IsBsonJavaScriptWithScope`
- `IsBsonMaxKey`
- `IsBsonMinKey`
- `IsBsonNull`
- `IsBsonRegularExpression`
- `IsBsonSymbol`
- `IsBsonTimestamp`
- `IsBsonUndefined`
- `IsDateTime`
- `IsDouble`
- `IsGuid`
- `IsInt32`
- `IsInt64`
- `IsNumeric` (true if type is Double, Int32 or Int64)
- `IsObjectId`
- `IsString`

Sample code:

```
BsonDocument document;
int age = -1;
if (document.Contains["age"] && document["age"].IsInt32) {
    age = document["age"].AsInt32;
}
```

To[Type] conversion methods

The following methods are available to do limited conversions between BsonValue types:

- `ToBoolean`
- `ToDouble`
- `ToInt32`
- `ToInt64`

The `ToBoolean` method never fails. It uses JavaScript's definition of truthiness: false, 0, 0.0, NaN, BsonNull, BsonUndefined and "" are false, and everything else is true (include the string "false").

The `ToBoolean` method is particularly useful when the documents you are processing might have inconsistent ways of recording true/false values:

```
if (employee["ismanager"].ToBoolean()) {
    // we know the employee is a manager
// works with many ways of recording boolean values
}
```

The `ToDouble`, `ToInt32`, and `ToInt64` methods never fail when converting between numeric types, though the value might be truncated if it doesn't fit in the target type. A string can be converted to a numeric type, but an exception will be thrown if the string cannot be parsed as a value of the target type.

Static Create methods

Because BsonValue is an abstract class you cannot create instances of BsonValue (only instances of concrete subclasses). BsonValue has a static `Create` method that takes an argument of type `object` and determines at runtime the actual type of BsonValue to create. Subclasses of BsonValue also have static Create methods tailored to their own needs.

Implicit conversions

Implicit conversions are defined from the following .NET types to BsonValue:

- `bool`
- `byte[]`
- `DateTime`
- `double`
- `Enum`
- `Guid`
- `int`
- `long`
- `ObjectId`
- `Regex`
- `string`

These eliminate the need for almost all calls to BsonValue constructors or Create methods. For example:

```
BsonValue b = true; // b is an instance of BsonBoolean
BsonValue d = 3.14159; // d is an instance of BsonDouble
BsonValue i = 1; // i is an instance of BsonInt32
BsonValue s = "Hello"; // s is an instance of BsonString
```

BsonMaxKey, BsonMinKey, BsonNull and BsonUndefined

These classes are singletons, so only a single instance of each class exists. You refer to these instances using the static Value property of each class:

```
document["status"] = BsonNull.Value;
document["priority"] = BsonMaxKey.Value;
```

Note that C# null and BsonNull.Value are two different things. The latter is an actual C# object that represents a BSON null value (it's a subtle difference, but plays an important role in functional construction).

ObjectId and BsonObjectId

ObjectId is a struct that holds the raw value of a BSON ObjectId. BsonObjectId is a subclass of BsonValue whose Value property is of type ObjectId.

Here are some common ways of creating ObjectId values:

```
var id1 = new ObjectId(); // same as ObjectId.Empty
var id2 = ObjectId.Empty; // all zeroes
var id3 = ObjectId.GenerateNewId(); // generates new unique Id
var id4 = ObjectId.Parse("4dad901291c2949e7a5b6aa8"); // parses a 24 hex digit string
```

Note that the first example behaves differently in C# than in JavaScript. In C# it creates an ObjectId of all zeroes, but in JavaScript it generates a new unique Id. This difference can't be avoided because in C# the default constructor of a value type always initializes the value to all zeros.

BsonElement

A BsonElement is a name/value pair, where the value is a BsonValue. It is used as the building block of BsonDocument, which consists of zero or more elements. You will rarely create BsonElements directly, as they are usually created indirectly as needed. For example:

```
document.Add(new BsonElement("age", 21)); // OK, but next line is shorter
document.Add("age", 21); // creates BsonElement automatically
```

BsonDocument

A BsonDocument is a collection of name/value pairs (represented by BsonElements). It is an in-memory object model of a BSON document. There are three ways to create and populate a BsonDocument:

1. Create a new document and call Add and Set methods
2. Create a new document and use the fluent interface Add and Set methods
3. Create a new document and use C#'s collection initializer syntax (recommended)

BsonDocument constructor

BsonDocument has the following constructors:

- `BsonDocument()`
- `BsonDocument(string name, BsonValue value)`
- `BsonDocument(BsonElement element)`
- `BsonDocument(IDictionary dictionary)`
- `BsonDocument(IDictionary dictionary, IEnumerable<string> keys)`
- `BsonDocument(IDictionary<string, object> dictionary)`
- `BsonDocument(IDictionary<string, object> dictionary, IEnumerable<string> keys)`
- `BsonDocument(IEnumerabe<BsonElement> elements)`
- `BsonDocument(params BsonElement[] elements)`
- `BsonDocument(bool allowDuplicateNames)`

The first two are the ones you are most likely to use. The first creates an empty document, and the second creates a document with one element (in both cases you can of course add more elements).

All the constructors (except the one with allowDuplicateNames) simply call the Add method that takes the same parameters, so refer to the coresponding Add method for details about how the new document is initially populated.

A BsonDocument normally does not allow duplicate names, but if you must allow duplicate names call the constructor with the allowDuplicateNames parameter and pass in true. It is **not** recommended that you allow duplicate names, and this option exists only to allow handling existing BSON documents that might have duplicate names. MongoDB makes no particular guarantees about whether it supports documents with duplicate names, so be cautious about sending any such documents you construct to the server.

Create a new document and call Add and Set methods

This is a traditional step by step method to create and populate a document using multiple C# statements. For example:

```
BsonDocument book = new BsonDocument();
document.Add("author", "Ernest Hemingway");
document.Add("title", "For Whom the Bell Tolls");
```

Create a new document and use the fluent interface Add and Set methods

This is similar to the previous approach but the fluent interface allows you to chain the various calls to Add so that they are all a single C# statement. For example:

```
BsonDocument book = new BsonDocument()
    .Add("author", "Ernest Hemingway")
    .Add("title", "For Whom the Bell Tolls");
```

Create a new document and use C#'s collection initializer syntax (recommended)

This is the recommended way to create and initialize a BsonDocument in one statement. It uses C#'s collection initializer syntax:

```
BsonDocument book = new BsonDocument {
    { "author", "Ernest Hemingway" },
    { "title", "For Whom the Bell Tolls" }
};
```

The compiler translates this into calls to the matching Add method:

```
BsonDocument book = new BsonDocument();
    book.Add("author", "Ernest Hemingway");
    book.Add("title", "For Whom the Bell Tolls");
```

A common mistake is to forget the inner set of braces. This will result in a compilation error. For example:

```
BsonDocument bad = new BsonDocument {
    "author", "Ernest Hemingway"
};
```

is translated by the compiler to:

```
BsonDocument bad = new BsonDocument();
bad.Add("author");
bad.Add("Ernest Hemingway");
```

which results in a compilation error because there is no Add method that takes a single string argument.

Creating nested BSON documents

Nested BSON documents are created by setting the value of an element to a BSON document. For example:

```
BsonDocument nested = new BsonDocument {
    { "name", "John Doe" },
    { "address", new BsonDocument {
        { "street", "123 Main St." },
        { "city", "Centerville" },
        { "state", "PA" },
        { "zip", 12345}
    }}
};
```

This creates a top level document with two elements ("name" and "address"). The value of "address" is a nested BSON document.

Add methods

BsonDocument has the following overloaded Add methods:

- `Add(BsonElement element)`
- `Add(IDictionary dictionary)`
- `Add(IDictionary dictionary, IEnumerable<string> keys)`
- `Add(IDictionary<string, object> dictionary)`
- `Add(IDictionary<string, object> dictionary, IEnumerable<string> keys)`
- `Add(IEnumerable<BsonElement> elements)`
- `Add(string name, BsonValue value)`
- `Add(string name, BsonValue value, bool condition)`

It is important to note that sometimes the Add methods **don't** add a new element. If the value supplied is null (or the condition supplied in the last overload is false) then the element isn't added. This makes it really easy to handle optional elements without having to write any if statements or conditional expressions.

For example:

```
BsonDocument document = new BsonDocument {
    { "name", name },
    { "city", city }, // not added if city is null
{ "dob", dob, dobAvailable } // not added if dobAvailable is false
};
```

is more compact and readable than:

```
BsonDocument document = new BsonDocument();
document.Add("name", name);
if (city != null) {
    document.Add("city", city);
}
if (dobAvailable) {
    document.Add("dob", dob);
}
```

If you want to add a BsonNull if a value is missing you have to say so. A convenient way is to use C#'s null coalescing operator as follows:

```
BsonDocument = new BsonDocument {
    { "city", city ?? BsonConstants.Null }
};
```

The IDictionary overloads initialize a BsonDocument from a dictionary. Each key in the dictionary becames the name of a new element, and each value is mapped to a matching BsonValue and becomes the value of the new element. The overload with the keys parameter lets you select which dictionary entries to load (you might also use the keys parameter to control the order in which the elements are loaded from the dictionary).

Accessing BsonDocument elements

The recommended way to access BsonDocument elements is to use one of the following indexers:

- `BsonValue this[int index]`
- `BsonValue this[string name]`
- `BsonValue this[string name, BsonValue defaultValue]`

Note that the return value of the indexers is BsonValue, not BsonElement. This actually makes BsonDocuments much easier to work with (if you ever need to get the actual BsonElements use GetElement).

We've already seen samples of accessing BsonDocument elements. Here are some more:

```
BsonDocument book;
string author = book["author"].AsString;
DateTime publicationDate = book["publicationDate"].AsDateTime;
int pages = book["pages", -1].AsInt32; // default value is -1
```

BsonArray

This class is used to represent BSON arrays. While arrays happen to be represented externally as BSON documents (with a special naming convention for the elements), the BsonArray class is unrelated to the BsonDocument class because they are used very differently.

Constructors

BsonArray has the following constructors:

- `BsonArray()`
- `BsonArray(IEnumerable<bool> values)`
- `BsonArray(IEnumerable<BsonValue> values)`
- `BsonArray(IEnumerable<DateTime> values)`
- `BsonArray(IEnumerable<double> values)`
- `BsonArray(IEnumerable<int> values)`
- `BsonArray(IEnumerable<long> values)`
- `BsonArray(IEnumerable<object> values)`
- `BsonArray(IEnumerable<ObjectId> values)`
- `BsonArray(IEnumerable<string> values)`

All the constructors with a parameter call the matching Add method. The multiple overloads are needed because C# does not provide automatic conversions from IEnumerable<T> to IEnumerable<object>.

Add and AddRange methods

Bson Array has the following Add methods:

- `BsonArray Add(BsonValue value)`
- `BsonArray AddRange(IEnumerable<bool> values)`

- BsonArray AddRange(IEnumerable<BsonValue> values)
- BsonArray AddRange(IEnumerable<DateTime> values)
- BsonArray AddRange(IEnumerable<double> values)
- BsonArray AddRange(IEnumerable<int> values)
- BsonArray AddRange(IEnumerable<long> values)
- BsonArray AddRange(IEnumerable<object> values)
- BsonArray AddRange(IEnumerable<ObjectId> values)
- BsonArray AddRange(IEnumerable<string> values)

Note that the Add method takes a single parameter. To create and initialize a BsonArray with multiple values use any of the following approaches:

```
// traditional approach
BsonArray a1 = new BsonArray();
a1.Add(1);
a2.Add(2);

// fluent interface
BsonArray a2 = new BsonArray().Add(1).Add(2);

// values argument
int[] values = new int[] { 1, 2 };
BsonArray a3 = new BsonArray(values);

// collection initializer syntax
BsonArray a4 = new BsonArray { 1, 2 };
```

Indexer

Array elements are accessed using an integer index. Like BsonDocument, the type of the elements is BsonValue. For example:

```
BsonArray array = new BsonArray { "Tom", 39 };
string name = array[0].AsString;
int age = array[1].AsInt32;
```

The C# Driver

Up until now we have been focusing on the BSON Library. The remainder of this tutorial focuses on the C# Driver.

Thread safety

Only a few of the C# Driver classes are thread safe. Among them: MongoServer, MongoDatabase, MongoCollection and MongoGridFS. Common classes you will use a lot that are not thread safe include MongoCursor and all the classes from the BSON Library (except BsonSymbolTable which is thread safe). A class is not thread safe unless specifically documented as being thread safe.

All static properties and methods of all classes are thread safe.

MongoServer class

This class serves as the root object for working with a MongoDB server. You will create one instance of this class for each server you connect to. The connections to the server are handled automatically behind the scenes (a connection pool is used to increase efficiency).

When you are connecting to a replica set you will still use only one instance of MongoServer, which represents the replica set as a whole. The driver automatically finds all the members of the replica set and identifies the current primary. MongoServer has several properties you can use to find out more about the current state of the replica set (such as Primary, Secondaries, etc...).

Instances of this class are thread safe.

Connection strings

The easiest way to connect to a MongoDB server is to use a connection string. The standard connection string format is:

```
mongodb://[username:password@]hostname[:port][/[database][?options]]
```

The username and password should only be present if you are using authentication on the MongoDB server. These credentials will be the default credentials for all databases. To authenticate against the admin database append "(admin)" to the username. If you are using different credentials with different databases pass the appropriate credentials to the GetDatabase method.

The port number is optional and defaults to 27017.

To connect to a replica set specify the seed list by providing multiple hostnames (and port numbers if required) separated by commas. For example:

```
mongodb://server1,server2:27017,server2:27018
```

This connection string specifies a seed list consisting of three servers (two of which are on the same machine but on different port numbers).

The C# Driver is able to connect to a replica set even if the seed list is incomplete. It will find the primary server even if it is not in the seed list as long as at least one of the servers in the seed list responds (the response will contain the full replica set and the name of the current primary).

The options part of the connection string is used to set various connection options. For example, to turn SafeMode on by default for all operations, you could use:

```
mongodb://localhost/?safe=true
```

As another example, suppose you wanted to connect directly to a member of a replica set regardless of whether it was the current primary or not (perhaps to monitor its status or to issue read only queries against it). You could use:

```
mongodb://server2/?connect=direct;slaveok=true
```

The full documentation for connection strings can be found at:

http://www.mongodb.org/display/DOCS/Connections

Create method

To obtain an instance of MongoServer use one of the Create methods:

- `MongoServer Create()`
- `MongoServer Create(MongoConnectionStringBuilder builder)`
- `MongoServer Create(MongoServerSettings settings)`
- `MongoServer Create(MongoUrl url)`
- `MongoServer Create(string connectionString)`
- `MongoServer Create(Uri uri)`

For example:

```
string connectionString = "mongodb://localhost";
MongoServer server = MongoServer.Create(connectionString);
```

Create maintains a table of MongoServer instances it has returned before, so if you call Create again with the same parameters you get the same instance back again.

The recommended way to call Create is with a connection string in the MongoDB URL format. MongoConnectionStringBuilder is provided for compatibility with how .NET handles SQL Server connection strings, but we recommend you use the URL format instead.

GetDatabase method

You can navigate from an instance of MongoServer to an instance of MongoDatabase (see next section) using one of the following GetDatabase methods or indexers:

- `MongoDatabase GetDatabase(MongoDatabaseSettings settings)`
- `MongoDatabase GetDatabase(string databaseName)`
- `MongoDatabase GetDatabase(string databaseName, MongoCredentials credentials)`
- `MongoDatabase GetDatabase(string databaseName, MongoCredentials credentials, SafeMode safeMode)`
- `MongoDatabase GetDatabase(string databaseName, SafeMode safeMode)`
- `MongoDatabase this[MongoDatabaseSettings settings]`
- `MongoDatabase this[string databaseName]`
- `MongoDatabase this[string databaseName, MongoCredentials credentials]`
- `MongoDatabase this[string databaseName, MongoCredentials credentials, SafeMode safeMode]`
- `MongoDatabase this[string databaseName, SafeMode safeMode]`

Sample code:

```
MongoServer server = MongoServer.Create(); // connect to localhost
MongoDatabase test = server.GetDatabase("test");
MongoCredentials credentials = new MongoCredentials("username", "password");
MongoDatabase salaries = server.GetDatabase("salaries", credentials);
```

Most of the database settings are inherited from the server object, and the provided overloads of GetDatabase let you override a few of the most commonly used settings. To override other settings, call CreateDatabaseSettings and change any settings you want before calling GetDatabase, like this:

```
var databaseSettings = server.CreateDatabaseSettings("test");
databaseSettings.SlaveOk = true;
var database = server[databaseSettings];
```

GetDatabase maintains a table of MongoDatabase instances it has returned before, so if you call GetDatabase again with the same parameters you get the same instance back again.

RequestStart/RequestDone methods

Sometimes a series of operations needs to be performed on the same connection in order to guarantee correct results. A thread can temporarily reserve a connection from the connection pool by using RequestStart and RequestDone. For example:

```
server.RequestStart(database);
// a series of operations that must be performed on the same connection
server.RequestDone();
```

The database parameter simply indicates some database which you intend to use during this request. This allows the server to pick a connection that is already authenticated for that database (if you are not using authentication then this optimization won't matter to you). You are free to use any other databases as well during the request.

There is actually a slight problem with this example: if an exception is thrown while performing the operations then RequestDone is never called. You could put the call to RequestDone in a finally block, but even easier is to use the C# using statement:

```
using (server.RequestStart(database)) {
    // a series of operations that must be performed on the same connection
}
```

This works because RequestStart returns a helper object that implements IDisposable and calls RequestDone for you.

RequestStart increments a counter (for this thread) and RequestDone decrements the counter. The connection that was reserved is not actually returned to the connection pool until the count reaches zero again. This means that calls to RequestStart/RequestDone can be nested and the right thing will happen.

Other properties and methods

MongoServer has the following properties:

- `AdminDatabase`
- `Arbiters`
- `BuildInfo`
- `IndexCache`
- `Instance` (and `Instances`)
- `MaxServerCount`
- `Passives`
- `Primary`
- `ReplicaSetName`
- `Secondaries`
- `ServerCount`
- `Settings`
- `State`

MongoServer has the following additional methods:

- `Connect`
- `CopyDatabase`
- `DatabaseExists`
- `Disconnect`

- DropDatabase
- FetchDBRef
- FetchDBRefAs
- GetAdminDatabase
- GetDatabaseNames
- GetLastError
- Ping
- Reconnect
- RunAdminCommand
- RunAdminCommandAs
- Shutdown
- UnregisterServer

MongoDatabase class

This class represents a database on a MongoDB server. Normally there will be only one instance of this class per database, unless you are using different settings to access the same database, in which case there will be one instance for each set of settings.

Instances of this class are thread safe.

GetCollection method

This method returns an object representing a collection in a database. When we request a collection object, we also specify the default document type for the collection. For example:

```
MongoDatabase hr = server.GetDatabase("hr");
MongoCollection<Employee> employees =
    hr.GetCollection<Employee>("employees");
```

A collection is not restricted to containing only one kind of document. The default document type simply makes it more convenient to work with that kind of document, but you can always specify a different kind of document when required.

Most of the collection settings are inherited from the database object, and the provided overloads of GetCollection let you override a few of the most commonly used settings. To override other settings, call CreateCollectionSettings and change any settings you want before calling GetCollection , like this:

```
var collectionSettings = database.CreateCollectionSettings<TDocument>("test");
collectionSettings.SlaveOk = true;
var collection = database.GetCollection(collectionSettings);
```

GetCollection maintains a table of instances it has returned before, so if you call GetCollection again with the same parameters you get the same instance back again.

Other properties and methods

MongoDatabase has the following properties:

- CommandCollection
- Credentials
- GridFS
- Name
- Server
- Settings

MongoDatabase has the following additional methods:

- AddUser
- CollectionExists
- CreateCollection
- Drop
- DropCollection
- Eval
- FetchDBRef
- FetchDBRefAs
- FindAllUsers
- FindUser
- GetCollectionNames
- GetCurrentOp
- GetGridFS
- GetSisterDatabase

- GetStats
- RemoveUser
- RenameCollection
- RequestDone
- RequestStart
- RunCommand
- RunCommandAs

MongoCollection<TDefaultDocument> class

This class represents a collection in a MongoDB database. The <TDefaultDocument> type parameter specifies the type of the default document for this collection.

Instances of this class are thread safe.

Insert<TDocument> method

To insert a document in the collection create an object representing the document and call Insert. The object can be an instance of BsonDocument or of any class that can be successfully serialized as a BSON document. For example:

```
MongoCollection<BsonDocument> books =
    database.GetCollection<BsonDocument>("books");
BsonDocument book = new BsonDocument {
    { "author", "Ernest Hemingway" },
    { "title", "For Whom the Bell Tolls" }
};
books.Insert(book);
```

If you have a class called Book the code might look like:

```
MongoCollection<Book> books = database.GetCollection<Book>("books");
Book book = new Book {
    Author = "Ernest Hemingway",
    Title = "For Whom the Bell Tolls"
};
books.Insert(book);
```

InsertBatch method

You can insert more than one document at a time using the InsertBatch method. For example:

```
MongoCollection<BsonDocument> books;
BsonDocument[] batch = {
    new BsonDocument {
        { "author", "Kurt Vonnegut" },
        { "title", "Cat's Cradle" }
    },
    new BsonDocument {
        { "author", "Kurt Vonnegut" },
        { "title", "Slaughterhouse-Five" }
    }
};
books.InsertBatch(batch);
```

When you are inserting multiple documents InsertBatch can be much more efficient than Insert, specially when using SafeMode.

FindOne and FindOneAs methods

To retrieve documents from a collection use one of the various Find methods. FindOne is the simplest. It returns the first document it finds (when there are many documents in a collection you can't be sure which one it will be). For example:

```
MongoCollection<Book> books;
Book book = books.FindOne();
```

If you want to read a document that is not of the <TDefaultDocument> type use the FindOneAs method, which allows you to override the type of the returned document. For example:

```
MongoCollection<Book> books;
BsonDocument document = books.FindOneAs<BsonDocument>();
```

In this case the default document type of the collection is Book, but we are overriding that and specifying that the result be returned as an instance of BsonDocument.

Find and FindAs methods

The Find and FindAs methods take a query that tells the server which documents to return. The query parameter is of type IMongoQuery. IMongoQuery is a marker interface that identifies classes that can be used as queries. The most common ways to construct a query are to either use the Query builder class or to create a QueryDocument yourself (a QueryDocument is a subclass of BsonDocument that also implements IMongoQuery and can therefore be used as a query object). Also, by using the QueryWrapper class the query can be of any type that can be successfully serialized to a BSON document, but it is up to you to make sure that the serialized document represents a valid query object.

One way to query is to create a QueryDocument object yourself:

```
MongoCollection<BsonDocument> books;
var query = new QueryDocument("author", "Kurt Vonnegut");
foreach (BsonDocument book in books.Find(query)) {
    // do something with book
}
```

Another way to query is to use the Query Builder (recommended):

```
MongoCollection<BsonDocument> books;
var query = Query.EQ("author", "Kurt Vonnegut");
foreach (BsonDocument book in books.Find(query)) {
    // do something with book
}
```

Yet another way to query is to use an anonymous class as the query, but in this case we must wrap the anonymous object:

```
MongoCollection<BsonDocument> books;
var query = Query.Wrap(new { author = "Kurt Vonnegut" });
foreach (BsonDocument book in books.Find(query)) {
    // do something with book
}
```

If you want to read a document of a type that is not the default document type use the FindAs method instead:

```
MongoCollection<BsonDocument> books;
var query = Query.EQ("author", "Kurt Vonnegut");
foreach (Book book in books.FindAs<Book>(query)) {
    // do something with book
}
```

Save<TDocument> method

The Save method is a combination of Insert and Update. If the Id member of the document has a value, then it is assumed to be an existing document and Save calls Update on the document (setting the Upsert flag just in case it actually is a new document after all). Otherwise it is assumed to be a new document and Save calls Insert after first assigning a newly generated unique value to the Id member.

For example, you could correct an error in the title of a book using:

```
MongoCollection<BsonDocument> books;
var query = Query.And(
    Query.EQ("author", "Kurt Vonnegut"),
    Query.EQ("title", "Cats Craddle")
);
BsonDocument book = books.FindOne(query);
if (book != null) {
    book["title"] = "Cat's Cradle";
    books.Save(book);
}
```

The TDocument class must have an Id member to be used with the Save method. If it does not you can call Insert instead of Save to insert the document.

Update method

The Update method is used to update existing documents. The code sample shown for the Save method could also have been written as:

```
MongoCollection<BsonDocument> books;
var query = new QueryDocument {
    { "author", "Kurt Vonnegut" },
    { "title", "Cats Craddle" }
};
var update = new UpdateDocument {
    { "$set", new BsonDocument("title", "Cat's Cradle") }
};
BsonDocument updatedBook = books.Update(query, update);
```

or using Query and Update builders:

```
MongoCollection<BsonDocument> books;
var query = Query.And(
    Query.EQ("author", "Kurt Vonnegut"),
    Query.EQ("title", "Cats Craddle")
);
var update = Update.Set("title", "Cat's Cradle");
BsonDocument updatedBook = books.Update(query, update);
```

FindAndModify method

Use FindAndModify when you want to find a matching document and update it in one atomic operation. FindAndModify always updates a single document, and you can combine a query that matches multiple documents with a sort criteria that will determine exactly which matching document is updated. In addition, FindAndModify will return the matching document (either as it was before the update or after) and if you wish you can specify which fields of the matching document to return.

Using the example documented here:

http://www.mongodb.org/display/DOCS/findAndModify+Command

the call to FindAndModify would be written in C# as:

```
var jobs = database.GetCollection("jobs");
var query = Query.And(
    Query.EQ("inprogress", false),
    Query.EQ("name", "Biz report")
);
var sortBy = SortBy.Descending("priority");
var update = Update.
    .Set("inprogress", true)
    .Set("started", DateTime.UtcNow);
var result = jobs.FindAndModify(
    query,
    sortBy,
    update,
    true // return new document
);
var chosenJob = result.ModifiedDocument;
```

MapReduce method

Map/Reduce is a way of a aggregating data from a collection. Every document in a collection (or some subset if an optional query is provided) is sent to the map function, which calls emit to produce intermediate values. The intermediate values are then sent to the reduce function to be aggregated.

This example is taken from page 87 of MongoDB: The Definitive Guide, by Kristina Chodorow and Michael Dirolf. It counts how many times each key is found in a collection.

```
var map =
    "function() {" +
    "    for (var key in this) {" +
    "        emit(key, { count : 1 });" +
    "    }" +
    "}";

var reduce =
    "function(key, emits) {" +
    "    total = 0;" +
    "    for (var i in emits) {" +
    "        total += emits[i].count;" +
    "    }" +
    "    return { count : total };" +
    "}";

var mr = collection.MapReduce(map, reduce);
foreach (var document in mr.GetResults()) {
    Console.WriteLine(document.ToJson());
}
```

Other properties and methods

MongoCollection has the following properties:

- `Database`
- `FullName`
- `Name`
- `Settings`

MongoCollection has the following additional methods:

- `Count`
- `CreateIndex`
- `Distinct`
- `Drop`
- `DropAllIndexes`
- `DropIndex`
- `DropIndexByName`
- `EnsureIndex`
- `Exists`

- Find
- FindAll
- FindAllAs
- FindAndModify
- FindAndRemove
- FindAs
- FindOne
- FindOneAs
- FindOneById
- FindOneByIdAs
- GeoNear
- GeoNearAs
- GetIndexes
- GetStats
- GetTotalDataSize
- GetTotalStorageSize
- Group
- IndexExists
- IndexExistsByName
- IsCapped
- MapReduce
- ReIndex
- Remove
- RemoveAll
- ResetIndexCache
- Save
- Validate

MongoCursor<TDocument> class

The Find method (and its variations) don't immediately return the actual results of a query. Instead they return a cursor that can be enumerated to retrieve the results of the query. The query isn't actually sent to the server until we attempt to retrieve the first result (technically, when MoveNext is called for the first time on the enumerator returned by GetEnumerator). This means that we can control the results of the query in interesting ways by modifying the cursor before fetching the results.

Instances of MongoCursor are not thread safe, at least not until they are frozen (see below). Once they are frozen they are thread safe because they are read-only (in particular, GetEnumerator is thread safe so the same cursor *could* be used by multiple threads).

Enumerating a cursor

The most convenient way to consume the results of a query is to use the C# foreach statement. For example:

```
var query = Query.EQ("author", "Ernest Hemingway");
var cursor = books.Find(query);
foreach (var book in cursor) {
    // do something with book
}
```

You can also use any of the extensions methods defined by LINQ for IEnumerable<T> to enumerate a cursor:

```
var query = Query.EQ("author", "Ernest Hemingway");
var cursor = books.Find(query);
var firstBook = cursor.FirstOrDefault();
var lastBook = cursor.LastOrDefault();
```

Note that in the above example the query is actually sent to the server twice (once when FirstOrDefault is called and again when LastOrDefault is called).

It is important that a cursor cleanly release any resources it holds. The key to guaranteeing this is to make sure the Dispose method of the enumerator is called. The foreach statement and the LINQ extension methods all guarantee that Dispose will be called. Only if you enumerate the cursor manually are you responsible for calling Dispose.

Modifying a cursor before enumerating it

A cursor has several properties that can be modified before it is enumerated to control the results returned. There are two ways to modify a cursor:

1. modify the properties directly
2. use the fluent interface to set the properties

For example, if we want to skip the first 100 results and limit the results to the next 10, we could write:

```
var query = Query.EQ("status", "pending");
var cursor = tasks.Find(query);
cursor.Skip = 100;
cursor.Limit = 10;
foreach (var task in cursor) {
    // do something with task
}
```

or using the fluent interface:

```
var query = Query.EQ("status", "pending");
foreach (var task in tasks.Find(query).SetSkip(100).SetLimit(10)) {
    // do something with task
}
```

The fluent interface works well when you are setting only a few values. When setting more than a few you might prefer to use the properties approach.

Once you begin enumerating a cursor it becomes "frozen" and you can no longer change any of its properties. So you must set all the properties before you start enumerating it.

Modifiable properties of a cursor

The following properties of a cursor are modifiable:

- `BatchSize` (`SetBatchSize`)
- `Fields` (`SetFields`)
- `Flags` (`SetFlags`)
- `Limit` (`SetLimit`)
- `Options` (`SetOption` and `SetOptions`)
- `SerializationOptions` (`SetSerializationOptions`)
- `Skip` (`SetSkip`)
- `SlaveOk` (`SetSlaveOk`)

The method names in parenthesis are the corresponding fluent interface methods.

The fluent interface also supports additional options that aren't used very frequently and are not exposed as properties:

- `SetHint`
- `SetMax`
- `SetMaxScan`
- `SetMin`
- `SetShowDiskLoc`
- `SetSnapshot`
- `SetSortOrder`

Other methods

MongoCursor has a few methods used for some special purpose operations:

- `Clone`
- `Count`
- `Explain`
- `Size`

SafeMode class

There are various level of SafeMode, and this class is used to represent those levels. SafeMode applies only to operations that don't already return a value (so it doesn't apply to queries or commands). It applies to the following MongoCollection methods: Insert, Remove, Save and Update.

The gist of SafeMode is that after an Insert, Remove, Save or Update message is sent to the server it is followed by a GetLastError command so the driver can verify that the operation succeeded. In addition, when using replica sets it is possible to verify that the information has been replicated to some minimum number of secondary servers.

The SafeMode class has static properties and methods that let you easily access common modes or create your own:

- `SafeMode.False`
- `SafeMode.True`
- `SafeMode.W2`
- `SafeMode.Create(int w)`

The value for "w" indicates how many replica set members must have completed the write before returning, and this includes the primary, so typically you want w >= 2.

CSharp getLastError and SafeMode

In the C# driver SafeMode can be set at different levels.

1. At the server level via the connection string:

```
var connectionString = "mongodb://hostname/?safe=true;w=2;wtimeout=30s";
var server = MongoServer.Create(connectionString);
```

2. At the database level:

```
var safemode = SafeMode.W2; // default timeout
// or
var safeMode = SafeMode.Create(2, TimeSpan.FromSeconds(30)); // 30 second timeout
var database = server.GetDatabase("test", safeMode);
```

3. At the collection level:

```
var collection = database.GetCollection("test", safeMode);
```

4. At the operation level:

```
var safeModeResult = collection.Insert(document, safeMode);
```

Each level inherits the setting from the level above it unless overridden.

getLastError is called automatically when any SafeMode other than false is used. An exception is thrown if there was an error, otherwise the SafeModeResult has the information returned by GetLastError.

See Also

- Connections
- getLastError Command
- Replica Set Design Concepts

Erlang Language Center

Driver

- Download
- API Docs
- Design of the Erlang Driver post on blog.mongodb.org

Tools and Libraries

- Talend Adapters

Driver Syntax Table

The wiki generally gives examples in JavaScript, so this chart can be used to convert those examples to any language.

JavaScript	Python	PHP	Ruby
[]	[]	`array()`	[]
{}	{}	`new stdClass`	{}
{ x : 1 }	{"x": 1}	`array('x' => 1)`	{'x' => 1}
`connect("www.example.net")`	`Connection("www.example.net")`	`new Mongo("www.example.net")`	`Connection.new("www.exa`
`cursor.next()`	`cursor.next()`	`$cursor->getNext()`	`cursor.next_document()`
`cursor.hasNext()`	*	`$cursor->hasNext()`	`cursor.has_next?`
`collection.findOne()`	`collection.find_one()`	`$collection->findOne()`	`collection.find_one()`
`db.eval()`	`db.eval()`	`$db->execute()`	`db.eval()`

* does not exist in that language

Javascript Language Center

MongoDB can be

- Used by clients written in Javascript;
- Uses Javascript internally server-side for certain options such as map/reduce;
- Has a shell that is based on Javascript for administrative purposes.

node.JS and V8

See the node.JS page.

SpiderMonkey

The MongoDB shell extends SpiderMonkey. See the MongoDB shell documentation.

Narwhal

- http://github.com/sergi/narwhal-mongodb

MongoDB Server-Side Javascript

Javascript may be executed in the MongoDB server processes for various functions such as query enhancement and map/reduce processing. See Server-side Code Execution.

node.JS

Node.js is used to write event-driven, scalable network programs in server-side JavaScript. It is similar in purpose to Twisted, EventMachine, etc. It runs on Google's V8.

Web Frameworks

- ExpressJS Mature web framework with MongoDB session support.
- Connect Connect is a middleware framework for node, shipping with over 11 bundled middleware and a rich choice of 3rd-party middleware.

3rd Party ORM/ODM

- Mongoskin - The future layer for node-mongodb-native.
- Mongoose - Asynchronous JavaScript Driver with optional support for Modeling.
- Mongolia - Lightweight MongoDB ORM/Driver Wrapper.

3rd Party Drivers

- node-mongodb-native - Native async Node interface to MongoDB.
- node-mongodb - Async Node interface to MongoDB (written in C)
- mongo-v8-driver - V8 MongoDB driver (experimental, written in C++).
- Mongolian DeadBeef - A node.js driver that attempts to closely approximate the MongoDB shell.

Presentations

- An introduction to the mongo node.js driver - June 2011
- Using MongoDB with node.js - June 2011
- Node.js & MongoDB - Webinar June 2011
- A beautiful marriage: MongoDB and node.js - MongoNYC June 2011
- Rapid Realtime App Development with Node.JS & MongoDB - MongoSF May 2011

JVM Languages

moved to Java Language Center

Python Language Center

> **Redirection Notice**
> This page should redirect to http://api.mongodb.org/python.

PHP Language Center

Using MongoDB in PHP

To access MongoDB from PHP you will need:

- The MongoDB server running - the server is the "mongo**d**" file, not the "mongo" client (note the "d" at the end)
- The MongoDB PHP driver installed

Installing the PHP Driver

*NIX

Run:

```
sudo pecl install mongo
```

Open your php.ini file and add to it:

```
extension=mongo.so
```

It is recommended to add this to the section with the other "extensions", but it will work from anywhere within the php.ini file.

Restart your web server (Apache, nginx, etc.) for the change to take effect.

See the installation docs for configuration information and OS-specific installation instructions.

Note

`pecl` requires that pear be installed. For those using apt-get, you may need to run the following:

```
sudo apt-get install php5-dev php5-cli php-pear
```

Windows

- Download the correct driver for your environment from http://github.com/mongodb/mongo-php-driver/downloads
    - VC6 is for Apache (VC9 is for IIS)
    - Thread safe is for running PHP as an Apache module (typical installation), non-thread safe is for CGI
- Unzip and add the php_mongo.dll file to your PHP extensions directory (usually the "ext" folder in your PHP installation.)
- Add to your php.ini:

```
extension=php_mongo.dll
```

- Restart your web server (Apache, IIS, etc.) for the change to take effect

For more information, see the Windows section of the installation docs.

Using the PHP Driver

To get started, see the Tutorial. Also check out the API Documentation.

See Also

- PHP Libraries, Frameworks, and Tools for working with Drupal, Cake, Symfony, and more from MongoDB.
- Admin UIs
- If you are using Eclipse, you can get Content Assist working by downloading the mongo_version.zip package.

Installing the PHP Driver

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to http://www.php.net/manual/en/mongo.installation.php.

PHP Libraries, Frameworks, and Tools

- CakePHP
- Codeigniter
- Doctrine
- Drupal
- Fat-Free Framework
- Kohana Framework
- Lithium
- Memcached
- Symfony 2
- Vork
- Yii
- Zend Framework
- Stand-Alone Tools
    - ActiveMongo
    - MapReduce API
    - Mongofilesystem
    - Mondongo
    - MongoDb PHP ODM
    - Mongodloid
    - MongoQueue
    - MongoRecord
    - Morph
    - simplemongophp
    - Uniform Server 6-Carbo with MongoDB and phpMoAdmin

The PHP community has created a huge number of libraries to make working with MongoDB easier and integrate it with existing frameworks.

CakePHP

- MongoDB datasource for CakePHP. There's also an introductory blog post on using it with Mongo.

Codeigniter

- MongoDB-Codeigniter-Driver

Doctrine

ODM (Object Document Mapper) is an experimental Doctrine MongoDB object mapper. The Doctrine\ODM\Mongo namespace is an experimental project for a PHP 5.3 MongoDB Object Mapper. It allows you to easily write PHP 5 classes and map them to collections in MongoDB. You just work with your objects like normal and Doctrine will transparently persist them to Mongo.

This project implements the same "style" of the Doctrine 2 ORM project interface so it will look very familiar to you and it has lots of the same features and implementations.

- Documentation - API, Reference, and Cookbook
- Official blog post
- Screencast
- Blog post on using it with Symfony
- Bug tracker

Drupal

- MongoDB Integration - Views (query builder) backend, a watchdog implementation (logging), and field storage.

Fat-Free Framework

Fat-Free is a powerful yet lightweight PHP 5.3+ Web development framework designed to help you build dynamic and robust applications - fast!

Kohana Framework

- Mango at github
  An ActiveRecord-like library for PHP, for the Kohana PHP Framework.
  See also PHP Language Center#MongoDb PHP ODM further down.

Lithium

Lithium supports Mongo out-of-the-box.

- Tutorial on creating a blog backend.

Memcached

- MongoNode
  PHP script that replicates MongoDB objects to Memcached.

Symfony 2

- Symfony 2 Logger
  A centralized logger for Symfony applications. See the blog post.

- sfMongoSessionStorage - manages session storage via MongoDB with symfony.

- sfStoragePerformancePlugin - This plugin contains some extra storage engines (MongoDB and Memcached) that are currently missing from the Symfony (>= 1.2) core.

Vork

Vork, the high-performance enterprise framework for PHP natively supports MongoDB as either a primary datasource or used in conjunction with an RDBMS. Designed for scalability & Green-IT, Vork serves more traffic with fewer servers and can be configured to operate without any disk-IO.

Vork provides a full MVC stack that outputs semantically-correct XHTML 1.1, complies with Section 508 Accessibility guidelines & Zend-Framework coding-standards, has SEO-friendly URLs, employs CSS-reset for cross-browser display consistency and is written in well-documented object-oriented E_STRICT PHP5 code.

An extensive set of tools are built into Vork for ecommerce (cc-processing, SSL, PayPal, AdSense, shipment tracking, QR-codes), Google Maps, translation & internationalization, Wiki, Amazon Web Services, Social-Networking (Twitter, Meetup, ShareThis, YouTube, Flickr) and much more.

Yii

- YiiMongoDbSuite is an almost complete, ActiveRecord like support for MongoDB in Yii It originally started as a fork of MongoRecord extension written by tyohan, to fix some major bugs, and add full featured suite for MongoDB developers.

Zend Framework

- Shanty Mongo is a prototype mongodb adapter for the Zend Framework. It's intention is to make working with mongodb documents as natural and as simple as possible. In particular allowing embeded documents to also have custom document classes.

- ZF Cache Backend
  A ZF Cache Backend for MongoDB. It support tags and auto-cleaning.

- There is a Zend_Nosql_Mongo component proposal.

Stand-Alone Tools

ActiveMongo

ActiveMongo is a really simple ActiveRecord for MongoDB in PHP.

There's a nice introduction to get you started at http://crodas.org/activemongo.php.

MapReduce API

A MapReduce abstraction layer. See the blog post.

- MongoDB-MapReduce-PHP at github

Mongofilesystem

Filesystem based on MongoDB GridFS. Mongofilesystem will help you use MongoDB GridFS like a typical filesystem, using the familiar PHP commands.

Mondongo

Mondongo is a simple, poweful and ultrafast Object Document Mapper (ODM) for PHP and MongoDB.

Mondongo is to the ODM what Mongo is to databases

- Simple: Mondongo is developed in a simple way. This makes it very easy to learn, use, and avoid bugs.
- Powerful: Mondongo is very flexible thanks to Mondator, so you'll be able to use it to develop any type of application.
- Ultrafast: Mondongo has been designed to be extremely light in memory consumption and processing cost.

MongoDb PHP ODM

MongoDb PHP ODM is a simple object wrapper for the Mongo PHP driver classes which makes using Mongo in your PHP application more like ORM, but without the suck. It is designed for use with Kohana 3 but will also integrate easily with any PHP application with almost no additional effort.

Mongodloid

A nice library on top of the PHP driver that allows you to make more natural queries (`$query->query('a == 13 AND b >= 8 && c % 3 == 4');`), abstracts away annoying $-syntax, and provides getters and setters.

- Project Page
- Downloads
- Documentation

MongoQueue

MongoQueue is a PHP queue that allows for moving tasks and jobs into an asynchronous process for completion in the background. The queue is managed by Mongo

MongoQueue is an extraction from online classifieds site Oodle. Oodle uses MongoQueue to background common tasks in order to keep page response times low.

MongoRecord

MongoRecord is a PHP Mongo ORM layer built on top of the PHP Mongo PECL extension

MongoRecord is an extraction from online classifieds site Oodle. Oodle’s requirements for a manageable, easy to understand interface for dealing with the super-scalable Mongo datastore was the primary reason for MongoRecord. It was developed to use with PHP applications looking to add Mongo’s scaling capabilities while dealing with a nice abstraction layer.

Morph

A high level PHP library for MongoDB. Morph comprises a suite of objects and object primitives that are designed to make working with MongoDB

in PHP a breeze.

- Morph at github

simplemongophp

Very simple layer for using data objects see blog post

- simplemongophp at github

Uniform Server 6-Carbo with MongoDB and phpMoAdmin

The Uniform Server is a lightweight WAMP server solution for running a web server under Windows without having anything to install; just unpack and run it. Uniform Server 6-Carbo includes the latest versions of Apache2, Perl5, PHP5, MySQL5 and phpMyAdmin. The Uniform Server MongoDB plugin adds the MongoDB server, phpMoAdmin browser administration interface, the MongoDB PHP driver and a Windows interface to start and stop both Apache and MongoDB servers. From this interface you can also start either the Mongo-client or phpMoAdmin to administer MongoDB databases.

- Uniform Server 6-Carbo and MongoDB plugin at SourceForge
- Uniform Server web site

PHP - Storing Files and Big Data

> **Redirection Notice**
> This page should redirect to http://www.php.net/manual/en/class.mongogridfs.php.

Troubleshooting the PHP Driver

> **Redirection Notice**
> This page should redirect to http://www.php.net/manual/en/mongo.trouble.php.

Ruby Language Center

This is an overview of the available tools and suggested practices for using Ruby with MongoDB. Those wishing to skip to more detailed discussion should check out the Ruby Driver Tutorial, Getting started with Rails or Rails 3, and MongoDB Data Modeling and Rails. There are also a number of good external resources worth checking out.

- Ruby Driver
  - Installing / Upgrading
  - BSON
- Object Mappers
- Notable Projects
- Presentations

Ruby Driver

> Install the bson_ext gem for any performance-critical applications.

The MongoDB Ruby driver is the 10gen-supported driver for MongoDB. It's written in pure Ruby, with a recommended C extension for speed. The driver is optimized for simplicity. It can be used on its own, but it also serves as the basis of several object mapping libraries, such as MongoMapper.

- Tutorial
- Ruby Driver README
- API Documentation
- Source Code

Installing / Upgrading

The ruby driver is hosted at Rubygems.org. Before installing the driver, make sure you're using the latest version of rubygems (currently 1.5.2 as

of Feb 2011):

```
$ gem update --system
```

Then install the gems:

```
$ gem install mongo
```

To stay on the bleeding edge, check out the latest source from github:

```
$ git clone git://github.com/mongodb/mongo-ruby-driver.git
$ cd mongo-ruby-driver/
```

Then, install the driver from there:

```
$ rake gem:install
```

BSON

In versions of the Ruby driver prior to 0.20, the code for serializing to BSON existed in the mongo gem. Now, all BSON serialization is handled by the required bson gem.

```
gem install bson
```

For significantly improved performance, install the bson_ext gem. Using compiled C instead of Ruby, this gem speeds up BSON serialization greatly.

```
gem install bson_ext
```

If you're running on Windows, you'll need the Ruby DevKit installed in order to compile the C extensions.

As long it's in Ruby's load path, `bson_ext` will be loaded automatically when you require `bson`.

Note that beginning with version 0.20, the mongo_ext gem is no longer used.

To learn more about the Ruby driver, see the Ruby Tutorial.

Object Mappers

Because MongoDB is so easy to use, the basic Ruby driver can be the best solution for many applications.

But if you need validations, associations, and other high-level data modeling functions then an Object Document Mapper may be needed.

In the context of a Rails application these provide functionality equivalent to, but distinct from, ActiveRecord. Because Mongo is a document-based database, these mappers are called Object Document Mappers (ODM) as opposed to Object Relational Mappers (ORM).

Several mappers are available:

- MongoMapper from John Nunemaker
- Mongoid from Durran Jordan
- Mongomatic from Ben Myles
- MongoODM from Carlos Paramio
- MongoModel from Sam Pohlenz

All the mappers build on top of the basic Ruby driver and so some knowledge of that is useful, especially if you work with a custom Mongo configuration.

Notable Projects

Tools for working with MongoDB in Ruby are being developed daily. A partial list can be found in the Projects and Libraries section of our external resources page.

If you're working on a project that you'd like to have included, let us know.

Presentations

> *MongoDB & Ruby Presentations*

Ruby Tutorial

> **Redirection Notice**
> This page should redirect to http://api.mongodb.org/ruby/current/file.TUTORIAL.html.

This tutorial gives many common examples of using MongoDB with the Ruby driver. If you're looking for information on data modeling, see MongoDB Data Modeling and Rails. Links to the various object mappers are listed on our object mappers page.

Interested in GridFS? Checkout GridFS in Ruby.

As always, the latest source for the Ruby driver can be found on github.

- Installation
- A Quick Tour
  - Using the RubyGem
  - Making a Connection
  - Listing All Databases
  - Dropping a Database
  - Authentication (Optional)
  - Getting a List Of Collections
  - Getting a Collection
  - Inserting a Document
  - Updating a Document
  - Finding the First Document In a Collection using `find_one()`
  - Adding Multiple Documents
  - Counting Documents in a Collection
  - Using a Cursor to get all of the Documents
  - Getting a Single Document with a Query
  - Getting a Set of Documents With a Query
  - Selecting a subset of fields for a query
  - Querying with Regular Expressions
  - Creating An Index
  - Creating and querying on a geospatial index
  - Getting a List of Indexes on a Collection
  - Database Administration
- See Also

Installation

The mongo-ruby-driver gem is served through Rubygems.org. To install, make sure you have the latest version of rubygems.

```
gem update --system
```

Next, install the mongo rubygem:

```
gem install mongo
```

The required `bson` gem will be installed automatically.

For optimum performance, install the bson_ext gem:

```
  gem install bson_ext
```

After installing, you may want to look at the examples directory included in the source distribution. These examples walk through some of the basics of using the Ruby driver.

The full API documentation can be viewed here.

A Quick Tour

Using the RubyGem

All of the code here assumes that you have already executed the following Ruby code:

```
require 'rubygems'  # not necessary for Ruby 1.9
require 'mongo'
```

Making a Connection

An Mongo::Connection instance represents a connection to MongoDB. You use a Connection instance to obtain an Mongo:DB instance, which represents a named database. The database doesn't have to exist - if it doesn't, MongoDB will create it for you.

You can optionally specify the MongoDB server address and port when connecting. The following example shows three ways to connect to the database "mydb" on the local machine:

```
db = Mongo::Connection.new.db("mydb")
db = Mongo::Connection.new("localhost").db("mydb")
db = Mongo::Connection.new("localhost", 27017).db("mydb")
```

At this point, the `db` object will be a connection to a MongoDB server for the specified database. Each DB instance uses a separate socket connection to the server.

If you're trying to connect to a replica set, see Replica Sets in Ruby.

Listing All Databases

```
connection = Mongo::Connection.new # (optional host/port args)
connection.database_names.each { |name| puts name }
connection.database_info.each { |info| puts info.inspect}
```

Dropping a Database

```
connection.drop_database('database_name')
```

Authentication (Optional)

MongoDB can be run in a secure mode where access to databases is controlled through name and password authentication. When run in this mode, any client application must provide a name and password before doing any operations. In the Ruby driver, you simply do the following with the connected mongo object:

```
auth = db.authenticate(my_user_name, my_password)
```

If the name and password are valid for the database, `auth` will be `true`. Otherwise, it will be `false`. You should look at the MongoDB log for further information if available.

Getting a List Of Collections

Each database has zero or more collections. You can retrieve a list of them from the db (and print out any that are there):

```
db.collection_names.each { |name| puts name }
```

and assuming that there are two collections, name and address, in the database, you would see

```
name
address
```

as the output.

Getting a Collection

You can get a collection to use using the `collection` method:

```
coll = db.collection("testCollection")
```

This is aliased to the [] method:

```
coll = db["testCollection"]
```

Once you have this collection object, you can now do things like insert data, query for data, etc.

Inserting a Document

Once you have the collection object, you can insert documents into the collection. For example, lets make a little document that in JSON would be represented as

```
{
   "name" : "MongoDB",
   "type" : "database",
   "count" : 1,
   "info" : {
               x : 203,
               y : 102
             }
}
```

Notice that the above has an "inner" document embedded within it. To do this, we can use a Hash or the driver's OrderedHash (which preserves key order) to create the document (including the inner document), and then just simply insert it into the collection using the `insert()` method.

```
doc = {"name" => "MongoDB", "type" => "database", "count" => 1,
       "info" => {"x" => 203, "y" => '102'}}
coll.insert(doc)
```

Updating a Document

We can update the previous document using the `update` method. There are a couple ways to update a document. We can rewrite it:

```
doc["name"] = "MongoDB Ruby"
coll.update({"_id" => doc["_id"]}, doc)
```

Or we can use an atomic operator to change a single value:

```
coll.update({"_id" => doc["_id"]}, {"$set" => {"name" => "MongoDB Ruby"}})
```

Read more about updating documents.

Finding the First Document In a Collection using `find_one()`

To show that the document we inserted in the previous step is there, we can do a simple `find_one()` operation to get the first document in the collection. This method returns a single document (rather than the `Cursor` that the `find()` operation returns).

```
my_doc = coll.find_one()
puts my_doc.inspect
```

and you should see:

```
{"_id"=>#<BSON::ObjectID:0x118576c ...>, "name"=>"MongoDB", "info"=>{"x"=>203, "y"=>102}, "type"=>
"database", "count"=>1}
```

Note the `_id` element has been added automatically by MongoDB to your document.

Adding Multiple Documents

To demonstrate some more interesting queries, let's add multiple simple documents to the collection. These documents will have the following form:

```
{
   "i" : value
}
```

Here's how to insert them:

```
100.times { |i| coll.insert("i" => i) }
```

Notice that we can insert documents of different "shapes" into the same collection. These records are in the same collection as the complex record we inserted above. This aspect is what we mean when we say that MongoDB is "schema-free".

Counting Documents in a Collection

Now that we've inserted 101 documents (the 100 we did in the loop, plus the first one), we can check to see if we have them all using the `count()` method.

```
puts coll.count()
```

and it should print `101`.

Using a Cursor to get all of the Documents

To get all the documents from the collection, we use the `find()` method. `find()` returns a `Cursor` object, which allows us to iterate over the set of documents that matches our query. The Ruby driver's Cursor implemented Enumerable, which allows us to use `Enumerable#each`, {{Enumerable#map}, etc. For instance:

```
coll.find().each { |row| puts row.inspect }
```

and that should print all 101 documents in the collection.

Getting a Single Document with a Query

We can create a *query* hash to pass to the `find()` method to get a subset of the documents in our collection. For example, if we wanted to find the document for which the value of the "i" field is 71, we would do the following ;

```
coll.find("i" => 71).each { |row| puts row.inspect }
```

and it should just print just one document:

```
{"_id"=>#<BSON::ObjectID:0x117de90 ...>, "i"=>71}
```

Getting a Set of Documents With a Query

We can use the query to get a set of documents from our collection. For example, if we wanted to get all documents where "i" > 50, we could write:

```
coll.find("i" => {"$gt" => 50}).each { |row| puts row }
```

which should print the documents where i > 50. We could also get a range, say 20 < i <= 30:

```
coll.find("i" => {"$gt" => 20, "$lte" => 30}).each { |row| puts row }
```

Selecting a subset of fields for a query

Use the `:fields` option. If you just want fields "a" and "b":

```
coll.find("i" => {"$gt" => 50}, :fields => ["a", "b"]).each { |row| puts row }
```

Querying with Regular Expressions

Regular expressions can be used to query MongoDB. To find all names that begin with 'a':

```
coll.find({"name" => /^a/})
```

You can also construct a regular expression dynamically. To match a given search string:

```
  search_string = params['search']

  # Constructor syntax
  coll.find({"name" => Regexp.new(search_string)})

  # Literal syntax
  coll.find({"name" => /#{search_string}/})
```

Although MongoDB isn't vulnerable to anything like SQL-injection, it may be worth checking the search string for anything malicious.

Creating An Index

MongoDB supports indexes, and they are very easy to add on a collection. To create an index, you specify an index name and an array of field names to be indexed, or a single field name. The following creates an ascending index on the "i" field:

```
# create_index assumes ascending order; see method docs
# for details
coll.create_index("i")
```

To specify complex indexes or a descending index you need to use a slightly more complex syntax - the index specifier must be an Array of [field name, direction] pairs. Directions should be specified as Mongo::ASCENDING or Mongo::DESCENDING:

```
# explicit "ascending"
coll.create_index([["i", Mongo::ASCENDING]])
```

Creating and querying on a geospatial index

First, create the index on a field containing long-lat values:

```
  people.create_index([["loc", Mongo::GEO2D]])
```

Then get a list of the twenty locations nearest to the point 50, 50:

```
people.find({"loc" => {"$near" => [50, 50]}}, {:limit => 20}).each do |p|
  puts p.inspect
end
```

Getting a List of Indexes on a Collection

You can get a list of the indexes on a collection using `coll.index_information()`.

Database Administration

A database can have one of three profiling levels: off (:off), slow queries only (:slow_only), or all (:all). To see the database level:

```
puts db.profiling_level   # => off (the symbol :off printed as a string)
db.profiling_level = :slow_only
```

Validating a collection will return an interesting hash if all is well or raise an exception if there is a problem.

```
p db.validate_collection('coll_name')
```

See Also

- Ruby Driver Official Docs
- MongoDB Koans A path to MongoDB enlightenment via the Ruby driver.
- MongoDB Manual

Replica Sets in Ruby

> **Redirection Notice**
> This page should redirect to http://api.mongodb.org/ruby/current/file.REPLICA_SETS.html.

Here follow a few considerations for those using the Ruby driver with MongoDB and replica sets.

- Setup
- Connection Failures
- Recovery
- Testing
- Further Reading

Setup

First, make sure that you've configured and initialized a replica set.

Connecting to a replica set from the Ruby driver is easy. If you only want to specify a single node, simply pass that node to `Connection.new`:

```
@connection = Connection.new('foo.local', 27017)
```

If you want to pass in multiple seed nodes, use `Connection.multi`:

```
@connection = Connection.multi([['n1.mydb.net', 27017],
   ['n2.mydb.net', 27017], ['n3.mydb.net', 27017]])
```

In both cases, the driver will attempt to connect to a master node and, when found, will merge any other known members of the replica set into the seed list.

Connection Failures

Imagine that our master node goes offline. How will the driver respond?

At first, the driver will try to send operations to what was the master node. These operations will fail, and the driver will raise a **ConnectionFailure** exception. It then becomes the client's responsibility to decide how to handle this.

If the client decides to retry, it's not guaranteed that another member of the replica set will have been promoted to master right away, so it's still possible that the driver will raise another **ConnectionFailure**. However, once a member has been promoted to master, typically within a few seconds, subsequent operations will succeed.

The driver will essentially cycle through all known seed addresses until a node identifies itself as master.

Recovery

Driver users may wish to wrap their database calls with failure recovery code. Here's one possibility:

```
# Ensure retry upon failure
def rescue_connection_failure(max_retries=5)
    success = false
    retries = 0
    while !success
      begin
        yield
        success = true
      rescue Mongo::ConnectionFailure => ex
        retries += 1
        raise ex if retries >= max_retries
        sleep(1)
      end
    end
  end
end

# Wrapping a call to #count()
rescue_connection_failure do
  @db.collection('users').count()
end
```

Of course, the proper way to handle connection failures will always depend on the individual application. We encourage object-mapper and application developers to publish any promising results.

Testing

The Ruby driver (>= 1.0.6) includes some unit tests for verifying replica set behavior. They reside in **tests/replica_sets**. You can run them individually with the following rake tasks:

```
rake test:replica_set_count
rake test:replica_set_insert
rake test:pooled_replica_set_insert
rake test:replica_set_query
```

Make sure you have a replica set running on localhost before trying to run these tests.

Further Reading

- Replica Sets
- [Replics Set Configuration]

GridFS in Ruby

> **Redirection Notice**
> This page should redirect to http://api.mongodb.org/ruby/current/file.GridFS.html.

GridFS, which stands for "Grid File Store," is a specification for storing large files in MongoDB. It works by dividing a file into manageable chunks and storing each of those chunks as a separate document. GridFS requires two collections to achieve this: one collection stores each file's metadata (e.g., name, size, etc.) and another stores the chunks themselves. If you're interested in more details, check out the GridFS Specification.

Prior to version 0.19, the MongoDB Ruby driver implemented GridFS using the GridFS::GridStore class. This class has been deprecated in favor of two new classes: Grid and GridFileSystem. These classes have a much simpler interface, and the rewrite has resulted in a significant speed improvement. **Reads are over twice as fast, and write speed has been increased fourfold**. 0.19 is thus a worthwhile upgrade.

- The Grid class
    - Saving files
    - File metadata

    - Safe mode
    - Deleting files
- The GridFileSystem class
    - Saving files
    - Deleting files
    - Metadata and safe mode
- Advanced Users

The Grid class

The Grid class represents the core GridFS implementation. Grid gives you a simple file store, keyed on a unique ID. This means that duplicate filenames aren't a problem. To use the Grid class, first make sure you have a database, and then instantiate a Grid:

```
@db = Mongo::Connection.new.db('social_site')

@grid = Grid.new(@db)
```

Saving files

Once you have a Grid object, you can start saving data to it. The data can be either a string or an IO-like object that responds to a #read method:

```
# Saving string data
id = @grid.put("here's some string / binary data")

# Saving IO data and including the optional filename
image = File.open("me.jpg")
id2   = @grid.put(image, :filename => "me.jpg")
```

Grid#put returns an object id, which you can use to retrieve the file:

```
# Get the string we saved
file = @grid.get(id)

# Get the file we saved
image = @grid.get(id2)
```

File metadata

There are accessors for the various file attributes:

```
  image.filename
# => "me.jpg"

  image.content_type
# => "image/jpg"

  image.file_length
# => 502357

  image.upload_date
# => Mon Mar 01 16:18:30 UTC 2010

  # Read all the image's data at once
  image.read

  # Read the first 100k bytes of the image
  image.read(100 * 1024)
```

When putting a file, you can set many of these attributes and write arbitrary metadata:

```
# Saving IO data
  file = File.open("me.jpg")
  id2  = @grid.put(file,
           :filename     => "my-avatar.jpg"
           :content_type => "application/jpg",
           :_id          => 'a-unique-id-to-use-in-lieu-of-a-random-one',
           :chunk_size   => 100 * 1024,
           :metadata     => {'description' => "taken after a game of ultimate"})
```

Safe mode

A kind of safe mode is built into the GridFS specification. When you save a file, and MD5 hash is created on the server. If you save the file in safe mode, an MD5 will be created on the client for comparison with the server version. If the two hashes don't match, an exception will be raised.

```
image = File.open("me.jpg")
id2   = @grid.put(image, "my-avatar.jpg", :safe => true)
```

Deleting files

Deleting a file is as simple as providing the id:

```
@grid.delete(id2)
```

The GridFileSystem class

GridFileSystem is a light emulation of a file system and therefore has a couple of unique properties. The first is that filenames are assumed to be unique. The second, a consequence of the first, is that files are versioned. To see what this means, let's create a GridFileSystem instance:

Saving files

```
@db = Mongo::Connection.new.db("social_site")

@fs = GridFileSystem.new(@db)
```

Now suppose we want to save the file 'me.jpg.' This is easily done using a filesystem-like API:

```
image = File.open("me.jpg")
@fs.open("me.jpg", "w") do |f|
  f.write image
end
```

We can then retrieve the file by filename:

```
image = @fs.open("me.jpg", "r") {|f| f.read }
```

No problems there. But what if we need to replace the file? That too is straightforward:

```
image = File.open("me-dancing.jpg")
@fs.open("me.jpg", "w") do |f|
  f.write image
end
```

But a couple things need to be kept in mind. First is that the original 'me.jpg' will be available until the new 'me.jpg' saves. From then on, calls to the #open method will always return the most recently saved version of a file. But, and this the second point, old versions of the file won't be deleted. So if you're going to be rewriting files often, you could end up with a lot of old versions piling up. One solution to this is to use the :delete_old options when writing a file:

```
image = File.open("me-dancing.jpg")
@fs.open("me.jpg", "w", :delete_old => true) do |f|
  f.write image
end
```

This will delete all but the latest version of the file.

Deleting files

When you delete a file by name, you delete all versions of that file:

```
@fs.delete("me.jpg")
```

Metadata and safe mode

All of the options for storing metadata and saving in safe mode are available for the GridFileSystem class:

```
image = File.open("me.jpg")
@fs.open('my-avatar.jpg', w,
           :content_type => "application/jpg",
           :metadata     => {'description' => "taken on 3/1/2010 after a game of ultimate"},
           :_id          => 'a-unique-id-to-use-instead-of-the-automatically-generated-one',
           :safe         => true) { |f| f.write image }
```

Advanced Users

Astute code readers will notice that the Grid and GridFileSystem classes are merely thin wrappers around an underlying GridIO class. This means that it's easy to customize the GridFS implementation presented here; just use GridIO for all the low-level work, and build the API you need in an external manager class similar to Grid or GridFileSystem.

Rails - Getting Started

Using Rails 3? See Rails 3 - Getting Started

This tutorial describes how to set up a simple Rails application with MongoDB, using MongoMapper as an object mapper. We assume you're using Rails versions prior to 3.0.

- Configuration
- Testing
- Coding

Using a Rails Template
All of the configuration steps listed below, and more, are encapsulated in this Rails template (raw version), based on a similar one by Ben Scofield . You can create your project with the template as follows:

```
rails project_name -m "http://gist.github.com/219223.txt"
```

Be sure to replace **project_name** with the name of your project.

If you want to set up your project manually, read on.

Configuration

1. We need to tell MongoMapper which database we'll be using. Save the following to **config/initializers/database.rb**:

```
MongoMapper.database = "db_name-#{Rails.env}"
```

Replace **db_name** with whatever name you want to give the database. The **Rails.env** variable will ensure that a different database is used for each environment.

2. If you're using Passenger, add this code to **config/initializers/database.rb**.

```
if defined?(PhusionPassenger)
   PhusionPassenger.on_event(:starting_worker_process) do |forked|
     MongoMapper.connection.connect_to_master if forked
   end
end
```

3. Clean out **config/database.yml**. This file should be blank, as we're not connecting to the database in the traditional way.

4. Remove ActiveRecord from environment.rb.

```
config.frameworks -= [:active_record]
```

5. Add MongoMapper to the environment. This can be done by opening **config/environment.rb** and adding the line:

```
config.gem 'mongo_mapper'
```

Once you've done this, you can install the gem in the project by running:

```
rake gems:install
rake gems:unpack
```

Testing

It's important to keep in mind that with MongoDB, we cannot wrap test cases in transactions. One possible work-around is to invoke a **teardown** method after each test case to clear out the database.

To automate this, I've found it effective to modify **ActiveSupport::TestCase** with the code below.

```
# Drop all columns after each test case.
def teardown
  MongoMapper.database.collections.each do |coll|
    coll.remove
  end
end

# Make sure that each test case has a teardown
# method to clear the db after each test.
def inherited(base)
  base.define_method teardown do
    super
  end
end
```

This way, all test classes will automatically invoke the teardown method. In the example above, the teardown method clears each collection. We might also choose to drop each collection or drop the database as a whole, but this would be considerably more expensive and is only necessary if our tests manipulate indexes.

Usually, this code is added in **test/test_helper.rb**. See the aforementioned rails template for specifics.

Coding

If you've followed the foregoing steps (or if you've created your Rails with the provided template), then you're ready to start coding. For help on that, you can read about modeling your domain in Rails.

Rails 3 - Getting Started

It's not difficult to use MongoDB with Rails 3. Most of it comes down to making sure that you're not loading ActiveRecord and understanding how to use Bundler, the new Ruby dependency manager.

- Install the Rails 3
- Configure your application
- Bundle and Initialize
  - Bundling
  - Initializing
- Running Tests
- Conclusion
- See also

Install the Rails 3

If you haven't done so already, install Rails 3.

```
# Use sudo if your setup requires it
gem install rails
```

Configure your application

The important thing here is to avoid loading ActiveRecord. One way to do this is with the `--skip-active-record` switch. So you'd create your app skeleton like so:

```
rails new my_app --skip-active-record
```

Alternatively, if you've already created your app (or just want to know what this actually does), have a look at `config/application.rb` and change the first lines from this:

```
require "rails/all"
```

to this:

```
require "action_controller/railtie"
require "action_mailer/railtie"
require "active_resource/railtie"
require "rails/test_unit/railtie"
```

It's also important to make sure that the reference to active_record in the generator block is commented out:

```
# Configure generators values. Many other options are available, be sure to check the documentation.
# config.generators do |g|
#   g.orm             :active_record
#   g.template_engine :erb
#   g.test_framework  :test_unit, :fixture => true
# end
```

As of this this writing, it's commented out by default, so you probably won't have to change anything here.

Bundle and Initialize

The final step involves bundling any gems you'll need and then creating an initializer for connecting to the database.

Bundling

Edit `Gemfile`, located in the Rails root directory. By default, our `Gemfile` will only load Rails:

```
gem "rails", "3.0.0"
```

Normally, using MongoDB will simply mean adding whichever OM framework you want to work with, as these will require the "mongo" gem by default.

```
# Edit this Gemfile to bundle your application's dependencies.

source 'http://gemcutter.org'

gem "rails", "3.0.0"
gem "mongo_mapper"
```

However, there's currently an issue with loading bson_ext, as the current gemspec isn't compatible with the way Bundler works. We'll be fixing that soon; just pay attention to this issue.

In the meantime, you can use the following work-around:

```
# Edit this Gemfile to bundle your application's dependencies.

require 'rubygems'
require 'mongo'
source 'http://gemcutter.org'

gem "rails", "3.0.0"
gem "mongo_mapper"
```

Requiring `rubygems` and `mongo` before running the `gem` command will ensure that `bson_ext` is loaded. If you'd rather not load `rubygems`, just make sure that both `mongo` and `bson_ext` are in your load path when you require `mongo`.

Once you've configured your `Gemfile`, run the bundle installer:

```
bundle install
```

Initializing

Last item is to create an initializer to connect to MongoDB. Create a Ruby file in `config/initializers`. You can give it any name you want; here we'll call it `config/initializers/mongo.rb`:

```
MongoMapper.connection = Mongo::Connection.new('localhost', 27017)
MongoMapper.database = "#myapp-#{Rails.env}"

if defined?(PhusionPassenger)
   PhusionPassenger.on_event(:starting_worker_process) do |forked|
     MongoMapper.connection.connect if forked
   end
end
```

Running Tests

A slight modification is required to get `rake test` working (thanks to John P. Wood). Create a file `lib/tasks/mongo.rake` containing the following:

```
namespace :db do
  namespace :test do
    task :prepare do
      # Stub out for MongoDB
    end
  end
end
```

Now the various `rake test` tasks will run properly. See John's post for more details.

Conclusion

That should be all. You can now start creating models based on whichever OM you've installed.

See also

- Rails 3 App skeleton with MongoMapper
- Rails 3 Release Notes

MongoDB Data Modeling and Rails

This tutorial discusses the development of a web application on Rails and MongoDB. MongoMapper will serve as our object mapper. The goal is to provide some insight into the design choices required for building on MongoDB. To that end, we'll be constructing a simple but non-trivial social news application. The source code for **newsmonger** is available on github for those wishing to dive right in.

- Modeling Stories
  - Caching to Avoid N+1
  - A Note on Denormalization
  - Fields as arrays
  - Atomic Updates
- Modeling Comments
  - Linear, Embedded Comments
  - Nested, Embedded Comments
  - Comment collections
- Unfinished business

Assuming you've configured your application to work with MongoMapper, let's start thinking about the data model.

Modeling Stories

A news application relies on stories at its core, so we'll start with a Story model:

```
class Story
  include MongoMapper::Document

  key :title,     String
  key :url,       String
  key :slug,      String
  key :voters,    Array
  key :votes,     Integer, :default => 0
  key :relevance, Integer, :default => 0

  # Cached values.
  key :comment_count, Integer, :default => 0
  key :username,      String

  # Note this: ids are of class ObjectId.
  key :user_id,   ObjectId
  timestamps!

  # Relationships.
  belongs_to :user

  # Validations.
  validates_presence_of :title, :url, :user_id
end
```

Obviously, a story needs a title, url, and user_id, and should belong to a user. These are self-explanatory.

Caching to Avoid N+1

When we display our list of stories, we'll need to show the name of the user who posted the story. If we were using a relational database, we could perform a join on users and stores, and get all our objects in a single query. But MongoDB does not support joins and so, at times, requires bit of denormalization. Here, this means caching the 'username' attribute.

A Note on Denormalization

Relational purists may be feeling uneasy already, as if we were violating some universal law. But let's bear in mind that MongoDB collections are not equivalent to relational tables; each serves a unique design objective. A normalized table provides an atomic, isolated chunk of data. A document, however, more closely represents an object as a whole. In the case of a social news site, it can be argued that a username is intrinsic to the story being posted.

What about updates to the username? It's true that such updates will be expensive; happily, in this case, they'll be rare. The read savings achieved in denormalizing will surely outweigh the costs of the occasional update. Alas, this is not hard and fast rule: ultimately, developers must evaluate their applications for the appropriate level of normalization.

Fields as arrays

With a relational database, even trivial relationships are blown out into multiple tables. Consider the votes a story receives. We need a way of recording which users have voted on which stories. The standard way of handling this would involve creating a table, 'votes', with each row referencing user_id and story_id.

With a document database, it makes more sense to store those votes as an array of user ids, as we do here with the 'voters' key.

For fast lookups, we can create an index on this field. In the MongoDB shell:

```
db.stories.ensureIndex('voters');
```

Or, using MongoMapper, we can specify the index in **config/initializers/database.rb**:

```
Story.ensure_index(:voters)
```

To find all the stories voted on by a given user:

```
Story.all(:conditions => {:voters => @user.id})
```

Atomic Updates

Storing the `voters` array in the `Story` class also allows us to take advantage of atomic updates. What this means here is that, when a user votes on a story, we can

1. ensure that the voter hasn't voted yet, and, if not,
2. increment the number of votes and
3. add the new voter to the array.

MongoDB's query and update features allows us to perform all three actions in a single operation. Here's what that would look like from the shell:

```
// Assume that story_id and user_id represent real story and user ids.
db.stories.update({_id: story_id, voters: {'$ne': user_id}},
  {'$inc': {votes: 1}, '$push': {voters: user_id}});
```

What this says is "get me a story with the given id whose `voters` array does not contain the given user id and, if you find such a story, perform two atomic updates: first, increment `votes` by 1 and then push the user id onto the `voters` array."

This operation highly efficient; it's also reliable. The one caveat is that, because update operations are "fire and forget," you won't get a response from the server. But in most cases, this should be a non-issue.

A MongoMapper implementation of the same update would look like this:

```
  def self.upvote(story_id, user_id)
    collection.update({'_id' => story_id, 'voters' => {'$ne' => user_id}},
      {'$inc' => {'votes' => 1}, '$push' => {'voters' => user_id}})
  end
```

Modeling Comments

In a relational database, comments are usually given their own table, related by foreign key to some parent table. This approach is occasionally necessary in MongoDB; however, it's always best to try to embed first, as this will achieve greater query efficiency.

Linear, Embedded Comments

Linear, non-threaded comments should be embedded. Here are the most basic MongoMapper classes to implement such a structure:

```
class Story
  include MongoMapper::Document
  many :comments
end
```

```
class Comment
  include MongoMapper::EmbeddedDocument
  key :body, String

  belongs_to :story
end
```

If we were using the Ruby driver alone, we could save our structure like so:

```
@stories  = @db.collection('stories')
  @document = {:title => "MongoDB on Rails",
               :comments => [{:body     => "Revelatory! Loved it!",
                              :username => "Matz"
                             }
                            ]
              }
  @stories.save(@document)
```

Essentially, comments are represented as an array of objects within a story document. This simple structure should be used for any one-to-many

relationship where the many items are linear.

Nested, Embedded Comments

But what if we're building threaded comments? An admittedly more complicated problem, two solutions will be presented here. The first is to represent the tree structure in the nesting of the comments themselves. This might be achieved using the Ruby driver as follows:

```
@stories  = @db.collection('stories')
  @document = {:title => "MongoDB on Rails",
               :comments => [{:body     => "Revelatory! Loved it!",
                              :username => "Matz",
                              :comments => [{:body     => "Agreed.",
                                             :username => "rubydev29"
                                            }
                                           ]
                             }
                            ]
             }
  @stories.save(@document)
```

Representing this structure using MongoMapper would be tricky, requiring a number of custom mods.

But this structure has a number of benefits. The nesting is captured in the document itself (this is, in fact, how Business Insider represents comments). And this schema is highly performant, since we can get the story, and all of its comments, in a single query, with no application-side processing for constructing the tree.

One drawback is that alternative views of the comment tree require some significant reorganizing.

Comment collections

We can also represent comments as their own collection. Relative to the other options, this incurs a small performance penalty while granting us the greatest flexibility. The tree structure can be represented by storing the unique path for each leaf (see Mathias's original post on the idea). Here are the relevant sections of this model:

```
class Comment
  include MongoMapper::Document

  key :body,       String
  key :depth,      Integer, :default => 0
  key :path,       String,  :default => ""

  # Note: we're intentionally storing parent_id as a string
  key :parent_id,  String
  key :story_id,   ObjectId
  timestamps!

  # Relationships.
  belongs_to :story

  # Callbacks.
  after_create :set_path

  private

  # Store the comment's path.
  def set_path
    unless self.parent_id.blank?
      parent        = Comment.find(self.parent_id)
      self.story_id = parent.story_id
      self.depth    = parent.depth + 1
      self.path     = parent.path + ":" + parent.id
    end
    save
  end
```

The path ends up being a string of object ids. This makes it easier to display our comments nested, with each level in order of karma or votes. If we specify an index on story_id, path, and votes, the database can handle half the work of getting our comments in nested, sorted order.

The rest of the work can be accomplished with a couple grouping methods, which can be found in the newsmonger source code.

It goes without saying that modeling comments in their own collection also facilitates various site-wide aggregations, including displaying the latest, grouping by user, etc.

Unfinished business

Document-oriented data modeling is still young. The fact is, many more applications will need to be built on the document model before we can say anything definitive about best practices. So the foregoing should be taken as suggestions, only. As you discover new patterns, we encourage you to document them, and feel free to let us know about what works (and what doesn't).

Developers working on object mappers and the like are encouraged to implement the best document patterns in their code, and to be wary of recreating relational database models in their apps.

Ruby External Resources

There are a number of good resources appearing all over the web for learning about MongoDB and Ruby. A useful selection is listed below. If you know of others, do let us know.

- Screencasts
- Presentations
- Articles
- Projects
- Libraries

Screencasts

Introduction to MongoDB - Part I
An introduction to MongoDB via the MongoDB shell.

Introduction to MongoDB - Part II
In this screencast, Joon You teaches how to use the Ruby driver to build a simple Sinatra app.

Introduction to MongoDB - Part III
For the final screencast in the series, Joon You introduces MongoMapper and Rails.

RailsCasts: MongoDB & MongoMapper
Ryan Bates' RailsCast introducing MongoDB and MongoMapper.

RailsCasts: Mongoid
Ryan Bates' RailsCast introducing Mongoid.

Presentations

Introduction to MongoDB (Video)
Mike Dirolf's introduction to MongoDB at Pivotal Labs, SF.

MongoDB: A Ruby Document Store that doesn't rhyme with 'Ouch' (Slides)
Wynn Netherland's introduction to MongoDB with some comparisons to CouchDB.

MongoDB (is) for Rubyists (Slides)
Kyle Banker's presentation on why MongoDB is for Rubyists (and all human-oriented programmers).

Articles

Why I Think Mongo is to Databases What Rails was to Frameworks
What if a key-value store mated with a relational database system?
Mongo Tips
John Nunemaker's articles on MongoDB and his Mongo Tips blog.

A series of articles on aggregation with MongoDB and Ruby:
1. Part I: Introduction of Aggregation in MongoDB
2. Part II: MongoDB Grouping Elaborated
3. Part III: Introduction to Map-Reduce in MongoDB

Does the MongoDB Driver Support Feature X?
An explanation of how the MongoDB drivers usually automatically support new database features.

Projects

Simple Pub/Sub

A very simple pub/sub system.

Mongo Queue
An extensible thread safe job/message queueing system that uses mongodb as the persistent storage engine.

Resque-mongo
A port of the Github's Resque to MongoDB.

Mongo Admin
A Rails plugin for browsing and managing MongoDB data. See the live demo.

Sinatra Resource
Resource Oriented Architecture (REST) for Sinatra and MongoMapper.

Shorty
A URL-shortener written with Sinatra and the MongoDB Ruby driver.

NewsMonger
A simple social news application demonstrating MongoMapper and Rails.

Data Catalog API
From Sunlight Labs, a non-trivial application using MongoMapper and Sinatra.

Watchtower
An example application using Mustache, MongoDB, and Sinatra.

Shapado
A question and answer site similar to Stack Overflow. Live version at shapado.com.

Libraries

ActiveExpando
An extension to ActiveRecord to allow the storage of arbitrary attributes in MongoDB.

ActsAsTree (MongoMapper)
ActsAsTree implementation for MongoMapper.

Machinist adapter (MongoMapper)
Machinist adapter using MongoMapper.

Mongo-Delegate
A delegation library for experimenting with production data without altering it. A quite useful pattern.

Remarkable Matchers (MongoMapper)
Testing / Matchers library using MongoMapper.

OpenIdAuthentication, supporting MongoDB as the datastore
Brandon Keepers' fork of OpenIdAuthentication supporting MongoDB.

MongoTree (MongoRecord)
MongoTree adds parent / child relationships to MongoRecord.

Merb_MongoMapper
a plugin for the Merb framework for supporting MongoMapper models.

Mongolytics (MongoMapper)
A web analytics tool.

Rack-GridFS
A Rack middleware component that creates HTTP endpoints for files stored in GridFS.

Frequently Asked Questions - Ruby

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to http://api.mongodb.org/ruby/1.1.5/file.FAQ.html.

This is a list of frequently asked questions about using Ruby with MongoDB. If you have a question you'd like to have answered here, please add it in the comments.

- Can I run [insert command name here] from the Ruby driver?
- Does the Ruby driver support an EXPLAIN command?

- I see that BSON supports a symbol type. Does this mean that I can store Ruby symbols in MongoDB?
- Why can't I access random elements within a cursor?
- Why can't I save an instance of TimeWithZone?
- I keep getting CURSOR_NOT_FOUND exceptions. What's happening?
- I periodically see connection failures between the driver and MongoDB. Why can't the driver retry the operation automatically?

Can I run [insert command name here] from the Ruby driver?

Yes. You can run any of the available database commands from the driver using the DB#command method. The only trick is to use an OrderedHash when specifying the command. For example, here's how you'd run an asynchronous fsync from the driver:

```
# This command is run on the admin database.
@db = Mongo::Connection.new.db('admin')

# Build the command.
cmd = OrderedHash.new
cmd['fsync'] = 1
cmd['async'] = true

# Run it.
@db.command(cmd)
```

It's important to keep in mind that some commands, like `fsync`, must be run on the `admin` database, while other commands can be run on any database. If you're having trouble, check the command reference to make sure you're using the command correctly.

Does the Ruby driver support an EXPLAIN command?

Yes. `explain` is, technically speaking, an option sent to a query that tells MongoDB to return an explain plan rather than the query's results. You can use `explain` by constructing a query and calling explain at the end:

```
@collection = @db['users']
result = @collection.find({:name => "jones"}).explain
```

The resulting explain plan might look something like this:

```
{"cursor"=>"BtreeCursor name_1",
 "startKey"=>{"name"=>"Jones"},
 "endKey"=>{"name"=>"Jones"},
 "nscanned"=>1.0,
 "n"=>1,
 "millis"=>0,
 "oldPlan"=>{"cursor"=>"BtreeCursor name_1",
             "startKey"=>{"name"=>"Jones"},
             "endKey"=>{"name"=>"Jones"}
 },
 "allPlans"=>[{"cursor"=>"BtreeCursor name_1",
               "startKey"=>{"name"=>"Jones"},
               "endKey"=>{"name"=>"Jones"}}]
 }
```

Because this collection has an index on the "name" field, the query uses that index, only having to scan a single record. "n" is the number of records the query will return. "millis" is the time the query takes, in milliseconds. "oldPlan" indicates that the query optimizer has already seen this kind of query and has, therefore, saved an efficient query plan. "allPlans" shows all the plans considered for this query.

I see that BSON supports a symbol type. Does this mean that I can store Ruby symbols in MongoDB?

You can store Ruby symbols in MongoDB, but only as values. BSON specifies that document keys must be strings. So, for instance, you can do this:

```
@collection = @db['test']

boat_id = @collection.save({:vehicle  => :boat})
car_id  = @collection.save({"vehicle" => "car"})

@collection.find_one('_id' => boat_id)
{"_id" => ObjectID('4bb372a8238d3b5c8c000001'), "vehicle" => :boat}


@collection.find_one('_id' => car_id)
{"_id" => ObjectID('4bb372a8238d3b5c8c000002'), "vehicle" => "car"}
```

Notice that the symbol values are returned as expected, but that symbol keys are treated as strings.

Why can't I access random elements within a cursor?

MongoDB cursors are designed for sequentially iterating over a result set, and all the drivers, including the Ruby driver, stick closely to this directive. Internally, a Ruby cursor fetches results in batches by running a MongoDB `getmore` operation. The results are buffered for efficient iteration on the client-side.

What this means is that a cursor is nothing more than a device for returning a result set on a query that's been initiated on the server. Cursors are not containers for result sets. If we allow a cursor to be randomly accessed, then we run into issues regarding the freshness of the data. For instance, if I iterate over a cursor and then want to retrieve the cursor's first element, should a stored copy be returned, or should the cursor re-run the query? If we returned a stored copy, it may not be fresh. And if the the query is re-run, then we're technically dealing with a new cursor.

To avoid those issues, we're saying that anyone who needs flexible access to the results of a query should store those results in an array and then access the data as needed.

Why can't I save an instance of TimeWithZone?

MongoDB stores times in UTC as the number of milliseconds since the epoch. This means that the Ruby driver serializes Ruby Time objects only. While it would certainly be possible to serialize a TimeWithZone, this isn't preferable since the driver would still deserialize to a Time object.

All that said, if necessary, it'd be easy to write a thin wrapper over the driver that would store an extra time zone attribute and handle the serialization/deserialization of TimeWithZone transparently.

I keep getting CURSOR_NOT_FOUND exceptions. What's happening?

The most likely culprit here is that the cursor is timing out on the server. Whenever you issue a query, a cursor is created on the server. Cursor naturally time out after ten minutes, which means that if you happen to be iterating over a cursor for more than ten minutes, you risk a CURSOR_NOT_FOUND exception.

There are two solutions to this problem. You can either:

1. Limit your query. Use some combination of `limit` and `skip` to reduce the total number of query results. This will, obviously, bring down the time it takes to iterate.

2. Turn off the cursor timeout. To do that, invoke `find` with a block, and pass `:timeout => true`:

```
@collection.find({}, :timeout => false) do |cursor|
  cursor.each do |document
    # Process documents here
  end
end
```

I periodically see connection failures between the driver and MongoDB. Why can't the driver retry the operation automatically?

A connection failure can indicate any number of failure scenarios. Has the server crashed? Are we experiencing a temporary network partition? Is there a bug in our ssh tunnel?

Without further investigation, it's impossible to know exactly what has caused the connection failure. Furthermore, when we do see a connection failure, it's impossible to know how many operations prior to the failure succeeded. Imagine, for instance, that we're using safe mode and we send an `$inc` operation to the server. It's entirely possible that the server has received the `$inc` but failed on the call to `getLastError`. In that case, retrying the operation would result in a double-increment.

Because of the indeterminacy involved, the MongoDB drivers will not retry operations on connection failure. How connection failures should be handled is entirely dependent on the application. Therefore, we leave it to the application developers to make the best decision in this case.

The drivers will reconnect on the subsequent operation.

Java Language Center

Java Driver

Basics

- Download the Java Driver
- Tutorial
- API Documentation
- Release Notes

Specific Topics and How-To

- Concurrency
- Saving Objects
- Data Types

Hadoop Support

- There is a nascent and experimental MongoDB Hadoop integration plugin available, which supports reading data from MongoDB into Hadoop and writing data from Hadoop out to MongoDB.
- Part of the mongo-hadoop distribution includes a MongoDB sink for Flume to allow logging into MongoDB

Third Party Frameworks and Libs

POJO Mappers

- Morphia - Type-Safe Wrapper with DAO/Datastore abstractions
- Mungbean (w/clojure support)
- Spring MongoDB – Provides Spring users with a familiar data access features including rich POJO mapping.
- DataNucleus JPA/JDO – JPA/JDO wrapper

Code Generation

- Sculptor - mongodb-based DSL -> Java (code generator)
- GuicyData - DSL -> Java generator with Guice integration
    - Blog Entries

Misc

- log4mongo a log4j appender
- (Experimental, Type4) JDBC driver

Scala

- Casbah Casbah is the officially supported Scala driver for MongoDB. It provides wrappers and extensions to the Java driver meant to allow a more scala-friendly interface to MongoDB. It supports serialization/deserialization of common Scala types (including collections and regex), Scala 2.8 collection versions of DBObject and DBList and a fluid query DSL.
    - There is API documentation and a tutorial for new users available.

Third Party

- Lift-MongoDB - Lift Web Framework supports MongoDB, including object mapping via the Record back-end implementation.
- Rogue: A Type-Safe Scala DSL - Foursquare's DSL for querying MongoDB alongside Lift-MongoDB-Record.
    - Tutorial/Intro
    - Source/Downloads

- Blue Eyes is a lightweight framework for building REST APIs with strong MongoDB integration including a DSL and Mock MongoDB for testing.
- mongo-scala-driver is a thin wrapper around mongo-java-driver to make working with MongoDB more Scala-like.
    - Wiki
    - Mailing list

Other JVM-based Languages

Clojure

- Congo Mongo

Groovy

- Groovy Tutorial for MongoDB
- MongoDB made more Groovy
- GMongo, a Groovy wrapper to the mongodb Java driver
    - GMongo 0.5 Release Writeup
    - Mailing List
    - GitHub Project Page

JavaScript

- MongoDB-Rhino - A toolset to provide full integration between the Rhino JavaScript engine for the JVM and MongoDB. Uses the MongoDB Java driver.

JRuby

- jmongo A thin ruby wrapper around the mongo-java-driver for vastly better jruby performance.

If there is a project missing here, just add a comment or email the list and we'll add it.

Presentations

- Morphia: Easy Java Persistance for MongoDB - Scott Hernandez' presentation at MongoSF (May 2011)
- Spring Source and MongoDB - Chris Richardson's presentation at MongoSV (December 2010)
- Using MongoDB with Scala - Brendan McAdams' Presentation at the New York Scala Enthusiasts (August 2010)
- Java Development - Brendan McAdams' Presentation from MongoNYC (May 2010)
- Java Development - James Williams' Presentation from MongoSF (April 2010)
- Building a Mongo DSL in Scala at Hot Potato - Lincoln Hochberg's Presentation from MongoSF (April 2010)
- More Java-related presentations

Java Driver Concurrency

The Java MongoDB driver is thread safe. If you are using in a web serving environment, for example, you should create a single Mongo instance, and you can use it in every request. The Mongo object maintains an internal pool of connections to the database (default pool size of 10). For every request to the DB (find, insert, etc) the java thread will obtain a connection from the pool, execute the operation, and release the connection. This means the connection (socket) used may be different each time.

Additionally in the case of a replica set with slaveOk option turned on, the read operations will be distributed evenly across all slaves. This means that within the same thread, a write followed by a read may be sent to different servers (master then slave). In turns the read operation may not see the data just written since replication is asynchronous. If you want to ensure complete consistency in a "session" (maybe an http request), you would want the driver to use the same socket, which you can achieve by using a "consistent request". Call requestStart() before your operations and requestDone() to release the connection back to the pool:

```
DB db...;
db.requestStart();

code....

db.requestDone();
```

DB and DBCollection are completely thread safe. In fact, they are cached so you get the same instance no matter what.

WriteConcern option for single write operation

Since by default a connection is given back to the pool after each request, you may wonder how calling getLastError() works after a write. You should actually use a write concern like `WriteConcern.SAFE` instead of calling getLastError() manually. The driver will then call getLastError() before putting the connection back in the pool.

```
DBCollection coll...;
coll.insert(..., WriteConcern.SAFE);

// is equivalent to
DB db...;
DBCollection coll...;
db.requestStart();
coll.insert(...);
DBObject err = db.getLastError();
db.requestDone();
```

Java - Saving Objects Using DBObject

The Java driver provides a DBObject interface to save custom objects to the database.

For example, suppose one had a class called Tweet that they wanted to save:

```
public class Tweet implements DBObject {
    /* ... */
}
```

Then you can say:

```
Tweet myTweet = new Tweet();
myTweet.put("user", userId);
myTweet.put("message", msg);
myTweet.put("date", new Date());

collection.insert(myTweet);
```

When a document is retrieved from the database, it is automatically converted to a DBObject. To convert it to an instance of your class, use DBCollection.setObjectClass():

```
collection.setObjectClass(Tweet.class);

Tweet myTweet = (Tweet)collection.findOne();
```

If for some reason you wanted to change the message you can simply take that tweet and save it back after updating the field.

```
Tweet myTweet = (Tweet)collection.findOne();
myTweet.put("message", newMsg);

collection.save(myTweet);
```

Java Tutorial

- Introduction
- A Quick Tour
  - Making A Connection
  - Authentication (Optional)
  - Getting A List Of Collections
  - Getting A Collection
  - Inserting a Document
  - Finding the First Document In A Collection using `findOne()`
  - Adding Multiple Documents
  - Counting Documents in A Collection

    - Using a Cursor to Get All the Documents
    - Getting A Single Document with A Query
    - Getting A Set of Documents With a Query
    - Creating An Index
    - Getting a List of Indexes on a Collection
- Quick Tour of the Administrative Functions
    - Getting A List of Databases
    - Dropping A Database

Introduction

This page is a brief overview of working with the MongoDB Java Driver.

For more information about the Java API, please refer to the online API Documentation for Java Driver

A Quick Tour

Using the Java driver is very simple. First, be sure to include the driver jar `mongo.jar` in your classpath. The following code snippets come from the `examples/QuickTour.java` example code found in the driver.

Making A Connection

To make a connection to a MongoDB, you need to have at the minimum, the name of a database to connect to. The database doesn't have to exist - if it doesn't, MongoDB will create it for you.

Additionally, you can specify the server address and port when connecting. The following example shows three ways to connect to the database *mydb* on the local machine :

```
import com.mongodb.Mongo;
import com.mongodb.DB;
import com.mongodb.DBCollection;
import com.mongodb.BasicDBObject;
import com.mongodb.DBObject;
import com.mongodb.DBCursor;

Mongo m = new Mongo();
// or
Mongo m = new Mongo( "localhost" );
// or
Mongo m = new Mongo( "localhost" , 27017 );

DB db = m.getDB( "mydb" );
```

At this point, the `db` object will be a connection to a MongoDB server for the specified database. With it, you can do further operations.

Note: The Mongo object instance actually represents a pool of connections to the database; you will only need one object of class Mongo even with multiple threads. See the concurrency doc page for more information.

The Mongo class is designed to be thread safe and shared among threads. Typically you create only 1 instance for a given DB cluster and use it across your app. If for some reason you decide to create many mongo intances, note that:

- all resource usage limits (max connections, etc) apply per mongo instance
- to dispose of an instance, make sure you call mongo.close() to clean up resources

Authentication (Optional)

MongoDB can be run in a secure mode where access to databases is controlled through name and password authentication. When run in this mode, any client application must provide a name and password before doing any operations. In the Java driver, you simply do the following with the connected mongo object :

```
boolean auth = db.authenticate(myUserName, myPassword);
```

If the name and password are valid for the database, `auth` will be `true`. Otherwise, it will be `false`. You should look at the MongoDB log for further information if available.

Most users run MongoDB without authentication in a trusted environment.

Getting A List Of Collections

Each database has zero or more collections. You can retrieve a list of them from the db (and print out any that are there) :

```
Set<String> colls = db.getCollectionNames();

for (String s : colls) {
    System.out.println(s);
}
```

and assuming that there are two collections, name and address, in the database, you would see

```
name
address
```

as the output.

Getting A Collection

To get a collection to use, just specify the name of the collection to the getCollection`(String collectionName)` method:

```
DBCollection coll = db.getCollection("testCollection")
```

Once you have this collection object, you can now do things like insert data, query for data, etc

Inserting a Document

Once you have the collection object, you can insert documents into the collection. For example, lets make a little document that in JSON would be represented as

```
{
   "name" : "MongoDB",
   "type" : "database",
   "count" : 1,
   "info" : {
               x : 203,
               y : 102
             }
}
```

Notice that the above has an "inner" document embedded within it. To do this, we can use the BasicDBObject class to create the document (including the inner document), and then just simply insert it into the collection using the `insert()` method.

```
BasicDBObject doc = new BasicDBObject();

        doc.put("name", "MongoDB");
        doc.put("type", "database");
        doc.put("count", 1);

        BasicDBObject info = new BasicDBObject();

        info.put("x", 203);
        info.put("y", 102);

        doc.put("info", info);

        coll.insert(doc);
```

Finding the First Document In A Collection using `findOne()`

To show that the document we inserted in the previous step is there, we can do a simple findOne`()` operation to get the first document in the collection. This method returns a single document (rather than the DBCursor that the find`()` operation returns), and it's useful for things where there only is one document, or you are only interested in the first. You don't have to deal with the cursor.

```
DBObject myDoc = coll.findOne();
System.out.println(myDoc);
```

and you should see

```
{ "_id" : "49902cde5162504500b45c2c" , "name" : "MongoDB" , "type" : "database" , "count" : 1 , "info"
: { "x" : 203 , "y" : 102}}
```

Note the `_id` element has been added automatically by MongoDB to your document. Remember, MongoDB reserves element names that start with "_"/"$" for internal use.

Adding Multiple Documents

In order to do more interesting things with queries, let's add multiple simple documents to the collection. These documents will just be

```
{
   "i" : value
}
```

and we can do this fairly efficiently in a loop

```
for (int i=0; i < 100; i++) {
    coll.insert(new BasicDBObject().append("i", i));
}
```

Notice that we can insert documents of different "shapes" into the same collection. This aspect is what we mean when we say that MongoDB is "schema-free"

Counting Documents in A Collection

Now that we've inserted 101 documents (the 100 we did in the loop, plus the first one), we can check to see if we have them all using the `getCount()` method.

```
System.out.println(coll.getCount());
```

and it should print `101`.

Using a Cursor to Get All the Documents

In order to get all the documents in the collection, we will use the `find()` method. The `find()` method returns a `DBCursor` object which allows us to iterate over the set of documents that matched our query. So to query all of the documents and print them out :

```
DBCursor cur = coll.find();

        while(cur.hasNext()) {
            System.out.println(cur.next());
        }
```

and that should print all 101 documents in the collection.

Getting A Single Document with A Query

We can create a *query* to pass to the `find()` method to get a subset of the documents in our collection. For example, if we wanted to find the document for which the value of the "i" field is 71, we would do the following ;

```
BasicDBObject query = new BasicDBObject();

        query.put("i", 71);

        cur = coll.find(query);

        while(cur.hasNext()) {
            System.out.println(cur.next());
        }
```

and it should just print just one document

```
{ "_id" : "49903677516250c1008d624e" , "i" : 71 }
```

You may commonly see examples and documentation in MongoDB which use $ Operators, such as this:

```
db.things.find({j: {$ne: 3}, k: {$gt: 10} });
```

These are represented as regular String keys in the Java driver, using embedded DBObjects:

```
        BasicDBObject query = new BasicDBObject();

        query.put("j", new BasicDBObject("$ne", 3));
        query.put("k", new BasicDBObject("$gt", 10));

        cur = coll.find(query);

        while(cur.hasNext()) {
            System.out.println(cur.next());
        }
```

Getting A Set of Documents With a Query

We can use the query to get a set of documents from our collection. For example, if we wanted to get all documents where "i" > 50, we could write :

```
query = new BasicDBObject();

        query.put("i", new BasicDBObject("$gt", 50));  // e.g. find all where i > 50

        cur = coll.find(query);

        while(cur.hasNext()) {
            System.out.println(cur.next());
        }
```

which should print the documents where i > 50. We could also get a range, say 20 < i <= 30 :

```
query = new BasicDBObject();

        query.put("i", new BasicDBObject("$gt", 20).append("$lte", 30));  // i.e.   20 < i <= 30

        cur = coll.find(query);

        while(cur.hasNext()) {
            System.out.println(cur.next());
        }
```

Creating An Index

MongoDB supports indexes, and they are very easy to add on a collection. To create an index, you just specify the field that should be indexed, and specify if you want the index to be ascending (1) or descending (-1). The following creates an ascending index on the "i" field :

```
coll.createIndex(new BasicDBObject("i", 1));  // create index on "i", ascending
```

Getting a List of Indexes on a Collection

You can get a list of the indexes on a collection :

```
List<DBObject> list = coll.getIndexInfo();

        for (DBObject o : list) {
            System.out.println(o);
        }
```

and you should see something like

```
{ "name" : "i_1" , "ns" : "mydb.testCollection" , "key" : { "i" : 1} }
```

Quick Tour of the Administrative Functions

Getting A List of Databases

You can get a list of the available databases:

```
Mongo m = new Mongo();

        for (String s : m.getDatabaseNames()) {
            System.out.println(s);
        }
```

Dropping A Database

You can drop a database by name using the `Mongo` object:

```
m.dropDatabase("my_new_db");
```

Java Types

- Object Ids
- Regular Expressions
- Dates/Times
- Database References
- Binary Data
- Timestamp Data
- Code Data
- Embedded Documents
- Arrays

Object Ids

`com.mongodb.ObjectId` is used to autogenerate unique ids.

```
ObjectId id = new ObjectId();
ObjectId copy = new ObjectId(id);
```

Regular Expressions

The Java driver uses `java.util.regex.Pattern` for regular expressions.

```
Pattern john = Pattern.compile("joh?n", CASE_INSENSITIVE);
BasicDBObject query = new BasicDBObject("name", john);

// finds all people with "name" matching /joh?n/i
DBCursor cursor = collection.find(query);
```

Dates/Times

The java.util.Date class is used for dates.

```
Date now = new Date();
BasicDBObject time = new BasicDBObject("ts", now);

collection.save(time);
```

Database References

`com.mongodb.DBRef` can be used to save database references.

```
DBRef addressRef = new DBRef(db, "foo.bar", address_id);
DBObject address = addressRef.fetch();

DBObject person = BasicDBObjectBuilder.start()
    .add("name", "Fred")
    .add("address", addressRef)
    .get();
collection.save(person);

DBObject fred = collection.findOne();
DBRef addressObj = (DBRef)fred.get("address");
addressObj.fetch()
```

Binary Data

An array of bytes (`byte[]`) as a value will automatically be wrapped as a Binary type.
Additionally the Binary class can be used to represent binary objects, which allows to pick a custom type byte.

Timestamp Data

A timestamp is a special object used by Mongo as an ID based on time, represented by a (time in second, incremental id) pair (it is used notably in the replication oplog).
A timestamp is represented by the BSONTimestamp class.

Code Data

A code object is used to represent JavaScript code, for example when saving executable functions into the system.js collection.
The Code and CodeWScope classes are used to represent this data.
Note that some methods (like map/reduce) take Strings but wrap them into Code objects in the driver.

Embedded Documents

Suppose we have a document that, in JavaScript, looks like:

```
{
    "x" : {
        "y" : 3
    }
}
```

The equivalent in Java is:

```
BasicDBObject y = new BasicDBObject("y", 3);
BasicDBObject x = new BasicDBObject("x", y);
```

Arrays

Anything that extends List in Java will be saved as an array.

So, if you are trying to represent the JavaScript:

```
{
    "x" : [
        1,
        2,
        {"foo" : "bar"},
        4
    ]
}
```

you could do:

```
ArrayList x = new ArrayList();
x.add(1);
x.add(2);
x.add(new BasicDBObject("foo", "bar"));
x.add(4);

BasicDBObject doc = new BasicDBObject("x", x);
```

Replica Set Semantics

The MongoDB Java driver handles failover in replicated setups with tunable levels of transparency to the user. By default, a `Mongo` connection object will ignore failures of secondaries, and only reads will throw `MongoException`s when the primary node is unreachable.

The level of exception reporting is tunable however, using a specific `WriteConcern`; you can set this on the Mongo/DB/Collection/Method level. Several levels are included as static options:

- `WriteConcern.NONE` : No exceptions thrown.
- `WriteConcern.NORMAL` : Exceptions are only thrown when the primary node is unreachable for a read, or the full replica set is unreachable.
- `WriteConcern.SAFE` : Same as the above, but exceptions thrown when there is a server error on writes or reads. Calls `getLastError()`.
- `WriteConcern.REPLICAS_SAFE` : Tries to write to two separate nodes. Same as the above, but will throw an exception if two writes are not possible.
- `WriteConcern.FSYNC_SAFE` : Same as `WriteConcern.SAFE`, but also waits for write to be written to disk.

> ⚠ Additional errors may appear in the log files, these are for reporting purposes and logged based on the logging settings.

Sample code is provided which illustrates some of these options. To quickly initialize a sample replica set, you can use the `mongo` shell:

```
> var rst = new ReplSetTest({ nodes : 3 })
> rst.startSet() // wait for processes to start
> rst.initiate() // wait for replica set initialization
```

Java client code demonstrating error handling is available :

- https://github.com/mongodb/mongo-snippets/blob/master/java-examples/Test.java

C++ Language Center

A C++ driver is available for communicating with the MongoDB. As the database is written in C++, the driver actually uses some core MongoDB code -- this is the same driver that the database uses itself for replication.

The driver has been compiled successfully on Linux, OS X, Windows, and Solaris.

- Downloading the Driver
- Compling and Linking
- MongoDB C++ Client Tutorial
- API Documentation
- Using BSON from C++
- SQL to C++ Mapping Chart
- HOWTO
  - Connecting
  - getLastError
  - Tailable Cursors
  - BSON Arrays in C++
- Mongo Database and C++ Driver Source Code (at github). See the client subdirectory for client driver related files.

Additional Notes

- The Building documentation covers compiling the entire database, but some of the notes there may be helpful for compiling client applications too.
- There is also a pure C driver for MongoDB. For true C++ apps we recommend using the C++ driver.

BSON Arrays in C++

```
// examples

using namespace mongo;
using namespace bson;

bo an_obj;

/** transform a BSON array into a vector of BSONElements.
    we match array # positions with their vector position, and ignore
    any fields with non-numeric field names.
*/
vector<be> a = an_obj["x"].Array();

be array = an_obj["x"];
assert( array.isABSONObj() );
assert( array.type() == Array );

// Use BSON_ARRAY macro like BSON macro, but without keys
BSONArray arr = BSON_ARRAY( "hello" << 1 << BSON( "foo" << BSON_ARRAY( "bar" << "baz" << "qux" ) ) );

// BSONArrayBuilder can be used to build arrays without the macro
BSONArrayBuilder b;
b.append(1).append(2).arr();

/** add all elements of the object to the specified vector */
bo myarray = an_obj["x"].Obj();
vector<be> v;
myarray.elems(v);
list<be> L;
myarray.elems(L)


/** add all values of the object to the specified collection.  If type mismatches,
    exception.
        template <class T>
        void Vals(vector<T> &) const;
        template <class T>
        void Vals(list<T> &) const;
*/

/** add all values of the object to the specified collection.  If type mismatches, skip.
        template <class T>
        void vals(vector<T> &) const;
        template <class T>
        void vals(list<T> &) const;
*/
```

C++ BSON Library

- Standalone Usage
- API Docs
- Short Class Names

The MongoDB C++ driver library includes a bson package that implements the BSON specification (see http://www.bsonspec.org/). This library can be used standalone for object serialization and deserialization even when one is not using MongoDB at all.

Include `bson/bson.h` or `db/jsobj.h` in your application (not both). `bson.h` is new and may not work in some situations, was is good for light header-only usage of BSON (see the bsondemo.cpp example).

Key classes:

- mongo::BSONObj (aka bson::bo) a BSON object
- mongo::BSONElement (bson::be) a single element in a bson object. This is a key and a value.
- mongo::BSONObjBuilder (bson::bob) used to make BSON objects

- mongo::BSONObjIterator (bson::bo::iterator) to enumerate BSON objects

Let's now create a BSON "person" object which contains name and age. We might invoke:

```
BSONObjBuilder b;
b.append("name", "Joe");
b.append("age", 33);
BSONObj p = b.obj();
```

Or more concisely:

```
BSONObj p = BSONObjBuilder().append("name", "Joe").append("age", 33).obj();
```

We can also create objects with a stream-oriented syntax:

```
BSONObjBuilder b;
b << "name" << "Joe" << "age" << 33;
BSONObj p = b.obj();
```

The macro BSON lets us be even more compact:

```
BSONObj p = BSON( "name" << "Joe" << "age" << 33 );
```

Use the GENOID helper to add an object id to your object. The server will add an _id automatically if it is not included explicitly.

```
BSONObj p = BSON( GENOID << "name" << "Joe" << "age" << 33 );
// result is: { _id : ..., name : "Joe", age : 33 }
```

GENOID should be at the beginning of the generated object. We can do something similar with the non-stream builder syntax:

```
BSONObj p =
  BSONObjBuilder().genOID().append("name","Joe").append("age",33).obj();
```

Standalone Usage

You can use the C++ BSON library without MongoDB. Most BSON methods under the `bson/` directory are header-only. They require boost, but headers only.

See the bsondemo.cpp example at github.com.

API Docs

- http://api.mongodb.org/cplusplus/

Short Class Names

Add

```
using namespace bson;
```

to your code to use the following shorter more C++ style names for the BSON classes:

```
// from bsonelement.h
namespace bson {
    typedef mongo::BSONElement be;
    typedef mongo::BSONObj bo;
    typedef mongo::BSONObjBuilder bob;
}
```

(Or one could use `bson::bo` fully qualified for example).

Also available is `bo::iterator` as a synonym for `BSONObjIterator`.

C++ Driver Compiling and Linking

- Linux
  - Using the prebuilt library
  - Using mongo_client_lib.cpp instead of a library
- Windows
  - Windows Troubleshooting

The C++ driver is included in the MongoDB server source repository, and can also be downloaded as a separate, "standalone" tarball (see Downloads). To compile the "standalone" C++ driver, run the scons command in the top-level directory of the driver sources, e.g.:

```
cd mongo-cxx-driver-nightly/
scons
```

You may wish to compile and link client/simple_client_demo.cpp to verify that everything compiles and links fine.

Linux

Using the prebuilt library

```
$ cd mongo/client
$ g++ simple_client_demo.cpp -lmongoclient -lboost_thread-mt -lboost_filesystem
-lboost_program_options
```

Using mongo_client_lib.cpp instead of a library

If you have a compatibility problem with the library, include mongo_client_lib.cpp in your project instead. For example:

```
g++ -I .. simple_client_demo.cpp mongo_client_lib.cpp -lboost_thread-mt -lboost_filesystem
```

Windows

Note: we tend to test MongoDB with Windows using Visual Studio 2010. 2008 works, although you may have to tweak settings in some cases.

Include mongoclient.lib in your application.

To build mongoclient.lib:

```
scons mongoclient
```

Alternatively, include client/mongo_client_lib.cpp in your project.

For windows, see also:

- bson/bsondemo/bsondemo.vcxproj
- client/examples/simple_client_demo.vcxproj (v1.9+)
- Prebuilt Boost Libraries
- Building with Visual Studio 2010

Other notes for Windows:

- Add the following to your project's VC++ Include Directories:
    - the mongo project's top directory location
    - pcre-7.4/ under the mongo project's top directory location
    - the location of your boost installation. For example c:\boost\.
- You may wish to define _CRT_SECURE_NO_WARNINGS to avoid warnings on use of strncpy and such by the MongoDB client code.
- Include the WinSock library in your application : Linker.Input.Additional Dependencies - add ws2_32.lib.

Windows Troubleshooting

- error LNK2005: ___ already defined in msvcprt.lib(MSVCP100.dll) libboost_thread-vc100-mt-1_42.lib(thread.obj)
    - The boost library being linked against is expecting a /MT build. If this is a release build, try using /MT instead of /MD for compilation (under Properties.C++.Code Generation).

C++ Driver Download

Driver tarballs

The C++ client library can be found at http://dl.mongodb.org/dl/cxx-driver/.

Note: despite the word 'linux' in the filenames, these files are mostly source code and thus should be applicable to all operating systems.

From the server source code

If you have the full MongoDB source code, the driver code is part of it. This is available on github and also on the MongoDB Downloads page.

The full server source is quite large, so the tarballs above may be easier. Also if using the full server source tree, use "scons mongoclient" to build just the client library.

Next : Compiling and Linking

C++ getLastError

- string mongo::DBClientWithCommands::getLastError();
    - Get error result from the last operation on this connection. Empty string if no error.

- BSONObj DBClientWithCommands::getLastErrorDetailed();
    - Get the full last error object. See the getLastError Command page for details.

See client/simple_client_demo.cpp for an example.

See Also

- getLastError Command

C++ Tutorial

- Installing the Driver Library and Headers
    - Unix
        - Full Database Source Driver Build
        - Driver Build
    - Windows
- Compiling
- Writing Client Code
    - Connecting
    - BSON
    - Inserting
    - Querying
    - Indexing
    - Sorting
    - Updating
- Further Reading

This document is an introduction to usage of the MongoDB database from a C++ program.

First, install Mongo -- see the Quickstart for details.

Next, you may wish to take a look at the Developer's Tour guide for a language independent look at how to use MongoDB. Also, we suggest some basic familiarity with the `mongo shell` -- the shell is one's primary database administration tool and is useful for manually inspecting the contents of a database after your C++ program runs.

Installing the Driver Library and Headers

A good source for general information about setting up a MongoDB development environment on various operating systems is the building page.

The normal database distribution used to include the C++ driver, but there were many problems with library version mismatches so now you have to build from source. You can either get the full source code for the database and just build the C++ driver or download the driver separately and build it.

Unix

For Unix, the Mongo driver library is `libmongoclient.a`. For either build, run `scons --help` to see all options.

Full Database Source Driver Build

To install the libraries, run:

```
scons --full install
```

`--full` tells the install target to include the library and header files; by default library and header files are installed in */usr/local*.

You can use `--prefix` to change the install path: `scons --prefix /opt/mongo --full install`. You can also specify `--sharedclient` to build a shared library instead of a statically linked library.

Driver Build

If you download the driver source code separately, you can build it by running `scons` (no options).

Windows

For more information on Boost setup see the Building for Windows page.

Compiling

The C++ drivers requires the pcre and boost libraries (with headers) to compile. Be sure they are in your include and lib paths. You can usually install them from your OS's package manager if you don't already have them.

Writing Client Code

Note: for brevity, the examples below are simply inline code. In a real application one will define classes for each database object typically.

Connecting

Let's make a tutorial.cpp file that connects to the database (see client/examples/tutorial.cpp for full text of the examples below):

```
#include <iostream>
#include "client/dbclient.h"

using namespace mongo;

void run() {
  DBClientConnection c;
  c.connect("localhost");
}

int main() {
  try {
    run();
    cout << "connected ok" << endl;
  } catch( DBException &e ) {
    cout << "caught " << e.what() << endl;
  }
  return 0;
}
```

If you are using gcc on Linux or OS X, you would compile with something like this, depending on location of your include files and libraries:

```
$ g++ tutorial.cpp -lmongoclient -lboost_thread -lboost_filesystem -lboost_program_options -o tutorial
$ ./tutorial
connected ok
$
```

- Depending on your boost version you might need to link against the *boost_system* library as well: **-lboost_system**.
- You may need to append "-mt" to boost_filesystem and boost_program_options. If using a recent boost, "-mt" is not needed anymore.
- Of course, you may need to use -I and -L to specify the locations of your mongo and boost headers and libraries.

BSON

The Mongo database stores data in BSON format. BSON is a binary object format that is JSON-like in terms of the data which can be stored (some extensions exist, for example, a Date datatype).

To save data in the database we must create objects of class BSONObj. The components of a BSONObj are represented as BSONElement objects. We use BSONObjBuilder to make BSON objects, and BSONObjIterator to enumerate BSON objects.

Let's now create a BSON "person" object which contains name and age. We might invoke:

```
BSONObjBuilder b;
b.append("name", "Joe");
b.append("age", 33);
BSONObj p = b.obj();
```

Or more concisely:

```
BSONObj p = BSONObjBuilder().append("name", "Joe").append("age", 33).obj();
```

We can also create objects with a stream-oriented syntax:

```
BSONObjBuilder b;
b << "name" << "Joe" << "age" << 33;
BSONObj p = b.obj();
```

The macro BSON lets us be even more compact:

```
BSONObj p = BSON( "name" << "Joe" << "age" << 33 );
```

Use the GENOID helper to add an object id to your object. The server will add an _id automatically if it is not included explicitly.

```
BSONObj p = BSON( GENOID << "name" << "Joe" << "age" << 33 );
// result is: { _id : ..., name : "Joe", age : 33 }
```

GENOID should be at the beginning of the generated object. We can do something similar with the non-stream builder syntax:

```
BSONObj p =
  BSONObjBuilder().genOID().append("name","Joe").append("age",33).obj();
```

Inserting

We now save our person object in a persons collection in the database:

```
c.insert("tutorial.persons", p);
```

The first parameter to insert is the namespace. tutorial is the database and persons is the collection name.

Querying

Let's now fetch all objects from the persons collection, and display them. We'll also show here how to use count().

```
cout << "count:" << c.count("tutorial.persons") << endl;

  auto_ptr<DBClientCursor> cursor =
    c.query("tutorial.persons", emptyObj);
  while( cursor->more() )
      cout << cursor->next().toString() << endl;
```

emptyObj is the empty BSON object -- we use it to represent {} which indicates an empty query pattern (an empty query is a query for all objects).

We use BSONObj::toString() above to print out information about each object retrieved. BSONObj::toString is a diagnostic function which prints an abbreviated JSON string representation of the object. For full JSON output, use BSONObj::jsonString.

Let's now write a function which prints out the name (only) of all persons in the collection whose age is a given value:

```
void printIfAge(DBClientConnection&c, int age) {
  auto_ptr<DBClientCursor> cursor =
    c.query("tutorial.persons", QUERY( "age" << age ) );
  while( cursor->more() ) {
    BSONObj p = cursor->next();
    cout << p.getStringField("name") << endl;
  }
}
```

getStringField() is a helper that assumes the "name" field is of type string. To manipulate an element in a more generic fashion we can retrieve the particular BSONElement from the enclosing object:

```
BSONElement name = p["name"];
// or:
//BSONElement name = p.getField("name");
```

See the api docs, and jsobj.h, for more information.

Our query above, written as JSON, is of the form

```
{ age : <agevalue> }
```

Queries are BSON objects of a particular format -- in fact, we could have used the BSON() macro above instead of QUERY(). See class Query in dbclient.h for more information on Query objects, and the Sorting section below.

In the mongo shell (which uses javascript), we could invoke:

```
use tutorial;
db.persons.find( { age : 33 } );
```

Indexing

Let's suppose we want to have an index on age so that our queries are fast. We would use:

```
c.ensureIndex("tutorial.persons", fromjson("{age:1}"));
```

The ensureIndex method checks if the index exists; if it does not, it is created. ensureIndex is intelligent and does not repeat transmissions to the server; thus it is safe to call it many times in your code, for example, adjacent to every insert operation.

In the above example we use a new function, fromjson. fromjson converts a JSON string to a BSONObj. This is sometimes a convenient way to specify BSON. Alternatively we could have written:

```
c.ensureIndex("tutorial.persons", BSON( "age" << 1 ));
```

Sorting

Let's now make the results from printIfAge sorted alphabetically by name. To do this, we change the query statement from:

```
auto_ptr<DBClientCursor> cursor = c.query("tutorial.persons", QUERY( "age" << age ) );
```

to

```
to  auto_ptr<DBClientCursor> cursor = c.query("tutorial.persons", QUERY( "age" << age ).sort("name")
);
```

Here we have used Query::sort() to add a modifier to our query expression for sorting.

Updating

Use the update() method to perform a database update . For example the following update in the mongo shell :

```
> use tutorial
> db.persons.update( { name : 'Joe', age : 33 },
...                  { $inc : { visits : 1 } } )
```

is equivalent to the following C++ code:

```
db.update( "tutorial.persons" ,
           BSON( "name" << "Joe" << "age" << 33 ),
           BSON( "$inc" << BSON( "visits" << 1 ) ) );
```

Further Reading

This overview just touches on the basics of using Mongo from C++. There are many more capabilities. For further exploration:

- See the language-independent Developer's Tour;
- Experiment with the `mongo` shell;

- Review the doxygen API docs;
- See connecting pooling information in the API docs;
- See GridFS file storage information in the API docs;
- See the HOWTO pages under the C++ Language Center
- Consider getting involved to make the product (either C++ driver, tools, or the database itself) better!

Connecting

The C++ driver includes several classes for managing collections under the parent class DBClientInterface.

DBClientConnection is our normal connection class for a connection to a single MongoDB database server (or shard manager). Other classes exist for connecting to a replica set.

See http://api.mongodb.org/cplusplus/ for details on each of the above classes.

Perl Language Center

- Installing
  - CPAN
  - Manual (Non-CPAN) Installation
  - Big-Endian Systems
- Next Steps
- MongoDB Perl Tools
  - `Entities::Backend::MongoDB`
  - `MojoX::Session::Store::MongoDB`
  - `MongoDB::Admin`
  - `Mongoose`
  - `MongoDBx-Class`
  - `Mongrel`
  - `MongoX`

Installing

> Start a MongoDB server instance (`mongod`) before installing so that the tests will pass. The `mongod` cannot be running as a slave for the tests to pass.
>
> Some tests may be skipped, depending on the version of the database you are running.

CPAN

```
$ sudo cpan MongoDB
```

The Perl driver is available through CPAN as the package `MongoDB`. It should build cleanly on *NIX and Windows (via Strawberry Perl). It is also available as an ActivePerl module.

Manual (Non-CPAN) Installation

If you would like to try the latest code or are contributing to the Perl driver, it is available at Github. There is also documentation generated after every commit.

You can see if it's a good time to grab the bleeding edge code by seeing if the build is green.

To build the driver, run:

```
$ perl Makefile.PL
$ make
$ make test # make sure mongod is running, first
$ sudo make install
```

Please note that the tests will not pass without a `mongod` process running.

Note that the Perl driver requires some libraries available in CPAN. As of April, 2010, these are Any::Moose, Class::Method::Modifiers, Data::Types, DateTime, File::Slurp, Test::Exception, Try::Tiny, boolean, and Module::Install. (Additionally, Tie::IxHash is required for testing.) On

Debian or Ubuntu systems, these prerequisites can be easily installed with the following command:

```
$ sudo apt-get install libmodule-install-perl libany-moose-perl libclass-method-modifiers-perl
libdata-types-perl libdatetime-perl libfile-slurp-perl libtest-exception-perl libtry-tiny-perl
libboolean-perl libtie-ixhash-perl
```

Big-Endian Systems

The driver will work on big-endian machines, but the database will not. The tests assume that `mongod` will be running on localhost unless %ENV{MONGOD} is set. So, to run the tests, start the database on a little-endian machine (at, say, "example.com") and then run the tests with:

```
MONGOD=example.com make test
```

A few tests that require a database server on "localhost" will be skipped.

Next Steps

There is a tutorial and API documentation on CPAN.

If you're interested in contributing to the Perl driver, check out Contributing to the Perl Driver.

MongoDB Perl Tools

`Entities::Backend::MongoDB`

`Entities::Backend::MongoDB` is a backend for the Entities user management and authorization system stores all entities and relations between them in a MongoDB database, using the MongoDB module. This is a powerful, fast backend that gives you all the features of MongoDB.

`MojoX::Session::Store::MongoDB`

`MojoX::Session::Store::MongoDB` is a store for `MojoX::Session` that stores a session in a MongoDB database. Created by Ask Bjørn Hansen.

`MongoDB::Admin`

`MongoDB::Admin` is a collection of MongoDB administrative functions. Created by David Burley.

`Mongoose`

`Mongoose` is an attempt to bring together the full power of Moose with MongoDB. Created by Rodrigo de Oliveira Gonzalez.

`MongoDBx-Class`

`MongoDBx-Class` is an ORM for MongoDB databases. MongoDBx::Class takes advantage of the fact that Perl's MongoDB driver is Moose-based to extend and tweak the driver's behavior, instead of wrapping it. This means MongoDBx::Class does not define its own syntax, so you simply use it exactly as you would the MongoDB driver directly. That said, MongoDBx::Class adds some sugar that enhances and simplifies the syntax unobtrusively (either use it or don't). Thus, it is relatively easy to convert your current MongoDB applications to MongoDBx::Class. A collection in MongoDBx::Class isa('MongoDB::Collection'), a database in MongoDBx::Class isa('MongoDB::Database'), etc. Created by Ido Perlmuter.

`Mongrel`

`Mongrel` provides a simple database abstraction layer for MongoDB. Mongrel uses the Oogly data validation framework to provide you with a simple way to create codebased schemas that have data validation built-in, etc.

`MongoX`

MongoX - DSL sugar for MongoDB

Contributing to the Perl Driver

The easiest way to contribute is to file bugs and feature requests on Jira.

If you would like to help code the driver, read on...

Finding Something to Help With

Fixing Bugs

You can choose a bug on Jira and fix it. Make a comment that you're working on it, to avoid overlap.

Writing Tests

The driver could use a lot more tests. We would be grateful for any and all tests people would like to write.

Adding Features

If you think a feature is missing from the driver, you're probably right. Check on IRC or the mailing list, then go ahead and create a Jira case and add the feature. The Perl driver was a bit neglected for a while (although it's now getting a lot of TLC) so it's missing a lot of things that the other drivers have. You can look through their APIs for ideas.

Contribution Guildlines

The best way to make changes is to create an account on [Github], fork the driver, make your improvements, and submit a merge request.

To make sure your changes are approved and speed things along:

- Write tests. Lots of tests.
- Document your code.
- Write POD, when applicable.

Bonus (for C programmers, particularly):

- Make sure your change works on Perl 5.8, 5.10, Windows, Mac, Linux, etc.

Code Layout

The important files:

```
| perl_mongo.c # serialization/deserialization
| mongo_link.c # connecting to, sending to, and receiving from the database
- lib
   - MongoDB
      | Connection.pm # connection, queries, inserts... everything comes through here
      | Database.pm
      | Collection.pm
      | Cursor.pm
      | OID.pm
      | GridFS.pm
      - GridFS
         | File.pm
- xs
   | Mongo.xs
   | Connection.xs
   | Cursor.xs
   | OID.xs
```

Perl Tutorial

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to http://search.cpan.org/dist/MongoDB/lib/MongoDB/Tutorial.pod.

Online API Documentation

MongoDB API and driver documentation is available online. It is updated daily.

- Java Driver API Documentation

- C++ Driver API Documentation
- Python Driver API Documentation
- Ruby Driver API Documentation
- PHP Driver API Documentation

Writing Drivers and Tools

See Also

- Mongo Query Language
- mongosniff
- --objcheck command line parameter

Overview - Writing Drivers and Tools

This section contains information for developers that are working with the low-level protocols of Mongo - people who are writing drivers and higher-level tools.

Documents of particular interest :

BSON http://bsonspec.org	Description of the BSON binary document format. Fundamental to how Mongo and it's client software works.
Mongo Wire Protocol	Specification for the basic socket communications protocol used between Mongo and clients.
Mongo Driver Requirements	Description of what functionality is expected from a Mongo Driver
GridFS Specification	Specification of GridFS - a convention for storing large objects in Mongo
Mongo Extended JSON	Description of the extended JSON protocol for the REST-ful interface (ongoing development)

Additionally we recommend driver authors take a look at existing driver source code as an example.

Back to driver development home page

Mongo Driver Requirements

This is a high-level list of features that a driver for MongoDB might provide. We attempt to group those features by priority. This list should be taken with a grain of salt, and probably used more for inspiration than as law that must be adhered to. A great way to learn about implementing a driver is by reading the source code of any of the existing drivers, especially the ones listed as "mongodb.org supported".

High priority

- BSON serialization/deserialization
- full cursor support (e.g. support OP_GET_MORE operation)
- close exhausted cursors via OP_KILL_CURSORS
- support for running database commands
- handle query errors
- convert all strings to UTF-8 (part of proper support for BSON)
- hint, explain, count, $where
- database profiling: set/get profiling level, get profiling info
- advanced connection management (replica sets, slave okay)
- automatic reconnection

Medium priority

- validate a collection in a database
- buffer pooling
- Tailable cursor support

A driver should be able to connect to a single server. By default this must be `localhost:27017`, and must also allow the server to be specified by hostname and port.

```
Mongo m = new Mongo();   // go to localhost, default port
```

```
Mongo m = new Mongo(String host, int port);
```

How the driver does this is up to the driver - make it idiomatic. However, a driver should make it explicit and clear what is going on.

Replica Sets

A driver must be able to support "Replica-Set" configurations, where more than one mongod servers are specified, and configured for hot-failover.

The driver should determine which of the nodes is the current master, and send all operations to that server. In the event of an error, either socket error or a "not a master" error, the driver must restart the determination process.

1. **Cluster Mode** Connect to master in master-slave cluster

```
ServerCluster sc = new ServerCluster(INETAddr...); // again, give one and discover?
Mongo m = new Mongo(sc);
```

Connect to slave in read-only mode in master-slave cluster

```
ServerCluster sc = new ServerCluster(INETAddr...); // again, give one and discover?
sc.setTarget(...)
Mongo m = new Mongo(sc);

or maybe make it like *Default/Simple* w/ a flag?
```

Other than that, we need a way to get a DB object :

```
Mongo m = new Mongo();

DB db = m.getDB(name);
```

And a list of db names (useful for tools...) :

```
List<String> getDBNameList();
```

Database Object

Simple operations on a database object :

```
/**
 *  get name of database
 */
String    dbName = db.getName();

/**
 * Get a list of all the collection names in this database
 */
List<String> cols = db.getCollectionNames();

/**
 * get a collection object.  Can optionally create it if it
 *  doesn't exist, or just  be strict.  (XJDM has strictness as an option)
 */
Collection coll = db.getCollection(string);

/**
 * Create a collection w/ optional options.  Can fault
 * if the collection exists, or can just return it if it already does
 */
Collection coll = db.createCollection( string);
Collection coll = db.createCollection( string, options);

/**
 * Drop a collection by its name or by collection object.
 * Driver could invalidate any outstanding Collection objects
 * for that collection, or just hope for the best.
 */
boolean  b  = db.dropCollection(name);
boolean  b  = db.dropCollection(Collection);

/**
 * Execute a command on the database, returning the
 * BSON doc with the results
 */
Document d = db.executeCommand(command);

/**
 * Close the [logical] database
 */
void  db.close();

/**
 * Erase / drop an entire database
 */
bool dropDatabase(dbname)
```

Database Administration

These methods have to do with database metadata: profiling levels and collection validation. Each admin object is associated with a database. These methods could either be built into the Database class or provided in a separate Admin class whose instances are only available from a database instance.

```
/* get an admin object from a database object. */
Admin admin = db.getAdmin();

/**
 * Get profiling level. Returns one of the strings "off", "slowOnly", or
 * "all". Note that the database returns an integer. This method could
 * return an int or an enum instead --- in Ruby, for example, we return
 * symbols.
 */
String profilingLevel = admin.getProfilingLevel();

/**
 * Set profiling level. Takes whatever getProfilingLevel() returns.
 */
admin.setProfilingLevel("off");

/**
 * Retrieves the database's profiling info.
 */
Document profilingInfo = admin.getProfilingInfo();

/**
 * Returns true if collection is valid; raises an exception if not.
 */
boolean admin.validateCollection(collectionName);
```

Collection Basic Ops

```
/**
 *   full query capabilities - limit, skip, returned fields, sort, etc
 */
Cursor        find(...);

void          insert(...) // insert one or more objects into the collection, local variants on args
void          remove(query) // remove objects that match the query
void          update(selector, modifier)  // modify all objects that match selector w/ modifier object
void          updateFirst(selector, object)   // replace first object that match selector w/ specified
object
void          upsert(selector, object)   // replace first object that matches, or insert
long          getCount();
long          getCount(query);
```

Index Operations

```
void          createIndex( index_info)
void          dropIndex(name)
void          dropIndexes()
List<info>    getIndexInformation()
```

Misc Operations

```
document      explain(query)
options       getOptions();
string        getName();
void          close();
```

Cursor Object

```
document      getNextDocument()
iterator      getIterator()  // again, local to language
bool          hasMore()
void          close()
```

Spec, Notes and Suggestions for Mongo Drivers

Assume that the BSON objects returned from the database may be up to 16MB. This size may change over time.

See Also

- Driver Requirements
- BSON
- The main Database Internals page

Feature Checklist for Mongo Drivers

Functionality Checklist

This section lists tasks the driver author might handle.

Essential

- BSON serialization/deserialization
- Basic operations: `query`, `insert`, `update`, `remove`, `ensureIndex`, `findOne`, `limit`, `sort`
- Fetch more data from a cursor when necessary (dbGetMore)
- Sending of KillCursors operation when use of a cursor has completed (ideally for efficiently these are sent in batches)
- Convert all strings to utf8
- Authentication

Recommended

- automatic _id generation
- Database $cmd support and helpers
- Detect { `$err: ...` } response from a db query and handle appropriately --see Error Handling in Mongo Drivers
- [Automatically connect to proper server, and failover], when connecting to a Replica Set
- `ensureIndex` commands should be cached to prevent excessive communication with the database. (Or, the driver user should be informed that `ensureIndex` is not a lightweight operation for the particular driver.)
- Support detecting max BSON size on connection (e.g., using `buildinfo` or `isMaster` commands) and allowing users to insert docs up to that size.

More Recommended

- lasterror helper functions
- `count()` helper function
- `$where` clause
- `eval()`
- File chunking (GridFS)
- hint fields
- explain helper

More Optional

- `addUser`, `logout` helpers
- Allow client user to specify Option_SlaveOk for a query
- Tailable cursor support
- In/out buffer pooling (if implementing in a garbage collected languages)

More Optional

- [connection pooling]
- Automatic reconnect on connection failure
- DBRef Support:
    - Ability to generate easily
    - Automatic traversal

See Also

- The Driver and Integration Center for information about the latest drivers
- The [top page] for this section
- The main Database Internals page
- The starting point for all Home

Conventions for Mongo Drivers

Interface Conventions

It is desirable to keep driver interfaces consistent when possible. Of course, idioms vary by language, and when they do adaptation is appropriate. However, when the idiom is the same, keeping the interfaces consistent across drivers is desirable.

Terminology

In general, use these terms when naming identifiers. Adapt the names to the normal "punctuation" style of your language `-- foo_bar` in C might be `fooBar` in Java.

- *database* - what does this mean?
- *collection*
- *index*

Driver Testing Tools

Object IDs

- driverOIDTest for testing toString

```
> db.runCommand( { "driverOIDTest" : new ObjectId() } )
{
        "oid" : ObjectId("4b8991f221752a6e61a88267"),
        "str" : "4b8991f221752a6e61a88267",
        "ok" : 1
}
```

Mongo Wire Protocol

- Introduction
- Messages Types and Formats
  - Standard Message Header
  - Request Opcodes
- Client Request Messages
  - OP_UPDATE
  - OP_INSERT
  - OP_QUERY
  - OP_GETMORE
  - OP_DELETE
  - OP_KILL_CURSORS
  - OP_MSG
- Database Response Messages
  - OP_REPLY

Introduction

The Mongo Wire Protocol is a simple socket-based, request-response style protocol. Clients communicate with the database server through a regular TCP/IP socket.

> **Default Socket Port**
> The default port is 27017, but this is configurable and will vary.

Clients should connect to the database with a regular TCP/IP socket. Currently, there is no connection handshake.

To describe the message structure, a C-like `struct` is used. The types used in this document (`cstring`, `int32`, etc.) are the same as those defined in the BSON specification. The standard message header is typed as `MsgHeader`. Integer constants are in capitals (e.g. `ZERO` for the integer value of 0).

In the case where more than one of something is possible (like in a OP_INSERT or OP_KILL_CURSORS), we again use the notation from the BSON specification (e.g. `int64*`). This simply indicates that one or more of the specified type can be written to the socket, one after another.

Byte Ordering
Note that like BSON documents, all data in the mongo wire protocol is little-endian.

Messages Types and Formats

TableOfContents

There are two types of messages, client requests and database responses, each having a slightly different structure.

Standard Message Header

In general, each message consists of a standard message header followed by request-specific data. The standard message header is structured as follows :

```
struct MsgHeader {
    int32   messageLength; // total message size, including this
int32   requestID;     // identifier for this message
int32   responseTo;    // requestID from the original request
//   (used in reponses from db)
int32   opCode;        // request type - see table below
}
```

`messageLength` : This is the total size of the message in bytes. This total includes the 4 bytes that holds the message length.

`requestID` : This is a client or database-generated identifier that uniquely identifies this message. For the case of client-generated messages (e.g. CONTRIB:OP_QUERY and CONTRIB:OP_GET_MORE), it will be returned in the `responseTo` field of the CONTRIB:OP_REPLY message. Along with the `reponseTo` field in responses, clients can use this to associate query responses with the originating query.

`responseTo` : In the case of a message from the database, this will be the requestID taken from the CONTRIB:OP_QUERY or CONTRIB:OP_GET_MORE messages from the client. Along with the `requestID` field in queries, clients can use this to associate query responses with the originating query.

`opCode` : Type of message. See the table below in the next section.

Request Opcodes

TableOfContents

The following are the currently supported opcodes :

Opcode Name	opCode value	Comment
OP_REPLY	1	Reply to a client request. responseTo is set
OP_MSG	1000	generic msg command followed by a string
OP_UPDATE	2001	update document
OP_INSERT	2002	insert new document
RESERVED	2003	formerly used for OP_GET_BY_OID
OP_QUERY	2004	query a collection
OP_GET_MORE	2005	Get more data from a query. See Cursors
OP_DELETE	2006	Delete documents

OP_KILL_CURSORS	2007	Tell database client is done with a cursor

Client Request Messages

TableOfContents

Clients can send all messages except for CONTRIB:OP_REPLY. This is reserved for use by the database.

Note that only the CONTRIB:OP_QUERY and CONTRIB:OP_GET_MORE messages result in a response from the database. There will be no response sent for any other message.

You can determine if a message was successful with a getLastError command.

OP_UPDATE

The OP_UPDATE message is used to update a document in a collection. The format of a OP_UPDATE message is

```
struct OP_UPDATE {
    MsgHeader header;             // standard message header
int32     ZERO;               // 0 - reserved for future use
cstring   fullCollectionName; // "dbname.collectionname"
int32     flags;              // bit vector. see below
document  selector;           // the query to select the document
document  update;             // specification of the update to perform
}
```

`fullCollectionName` : The full collection name. The full collection name is the concatenation of the database name with the collection name, using a "." for the concatenation. For example, for the database "foo" and the collection "bar", the full collection name is "foo.bar".

`flags` :

bit num	name	description
0	Upsert	If set, the database will insert the supplied object into the collection if no matching document is found.
1	MultiUpdate	If set, the database will update all matching objects in the collection. Otherwise only updates first matching doc.
2-31	Reserved	Must be set to 0.

`selector` : BSON document that specifies the query for selection of the document to update.

`update` : BSON document that specifies the update to be performed. For information on specifying updates see the documentation on Updating.

There is no response to an OP_UPDATE message.

OP_INSERT

The OP_INSERT message is used to insert one or more documents into a collection. The format of the OP_INSERT message is

```
struct {
    MsgHeader header;             // standard message header
int32     flags;              // bit vector - see below
cstring   fullCollectionName; // "dbname.collectionname"
document* documents;          // one or more documents to insert into the collection
}
```

`fullCollectionName` : The full collection name. The full collection name is the concatenation of the database name with the collection name, using a "." for the concatenation. For example, for the database "foo" and the collection "bar", the full collection name is "foo.bar".

`documents` : One or more documents to insert into the collection. If there are more than one, they are written to the socket in sequence, one after another.

`flags` :

bit num	name	description

0	KeepGoing	If set, the database will not stop processing a bulk insert if one fails (eg due to duplicate IDs). This makes bulk insert behave similarly to a series of single inserts, except lastError will be set if any insert fails, not just the last one. (new in 1.9.1)
1-31	Reserved	Must be set to 0.

There is no response to an OP_INSERT message.

OP_QUERY

The OP_QUERY message is used to query the database for documents in a collection. The format of the OP_QUERY message is :

```
struct OP_QUERY {
    MsgHeader header;                // standard message header
int32     flags;                  // bit vector of query options.  See below for details.
cstring   fullCollectionName;    // "dbname.collectionname"
int32     numberToSkip;          // number of documents to skip
int32     numberToReturn;        // number of documents to return
//  in the first OP_REPLY batch
document  query;                 // query object.  See below for details.
[ document  returnFieldSelector; ] // Optional. Selector indicating the fields
//  to return.  See below for details.
}
```

`flags` :

bit num	name	description
0	Reserved	Must be set to 0.
1	TailableCursor	Tailable means cursor is not closed when the last data is retrieved. Rather, the cursor marks the final object's position. You can resume using the cursor later, from where it was located, if more data were received. Like any "latent cursor", the cursor may become invalid at some point (CursorNotFound) – for example if the final object it references were deleted.
2	SlaveOk	Allow query of replica slave. Normally these return an error except for namespace "local".
3	OplogReplay	Internal replication use only - driver should not set
4	NoCursorTimeout	The server normally times out idle cursors after an inactivity period (10 minutes) to prevent excess memory use. Set this option to prevent that.
5	AwaitData	Use with TailableCursor. If we are at the end of the data, block for a while rather than returning no data. After a timeout period, we do return as normal.
6	Exhaust	Stream the data down full blast in multiple "more" packages, on the assumption that the client will fully read all data queried. Faster when you are pulling a lot of data and know you want to pull it all down. Note: the client is not allowed to not read all the data unless it closes the connection.
7	Partial	Get partial results from a `mongos` if some shards are down (instead of throwing an error)
8-31	Reserved	Must be set to 0.

`fullCollectionName` : The full collection name. The full collection name is the concatenation of the database name with the collection name, using a "." for the concatenation. For example, for the database "foo" and the collection "bar", the full collection name is "foo.bar".

`numberToSkip` : Sets the number of documents to omit - starting from the first document in the resulting dataset - when returning the result of the query.

`numberToReturn` : Limits the number of documents in the **first** CONTRIB:OP_REPLY message to the query. However, the database will still establish a cursor and return the `cursorID` to the client if there are more results than `numberToReturn`. If the client driver offers 'limit' functionality (like the SQL **LIMIT** keyword), then it is up to the client driver to ensure that no more than the specified number of document are returned to the calling application. If `numberToReturn` is 0, the db will used the default return size. If the number is negative, then the database will return that number and close the cursor. No futher results for that query can be fetched. If `numberToReturn` is 1 the server will treat it as -1 (closing the cursor automatically).

`query` : BSON document that represents the query. The query will contain one or more elements, all of which must match for a document to be included in the result set. Possible elements include `$query`, `$orderby`, `$hint`, `$explain`, and `$snapshot`.

`returnFieldsSelector` : OPTIONAL BSON document that limits the fields in the returned documents. The returnFieldsSelector contains one

or more elements, each of which is the name of a field that should be returned, and and the integer value 1. In JSON notation, a returnFieldsSelector to limit to the fields "a", "b" and "c" would be :

```
{ a : 1, b : 1, c : 1}
```

The database will respond to an OP_QUERY message with an CONTRIB:OP_REPLY message.

OP_GETMORE

The OP_GETMORE message is used to query the database for documents in a collection. The format of the OP_GETMORE message is :

```
struct {
    MsgHeader header;             // standard message header
int32     ZERO;               // 0 - reserved for future use
cstring   fullCollectionName; // "dbname.collectionname"
int32     numberToReturn;     // number of documents to return
int64     cursorID;           // cursorID from the OP_REPLY
}
```

`fullCollectionName` : The full collection name. The full collection name is the concatenation of the database name with the collection name, using a "." for the concatenation. For example, for the database "foo" and the collection "bar", the full collection name is "foo.bar".

`numberToReturn` : Limits the number of documents in the **first** CONTRIB:OP_REPLY message to the query. However, the database will still establish a cursor and return the `cursorID` to the client if there are more results than `numberToReturn`. If the client driver offers 'limit' functionality (like the SQL **LIMIT** keyword), then it is up to the client driver to ensure that no more than the specified number of document are returned to the calling application. If `numberToReturn` is 0, the db will used the default return size.

`cursorID` : Cursor identifier that came in the CONTRIB:OP_REPLY. This must be the value that came from the database.

The database will respond to an OP_GETMORE message with an CONTRIB:OP_REPLY message.

OP_DELETE

The OP_DELETE message is used to remove one or more messages from a collection. The format of the OP_DELETE message is :

```
struct {
    MsgHeader header;             // standard message header
int32     ZERO;               // 0 - reserved for future use
cstring   fullCollectionName; // "dbname.collectionname"
int32     flags;              // bit vector - see below for details.
document  selector;           // query object.  See below for details.
}
```

`fullCollectionName` : The full collection name. The full collection name is the concatenation of the database name with the collection name, using a "." for the concatenation. For example, for the database "foo" and the collection "bar", the full collection name is "foo.bar".

`flags` :

bit num	name	description
0	SingleRemove	If set, the database will remove only the first matching document in the collection. Otherwise all matching documents will be removed.
1-31	Reserved	Must be set to 0.

`selector` : BSON document that represent the query used to select the documents to be removed. The selector will contain one or more elements, all of which must match for a document to be removed from the collection. Please see $$$ TODO QUERY for more information.

There is no reponse to an OP_DELETE message.

OP_KILL_CURSORS

The OP_KILL_CURSORS message is used to close an active cursor in the database. This is necessary to ensure that database resources are reclaimed at the end of the query. The format of the OP_KILL_CURSORS message is :

```
struct {
    MsgHeader header;            // standard message header
int32     ZERO;              // 0 - reserved for future use
int32     numberOfCursorIDs; // number of cursorIDs in message
int64*    cursorIDs;         // sequence of cursorIDs to close
}
```

`numberOfCursorIDs` : The number of cursors that are in the message.

`cursorIDs` : "array" of cursor IDs to be closed. If there are more than one, they are written to the socket in sequence, one after another.

Note that if a cursor is read until exhausted (read until OP_QUERY or OP_GETMORE returns zero for the cursor id), there is no need to kill the cursor.

OP_MSG

Deprecated. OP_MSG sends a diagnostic message to the database. The database sends back a fixed resonse. The format is

```
struct {
    MsgHeader header;  // standard message header
cstring   message; // message for the database
}
```

Drivers do not need to implement OP_MSG.

Database Response Messages

TableOfContents

OP_REPLY

The OP_REPLY message is sent by the database in response to an CONTRIB:OP_QUERY or CONTRIB:OP_GET_MORE message. The format of an OP_REPLY message is:

```
struct {
    MsgHeader header;         // standard message header
int32     responseFlags;  // bit vector - see details below
int64     cursorID;       // cursor id if client needs to do get more's
int32     startingFrom;   // where in the cursor this reply is starting
int32     numberReturned; // number of documents in the reply
document* documents;      // documents
}
```

`responseFlags` :

bit num	name	description
0	CursorNotFound	Set when getMore is called but the cursor id is not valid at the server. Returned with zero results.
1	QueryFailure	Set when query failed. Results consist of one document containing an "$err" field describing the failure.
2	ShardConfigStale	Drivers should ignore this. Only mongos will ever see this set, in which case, it needs to update config from the server.
3	AwaitCapable	Set when the server supports the AwaitData Query option. If it doesn't, a client should sleep a little between getMore's of a Tailable cursor. Mongod version 1.6 supports AwaitData and thus always sets AwaitCapable.
4-31	Reserved	Ignore

`cursorID` : The cursorID that this OP_REPLY is a part of. In the event that the result set of the query fits into one OP_REPLY message, `cursorID` will be 0. This `cursorID` must be used in any CONTRIB:OP_GET_MORE messages used to get more data, and also must be closed by the client when no longer needed via a CONTRIB:OP_KILL_CURSORS message.

BSON

- bsonspec.org
- BSON and MongoDB
- Language-Specific Examples
  - C
  - C++
  - Java
  - PHP
  - Python
  - Ruby
- MongoDB Document Types

bsonspec.org

BSON is a bin-ary-en-coded seri-al-iz-a-tion of JSON-like doc-u-ments. BSON is designed to be lightweight, traversable, and efficient. BSON, like JSON, supports the embedding of objects and arrays within other objects and arrays. See bsonspec.org for the spec and more information in general.

BSON and MongoDB

MongoDB uses BSON as the data storage and network transfer format for "documents".

BSON at first seems BLOB-like, but there exists an important difference: the Mongo database understands BSON internals. This means that MongoDB can "reach inside " BSON objects, even nested ones. Among other things, this allows MongoDB to build indexes and match objects against query expressions on both top-level and nested BSON keys.

See also: the BSON blog post.

Language-Specific Examples

We often map from a language's "dictionary" type – which may be its native objects – to BSON. The mapping is particularly natural in dynamically typed languages:

```
JavaScript: {"foo" : "bar"}
Perl: {"foo" => "bar"}
PHP: array("foo" => "bar")
Python: {"foo" : "bar"}
Ruby: {"foo" => "bar"}
Java: DBObject obj = new BasicDBObject("foo", "bar");
```

C

```
bson b;
bson_buffer buf;
bson_buffer_init( &buf )
bson_append_string( &buf, "name", "Joe" );
bson_append_int( &buf, "age", 33 );
bson_from_buffer( &b, &buf );
bson_print( &b );
```

See http://github.com/mongodb/mongo-c-driver/blob/master/src/bson.h for more information.

C++

```
BSONObj p = BSON( "name" << "Joe" << "age" << 33 );
cout << p.toString() << endl;
cout << p["age"].number() << endl;
```

See the BSON section of the C++ Tutorial for more information.

Java

```
BasicDBObject doc = new BasicDBObject();
doc.put("name", "MongoDB");
doc.put("type", "database");
doc.put("count", 1);
BasicDBObject info = new BasicDBObject();
info.put("x", 203);
info.put("y", 102);
doc.put("info", info);
coll.insert(doc);
```

PHP

The PHP driver includes `bson_encode` and `bson_decode` functions. `bson_encode` takes any PHP type and serializes it, returning a string of bytes:

```
$bson = bson_encode(null);
$bson = bson_encode(true);
$bson = bson_encode(4);
$bson = bson_encode("hello, world");
$bson = bson_encode(array("foo" => "bar"));
$bson = bson_encode(new MongoDate());
```

Mongo-specific objects (`MongoId`, `MongoDate`, `MongoRegex`, `MongoCode`) will be encoded in their respective BSON formats. For other objects, it will create a BSON representation with the key/value pairs you would get by running `for ($object as $key => $value)`.

`bson_decode` takes a string representing a BSON object and parses it into an associative array.

Python

```
>>> from pymongo.bson import BSON
>>> bson_string = BSON.from_dict({"hello": "world"})
>>> bson_string
'\x16\x00\x00\x00\x02hello\x00\x06\x00\x00\x00world\x00\x00'
>>> bson_string.to_dict()
{u'hello': u'world'}
```

PyMongo also supports "ordered dictionaries" through the **pymongo.son** module. The **BSON** class can handle **SON** instances using the same methods you would use for regular dictionaries.

Ruby

There are now two gems that handle BSON-encoding: bson and bson_ext. These gems can be used to work with BSON independently of the MongoDB Ruby driver.

```
irb
>> require 'rubygems'
=> true
>> require 'bson'
=> true
>> doc = {:hello => "world"}
>> bson = BSON.serialize(doc).to_s
=> "\026\000\000\000\002hello\000\006\000\000\000world\000\000"
>> BSON.deserialize(bson.unpack("C*"))
=> {"hello" => "world"}
```

The BSON class also supports ordered hashes. Simply construct your documents using the OrderedHash class, also found in the MongoDB Ruby Driver.

MongoDB Document Types

MongoDB uses BSON documents for three things:

1. Data storage (user documents). These are the regular JSON-like objects that the database stores for us. These BSON documents are sent to the database via the INSERT operation. User documents have limitations on the "element name" space due to the usage of special characters in the JSON-like query language.
    a. A user document element name cannot begin with "$".
    b. A user document element name cannot have a "." in the name.
    c. The element name "_id" is reserved for use as a primary key id, but you can store anything that is unique in that field. The database expects that drivers will prevent users from creating documents that violate these constraints.
2. Query "Selector" Documents : Query documents (or selectors) are BSON documents that are used in QUERY, DELETE and UPDATE operations. They are used by these operations to match against documents. Selector objects have no limitations on the "element name" space, as they must be able to supply special "marker" elements, like "$where" and the special "command" operations.
3. "Modifier" Documents : Documents that contain 'modifier actions' that modify user documents in the case of an update (see Updating).

Mongo Extended JSON

Mongo's REST interface supports storage and retrieval of JSON documents. Special representations are used for BSON types that do not have obvious JSON mappings, and multiple representations are allowed for some such types. The REST interface supports three different modes for document output { Strict, JS, TenGen }, which serve to control the representations used. Mongo can of course understand all of these representations in REST input.

- **Strict** mode produces output conforming to the JSON spec http://www.json.org.
- **JS** mode uses some Javascript types to represent certain BSON types.
- **TenGen** mode uses some Javascript types and some 10gen specific types to represent certain BSON types.

The following BSON types are represented using special conventions:

Type	Strict	JS	TenGen	Explanati
data_binary	`{ "$binary" : "<bindata>" , "$type" : "<t>" }`	`{ "$binary" : "<bindata>", "$type" : "<t>" }`	`{ "$binary" : "<bindata>", "$type" : "<t>" }`	<bindata> the base64 representa of a binary string. <t> the hexadecim representa of a single indicating t data type.
data_date	`{ "$date" : <date> }`	`Date( <date> )`	`Date( <date> )`	<date> is t JSON representa of a 64 bit unsigned integer for millisecond since epoc
data_timestamp	`{ "$timestamp" : { <t>, <i> } }`	`Timestamp( <t>, <i> )`	`Timestamp( <t>, <i> )`	<t> is the JSON representa of a 64 bit unsigned integer for millisecond since epoc <i> is a 64 unsigned integer for increment.

data_regex	`{ "$regex" : "<sRegex>", "$options" : "<sOptions>" }`	`/<jRegex>/<jOptions>`	`/<jRegex>/<jOptions>`	<sRegex> string of va JSON characters <jRegex> i string that contain val JSON characters unescapec characters may not contain unescapec characters <sOptions: a string containing letters of th alphabet. <jOptions> string that contain on the charac 'g', 'i', and ' Because th JS and TenGen representa support a limited ran options, ar nonconforr options wil dropped w converting this representa
data_oid	`{ "$oid" : "<id>" }`	`{ "$oid" : "<id>" }`	`ObjectId( "<id>" )`	<id> is a 2 character hexadecim string. Not that these representa require a data_oid v to have an associated field name "_id".
data_ref	`{ "$ref" : "<name>", "$id" : "<id>" }`	`{ "$ref" : "<name>" , "$id" : "<id>" }`	`Dbref( "<name>", "<id>" )`	<name> is string of va JSON characters <id> is a 2 character hexadecim string.

GridFS Specification

- Introduction
- Specification
  - Storage Collections
    - `files`
    - `chunks`
  - Indexes

Introduction

GridFS is a storage specification for large objects in MongoDB. It works by splitting large object into small chunks, usually 256k in size. Each chunk is stored as a separate document in a `chunks` collection. Metadata about the file, including the filename, content type, and any optional information needed by the developer, is stored as a document in a `files` collection.

So for any given file stored using GridFS, there will exist one document in `files` collection and one or more documents in the `chunks` collection.

If you're just interested in using GridFS, see the docs on storing files. If you'd like to understand the GridFS implementation, read on.

Specification

Storage Collections

GridFS uses two collections to store data:

- `files` contains the object metadata
- `chunks` contains the binary chunks with some additional accounting information

In order to make more than one GridFS namespace possible for a single database, the files and chunks collections are named with a prefix. By default the prefix is `fs.`, so any default GridFS store will consist of collections named `fs.files` and `fs.chunks`. The drivers make it possible to change this prefix, so you might, for instance, have another GridFS namespace specifically for photos where the collections would be `photos.files` and `photos.chunks`.

Here's an example of the standard GridFS interface in Java:

```
/*
 * default root collection usage - must be supported
 */
GridFS myFS = new GridFS(myDatabase);              // returns a default GridFS (e.g. "fs" root
collection)
myFS.storeFile(new File("/tmp/largething.mpg"));   // saves the file into the "fs" GridFS store

/*
 * specified root collection usage - optional
 */

GridFS myContracts = new GridFS(myDatabase, "contracts");             // returns a GridFS where
"contracts" is root
myFS.retrieveFile("smithco", new File("/tmp/smithco_20090105.pdf"));  // retrieves object whose
filename is "smithco"
```

Note that the above API is for demonstration purposes only - this spec does not (at this time) recommend any API. See individual driver documentation for API specifics.

`files`

Documents in the `files` collection require the following fields:

```
{
  "_id" : <unspecified>,                  // unique ID for this file
"length" : data_number,                 // size of the file in bytes
"chunkSize" : data_number,              // size of each of the chunks.  Default is 256k
"uploadDate" : data_date,               // date when object first stored
"md5" : data_string                     // result of running the "filemd5" command on this file's
chunks
}
```

Any other desired fields may be added to the files document; common ones include the following:

```
{
  "filename" : data_string,               // human name for the file
"contentType" : data_string,            // valid mime type for the object
"aliases" : data_array of data_string,  // optional array of alias strings
"metadata" : data_object,               // anything the user wants to store
}
```

Note that the _id field can be of any type, per the discretion of the spec implementor.

`chunks`

The structure of documents from the `chunks` collection is as follows:

```
{
  "_id" : <unspecified>,         // object id of the chunk in the _chunks collection
"files_id" : <unspecified>,    // _id of the corresponding files collection entry
"n" : chunk_number,            // chunks are numbered in order, starting with 0
"data" : data_binary,          // the chunk's payload as a BSON binary type
}
```

Notes:

- The `_id` is whatever type you choose. As with any MongoDB document, the default will be a BSON object id.
- The `files_id` is a foreign key containing the `_id` field for the relevant `files` collection entry

Indexes

GridFS implementations should create a unique, compound index in the `chunks` collection for `files_id` and n. Here's how you'd do that from the shell:

```
db.fs.chunks.ensureIndex({files_id:1, n:1}, {unique: true});
```

This way, a chunk can be retrieved efficiently using it's `files_id` and n values. Note that GridFS implementations should use findOne operations to get chunks individually, and should **not** leave open a cursor to query for all chunks. So to get the first chunk, we could do:

```
db.fs.chunks.findOne({files_id: myFileID, n: 0});
```

Implementing Authentication in a Driver

The current version of Mongo supports only very basic authentication. One authenticates a username and password in the context of a particular database. Once authenticated, the user has full read and write access to the database in question.

The `admin` database is special. In addition to several commands that are administrative being possible only on `admin`, authentication on `admin` gives one read and write access to all databases on the server. Effectively, `admin` access means root access to the db.

Note on a single socket we may authenticate for any number of databases, and as different users. This authentication persists for the life of the database connection (barring a `logout` command).

The Authentication Process

Authentication is a two step process. First the driver runs a `getnonce` command to get a nonce for use in the subsequent authentication. We can view a sample `getnonce` invocation from `dbshell`:

```
> db.$cmd.findOne({getnonce:1})
{ "nonce":"7268c504683936e1" , "ok":1
```

The nonce returned is a hex String.

The next step is to run an `authenticate` command for the database on which to authenticate. The authenticate command has the form:

```
{ authenticate : 1, user : username, nonce : nonce, key : digest }
```

where

- *username* is a username in the database's system.users collection;
- *nonce* is the nonce returned from a previous getnonce command;
- *digest* is the hex encoding of a MD5 message digest which is the MD5 hash of the concatenation of (*nonce*, *username*, *password_digest*), where *password_digest* is the user's password value in the `pwd` field of the associated user object in the database's system.users collection. `pwd` is the hex encoding of MD5(username + ":mongo:" + *password_text*).

Authenticate will return an object containing

```
{ ok : 1 }
```

when successful.

Details of why an authentication command failed may be found in the Mongo server's log files.

The following code from the Mongo Javascript driver provides an example implementation:

```
DB.prototype.addUser = function( username , pass ){
    var c = this.getCollection( "system.users" );

    var u = c.findOne( { user : username } ) || { user : username };
    u.pwd = hex_md5( username + ":mongo:" + pass );
    print( tojson( u ) );

    c.save( u );
}

DB.prototype.auth = function( username , pass ){
    var n = this.runCommand( { getnonce : 1 } );

    var a = this.runCommand(
        {
            authenticate : 1 ,
            user : username ,
            nonce : n.nonce ,
            key : hex_md5( n.nonce + username + hex_md5( username + ":mongo:" + pass ) )
        }
    );

    return a.ok;
}
```

Logout

Drivers may optionally implement the logout command which deauthorizes usage for the specified database for this connection. Note other databases may still be authorized.

Alternatively, close the socket to deauthorize.

```
> db.$cmd.findOne({logout:1})
{
    "ok" : 1.0
}
```

Replica Pairs and Authentication

For drivers that support replica pairs, extra care with replication is required.

When switching from one server in a pair to another (on a failover situation), you must reauthenticate. Clients will likely want to cache authentication from the user so that the client can reauthenticate with the new server when appropriate.

Be careful also with operations such as Logout - if you log out from only half a pair, that could be an issue.

Authenticating with a server in slave mode is allowed.

See Also

- Security and Authentication

Notes on Pooling for Mongo Drivers

Note that with the db write operations can be sent asynchronously or synchronously (the latter indicating a getlasterror request after the write).

When asynchronous, one must be careful to continue using the same connection (socket). This ensures that the next operation will not begin until after the write completes.

Pooling and Authentication

An individual socket connection to the database has associated authentication state. Thus, if you pool connections, you probably want a separate pool for each authentication case (db + username).

Pseudo-code

The following pseudo-code illustrates our recommended approach to implementing connection pooling in a driver's connection class. This handles authentication, grouping operations from a single "request" onto the same socket, and a couple of other gotchas:

```
class Connection:
   init(pool_size, addresses, auto_start_requests):
      this.pool_size = pool_size
      this.addresses = addresses
      this.auto_start_requests = auto_start_requests
      this.thread_map = {}
      this.locks = Lock[pool_size]
      this.sockets = Socket[pool_size]
      this.socket_auth = String[pool_size][]
      this.auth = {}

      this.find_master()

   find_master():
      for address in this.addresses:
         if address.is_master():
            this.master = address

   pick_and_acquire_socket():
      choices = random permutation of [0, ..., this.pool_size - 1]

      choices.sort(order: ascending,
                   value: size of preimage of choice under this.thread_map)

      for choice in choices:
         if this.locks[choice].non_blocking_acquire():
            return choice

      sock = choices[0]
      this.locks[sock].blocking_acquire()
      return sock

   get_socket():
      if this.thread_map[current_thread] >= 0:
         sock_number = this.thread_map[current_thread]
         this.locks[sock_number].blocking_acquire()
      else:
         sock_number = this.pick_and_lock_socket()
         if this.auto_start_requests or current_thread in this.thread_map:
            this.thread_map[current_thread] = sock_number
```

```
      if not this.sockets[sock_number]:
         this.sockets[sock_number] = Socket(this.master)

      return sock_number

   send_message_without_response(message):
      sock_number = this.get_socket()
      this.check_auth()
      this.sockets[sock_number].send(message)
      this.locks[sock_number].release()

   send_message_with_response(message):
      sock_number = this.get_socket()
      this.check_auth()
      this.sockets[sock_number].send(message)
      result = this.sockets[sock_number].receive()
      this.locks[sock_number].release()
      return result

   # start_request is only needed if auto_start_requests is False
   start_request():
      this.thread_map[current_thread] = -1

   end_request():
      delete this.thread_map[current_thread]

   authenticate(database, username, password):
      # TODO should probably make sure that these credentials are valid,
      # otherwise errors are going to be delayed until first op.
      this.auth[database] = (username, password)

   logout(database):
      delete this.auth[database]

   check_auth(sock_number):
      for db in this.socket_auth[sock_number]:
         if db not in this.auth.keys():
            this.sockets[sock_number].send(logout_message)
            this.socket_auth[sock_number].remove(db)
      for db in this.auth.keys():
         if db not in this.socket_auth[sock_number]:
            this.sockets[sock_number].send(authenticate_message)
            this.socket_auth[sock_number].append(db)

# somewhere we need to do error checking - if you get not master then everything
# in this.sockets gets closed and set to null and we call find_master() again.
```

```
# we also need to reset the socket_auth information - nothing is authorized yet
# on the new master.
```

See Also

- The Driver and Integration Center for information about the latest drivers
- The [top page] for this section
- The main Database Internals page
- The starting point for all Home

Driver and Integration Center

Connecting Drivers to Replica Sets

Ideally a MongoDB driver can connect to a cluster of servers which represent a replica set, and automatically find the right set member with which to communicate. Failover should be automatic too. The general steps are:

1. The user, when opening the connection, specifies host[:port] for one or more members of the set. Not all members need be specified -- in fact the exact members of the set might change over time. This list for the connect call is the *seed list*.
2. The driver then connects to all servers on the seed list, perhaps in parallel to minimize connect time. Send an ismaster command to each server.
3. When the server is in replSet mode, it will return a *hosts* field with all members of the set that are potentially eligible to serve data. The client should cache this information. Ideally this refreshes too, as the set's config could change over time.
4. Choose a server with which to communicate.
    a. If ismaster == true, that server is primary for the set. This server can be used for writes and immediately consistent reads.
    b. If secondary == true, that server is not primary, but is available for eventually consistent reads. In this case, you can use the *primary* field to see which server the master should be. (If primary is not set, you may want to poll other nodes at random; it is conceivable that the member to which we are talking is partitioned from the other members, and thus it cannot determine who is primary on its own. This is unlikely but possible.)
5. If an error occurs with the current connection, find the new primary and resume use there.

For example, if we run the ismaster command on a non-primary server, we might get something like:

```
> db.runCommand("ismaster")
{
        "ismaster" : false,
        "secondary" : true,
        "hosts" : [
                "ny1.acme.com",
                "ny2.acme.com",
                "sf1.acme.com"
        ],
        "passives" : [
             "ny3.acme.com",
             "sf3.acme.com"
        ],
        "arbiters" : [
            "sf2.acme.com",
        ]
        "primary" : "ny2.acme.com",
        "ok" : true
}
```

There are three servers with priority > 0 (*ny1*, *ny2*, and *sf1*), two passive servers (*ny3* and *sf3*), and an arbiter (*sf2*). The primary should be *ny2*, but the driver should call ismaster on that server before it assumes it is.

Error Handling in Mongo Drivers

If an error occurs on a query (or getMore operation), Mongo returns an error object instead of user data.

The error object has a first field guaranteed to have the reserved key `$err`. For example:

```
{ $err : "some error message" }
```

The `$err` value can be of any type but is usually a string.

Drivers typically check for this return code explicitly and take action rather than returning the object to the user. The query results flags include a set bit when $err is returned.

```
/* db response format

Query or GetMore: // see struct QueryResult
int resultFlags;
  int64 cursorID;
  int startingFrom;
  int nReturned;
  list of marshalled JSObjects;

*/

struct QueryResult : public MsgData {
  enum {
    ResultFlag_CursorNotFound = 1, /* returned, with zero results, when getMore is called but the
cursor id is not valid at the server. */
    ResultFlag_ErrSet = 2          /* { $err : ... } is being returned */
  };
  ...
};
```

See Also

- The Driver and Integration Center for information about the latest drivers
- The [top page] for this section
- The main Database Internals page
- The starting point for all Home

Developer Zone

- Tutorial
- Shell
- Manual
  - Databases
  - Collections
  - Indexes
  - Data Types and Conventions
  - GridFS
  - Inserting
  - Updating
  - Querying
  - Removing
  - Optimization
- Developer FAQ
- Cookbook

If you have a comment or question about anything, please contact us through IRC (freenode.net#mongodb) or the mailing list, rather than leaving a comment at the bottom of a page. It is easier for us to respond to you through those channels.

Introduction

MongoDB is a collection-oriented, schema-free document database.

By *collection-oriented*, we mean that data is grouped into sets that are called 'collections'. Each collection has a unique name in the database, and can contain an unlimited number of documents. Collections are analogous to tables in a RDBMS, except that they don't have any defined schema.

By *schema-free*, we mean that the database doesn't need to know anything about the structure of the documents that you store in a collection. In fact, you can store documents with different structure in the same collection if you so choose.

By *document*, we mean that we store data that is a structured collection of key-value pairs, where keys are strings, and values are any of a rich set of data types, including arrays and documents. We call this data format "BSON" for "Binary Serialized dOcument Notation."

MongoDB Operational Overview

MongoDB is a server process that runs on Linux, Windows and OS X. It can be run both as a 32 or 64-bit application. We recommend running in 64-bit mode, since Mongo is limited to a total data size of about 2GB for all databases in 32-bit mode.

The MongoDB process listens on port 27017 by default (note that this can be set at start time - please see Command Line Parameters for more information).

Clients connect to the MongoDB process, optionally authenticate themselves if security is turned on, and perform a sequence of actions, such as inserts, queries and updates.

MongoDB stores its data in files (default location is `/data/db/`), and uses memory mapped files for data management for efficiency.

MongoDB can also be configured for automatic data replication , as well as automatic fail-over .

For more information on MongoDB administration, please see Mongo Administration Guide.

MongoDB Functionality

As a developer, MongoDB drivers offer a rich range of operations:

- Queries: Search for documents based on either query objects or SQL-like "where predicates". Queries can be sorted, have limited return sizes, can skip parts of the return document set, and can also return partial documents.
- Inserts and Updates : Insert new documents, update existing documents.
- Index Management : Create indexes on one or more keys in a document, including substructure, deleted indexes, etc
- General commands : Any MongoDB operation can be managed via DB Commands over the regular socket.

cookbook.mongodb.org

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to http://cookbook.mongodb.org.

Tutorial

- Getting the Database
- Getting A Database Connection
- Inserting Data into A Collection
- Accessing Data From a Query
- Specifying What the Query Returns
- `findOne()` - Syntactic Sugar
- Limiting the Result Set via `limit()`
- More Help
- What Next

Getting the Database

First, run through the Quickstart guide for your platform to get up and running.

Getting A Database Connection

Let's now try manipulating the database with the database shell . (We could perform similar operations from any programming language using an appropriate driver. The shell is convenient for interactive and administrative use.)

Start the MongoDB JavaScript shell with:

```
# 'mongo' is shell binary. exact location might vary depending on
# installation method and platform
$ bin/mongo
```

By default the shell connects to database "test" on localhost. You then see:

```
MongoDB shell version: <whatever>
url: test
connecting to: test
type "help" for help
>
```

`"connecting to:"` tells you the name of the database the shell is using. To switch databases, type:

```
> use mydb
switched to db mydb
```

Switching to a database with the `use` command won't immediately create the database - the database is created lazily the first time data is inserted. This means that if you `use` a database for the first time it won't show up in the list provided by `` `show dbs` `` until data is inserted.

To see a list of handy commands, type `help`.

> **Tip for Developers with Experience in Other Databases**
> You may notice, in the examples below, that we never create a database or collection. MongoDB does not require that you do so. As soon as you insert something, MongoDB creates the underlying collection and database. If you query a collection that does not exist, MongoDB treats it as an empty collection.

Inserting Data into A Collection

Let's create a test collection and insert some data into it. We will create two objects, `j` and `t`, and then save them in the collection *things*.

In the following examples, '>' indicates commands typed at the shell prompt.

```
> j = { name : "mongo" };
{"name" : "mongo"}
> t = { x : 3 };
{ "x" : 3  }
> db.things.save(j);
> db.things.save(t);
> db.things.find();
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c2209f9f3924d31102bd84a"), "name" : "mongo" }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c2209fef3924d31102bd84b"), "x" : 3 }
>
```

A few things to note :

- We did not predefine the collection. The database creates it automatically on the first insert.
- The documents we store can have any "structure" - in fact in this example, the documents have no common data elements at all. In practice, one usually stores documents of the same structure within collections. However, this flexibility means that schema migration and augmentation are very easy in practice - rarely will you need to write scripts which perform "alter table" type operations.
- Upon being inserted into the database, objects are assigned an object ID (if they do not already have one) in the field `_id`.
- When you run the above example, your ObjectID values will be different.

Let's add some more records to this collection:

```
> for (var i = 1; i <= 20; i++) db.things.save({x : 4, j : i});
> db.things.find();
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c2209f9f3924d31102bd84a"), "name" : "mongo" }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c2209fef3924d31102bd84b"), "x" : 3 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd856"), "x" : 4, "j" : 1 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd857"), "x" : 4, "j" : 2 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd858"), "x" : 4, "j" : 3 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd859"), "x" : 4, "j" : 4 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85a"), "x" : 4, "j" : 5 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85b"), "x" : 4, "j" : 6 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85c"), "x" : 4, "j" : 7 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85d"), "x" : 4, "j" : 8 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85e"), "x" : 4, "j" : 9 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85f"), "x" : 4, "j" : 10 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd860"), "x" : 4, "j" : 11 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd861"), "x" : 4, "j" : 12 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd862"), "x" : 4, "j" : 13 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd863"), "x" : 4, "j" : 14 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd864"), "x" : 4, "j" : 15 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd865"), "x" : 4, "j" : 16 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd866"), "x" : 4, "j" : 17 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd867"), "x" : 4, "j" : 18 }
has more
```

Note that not all documents were shown - the shell limits the number to 20 when automatically iterating a cursor. Since we already had 2 documents in the collection, we only see the first 18 of the newly-inserted documents.

If we want to return the next set of results, there's the `it` shortcut. Continuing from the code above:

```
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd866"), "x" : 4, "j" : 17 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd867"), "x" : 4, "j" : 18 }
has more
> it
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd868"), "x" : 4, "j" : 19 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd869"), "x" : 4, "j" : 20 }
```

Technically, find() returns a cursor object. But in the cases above, we haven't assigned that cursor to a variable. So, the shell automatically iterates over the cursor, giving us an initial result set, and allowing us to continue iterating with the **it** command.

But we can also work with the cursor directly; just how that's done is discussed in the next section.

Accessing Data From a Query

Before we discuss queries in any depth, lets talk about how to work with the results of a query - a cursor object. We'll use the simple `find()` query method, which returns everything in a collection, and talk about how to create specific queries later on.

In order to see all the elements in the collection when using the mongo shell, we need to explicitly use the cursor returned from the `find()` operation.

Lets repeat the same query, but this time use the cursor that `find()` returns, and iterate over it in a while loop :

```
> var cursor = db.things.find();
> while (cursor.hasNext()) printjson(cursor.next());
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c2209f9f3924d31102bd84a"), "name" : "mongo" }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c2209fef3924d31102bd84b"), "x" : 3 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd856"), "x" : 4, "j" : 1 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd857"), "x" : 4, "j" : 2 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd858"), "x" : 4, "j" : 3 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd859"), "x" : 4, "j" : 4 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85a"), "x" : 4, "j" : 5 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85b"), "x" : 4, "j" : 6 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85c"), "x" : 4, "j" : 7 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85d"), "x" : 4, "j" : 8 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85e"), "x" : 4, "j" : 9 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85f"), "x" : 4, "j" : 10 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd860"), "x" : 4, "j" : 11 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd861"), "x" : 4, "j" : 12 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd862"), "x" : 4, "j" : 13 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd863"), "x" : 4, "j" : 14 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd864"), "x" : 4, "j" : 15 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd865"), "x" : 4, "j" : 16 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd866"), "x" : 4, "j" : 17 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd867"), "x" : 4, "j" : 18 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd868"), "x" : 4, "j" : 19 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd869"), "x" : 4, "j" : 20 }
```

The above example shows cursor-style iteration. The `hasNext()` function tells if there are any more documents to return, and the `next()` function returns the next document. We also used the built-in `printjson()` method to render the document in a pretty JSON-style format.

When working in the JavaScript shell, we can also use the functional features of the language, and just call `forEach` on the cursor. Repeating the example above, but using `forEach()` directly on the cursor rather than the while loop:

```
> db.things.find().forEach(printjson);
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c2209f9f3924d31102bd84a"), "name" : "mongo" }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c2209fef3924d31102bd84b"), "x" : 3 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd856"), "x" : 4, "j" : 1 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd857"), "x" : 4, "j" : 2 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd858"), "x" : 4, "j" : 3 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd859"), "x" : 4, "j" : 4 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85a"), "x" : 4, "j" : 5 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85b"), "x" : 4, "j" : 6 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85c"), "x" : 4, "j" : 7 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85d"), "x" : 4, "j" : 8 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85e"), "x" : 4, "j" : 9 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85f"), "x" : 4, "j" : 10 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd860"), "x" : 4, "j" : 11 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd861"), "x" : 4, "j" : 12 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd862"), "x" : 4, "j" : 13 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd863"), "x" : 4, "j" : 14 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd864"), "x" : 4, "j" : 15 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd865"), "x" : 4, "j" : 16 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd866"), "x" : 4, "j" : 17 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd867"), "x" : 4, "j" : 18 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd868"), "x" : 4, "j" : 19 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd869"), "x" : 4, "j" : 20 }
```

In the case of a `forEach()` we must define a function that is called for each document in the cursor.

In the mongo shell, you can also treat cursors like an array :

```
> var cursor = db.things.find();
> printjson(cursor[4]);
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd858"), "x" : 4, "j" : 3 }
```

When using a cursor this way, note that all values up to the highest accessed (cursor[4] above) are loaded into RAM at the same time. This is inappropriate for large result sets, as you will run out of memory. Cursors should be used as an iterator with any query which returns a large

number of elements.

In addition to array-style access to a cursor, you may also convert the cursor to a true array:

```
> var arr = db.things.find().toArray();
> arr[5];
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd859"), "x" : 4, "j" : 4 }
```

Please note that these array features are specific to mongo - The Interactive Shell, and not offered by all drivers.

MongoDB cursors are not snapshots - operations performed by you or other users on the collection being queried between the first and last call to `next()` of your cursor *may or may not* be returned by the cursor. Use explicit locking to perform a snapshotted query.

Specifying What the Query Returns

Now that we know how to work with the cursor objects that are returned from queries, lets now focus on how to tailor queries to return specific things.

In general, the way to do this is to create "query documents", which are documents that indicate the pattern of keys and values that are to be matched.

These are easier to demonstrate than explain. In the following examples, we'll give example SQL queries, and demonstrate how to represent the same query using MongoDB via the mongo shell. This way of specifying queries is fundamental to MongoDB, so you'll find the same general facility in any driver or language.

SELECT * FROM things WHERE name="mongo"

```
> db.things.find({name:"mongo"}).forEach(printjson);
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c2209f9f3924d31102bd84a"), "name" : "mongo" }
```

SELECT * FROM things WHERE x=4

```
> db.things.find({x:4}).forEach(printjson);
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd856"), "x" : 4, "j" : 1 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd857"), "x" : 4, "j" : 2 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd858"), "x" : 4, "j" : 3 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd859"), "x" : 4, "j" : 4 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85a"), "x" : 4, "j" : 5 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85b"), "x" : 4, "j" : 6 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85c"), "x" : 4, "j" : 7 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85d"), "x" : 4, "j" : 8 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85e"), "x" : 4, "j" : 9 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85f"), "x" : 4, "j" : 10 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd860"), "x" : 4, "j" : 11 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd861"), "x" : 4, "j" : 12 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd862"), "x" : 4, "j" : 13 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd863"), "x" : 4, "j" : 14 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd864"), "x" : 4, "j" : 15 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd865"), "x" : 4, "j" : 16 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd866"), "x" : 4, "j" : 17 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd867"), "x" : 4, "j" : 18 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd868"), "x" : 4, "j" : 19 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd869"), "x" : 4, "j" : 20 }
```

The query expression is an document itself. A query document of the form { a:A, b:B, ... } means "where a==A and b==B and ...". More information on query capabilities may be found in the Queries and Cursors section of the Mongo Developers' Guide.

MongoDB also lets you return "partial documents" - documents that have only a subset of the elements of the document stored in the database. To do this, you add a second argument to the `find()` query, supplying a document that lists the elements to be returned.

To illustrate, lets repeat the last example `find({x:4})` with an additional argument that limits the returned document to just the "j" elements:

SELECT j FROM things WHERE x=4

```
> db.things.find({x:4}, {j:true}).forEach(printjson);
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd856"), "j" : 1 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd857"), "j" : 2 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd858"), "j" : 3 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd859"), "j" : 4 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85a"), "j" : 5 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85b"), "j" : 6 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85c"), "j" : 7 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85d"), "j" : 8 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85e"), "j" : 9 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd85f"), "j" : 10 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd860"), "j" : 11 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd861"), "j" : 12 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd862"), "j" : 13 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd863"), "j" : 14 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd864"), "j" : 15 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd865"), "j" : 16 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd866"), "j" : 17 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd867"), "j" : 18 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd868"), "j" : 19 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd869"), "j" : 20 }
```

Note that the "_id" field is always returned.

`findOne()` - Syntactic Sugar

For convenience, the mongo shell (and other drivers) lets you avoid the programming overhead of dealing with the cursor, and just lets you retrieve one document via the `findOne()` function. `findOne()` takes all the same parameters of the `find()` function, but instead of returning a cursor, it will return either the first document returned from the database, or `null` if no document is found that matches the specified query.

As an example, lets retrieve the one document with `name=='mongo'`. There are many ways to do it, including just calling `next()` on the cursor (after checking for `null`, of course), or treating the cursor as an array and accessing the 0th element.

However, the `findOne()` method is both convenient and efficient:

```
> printjson(db.things.findOne({name:"mongo"}));
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c2209f9f3924d31102bd84a"), "name" : "mongo" }
```

This is more efficient because the client requests a single object from the database, so less work is done by the database and the network. This is the equivalent of `find({name:"mongo"}).limit(1)`.

Another example of finding a single document by _id:

```
> var doc = db.things.findOne({_id:ObjectId("4c2209f9f3924d31102bd84a")});
> doc
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c2209f9f3924d31102bd84a"), "name" : "mongo" }
```

Limiting the Result Set via `limit()`

You may limit the size of a query's result set by specifing a maximum number of results to be returned via the `limit()` method.

This is highly recommended for performance reasons, as it limits the work the database does, and limits the amount of data returned over the network. For example:

```
> db.things.find().limit(3);
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c2209f9f3924d31102bd84a"), "name" : "mongo" }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c2209fef3924d31102bd84b"), "x" : 3 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c220a42f3924d31102bd856"), "x" : 4, "j" : 1 }
```

More Help

In addition to the general "help" command, you can call help on `db` and `db.whatever` to see a summary of methods available.

If you are curious about what a function is doing, you can type it without the ()s and the shell will print the source, for example:

```
> printjson
function (x) {
    print(tojson(x));
}
```

`mongo` is a full JavaScript shell, so any JavaScript function, syntax, or class can be used in the shell. In addition, MongoDB defines some of its own classes and globals (e.g., `db`). You can see the full API at http://api.mongodb.org/js/.

What Next

- After completing this tutorial the next step to learning MongoDB is to dive into the manual for more details.
- See also SQL to Mongo Mapping Chart

Manual

This is the MongoDB manual. Except where otherwise noted, all examples are in JavaScript for use with the mongo shell. There is a table available giving the equivalent syntax for each of the drivers.

- Connections
- Databases
  - Commands
    - cloneCollection Command
    - compact Command
    - Copy Database Commands
    - fsync Command
    - getLastError Command
    - Index-Related Commands
    - Viewing and Terminating Current Operation
    - Validate Command
    - Windows Service
    - getLastError_old
    - List of Database Commands
  - Mongo Metadata
- Collections
  - Capped Collections
    - createCollection Command
  - Using a Large Number of Collections
- Data Types and Conventions
  - Timestamp Data Type
  - Internationalized Strings
  - Object IDs
  - Database References
- GridFS
  - When to use GridFS
- Indexes
  - Using Multikeys to Simulate a Large Number of Indexes
  - Geospatial Indexing
    - Geospatial Haystack Indexing
  - Indexing as a Background Operation
  - Multikeys
  - Indexing Advice and FAQ
- Inserting
  - Legal Key Names
  - Schema Design
  - Trees in MongoDB
- Optimization
  - Explain
  - Optimizing Object IDs
  - Optimizing Storage of Small Objects
  - Query Optimizer
- Querying
  - Mongo Query Language
  - Querying and nulls
  - Retrieving a Subset of Fields
  - Advanced Queries

    - Dot Notation (Reaching into Objects)
    - Full Text Search in Mongo
    - min and max Query Specifiers
    - OR operations in query expressions
    - Queries and Cursors
        - Tailable Cursors
    - Server-side Code Execution
    - Sorting and Natural Order
    - Aggregation
- Removing
- Updating
    - Atomic Operations
        - How to Make an Auto Incrementing Field
    - findAndModify Command
    - Padding Factor
    - two-phase commit
    - Updating Data in Mongo
- MapReduce
    - Troubleshooting MapReduce
- Data Processing Manual

Connections

MongoDB is a database server: it runs in the foreground or background and waits for connections from the user. Thus, when you start MongoDB, you will see something like:

```
~/$ ./mongod
#
# some logging output
#
Tue Mar  9 11:15:43 waiting for connections on port 27017
Tue Mar  9 11:15:43 web admin interface listening on port 28017
```

It will stop printing output at this point but it hasn't frozen, it is merely waiting for connections on port 27017. Once you connect and start sending commands, it will continue to log what it's doing. You can use any of the MongoDB drivers or Mongo shell to connect to the database.

You *cannot* connect to MongoDB by going to http://localhost:27017 in your web browser. The database *cannot* be accessed via HTTP on port 27017.

Standard Connection String Format

> The uri scheme described on this page is not yet supported by all of the drivers. Refer to a specific driver's documentation to see how much (if any) of the standard connection uri is supported. All drivers support an alternative method of specifying connections if this format is not supported.

```
mongodb://[username:password@]host1[:port1][,host2[:port2],...[,hostN[:portN]]][/[database][?options]]
```

- `mongodb://` is a required prefix to identify that this is a string in the standard connection format.
- `username:password@` are optional. If given, the driver will attempt to login to a database after connecting to a database server.
- `host1` is the only required part of the URI. It identifies a server address to connect to.
- `:portX` is optional and defaults to :27017 if not provided.
- `/database` is the name of the database to login to and thus is only relevant if the `username:password@` syntax is used. If not specified the "admin" database will be used by default.
- `?options` are connection options. Note that if `database` is absent there is still a `/` required between the last host and the ? introducing the options. Options are name=value pairs and the pairs are separated either by "&"" or ";".

As many hosts as necessary may be specified (for connecting to replica pairs/sets).

The options are:

Replica set:

- `replicaSet=name`
    - The driver verifies that the name of the replica set it connects to matches this name. Implies that the hosts given are a seed list, and the driver will attempt to find all members of the set.

Single server:

- `slaveOk=true|false`

Any configuration:

- `safe=true|false`
  - `true`: the driver sends a getLastError command after every update to ensure that the update succeeded (see also `w` and `wtimeoutMS`).
  - `false`: the driver does not send a getLastError command after every update.
- `w=n`
  - The driver adds { w : n } to the getLastError command. Implies `safe=true`.
- `wtimeoutMS=ms`
  - The driver adds { wtimeout : ms } to the getlasterror command. Implies `safe=true`.
- `fsync=true|false`
  - `true`: the driver adds { fsync : true } to the getlasterror command. Implies `safe=true`.
  - `false`: the driver does not not add fsync to the getlasterror command.
- `journal=true|false`
  - `true`: Sync to journal. Implies `safe=true`.
- `connectTimeoutMS=ms`
  - How long a connection can take to be opened before timing out.
- `socketTimeoutMS=ms`
  - How long a send or receive on a socket can take before timing out.

These options are not case sensitive.

Examples

Connect to a database server running locally on the default port:

```
mongodb://localhost
```

Connect and login to the admin database as user "fred" with password "foobar":

```
mongodb://fred:foobar@localhost
```

Connect and login to the "baz" database as user "fred" with password "foobar":

```
mongodb://fred:foobar@localhost/baz
```

Connect to a replica pair, with one server on example1.com and another server on example2.com:

```
mongodb://example1.com:27017,example2.com:27017
```

Connect to a replica set with three servers running on localhost (on ports 27017, 27018, and 27019):

```
mongodb://localhost,localhost:27018,localhost:27019
```

Connect to a replica set with three servers, sending all writes to the primary and distributing reads to the secondaries:

```
mongodb://host1,host2,host3/?slaveOk=true
```

Connect to localhost with safe mode on:

```
mongodb://localhost/?safe=true
```

Connect to a replica set with safe mode on, waiting for replication to succeed on at least two machines, with a two second timeout:

```
mongodb://host1,host2,host3/?safe=true;w=2;wtimeoutMS=2000
```

Connection Pooling

The server will use one thread per TCP connection, therefore it is highly recomended that your application use some sort of connection pooling. Luckily, most drivers handle this for you behind the scenes. One notable exception is setups where your app spawns a new process for each request, such as CGI and some configurations of PHP.

Databases

Each MongoDB server can support multiple *databases*. Each database is independent, and the data for each database is stored separately, for security and ease of management.

A database consists of one or more *collections*, the *documents* (objects) in those collections, and an optional set of security credentials for controlling access.

- Commands
  - cloneCollection Command
  - compact Command
  - Copy Database Commands
  - fsync Command
  - getLastError Command
  - Index-Related Commands
  - Viewing and Terminating Current Operation
  - Validate Command
  - Windows Service
  - getLastError_old
  - List of Database Commands
- Mongo Metadata

Commands

Introduction

The Mongo database has a concept of a *database command*. Database commands are ways to ask the database to perform special operations, or to request information about its current operational status.

- Introduction
- Privileged Commands
- Getting Help Info for a Command
- More Command Documentation

- List of Database Commands

A command is sent to the database as a query to a special collection namespace called `$cmd`. The database will return a single document with the command results - use `findOne()` for that if your driver has it.

The general command syntax is:

```
db.$cmd.findOne( { <commandname>: <value> [, options] } );
```

The shell provides a helper function for this:

```
db.runCommand( { <commandname>: <value> [, options] } );
```

For example, to check our database's current profile level setting, we can invoke:

```
> db.runCommand({profile:-1});
{
    "was" : 0.0 ,
    "ok" : 1.0
}
```

For many db commands, some drivers implement wrapper methods are implemented to make usage easier. For example, the mongo shell offers

```
> db.getProfilingLevel()
0.0
```

Let's look at what this method is doing:

```
> print( db.getProfilingLevel )
function () {
    var res = this._dbCommand({profile:-1});
    return res ? res.was : null;
}

> print( db._dbCommand )
function (cmdObj) {
    return this.$cmd.findOne(cmdObj);
}
```

Many commands have helper functions - see your driver's documentation for more information.

Privileged Commands

Certain operations are for the database administrator only. These privileged operations may only be performed on the special database named `admin`.

```
> use admin;
> db.runCommand("shutdown"); // shut down the database
```

If the db variable is not set to 'admin', you can use `adminCommand` (`_adminCommand` in versions earlier than 1.8) to switch to the right database automatically (and just for that operation):

```
> db.adminCommand("shutdown");
```

(For this particular command there is also a shell helper function, `db.shutdownServer`.)

Getting Help Info for a Command

Use `commandHelp` in shell to get help info for a command:

```
> db.commandHelp("datasize")
help for: datasize  example: { datasize:"blog.posts", keyPattern:{x:1}, min:{x:10}, max:{x:55} }
NOTE: This command may take awhile to run
```

(Help is not yet available for some commands.)

More Command Documentation

- cloneCollection Command
- compact Command
- Copy Database Commands
- fsync Command
- getLastError Command
- Index-Related Commands
- Viewing and Terminating Current Operation
- Validate Command
- Windows Service
- getLastError_old
- List of Database Commands

- Commands Quick Reference Card

cloneCollection Command

Copy a single collection from one server to another.

```
db.runCommand( { cloneCollection: <namespace>,
                 from: <host> [,query: <query_filter>] [,copyIndexes:<bool>] } );
```

Copies a collection from one server to another. Do not use on a single server as the destination is placed at the same `db.collection` (namespace) as the source.

> The local copy of the namespace is emptied before the copying begins. Any eisting data will be lost there.

compact Command

> v1.9+

The compact command compacts and defragments a collection. Indexes are rebuilt and compacted too. It is conceptually similar to repairDatabase, but works on a single collection rather than an entire database.

> This command blocks all other operations while running, and is slow. Run during scheduled maintenance.

To run (example from the mongo shell):

```
> db.runCommand( { compact : 'mycollectionname' } )
```

The command will not return until compaction completes. You can view intermediate progress in either the mongod log file, or by running db.currentOp() in another shell instance.

Because this blocks all other activity, the command will not by default run on a replica set primary. Instead it will return an error. To force it to run on a replica set primary include `force:true` in the command as a parameter.

Notes

- Unlike repairDatabase, the compact command does not require double disk space to do its work. It does require a small amount of additional space while working. Additionally, compact is faster.
- At the beginning of compaction, indexes are dropped for the collection. At the end, indexes are rebuilt. Thus if you kill the compaction in the middle of its operation, either with killOp or a server failure, indexes may be missing for your collection. If you are running with --journal, no data should ever be lost on a crash during compaction, although on startup the indexes will not be present. (Regardless of this, always do a backup before system maintenance such as this!)
- Compact may be run on replica secondaries and slave. Compact commands do not replicate, so each host needs to be compacted separately.
- Currently, compact is a command issued to a mongod. In a sharded environment one would do each shard separately as a maintenance operation. (This is likely to change in future versions, along with other enhancements.)
- You may wish to run the collstats command (db.collectionname.stats() in the shell) before and after compaction to see how the collection changes in storage space.

Replica Sets

- Compact each member separately.
- Ideally compaction runs on a secondary (*see comment regarding `force:true` above*).
- A partial script demonstration how to automate step down and compaction can be found here.

See Also

- repairDatabase command

Copy Database Commands

MongoDB includes commands for copying a database from one server to another.

copydb Command

Copies an entire database from one name on one server to another name on another server. omit <from_hostname> to copy from one name to

another on the same server. Cann must be sent/run on the "destination" server.

```
> // shell helper syntax:
> db.copyDatabase(<from_dbname>, <to_dbname>, <from_hostname>);

> // if you must authenticate with the source database
> db.copyDatabase(<from_dbname>, <to_dbname>, <from_hostname>, <username>, <password>);

> // pure command syntax (runnable from any driver):
> db.runCommand(
... {copydb: 1, fromhost: <hostname>, fromdb: <db>,
...  todb: <db>[, slaveOk: <bool>, username: <username>,
...  nonce: <nonce>, key: <key>]}";

> // command syntax for authenticating with the source:
> n = db.runCommand( { copydbgetnonce : 1, fromhost: ... } );
db.runCommand( { copydb : 1, fromhost: ..., fromdb: ..., todb: ..., username: ..., nonce: n.nonce,
key: <hash of username, nonce, password > } );
```

cloneDatabase

Similar to copydb but with a simplified syntax for the case where we simply want to copy a database to this server, and leave its name as-is.

```
> db.cloneDatabase(<from_hostname>);
```

Notes

- copyDatabase may be run against a slave/secondary (i.e., the source server can be a slave/secondary).
- copyDatabase does not snapshot in any sense: if the source database is changing during the copy, the destination will receive documents representing different points in time in the source during the copying interval.
- The command must be run on the destination server.
- The command does not lock either the source or the destination server for the duration of the operation. Each side will yield periodically to allow other reads/writes through.

fsync Command

- fsync Command
- Lock, Snapshot and Unlock
    - Caveats
    - Snapshotting Slaves
    - Sharding
- Changes in 1.9
    - Calls to unlock now block
- See Also

fsync Command

> ⚠ Version 1.3.1 and higher

The fsync command allows us to flush all pending writes to datafiles. More importantly, it also provides a lock option that makes backups easier.

The fsync command forces the database to flush all datafiles:

```
> use admin
> db.runCommand({fsync:1});
```

By default the command returns after synchronizing. To return immediately use:

```
> db.runCommand({fsync:1,async:true});
```

To fsync on a regular basis, use the --syncdelay command line option (see mongod --help output). By default a full flush is forced every 60 seconds.

Lock, Snapshot and Unlock

> With journaling enabled, you may not need to lock at all for a snapshot. See the backups page.

The fsync command supports a lock option that allows one to safely snapshot the database's datafiles. While locked, all write operations are blocked, although read operations are still allowed. After snapshotting, use the unlock command to unlock the database and allow locks again. Example:

```
> use admin
switched to db admin
> db.runCommand({fsync:1,lock:1})
{
 "info" : "now locked against writes",
 "ok" : 1
}
> db.currentOp()
{
 "inprog" : [
 ],
 "fsyncLock" : 1
}

>// do some work here: for example, snapshot datafiles...
>// runProgram("/path/to/my-filesystem-snapshotting-script.sh")

> db.$cmd.sys.unlock.findOne();
{ "ok" : 1, "info" : "unlock requested" }
> // unlock is now requested.  it may take a moment to take effect.
> db.currentOp()
{ "inprog" : [ ] }
```

Caveats

While the database can be read while locked for snapshotting, if a write is attempted, this will block readers due to the database's use of a read/write lock. This should be addressed in the future : http://jira.mongodb.org/browse/SERVER-1423

Snapshotting Slaves

The above procedure works on replica slaves. The slave will not apply operations while locked. However, see the above caveats section.

Sharding

The fsync command can only be sent to a single node, not to the entire sharded cluster.

Changes in 1.9

MongoDB v1.9.0 introduces two new shell helpers: `db.fsyncLock()` and `db.fsyncUnlock()`. These are provided for convenience as thin wrappers around the interface documented above. You can see their implementation below:

```
> db.fsyncLock
function () {
    return db.adminCommand({fsync:1, lock:true});
}
> db.fsyncUnlock
function () {
    return db.getSiblingDB("admin").$cmd.sys.unlock.findOne();
}
```

Calls to unlock now block

More significantly, the unlock command has slightly modified semantics. Prior to v1.9.0, the command would request an unlock and return immediately. This made it difficult to know for certain whether the database had, in fact, been unlocked.

This command now blocks until the database is unlocked. When it returns, you can be certain that the databased has synced the datafiles to disk and is again ready to be written to.

See Also

- Backups

getLastError Command

MongoDB does not wait for a response by default when writing to the database. Use the getLastError command to ensure that operations have succeeded.

The getLastError command can be invoked automatically with many of the drivers when saving and updating in "safe" mode (some drivers call this "set write concern"). But what's really happening is that a special command called `getlasterror` is being invoked. Here, we explain how this works.

- Running in the Shell
- When to Use
- Options
  - `fsync`
  - `j`
  - `w`
- Return Value
- Using getLastError from Drivers
- Mongo Shell REPL Behavior
- getPrevError Command
- See Also

Running in the Shell

The `getlasterror` command checks for an error on the last database operation for this connection. Since it's a command, there are a few ways to invoke it:

```
> db.$cmd.findOne({getlasterror:1})
```

Or in the shell:

```
> db.runCommand("getlasterror")
```

Or you can use the shell helper:

```
> db.getLastError()
```

In the mongo shell, db.getLastError() returns the last error – null if no error. Use db.getLastErrorObj() to see the full error result. db.getLastErrorObj().ok should be true if there is no error.

For more about commands, see the command documentation.

When to Use

getlasterror is primarily useful for write operations (although it is set after a command or query too). Write operations by default do not have a return code: this saves the client from waiting for client/server turnarounds during write operations. One can always call getLastError if one wants a return code.

If you're writing data to MongoDB on multiple connections, then it can sometimes be important to call `getlasterror` on one connection to be certain that the data has been committed to the database. For instance, if you're writing to connection #1 and want those writes to be reflected in reads from connection #2, you can assure this by calling `getlasterror` after writing to connection #1.

For maximum speed, skip the getLastError (or "safe mode") for noncritical writes. Use it when you need to confirm to the user that the write succeeded.

Options

`fsync`

When running mongod without --journal, the fsync option forces the database to fsync all files before returning.

When running with Journaling, the fsync option awaits the next group commit before returning.

```
> db.runCommand({getlasterror:1,fsync:true})
{ "err" : null, "n" : 0, "fsyncFiles" : 2, "ok" : 1 }
```

`j`

v1.9+: When j:true is specified, the getlasterror call awaits the journal commit before returning. If the server is running without journaling, it returns immediately, and successfully.

```
> db.runCommand({getlasterror:1,j:true})
```

`w`

A client can block until a write operation has been replicated to N servers.

`wtimeout` may be used in conjuction with `w`. The default is no timeout (wait forever).

```
> db.getLastError(2, 5000) // w=2, timeout 5000ms
```

Note the above options can be combined: waiting for journal acknowledgement *and* acknowledgement that the write has reached a majority of a replica set can make sense.

Return Value

The return value from the command is an object with various fields. The common fields are listed below; there may also be other fields.

- ok - true indicates the getLastError command completed successfully. This does NOT indicate there wasn't a last error.
- err - if non-null, indicates an error occurred. Value is a textual description of the error.
- code - if set, indicates the error code which occurred.

For updates:

- n - if an update was done, this is the number of documents updated.

With w:<n>

- wnote - if set indicates that something unusual happened that is related to using w:
- wtimeout - if timed out, set to the value true
- waited - if timed out, how long waited in milliseconds

Using getLastError from Drivers

The drivers support `getLastError` in the command form and many also offer a "safe" mode for operations. For more on "safe" mode, see each driver's documentation.

* C#

- C++
- Python. If you're using Python, you automatically call getlasterror on insert as follows:

  ```
  collection.save({"name": "MongoDB"}, safe=True)
  ```

  If the save doesn't succeed, an exception will be raised.

- Java
  Java supports various getLastError() semantics using `WriteConcern` Objects.

Mongo Shell REPL Behavior

The database shell performs a `resetError()` before each read/eval/print loop command evaluation - and automatically prints the error, if one occurred, after each evaluation. Thus, after an error, at the shell prompt `db.getLastError()` will return null. However, if called before returning to the prompt, the result is as one would expect:

```
> try { db.foo.findOne() } catch(e) { print("preverr:" + tojson(db.getPrevError())); print("lasterr:"
+ tojson(db.getLastError()));}
preverr:{"err" : "unauthorized" , "nPrev" : 1 , "ok" : 1}
lasterr:"unauthorized"
```

getPrevError Command

When performing bulk write operations, `resetError()` and `getPrevError()` can be an efficient way to check for success of the operation. For example if we are inserting 1,000 objects in a collection, checking the return code 1,000 times over the network is slow. Instead one might do something like this:

```
db.resetError();
for( loop 1000 times... )
    db.foo.save(something...);
if( db.getPrevError().err )
    print("didn't work!");
```

- getPrevError only holds 1 previous error, so whole batch may have to be retried in case of error.
- A better alternative is to use the "batch" insert method provided by many drivers, along with safe writes. This way "getLastError" is only called after each batch, but still writes will stop at the 1st error.
- getPrevError may be deprecated in the future.

See Also

- Replica Set Design Concepts

Index-Related Commands

Create Index

`ensureIndex()` is the helper function for this. Its implementation creates an index by adding its info to the `system.indexes` collection.

```
> use test
> db.myCollection.ensureIndex(<keypattern>);
> // same as:
> db.system.indexes.insert({ name: "name", ns: "namespaceToIndex",
  key: <keypattern> });
```

Note: Once you've inserted the index, all subsequent document inserts for the given collection will be indexed, as will all pre-existing documents in the collection. If you have a large collection, this can take a significant amount of time and will block other operations. However, beginning with version 1.3.2, you can specify that indexing happen in the background. See the background indexing docs for details.

You can query system.indexes to see all indexes for a collection *`foo`* in db *`test`*:

```
>db.system.indexes.find( { ns: "test.foo" } );
```

In some drivers, `ensureIndex()` remembers if it has recently been called, and foregoes the insert operation in that case. Even if this is not the case, `ensureIndex()` is a cheap operation, so it may be invoked often to ensure that an index exists.

Dropping an Index

From the shell:

```
db.mycollection.dropIndex(<name_or_pattern>)
db.mycollection.dropIndexes()

// example:
t.dropIndex( { name : 1 } );
```

From a driver (raw command object form; many drivers have helpers):

```
{ deleteIndexes: <collection_name>, index: <index_name> }
// "*" for <index_name> will drop all indexes except _id
```

Index Namespace

Each index has a namespace of its own for the btree buckets. The namespace is:

```
<collectionnamespace>.$<indexname>
```

This is an internal namespace that cannot be queried directly.

Viewing and Terminating Current Operation

- View Current Operation(s) in Progress
- Terminate (Kill) an Operation in Progress
- See Also

View Current Operation(s) in Progress

```
> db.currentOp();
> // same as: db.$cmd.sys.inprog.findOne()
{ inprog: [ { "opid" : 18 , "op" : "query" , "ns" : "mydb.votes" ,
              "query" : "{ score : 1.0 }" , "inLock" : 1 }
          ]
}
```

Fields:

- opid - an incrementing operation number. Use with killOp().
- op - the operation type (query, update, etc.)
- ns - namespace for the operation (database + collection name) (Note: if the ns begins with a question mark, the operation has yielded.)
- query - the query spec, if operation is a query
- lockType - the type of lock the operation requires, either read or write or none. See concurrency page.
- waitingForLock - if true, lock has been requested but not yet granted
- client - address of the client who requested the operation
- desc - the type of connection. `conn` indicates a normal client connections. Other values indicate internal threads in the server.

Note: the output format shown above is for MongoDB v1.1 and higher.

From a driver one runs currentOp by executing the equivalent of:

```
db.$cmd.sys.inprog.find()
```

Terminate (Kill) an Operation in Progress

```
// <= v1.2
> db.killOp()
> // same as: db.$cmd.sys.killop.findOne()
{"info" : "no op in progress/not locked"}

// v>= 1.3
> db.killOp(1234/*opid*/)
> // same as: db.$cmd.sys.killop.findOne({op:1234})
```

Note: be careful about terminating internal operations, for example from a replication sync thread. Typically you only kill operations from external clients.

See Also

- How does concurrency work

Validate Command

Use this command to check that a collection is valid (not corrupt) and to get various statistics.

This command scans the entire collection and its indexes and will be very slow on large datasets.

From the `mongo` shell:

```
> db.foo.validate()
{"ns" : "test.foo" , "result" : "
validate
  details: 08D03C9C ofs:963c9c
  firstExtent:0:156800 ns:test.foo
  lastExtent:0:156800 ns:test.foo
  # extents:1
  datasize?:144 nrecords?:3 lastExtentSize:2816
  padding:1
  first extent:
    loc:0:156800 xnext:null xprev:null
    ns:test.foo
    size:2816 firstRecord:0:1568b0 lastRecord:0:156930
  3 objects found, nobj:3
  192 bytes data w/headers
  144 bytes data wout/headers
  deletedList: 0000000100000000000
  deleted: n: 1 size: 2448
  nIndexes:1
    test.foo.$x_1 keys:3
" , "ok" : 1 , "valid" : true , "lastExtentSize" : 2816}
```

From a driver one might invoke the driver's equivalent of:

```
> db.$cmd.findOne({validate:"foo" } );
```

`validate` takes an optional scandata parameter which skips the scan of the base collection (but still scans indexes).

```
> db.$cmd.findOne({validate:"foo", scandata:true});
```

Windows Service

On windows mongod.exe has native support for installing and running as a windows service.

Service Related Commands

The service related commands are:

```
mongod --install
mongod --service
mongod --remove
mongod --reinstall
```

You may also pass the following options to --install and --reinstall

```
--serviceName {arg}
--serviceUser {arg}
--servicePassword {arg}
```

The --install and --remove options install and remove the mongo daemon as a windows service respectively. The --service option starts the service. --reinstall will attempt to remove the service, and then install it. If the service is not already installed, --reinstall will still work.

Both --remove and --reinstall will stop the service if it is currently running.

To change the name of the service use --serviceName. To make mongo execute as a local or domain user, as opposed to the Local System account, use --serviceUser and --servicePassword.

Whatever other arguments you pass to mongod.exe on the command line alongside --install are the arguments that the service is configured to execute mongod.exe with. Take for example the following command line (these arguments are not required to run mongod as a service):

```
mongod --logpath d:\mongo\logs --logappend --dbpath d:\mongo\data --directoryperdb --install
```

Will cause a service to be created called Mongo that will execute the following command:

```
mongod --logpath d:\mongo\logs --logappend --dbpath d:\mongo\data --directoryperdb
```

Installing on Windows 7

If installing on Windows 7, you need to make sure that you're running as an administrator. To do this, open the start menu, and in the search box enter "cmd.exe." When the executable appears, right-click on it and choose "Run as administrator."

At this point, you can install MongoDB as a service with the `--install` option as described above.

mongos as a Windows service

For the moment (at least through 1.8.x), mongos does not yet directly support being installed as a Windows service. However, using the Windows Resource Kit available here, you can configure a Windows host to start mongos at system startup. (Tested on a Windows 7 system, with MongoDB 1.8.1):

1. Assume your mongos config file is at C:\MongoDB\mongos.conf, and that you've tested that it works.
2. Start cmd.exe as an administrator.
3. Install srvany.exe as a service, like this:
   C:\Program Files\Windows Resource Kits\Tools>"C:\Program Files\Windows Resource Kits\Tools\instsrv.exe" mongos "C:\Program Files\Windows Resource Kits\Tools\srvany.exe"
   The output looks like this:

   ```
   The service was successfuly added\!

   Make sure that you go into the Control Panel and use
   the Services applet to change the Account Name and
   Password that this newly installed service will use
   for its Security Context.
   ```

4. Start regedit.exe
5. Find the subkey

   ```
   HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\mongos
   ```

6. Right click on mongos, select New > Key. Name the key Parameters.
7. Select the Parameters key.
8. Right click in the right window. Select New > String Value. Name the new value Application.
9. Modify Application's value to be the full path to mongos.exe (e.g., c:\mongodb\bin\mongos.exe)
10. Right click in the right window again. Select New > String Value. Name the new value AppParameters.
11. Modify AppParameters's value to be the arguments to mongos (e.g.,

--config C:\mongodb\mongos.conf)
12. To verify that the service can be started, try NET START mongos.

getLastError_old

> **Redirection Notice**
> This page should redirect to getLastError Command in about 3 seconds.

List of Database Commands

List of MongoDB Commands

See the Commands page for details on how to invoke a command.

Also: with v1.5+, run `mongod` with `--rest` enabled, and then go to http://localhost:28017/_commands

Commands Quick Reference Card

Mongo Metadata

The <dbname>.system.* namespaces in MongoDB are special and contain database system information. System collections include:

- `system.namespaces` lists all namespaces.
- `system.indexes` lists all indexes.
- Additional namespace / index metadata exists in the database.ns files, and is opaque.
- `system.profile` stores database profiling information.
- `system.users` lists users who may access the database.
- `local.sources` stores replica slave configuration data and state.
- Information on the structure of a stored object is stored within the object itself. See BSON .

There are several restrictions on manipulation of objects in the system collections. Inserting in `system.indexes` adds an index, but otherwise that table is immutable (the special drop index command updates it for you). `system.users` is modifiable. `system.profile` is droppable.

Note: $ is a reserved character. Do not use it in namespace names or within field names. Internal collections for indexes use the $ character in their names. These collection store b-tree bucket data and are not in BSON format (thus direct querying is not possible).

Collections

MongoDB collections are essentially named groupings of documents. You can think of them as roughly equivalent to relational database tables.

Details

A MongoDB collection is a collection of BSON documents. These documents usually have the same structure, but this is not a requirement since MongoDB is a *schema-free* (or more accurately, "dynamic schema") database. You may store a heterogeneous set of documents within a collection, as you do not need predefine the collection's "columns" or fields.

A collection is created when the first document is inserted.

Collection names should begin with letters or an underscore and may include numbers; $ is reserved. Collections can be organized in namespaces; these are named groups of collections defined using a dot notation. For example, you could define collections blog.posts and blog.authors, both reside under "blog". Note that this is simply an organizational mechanism for the user -- the collection namespace is flat from the database's perspective.

Programmatically, we access these collections using the dot notation. For example, using the mongo shell:

```
if( db.blog.posts.findOne() )
    print("blog.posts exists and is not empty.");
```

The maximum size of a collection name is 128 characters (including the name of the db and indexes). It is probably best to keep it under 80/90 chars.

See also:

- Capped Collections

- Using a Large Number of Collections

Capped Collections

- Creating
- Behavior
- Usage and Restrictions
- Applications
- Recommendations
- Options
  - size. The size of the capped collection. This must be specified.
  - max
  - autoIndexId
- Preallocating space for a normal collection
- Sharding
- Check if a collection is capped
- Convert a collection to capped
- See Also

Capped collections are fixed sized collections that have a very high performance auto-FIFO age-out feature (age out is based on insertion order). They are a bit like the "RRD" concept if you are familiar with that.

In addition, capped collections automatically, with high performance, maintain insertion order for the objects in the collection; this is very powerful for certain use cases such as logging.

Creating

Unlike a standard collection, you must explicitly create a capped collection, specifying a collection size in bytes. The collection's data space is then preallocated. Note that the size specified includes database headers.

```
> db.createCollection("mycoll", {capped:true, size:100000})
```

Behavior

- Once the space is fully utilized, newly added objects will replace the oldest objects in the collection.
- If you perform a `find()` on the collection with no ordering specified, the objects will always be returned in insertion order. Reverse order is always retrievable with find().sort({$natural:-1}).

Usage and Restrictions

- You may insert new objects in the capped collection.
- You may update the existing objects in the collection. However, the objects must not grow in size. If they do, the update will fail. (There are some possible workarounds which involve pre-padding objects; contact us in the support forums for more information, if help is needed.)
- The database does not allow deleting objects from a capped collection. Use the `drop()` method to remove all rows from the collection. Note: After the drop you must explicitly recreate the collection.
- Maximum size for a capped collection is currently 1e9 bytes on a thirty-two bit machine. The maximum size of a capped collection on a sixty-four bit machine is constrained only by system resources.

Applications

- **Logging.** Capped collections provide a high-performance means for storing logging documents in the database. Inserting objects in an unindexed capped collection will be close to the speed of logging to a filesystem. Additionally, with the built-in FIFO mechanism, you are not at risk of using excessive disk space for the logging.

- **Caching.** If you wish to cache a small number of objects in the database, perhaps cached computations of information, the capped tables provide a convenient mechanism for this. Note that for this application you will typically want to use an index on the capped table as there will be more reads than writes.

- **Auto Archiving.** If you know you want data to automatically "roll out" over time as it ages, a capped collection can be an easier way to support than writing manual archival cron scripts.

Recommendations

- For maximum performance, do not create indexes on a capped collection. If the collection will be written to much more than it is read from, it is better to have no indexes. Note that you may create indexes on a capped collection; however, you are then moving from "log speed" inserts to "database speed" inserts -- that is, it will still be quite fast by database standards.
- Use natural ordering to retrieve the most recently inserted elements from the collection efficiently. This is (somewhat) analogous to tail on a log file.

Options

size. The size of the capped collection. This must be specified.

max

You may also optionally cap the number of objects in the collection. Once the limit is reached, items roll out on a least recently inserted basis.

To cap on number of objects, specify a `max:` parameter on the `createCollection()` call.

Note: When specifying a cap on the number of objects, you must also cap on size. Be sure to leave enough room for your chosen number of objects or items will roll out faster than expected. You can use the `validate()` utility method to see how much space an existing collection uses, and from that estimate your size needs.

Note: Capped collections are always capped by size and hence also limiting by number of documents is an overhead. Limiting by just size is faster.

```
db.createCollection("mycoll", {capped:true, size:100000, max:100});
db.mycoll.validate();
```

Tip: When programming, a handy way to store the most recently generated version of an object can be a collection capped with `max=1`.

autoIndexId

The `autoIndexId` field may be set to true or false to explicitly enable or disable automatic creation of a unique key index on the `_id` object field. By default, such an index is is not created for capped collections.

> An index is not automatically created on _id for capped collections by default

If you will be using the `_id` field, you should create an index on `_id`.

Preallocating space for a normal collection

The `createCollection` command may be used for non capped collections as well. For example:

```
db.createCollection("mycoll", {size:10000000});
db.createCollection("mycoll", {size:10000000, autoIndexId:false});
```

Explicitly creating a non capped collection via `createCollection` allows parameters of the new collection to be specified. For example, specification of a collection size causes the corresponding amount of disk space to be preallocated for use by the collection.

Sharding

Capped collections are not shardable.

Check if a collection is capped

You can check if a collection is capped by using the isCapped() shell function. db.foo.isCapped()

Convert a collection to capped

You can convert a (non-capped) collection to a capped collection with the `convertToCapped` command:

```
> db.runCommand({"convertToCapped": "mycoll", size: 100000});
{ "ok": 1 }
```

See Also

- The Sorting and Natural Order section of this Guide

createCollection Command

Use the createCollection command to create a collection explicitly. Often this is used to declare Capped Collections.

```
> # mongo shell
> db.createCollection("mycoll", {capped:true, size:100000})
> show collections
```

Most drivers also have a create collection helper method. You can manually issue any command also.

```
> db.runCommand( {createCollection:"mycoll", capped:true, size:100000} )
```

Using a Large Number of Collections

A technique one can use with MongoDB in certain situations is to have several collections to store information instead of a single collection. By doing this, certain repeating data no longer needs to be stored in every object, and an index on that key may be eliminated. More importantly for performance (depending on the problem), the data is then clustered by the grouping specified.

For example, suppose we are logging objects/documents to the database, and want to have M logs: perhaps a dev log, a debug log, an ops log, etc. We could store them all in one collection 'logs' containing objects like:

```
{ log : 'dev', ts : ..., info : ...  }
```

However, if the number of logs is not too high, it might be better to have a collection per log. We could have a 'logs.dev' collection, a 'logs.debug' collection, 'logs.ops', etc.:

```
// logs.dev:
{ ts : ..., info : ... }
```

Of course, this only makes sense if we do not need to query for items from multiple logs at the same time.

Generally, having a large number of collections has no significant performance penalty, and results in very good performance.

Limits

By default MongoDB has a limit of approximately 24,000 *namespaces* per database. Each namespace is 628 bytes, the `.ns` file is 16MB by default.

Each collection counts as a namespace, as does each index. Thus if every collection had one index, we can create up to 12,000 collections. The `--nssize` parameter allows you to increase this limit (see below).

Be aware that there is a certain minimum overhead per collection -- a few KB. Further, any index will require at least 8KB of data space as the b-tree page size is 8KB. Certain operations can get slow if there are a lot of collections and the meta data gets paged out.

`--nssize`

If more collections are required, run mongod with the `--nssize` parameter specified. This will make the <database>.ns file larger and support more collections. Note that `--nssize` sets the size used for newly created `.ns` files -- if you have an existing database and wish to resize, after running the db with `--nssize`, run the `db.repairDatabase()` command from the shell to adjust the size.

Maximum `.ns` file size is 2GB.

Data Types and Conventions

MongoDB (BSON) Data Types

Mongo uses special data types in addition to the basic JSON types of string, integer, boolean, double, null, array, and object. These types include date, object id, binary data, regular expression, and code. Each driver implements these types in language-specific ways, see your driver's documentation for details.

See BSON for a full list of database types.

Internationalization

- See Internationalized strings

Database References

- See Database References and Schema Design

Checking Types from the Shell

Floats and ints are treating as standard javascript numbers, and are thus hard to tell apart in the shell.

```
> // v1.8+ shell
> x
{
        "_id" : ObjectId("4dcd3ebc9278000000005158"),
        "d" : ISODate("2011-05-13T14:22:46.777Z"),
        "b" : BinData(0,""),
        "c" : "aa",
        "n" : 3,
        "e" : [ ],
        "n2" : NumberLong(33)
}
> x.d instanceof Date
true
> x.b instanceof BinData
true
> typeof x
object
> typeof x.b
object
> typeof x.n
number
> typeof x.n
number
> typeof x.n2
object
> x.n2 instanceof NumberLong
true
> typeof x.c
string
```

Timestamp Data Type

BSON includes a timestamp data type with special semantics in MongoDB.

Timestamps are stored as 64 bit values which, on a single `mongod`, are guaranteed unique. The first 32 bits are a time_t value (seconds since the UTC epoch). The second 32 bits are an incrementing ordinal for operations within a given second.

MongoDB uses the Timestamp datatype as "OpTimes" in the replication oplog's `ts` field.

Timestamps have special semantics when null. If null, and the timestamp is one of the first two fields of the object, the timestamp will automatically be converted to a unique value. (It must be one of the first two top level fields of the document for performance reasons; the entire document is not scanned for timestamps.)

An example from the mongo shell follows (example works with shells v1.7.5 and higher).

```
> // not one of the first 2 fields
> db.foo.insert( { x : 1, y : new Timestamp() } )
> db.foo.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d1d4ce78b1a04eeb294c098"), "x" : 1, "y" : { "t" : 0, "i" : 0 } }

> // in first 2 fields, auto fill of value works
> db.foo.drop()
> db.foo.insert( { y : new Timestamp(), x : 3 } )
> // the shell displays timestamps as { t : ..., i : ... } where t is the time
> // component and i is the ordinal component
> db.foo.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d1d4cfd8b1a04eeb294c099"), "y" : { "t" : 1293765885000, "i" : 1 }, "x" : 3 }

> db.foo.drop()
> for( var i = 0; i < 10; i++ ) db.foo.insert({y:new Timestamp(), x : i})
> db.foo.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d1d4d178b1a04eeb294c09a"), "y" : { "t" : 1293765911000, "i" : 1 }, "x" : 0 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d1d4d178b1a04eeb294c09b"), "y" : { "t" : 1293765911000, "i" : 2 }, "x" : 1 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d1d4d178b1a04eeb294c09c"), "y" : { "t" : 1293765911000, "i" : 3 }, "x" : 2 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d1d4d178b1a04eeb294c09d"), "y" : { "t" : 1293765911000, "i" : 4 }, "x" : 3 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d1d4d178b1a04eeb294c09e"), "y" : { "t" : 1293765911000, "i" : 5 }, "x" : 4 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d1d4d178b1a04eeb294c09f"), "y" : { "t" : 1293765911000, "i" : 6 }, "x" : 5 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d1d4d178b1a04eeb294c0a0"), "y" : { "t" : 1293765911000, "i" : 7 }, "x" : 6 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d1d4d178b1a04eeb294c0a1"), "y" : { "t" : 1293765911000, "i" : 8 }, "x" : 7 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d1d4d178b1a04eeb294c0a2"), "y" : { "t" : 1293765911000, "i" : 9 }, "x" : 8 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d1d4d178b1a04eeb294c0a3"), "y" : { "t" : 1293765911000, "i" : 10 }, "x" : 9 }
>
```

Internationalized Strings

MongoDB supports UTF-8 for strings in stored objects and queries. (Specifically, BSON strings are UTF-8.)

Generally, drivers for each programming language convert from the language's string format of choice to UTF-8 when serializing and deserializing BSON. For example, the Java driver converts Java Unicode strings to UTF-8 on serialization.

In most cases this means you can effectively store most international characters in MongoDB strings. A few notes:

- MongoDB regex queries support UTF-8 in the regex string.
- Currently, sort() on a string uses strcmp: sort order will be reasonable but not fully international correct. Future versions of MongoDB may support full UTF-8 sort ordering.

Object IDs

Documents in MongoDB are required to have a key, _id, which uniquely identifies them.

- Document IDs: _id
- The BSON ObjectId Datatype
  - BSON ObjectID Specification
    - TimeStamp
    - Machine
    - Pid
    - Increment
  - Document Timestamps
- Sequence Numbers
- What about UUIDs?
- See Also

Document IDs: _id

Almost every MongoDB document has an _id field as its first attribute (there are a few exceptions for system collections and some capped collections). This value usually a BSON ObjectId. Such an id must be unique for each member of a collection; this is enforced if the collection has an index on _id, which is the case by default.

If a user tries to insert a document without providing an `id`*, the database will automatically generate an _object id* and store it the _id field.

Users are welcome to use their own conventions for creating ids; the _id value may be of any type, other than arrays, so long as it is a unique.

Arrays are not allowed because they are Multikeys.

The BSON ObjectId Datatype

Although _id values can be of any type, a special BSON datatype is provided for object ids. This type is a 12-byte binary value designed to have a reasonably high probability of being unique when allocated. All of the officially-supported MongoDB drivers use this type by default for _id values. Also, the Mongo database itself uses this type when assigning _id values on inserts where no _id value is present.

In the MongoDB shell, ObjectId() may be used to create ObjectIds. `ObjectId(`*`string`*`)` creates an object ID from the specified hex string.

```
> x={ name: "joe" }
{ name : "joe" }
> db.people.save(x)
{ name : "joe" , _id : ObjectId( "47cc67093475061e3d95369d" ) }
> x
{ name : "joe" , _id : ObjectId( "47cc67093475061e3d95369d" ) }
> db.people.findOne( { _id: ObjectId( "47cc67093475061e3d95369d" ) } )
{ _id : ObjectId( "47cc67093475061e3d95369d" ) , name : "joe" }
> db.people.findOne( { _id: new ObjectId( "47cc67093475061e3d95369d" ) } )
{ _id : ObjectId( "47cc67093475061e3d95369d" ) , name : "joe" }
```

BSON ObjectID Specification

A BSON ObjectID is a 12-byte value consisting of a 4-byte timestamp (seconds since epoch), a 3-byte machine id, a 2-byte process id, and a 3-byte counter. Note that the timestamp and counter fields must be stored big endian unlike the rest of BSON. This is because they are compared byte-by-byte and we want to ensure a mostly increasing order. Here's the schema:

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
time				machine			pid		inc		

Here is a breakdown of the sections:

TimeStamp

This is a unix style timestamp. It is a signed int representing the number of seconds before or after January 1st 1970 (UTC).

Machine

This is the first three bytes of the (md5) hash of the machine host name, or of the mac/network address, or the virtual machine id.

Pid

This is 2 bytes of the process id (or thread id) of the process generating the object id.

Increment

This is an ever incrementing value, or a random number if a counter can't be used in the language/runtime.

Document Timestamps

One useful consequence of this specification is that it provides documents with a creation timestamp for free. All of the drivers implement methods for extracting these timestamps; see the relevant api docs for details.

Sequence Numbers

Traditional databases often use increasing sequence numbers for primary keys. In MongoDB, the preferred approach is to use Object IDs instead. The concept is that in a very large cluster of machines, it is easier to create an object ID than have global, uniformly increasing sequence numbers.

However, sometimes you may want a sequence number. You can do this by creating "counter" documents and using the findAndModify Command.

```
function counter(name) {
    var ret = db.counters.findAndModify({query:{_id:name}, update:{$inc : {next:1}}, "new":true,
upsert:true});
    // ret == { "_id" : "users", "next" : 1 }
return ret.next;
}

db.users.insert({_id:counter("users"), name:"Sarah C."}) // _id : 1
db.users.insert({_id:counter("users"), name:"Bob D."}) // _id : 2
//repeat
```

See also "Insert if Not Present" section of the Atomic Operations page for another method.

What about UUIDs?

The _id field on MongoDB documents can be of any type; however, it must be unique. Thus you can use UUIDs in the _id field instead of BSON ObjectIds (BSON ObjectIds are slightly smaller; they need not be worldwide unique, just unique for a single db cluster). When using UUIDs, our application must generate the UUID itself. Ideally the UUID is then stored as BSON BinData for efficiency – however you can also insert it as a hex string if you know space and speed will not be an issue for the use case.

See Also

- Optimizing Object IDs

Database References

- Simple Manual References
- DBRef
- DBRef in Different Languages / Drivers
  - C#
  - C++
  - Java
  - Javascript (mongo shell)
  - Perl
  - PHP
  - Python
  - Ruby
- See Also

As MongoDB is non-relational (no joins), references ("foreign keys") between documents are generally resolved client-side by additional queries to the server. Two conventions are common for references in MongoDB: first simple manual references, and second, the DBRef standard, which many drivers support explicitly.

Note: Often embedding of objects eliminates the need for references, but sometimes references are still appropriate. See the schema design page and also the schema design presentation videos.

Simple Manual References

Generally, manually coded references work just fine. We simply store the value that is present in _id in some other document in the database. For example:

```
> // grab a random blog post:
> p = db.postings.findOne();
{
 "_id" : ObjectId("4b866f08234ae01d21d89604"),
 "author" : "jim",
 "title" : "Brewing Methods"
}
> // get more info on author of post p
> a = db.users.findOne( { _id : p.author } )
{ "_id" : "jim", "email" : "jim@gmail.com" }

> // inverse: given an author, find all blog posts for the author
> db.postings.find( {author : a._id } )
```

DBRef

DBRef is a more formal specification for creating references between documents. DBRefs (generally) include a collection name as well as an object id. Most developers only use DBRefs if the collection can change from one document to the next. If your referenced collection will always be the same, the manual references outlined above are more efficient.

A DBRef is a reference from one document (object) to another within a database. A database reference is a standard embedded (JSON/BSON) object: we are defining a convention, not a special type. By having a standard way to represent, drivers and data frameworks can add helper methods which manipulate the references in standard ways.

DBRef's have the advantage of allowing optional automatic **client-side** dereferencing with some drivers, although more features may be added later. In many cases, you can just get away with storing the _id as a reference then dereferencing manually as detailed in the "Simple Manual References" section above.

Syntax for a DBRef reference value is

```
{ $ref : <collname>, $id : <idvalue>[, $db : <dbname>] }
```

where `<collname>` is the collection name referenced (without the database name), and `<idvalue>` is the value of the _id field for the object referenced. `$db` is optional (currently unsupported by many of the drivers) and allows for references to documents in other databases (specified by `<dbname>`).

> ⚠ The ordering for DBRefs does matter, fields must be in the order specified above.

The old BSON DBRef datatype is deprecated.

DBRef in Different Languages / Drivers

C#

Use the DBRef class. It takes the collection name and _id as parameters to the constructor. Then you can use the FollowReference method on the Database class to get the referenced document.

C++

The C++ driver does not yet provide a facility for automatically traversing DBRefs. However one can do it manually of course.

Java

Java supports DB references using the DBRef class.

Javascript (mongo shell)

Example:

```
> x = { name : 'Biology' }
{ "name" : "Biology" }
> db.courses.save(x)
> x
{ "name" : "Biology", "_id" : ObjectId("4b0552b0f0da7d1eb6f126a1") }
> stu = { name : 'Joe', classes : [ new DBRef('courses', x._id) ] }
// or we could write:
// stu = { name : 'Joe', classes : [ {$ref:'courses',$id:x._id} ] }
> db.students.save(stu)
> stu
{
        "name" : "Joe",
        "classes" : [
                {
                        "$ref" : "courses",
                        "$id" : ObjectId("4b0552b0f0da7d1eb6f126a1")
                }
        ],
        "_id" : ObjectId("4b0552e4f0da7d1eb6f126a2")
}
> stu.classes[0]
{ "$ref" : "courses", "$id" : ObjectId("4b0552b0f0da7d1eb6f126a1") }
> stu.classes[0].fetch()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4b0552b0f0da7d1eb6f126a1"), "name" : "Biology" }
>
```

Perl

The Perl driver does not provide a facility for automatically traversing DBRefs, but there is a CPAN package for it: MongoDBx::AutoDeref. You can also traverse them manually, of course.

PHP

PHP supports DB references with the MongoDBRef class, as well as creation and deferencing methods at the database (MongoDB::createDBRef and MongoDB::getDBRef) and collection (MongoCollection::createDBRef and MongoCollection::getDBRef) levels.

Python

To create a DB reference in python use the pymongo.dbref.DBRef class. You can also use the dereference method on Database instances to make dereferencing easier.

Python also supports auto-ref and auto-deref - check out the auto_reference example.

Ruby

Ruby also supports DB references using the DBRef class and a dereference method on DB instances. For example:

```
@db   = Connection.new.db("blog")
@user = @db["users"].save({:name => "Smith"})
@post = @db["posts"].save({:title => "Hello World", :user_id => @user.id})
@ref  = DBRef.new("users", @post.user_id)
assert_equal @user, @db.dereference(@ref)
```

See Also

- Schema Design

GridFS

GridFS is a specification for storing large files in MongoDB. All of the officially supported drivers implement the GridFS spec.

- Rationale
- Implementation
- Language Support
- Command Line Tools

- See also

Rationale

The database supports native storage of binary data within BSON objects. However, BSON objects in MongoDB are limited in size (4MB older versions, 16MB in v1.7/1.8, higher limits in the future). The GridFS spec provides a mechanism for transparently dividing a large file among multiple documents. This allows us to efficiently store large objects, and in the case of especially large files, such as videos, permits range operations (e.g., fetching only the first N bytes of a file).

Implementation

To facilitate this, a standard is specified for the chunking of files. Each file has a metadata object in a files collection, and one or more chunk objects in a chunks collection. Details of how this is stored can be found in the GridFS Specification; however, you do not really need to read that, instead, just look at the GridFS API in each language's client driver or mongofiles tool.

Language Support

Most drivers include GridFS implementations; for languages not listed below, check the driver's API documentation. (If a language does not include support, see the GridFS specification -- implementing a handler is usually quite easy.)

Command Line Tools

Command line tools are available to write and read GridFS files from and to the local filesystem.

See also

- C++
- A PHP GridFS Blog Article
- Choosing a Shard Key contains a section describing how best to shard GridFS.

When to use GridFS

This page is under construction

When to use GridFS

- Lots of files. GridFS tends to handle large numbers (many thousands) of files better than many file systems.
- User uploaded files. When users upload files you tend to have a lot of files, and want them replicated and backed up. GridFS is a perfect place to store these as then you can manage them the same way you manage your data. You can also query by user, upload date, etc... directly in the file store, without a layer of indirection
- Files that often change. If you have certain files that change a lot - it makes sense to store them in GridFS so you can modify them in one place and all clients will get the updates. Also can be better than storing in source tree so you don't have to deploy app to update files.

When not to use GridFS

- Few small static files. If you just have a few small files for a website (js,css,images) its probably easier just to use the file system.
- Note that if you need to update a binary object atomically, and the object is under the document size limit for your version of MongoDB (16MB for 1.8), then you might consider storing the object manually within a single document. This can be accomplished using the BSON bindata type. Check your driver's docs for details on using this type.

Indexes

Indexes enhance query performance, often dramatically. It's important to think about the kinds of queries your application will need so that you can define relevant indexes. Once that's done, actually creating the indexes in MongoDB is relatively easy.

Indexes in MongoDB are conceptually similar to those in RDBMSes like MySQL. You will want an index in MongoDB in the same sort of situations where you would have wanted an index in MySQL.

- Basics
  - Default Indexes
  - Embedded Keys
  - Documents as Keys
  - Arrays
- Compound Keys Indexes
- Sparse Indexes
- Unique Indexes

    - Missing Keys
    - Duplicate Values
- Background Index Building
- Dropping Indexes
- ReIndex
- Additional Notes on Indexes
    - Index Performance
    - Using `sort()` without an Index
- Geospatial
- Additional Resources

Basics

An index is a data structure that collects information about the values of the specified fields in the documents of a collection. This data structure is used by Mongo's query optimizer to quickly sort through and order the documents in a collection. Formally speaking, these indexes are implemented as "B-Tree" indexes.

In the shell, you can create an index by calling the `ensureIndex()` function, and providing a document that specifies one or more keys to index. Referring back to our *examples* database from Mongo Usage Basics, we can index on the 'j' field as follows:

```
db.things.ensureIndex({j:1});
```

The `ensureIndex()` function only creates the index if it does not exist.

Once a collection is indexed on a key, random access on query expressions which match the specified key are fast. Without the index, MongoDB has to go through each document checking the value of specified key in the query:

```
db.things.find({j:2});  // fast - uses index
db.things.find({x:3});  // slow - has to check all because 'x' isn't indexed
```

You can run

```


db.things.getIndexes()
```

in the shell to see the existing indexes on the collection. Run

```


db.system.indexes.find()
```

to see all indexes for the database.

Default Indexes

For each collection, an index is always created on `_id` (except for capped collections). This index is special and cannot be deleted. The _id index enforces uniqueness for its keys (see the sharding documentation for some nuances regarding this with sharding).

_id values should be invariant.

Embedded Keys

With MongoDB you can even index on a key inside of an embedded document. For example:

```
db.things.ensureIndex({"address.city": 1})
```

Documents as Keys

Indexed fields may be of any type, including (embedded) documents:

```
db.factories.insert( { name: "xyz", metro: { city: "New York", state: "NY" } } );
db.factories.ensureIndex( { metro : 1 } );
// this query can use the above index:
db.factories.find( { metro: { city: "New York", state: "NY" } } );
//As well as this
db.factories.find( { metro: { $gte : { city: "New York" } } } );

// But this query will not return the document because the order of the fields is significant and
doesn't match in this case
db.factories.find( { metro: { state: "NY" , city: "New York" } } );
```

An alternative to documents as keys is to create a compound index such as:

```
db.factories.ensureIndex( { "metro.city" : 1, "metro.state" : 1 } );
// these queries can use the above index:
db.factories.find( { "metro.city" : "New York", "metro.state" : "NY" } );
db.factories.find( { "metro.city" : "New York" } );
db.factories.find().sort( { "metro.city" : 1, "metro.state" : 1 } );
db.factories.find().sort( { "metro.city" : 1 } )
```

There are pros and cons to the two approaches. When using the entire (sub-)document as a key, compare order is predefined and is ascending key order in the order the keys occur in the BSON document. With compound indexes reaching in, you can mix ascending and descending keys, and the query optimizer will then be able to use the index for queries on solely the first key(s) in the index too.

Arrays

When a document's stored value for a index key field is an array, MongoDB indexes each element of the array. See the Multikeys page for more information.

Compound Keys Indexes

In addition to single-key basic indexes, MongoDB also supports multi-key "compound" indexes. Just like basic indexes, you use the `ensureIndex()` function in the shell to create the index, but instead of specifying only a single key, you can specify several :

```
db.things.ensureIndex({j:1, name:-1});
```

When creating an index, the number associated with a key specifies the direction of the index, so it should always be 1 (ascending) or -1 (descending). Direction doesn't matter for single key indexes or for random access retrieval but is important if you are doing sorts or range queries on compound indexes.

If you have a compound index on multiple fields, you can use it to query on the beginning subset of fields. So if you have an index on

```
a,b,c
```

you can use it query on

```
a
```

```
a,b
```

```
a,b,c
```

New in 1.6+
Now you can also use the compound index to service any combination of equality and range queries from the constitute fields. If the first key of the index is present in the query, that index may be selected by the query optimizer. If the first key is not present in the query, the index will only be used if hinted explicitly. While indexes can be used in many cases where an arbitrary subset of indexed fields are present in the query, as a general rule the optimal indexes for a given query are those in which queried fields precede any non queried fields.

Sparse Indexes

Current Limitations
A sparse index can only have one field. SERVER-2193

New in 1.7.4.

A "sparse index" is an index that only includes documents with the indexed field.
Any document that is missing the sparsely indexed field will not be stored in the index; the index will therefor be *sparse* because of the missing documents when values are missing.

Sparse indexes, by definition, are not complete (for the collection) and behave differently than complete indexes. When using a "sparse index" for sorting (or possibly just filtering) some documents in the collection may not be returned. This is because only documents in the index will be returned.

```
> db.people.ensureIndex({title : 1}, {sparse : true})
> db.people.save({name:"Jim"})
> db.people.save({name:"Sarah", title:"Princess"})
> db.people.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4de6abd5da558a49fc5eef29"), "name" : "Jim" }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4de6abdbda558a49fc5eef2a"), "name" : "Sarah", "title" : "Princess" }
> db.people.find().sort({title:1}) // only 1 doc returned because sparse
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4de6abdbda558a49fc5eef2a"), "name" : "Sarah", "title" : "Princess" }
> db.people.dropIndex({title : 1})
{ "nIndexesWas" : 2, "ok" : 1 }
> db.people.find().sort({title:1}) // no more index, returns all documents
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4de6abd5da558a49fc5eef29"), "name" : "Jim" }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4de6abdbda558a49fc5eef2a"), "name" : "Sarah", "title" : "Princess" }
```

You can combine sparse with unique to produce a unique constraint that ignores documents with missing fields.

Note that MongoDB's sparse indexes are not block-level indexes. MongoDB sparse indexes can be thought of as dense indexes with a specific filter.

Unique Indexes

MongoDB supports unique indexes, which guarantee that no documents are inserted whose values for the indexed keys match those of an existing document. To create an index that guarantees that no two documents have the same values for both `firstname` and `lastname` you would do:

```
db.things.ensureIndex({firstname: 1, lastname: 1}, {unique: true});
```

Missing Keys

When a document is saved to a collection with unique indexes, any missing indexed keys will be inserted with null values. Thus, it won't be possible to insert multiple documents missing the same indexed key.

```
db.things.ensureIndex({firstname: 1}, {unique: true});
  db.things.save({lastname: "Smith"});

  // Next operation will fail because of the unique index on firstname.
db.things.save({lastname: "Jones"});
```

Duplicate Values

A unique index cannot be created on a key that has duplicate values. If you would like to create the index anyway, keeping the first document the database indexes and deleting all subsequent documents that have duplicate values, add the `dropDups` option.

```
db.things.ensureIndex({firstname : 1}, {unique : true, dropDups : true})
```

Background Index Building

By default, building an index blocks other database operations. v1.3.2 and higher has a background index build option .

Dropping Indexes

To delete all indexes on the specified collection:

```
db.collection.dropIndexes();
```

To delete a single index:

```
db.collection.dropIndex({x: 1, y: -1})
```

Running directly as a command without helper:

```
// note: command was "deleteIndexes", not "dropIndexes", before MongoDB v1.3.2
// remove index with key pattern {y:1} from collection foo
db.runCommand({dropIndexes:'foo', index : {y:1}})
// remove all indexes:
db.runCommand({dropIndexes:'foo', index : '*'})
```

ReIndex

The reIndex command will rebuild all indexes for a collection.

```
db.myCollection.reIndex()
// same as:
db.runCommand( { reIndex : 'myCollection' } )
```

Usually this is unnecessary. You may wish to do this if the size of your collection has changed dramatically or the disk space used by indexes seems oddly large.

reIndex is a blocking operation (indexes are rebuilt in the foreground) and will be slow for large collections.

The repair database command recreates all indexes in the database.

Additional Notes on Indexes

- MongoDB indexes (and string equality tests in general) are case sensitive.
- When you update an object, if the object fits in its previous allocation area, only those indexes whose keys have changed are updated. This improves performance. Note that if the object has grown and must move, all index keys must then update, which is slower.
- Index information is kept in the system.indexes collection, run db.system.indexes.find() to see example data.
- There is a maximum key size in the indexes, currently approximately 800 bytes. Documents with a key to index greater than this size are allowed, but the key is not indexed. This limitation will eventually be removed.

Index Performance

Indexes make retrieval by a key, including ordered sequential retrieval, very fast. Updates by key are faster too as MongoDB can find the document to update very quickly.

However, keep in mind that each index created adds a certain amount of overhead for inserts and deletes. In addition to writing data to the base collection, keys must then be added to the B-Tree indexes. Thus, indexes are best for collections where the number of reads is much greater than the number of writes. For collections which are write-intensive, indexes, in some cases, may be counterproductive. Most collections are read-intensive, so indexes are a good thing in most situations.

Using `sort()` without an Index

You may use `sort()` to return data in order without an index if the data set to be returned is small (less than four megabytes). For these cases it is best to use `limit()` and `sort()` together.

Geospatial

- See Geospatial Indexing page.

Additional Resources

- Video introduction to indexing and the query optimizer
- More advanced video and accompanying slides, with many examples and diagrams
- Intermediate level webinar and accompanying slides
- Another set of intermediate level slides

Using Multikeys to Simulate a Large Number of Indexes

One way to work with data that has a high degree of options for queryability is to use the multikey indexing feature where the keys are objects. For example:

```
> x = {
... _id : "abc",
... cost : 33,
... attribs : [
...          { color : 'red' },
...          { shape : 'rect' },
...          { color : 'blue' },
...          { avail : true } ]
... };
> db.foo.insert(x);
> db.foo.ensureIndex({attribs:1});
> db.foo.find( { attribs : {color:'blue'} } ); // uses index
> db.foo.find( { attribs : {avail:false} } );  // uses index
```

In addition to being able to have an unlimited number of attributes types, we can also add new types dynamically.

This is mainly useful for simply attribute lookups; the above pattern is not necessary helpful for sorting or certain other query types.

See Also

Discussion thread MongoDB for a chemical property search engine for a more complex real world example.

Geospatial Indexing

- Creating the Index
- Querying
- Compound Indexes
- geoNear Command
- Bounds Queries
- The Earth is Round but Maps are Flat
  - New Spherical Model
  - Spherical Example
- Multi-location Documents
- Sharded Environments
- Implementation
- Presentations

v1.3.3+

MongoDB supports two-dimensional geospatial indexes. It is designed with location-based queries in mind, such as "find me the closest N items to my location." It can also efficiently filter on additional criteria, such as "find me the closest N museums to my location."

In order to use the index, you need to have a field in your object that is either a sub-object or array where the first 2 elements are x,y coordinates (or y,x - just be consistent; it might be advisable to use order-preserving dictionaries/hashes in your client code, to ensure consistency). Some

examples:

```
{ loc : [ 50 , 30 ] }
{ loc : { x : 50 , y : 30 } }
{ loc : { foo : 50 , y : 30 } }
{ loc : { long : 40.739037, lat: 73.992964 } }
```

Creating the Index

```
db.places.ensureIndex( { loc : "2d" } )
```

By default, the index assumes you are indexing longitude/latitude and is thus configured for a [-180..180] value range.

If you are indexing something else, you can specify some options:

```
db.places.ensureIndex( { loc : "2d" } , { min : -500 , max : 500 } )
```

that will scale the index to store values between -500 and 500. Bounded geospatial searches are currently limited to rectangular and circular areas with no "wrapping" at the outer boundaries. You cannot insert values outside the boundary interval `[min, max)`. For example, using the code above, the point `(-501, 501)` could not be inserted and would raise an error.

> Pre-1.9 releases of mongo do not allow the insertion of points exactly at the boundaries.

```
db.places.ensureIndex( { loc : "2d" } , { bits : 26 } )
```

The bits parameter sets the precision of the 2D geo-hash values, the smallest "buckets" in which locations are stored. By default, precision is set to 26 bits which is equivalent to approximately 1 foot given `(longitude, latitude)` location values and default `(-180, 180)` bounds. To index other spaces which may have very large bounds, it may be useful to increase the number of bits up to the maximum of 32.

> You may only have 1 geospatial index per collection, for now.

Implicit array expansion syntax is only supported in v1.9+, where `"foo.bar" : "2d"` may reference a nested field like so:

```
{ foo : [ { bar : [ ... ] } ] }
```

This restriction holds even if there are not multiple locations per document and the array size is 1. In older versions you will need to embed the nested location without a parent array :

```
{ foo : { bar : [ ... ] } }
```

Querying

The index can be used for exact matches:

```
db.places.find( { loc : [50,50] } )
```

Of course, that is not very interesting. More important is a query to find points near another point, but not necessarily matching exactly:

```
db.places.find( { loc : { $near : [50,50] } } )
```

The above query finds the closest points to (50,50) and returns them sorted by distance (there is no need for an additional sort parameter). Use limit() to specify a maximum number of points to return (a default limit of 100 applies if unspecified):

```
db.places.find( { loc : { $near : [50,50] } } ).limit(20)
```

You can also use $near with a maximum distance

```
db.places.find( { loc : { $near : [50,50] , $maxDistance : 5 } } ).limit(20)
```

> Prior to v1.9.1, geospatial indexes can be used for **exact** lookups only when there is no other criteria specified in the query and locations are specified in arrays. For any type of `$near`, `$within`, or `geoNear` query, this restriction does not apply and any additional search criteria can be used.

Compound Indexes

MongoDB geospatial indexes optionally support specification of secondary key values. If you are commonly going to be querying on both a location and other attributes at the same time, add the other attributes to the index. The other attributes are annotated within the index to make filtering faster. For example:

```
db.places.ensureIndex( { location : "2d" , category : 1 } );
db.places.find( { location : { $near : [50,50] }, category : 'coffee' } );
```

geoNear Command

While the find() syntax above is typically preferred, MongoDB also has a geoNear command which performs a similar function. The geoNear command has the added benefit of returning the distance of each item from the specified point in the results, as well as some diagnostics for troubleshooting.

Valid options are: "near", "num", "maxDistance", "distanceMultiplier" and "query".

```
> db.runCommand( { geoNear : "places" , near : [50,50], num : 10 } );
> db.runCommand({geoNear:"asdf", near:[50,50]})
{
        "ns" : "test.places",
        "near" : "1100110000001111110000001111110000001111110000001111",
        "results" : [
                {
                        "dis" : 69.29646421910687,
                        "obj" : {
                                "_id" : ObjectId("4b8bd6b93b83c574d8760280"),
                                "y" : [
                                        1,
                                        1
                                ],
                                "category" : "Coffee"
                        }
                },
                {
                        "dis" : 69.29646421910687,
                        "obj" : {
                                "_id" : ObjectId("4b8bd6b03b83c574d876027f"),
                                "y" : [
                                        1,
                                        1
                                ]
                        }
                }
        ],
        "stats" : {
                "time" : 0,
                "btreelocs" : 1,
                "btreelocs" : 1,
                "nscanned" : 2,
                "nscanned" : 2,
                "objectsLoaded" : 2,
                "objectsLoaded" : 2,
                "avgDistance" : 69.29646421910687
        },
        "ok" : 1
}
```

The above command will return the 10 closest items to (50,50). (The `loc` field is automatically determined by checking for a 2d index on the collection.)

If you want to add an additional filter, you can do so:

```
> db.runCommand( { geoNear : "places" , near : [ 50 , 50 ], num : 10,
... query : { type : "museum" } } );
```

`query` can be any regular mongo query.

Bounds Queries

v1.3.4

`$within` can be used instead of `$near` to find items within a shape. Results are **not** sorted by distance, which may result in faster queries when this sorting is not required. Shapes of type `$box` (rectangles), `$center` (circles), and `$polygon` (concave and convex polygons) are supported. All bounds queries implicitly include the border of the shape as part of the boundary, though due to floating-point inaccuracy this can't strictly be relied upon.

To query for all points within a rectangle, you must specify the lower-left and upper-right corners:

```
> box = [[40.73083, -73.99756], [40.741404,  -73.988135]]
> db.places.find({"loc" : {"$within" : {"$box" : box}}})
```

A circle is specified by a center point and radius:

```
> center = [50, 50]
> radius = 10
> db.places.find({"loc" : {"$within" : {"$center" : [center, radius]}}})
```

A polygon is specified by an array or object of points, where each point may be specified by either an array or an object. The last point in the polygon is implicitly connected to the first point in the polygon.

```
> polygonA = [ [ 10, 20 ], [ 10, 40 ], [ 30, 40 ], [ 30, 20 ] ]
> polygonB = { a : { x : 10, y : 20 }, b : { x : 15, y : 25 }, c : { x : 20, y : 20 } }
> db.places.find({ "loc" : { "$within" : { "$polygon" : polygonA } } })
> db.places.find({ "loc" : { "$within" : { "$polygon" : polygonB } } })
```

Polygon searches are strictly limited to looking for **points** inside polygons, polygon shapes in documents can't currently be indexed in MongoDB.

> ⚠ Polygon searches are supported in versions >= 1.9

The Earth is Round but Maps are Flat

The current implementation assumes an idealized model of a flat earth, meaning that an arcdegree of latitude (y) and longitude (x) represent the same distance everywhere. This is only true at the equator where they are both about equal to 69 miles or 111km. However, at the 10gen offices at { x : -74 , y : 40.74 } one arcdegree of longitude is about 52 miles or 83 km (latitude is unchanged). This means that something 1 mile to the north would seem closer than something 1 mile to the east.

New Spherical Model

In 1.7.0 we added support for correctly using spherical distances by adding "Sphere" to the name of the query. For example, use `$nearSphere` or `$centerSphere` (`$boxSphere` and `$polygonSphere` don't make as much sense and so aren't supported). If you use the geoNear command to get distance along with the results, you just need to add `spherical:true` to the list of options.

There are a few caveats that you must be aware of when using spherical distances. The biggest is:

1. The code assumes that you are using decimal degrees in **(longitude, latitude)** order. This is the same order used for the GeoJSON spec . Using (latitude, longitude) will result in very incorrect results, but is often the ordering used elsewhere, so it is good to double-check. The names you assign to a location object (if using an object and not an array) are **completely ignored**, only the ordering is detected. A few examples:

   ```
   /* assuming longitude is 13, latitude is -50 */
   [13, -50] // ok
   { x : 13, y : -50 } // ok
   { long : 13, lat : -50 } // ok

   /* wrong, will make lat = longitude and long = latitude */
   { lat : -50, long : 13 }
   ```

   As above, the use of order-preserving dictionaries is required for consistent results.

Also:

1. All distances use radians. This allows you to easily multiply by the radius of the earth (about 6371 km or 3959 miles) to get the distance in your choice of units. Conversely, divide by the radius of the earth when doing queries.
2. We don't currently handle wrapping at the poles or at the transition from -180° to +180° longitude, however we detect when a search would wrap and raise an error.
3. While the default Earth-like bounds are `[-180, 180)`, valid values for latitude are between -90° and 90°.

Spherical Example

Below is a simple example of a spherical distance query, demonstrating how to convert a specified range in kilometers to a maxDistance in

radians as well as converting the returned distance results from radians back to kilometers. The same conversion of kilometer to radian distance bounds is required when performing bounded $nearSphere and $centerSphere queries.

```
> db.points.insert({ pos : { long : 30, lat : 30 } })
> db.points.insert({ pos : { long : -10, lat : -20 } })
> db.points.ensureIndex({ pos : "2d" })
>
> var earthRadius = 6378 // km
> var range = 3000 // km
>
> distances = db.runCommand({ geoNear : "points", near : [0, 0], spherical : true, maxDistance : range
/ earthRadius /* to radians */ }).results
[
 {
  "dis" : 0.3886630122897946,
  "obj" : {
   "_id" : ObjectId("4d9123026ccc7e2cf22925c4"),
   "pos" : {
    "long" : -10,
    "lat" : -20
   }
  }
 }
]
> pointDistance = distances[0].dis * earthRadius // back to km
2478.89269238431
```

Multi-location Documents

v.1.9+

MongoDB now also supports indexing documents by multiple locations. These locations can be specified in arrays of sub-objects, for example:

```
> db.places.insert({ addresses : [ { name : "Home", loc : [55.5, 42.3] }, { name : "Work", loc :
[32.3, 44.2] } ] })
> db.places.ensureIndex({ "addresses.loc" : "2d" })
```

Multiple locations may also be specified in a single field:

```
> db.places.insert({ lastSeenAt : [ { x : 45.3, y : 32.2 }, [54.2, 32.3], { long : 44.2, lat : 38.2 }
] })
> db.places.ensureIndex({ "lastSeenAt" : "2d" })
```

When performing $near-type queries on collections containing multi-location documents, the same document may be returned multiple times, since $near queries return ordered results by distance. Queries using the $within operator will not return duplicate documents,

Sharded Environments

v1.7.4

Geospatial indexing in sharded collections is now supported, with some caveats: see http://jira.mongodb.org/browse/SHARDING-83. Sharded clusters can also use geospatial indexes on unsharded collections within the cluster.

Implementation

The current implementation encodes geographic hash codes atop standard MongoDB B-trees. Results of $near queries are exact. One limitation with this encoding, while fast, is that prefix lookups don't give exact results, especially around bit flip areas. MongoDB solves this by doing a grid-neighbor search after the initial prefix scan to pick up any straggler points. This generally ensures that performance remains very high while providing correct results.

Presentations

- Geospatial Indexing with MongoDB - MongoSF (May 2011)
- Storing and Querying location data with MongoDB - MongoSF (May 2011)

Geospatial Haystack Indexing

In addition to ordinary 2d geospatial indices, mongodb supports the use of bucket-based geospatial indexes. Called "Haystack indexing", these indices can accelerate small-region type longitude / latitude queries when additional criteria is also required. For example, "find all restaurants within 25 miles with name 'foo'". Haystack indices allow you to tune your bucket size to the distribution of your data, so that in general you search only very small regions of 2d space for a particular kind of document. They are **not** suited for finding the closest documents to a particular location, when the closest documents are far away compared to bucket size.

> For now, only a single coordinate field and optional single additional field can be used in a haystack index.

To use haystack indexing, documents with a `(longitude, latitude)` position stored as a sub-document or array are required, with an optional additional field to be indexed. For example:

```
> db.foo.insert({ pos : { long : 34.2, lat : 33.3 }, type : "restaurant" })
> db.foo.insert({ pos : { long : 34.2, lat : 37.3 }, type : "restaurant" })
> db.foo.insert({ pos : { long : 59.1, lat : 87.2 }, type : "office" })
...
> db.foo.ensureIndex({ pos : "geoHaystack", type : 1 }, { bucketSize : 1 })
```

The bucketSize parameter is required, and determines the granularity of the bucket index - our value of 1 above creates an index where keys within 1 unit of longitude or latitude are stored in the same bucket.

The haystack index can only be used by a database command, it is not at present chosen by the query optimizer. As an example of finding all restaurants in a particular area with a given maximum distance of 6 degrees longitude / latitude:

```
> db.runCommand({ geoSearch : "foo", near : [33, 33], maxDistance : 6, search : { type : "restaurant"
} })
{
 "results" : [
  {
   "_id" : ObjectId("4d948a7db1670124ce358fb7"),
   "pos" : {
    "long" : 34.2,
    "lat" : 33.3
   },
   "type" : "restaurant"
  },
  {
   "_id" : ObjectId("4d948a84b1670124ce358fb8"),
   "pos" : {
    "long" : 34.2,
    "lat" : 37.3
   },
   "type" : "restaurant"
  }
 ],
 "stats" : {
  "time" : 0,
  "btreeMatches" : 2,
  "n" : 2
 },
 "ok" : 1
}
```

> Spherical queries are not currently supported by haystack indices.

Indexing as a Background Operation

> ⚠ Slaves and replica secondaries build all indexes in the foreground in certain releases (including the latest). Thus even when using background:true on the primary, the slave/secondary will be unavailable to service queries while the index builds there.

By default the `ensureIndex()` operation is blocking, and will stop other operations on the database from proceeding until completed. However, in v1.3.2+, a background indexing option is available.

To build an index in the background, add `background:true` to your index options. Examples:

```
> db.things.ensureIndex({x:1}, {background:true});
> db.things.ensureIndex({name:1}, {background:true, unique:true,
... dropDups:true});
```

With background mode enabled, other operations, including writes, will not be obstructed during index creation. The index is not used for queries until the build is complete.

Although the operation is 'background' in the sense that other operations may run concurrently, the command will not return to the shell prompt until completely finished. To do other operations at the same time, open a separate mongo shell instance.

Please note that background mode building uses an incremental approach to building the index which is slower than the default foreground mode: time to build the index will be greater.

While the build progresses, it is possible to see that the operation is still in progress with the `db.currentOp()` command (will be shown as an insert to system.indexes). You may also use `db.killOp()` to terminate the build process.

While the build progresses, the index is visible in system.indexes, but it is not used for queries until building completes.

Notes

- Only one index build at a time is permitted per collection.
- Some administrative operations, such as repairDatabase, are disallowed while a background indexing job is in progress.
- v1.4 and higher (for production usage)

Multikeys

MongoDB provides an interesting "multikey" feature that can automatically index arrays of an object's values. A good example is tagging. Suppose you have an article tagged with some category names:

```
$ dbshell
> db.articles.save( { name: "Warm Weather", author: "Steve",
                      tags: ['weather', 'hot', 'record', 'april'] } )

> db.articles.find()
{"name" : "Warm Weather" , "author" : "Steve" ,
 "tags" : ["weather","hot","record","april"] ,
 "_id"  : "497ce4051ca9ca6d3efca323"}
```

We can easily perform a query looking for a particular value in the `tags` array:

```
> db.articles.find( { tags: 'april' } )
{"name" : "Warm Weather" , "author" : "Steve" ,
 "tags" : ["weather","hot","record","april"] ,
 "_id"  : "497ce4051ca9ca6d3efca323"}
```

Further, we can index on the tags array. Creating an index on an array element indexes results in the database indexing each element of the array:

```
> db.articles.ensureIndex( { tags : 1 } )
true

> db.articles.find( { tags: 'april' } )
{"name" : "Warm Weather" , "author" : "Steve" ,
 "tags" : ["weather","hot","record","april"] ,
 "_id"  : "497ce4051ca9ca6d3efca323"}

> db.articles.find( { tags: 'april' } ).explain()
{"cursor" : "BtreeCursor tags_1" , "startKey" : {"tags" : "april"} ,
 "endKey" : {"tags" : "april"} , "nscanned" : 1 , "n" : 1 , "millis" : 0 }
```

Incrementally adding and removing keys

You can use $addToSet to add a new key to the array, and $pull to remove one.

```
> db.articles.update({name: "Warm Weather"},{$addToSet:{tags:"northeast"}});
> db.articles.find();
...
> db.articles.update({name: "Warm Weather"},{$pull:{tags:"northeast"}});
```

Embedded object fields in an array

The same technique can be used to find fields within objects embedded in arrays:

```
> // find posts where julie commented
> db.posts.find( { "comments.author" : "julie" } )
{"title" : "How the west was won",
 "comments" : [{"text" : "great!" , "author" : "sam"},
               {"text" : "ok" , "author" : "julie"}],
 "_id" : "497ce79f1ca9ca6d3efca325"}
```

Querying on all values in a given set

By using the $all query option, a set of values may be supplied each of which must be present in a matching object field. For example:

```
> db.articles.find( { tags: { $all: [ 'april', 'record' ] } } )
{"name" : "Warm Weather" , "author" : "Steve" ,
 "tags" : ["weather","hot","record","april"] ,
 "_id"  : "497ce4051ca9ca6d3efca323"}

> db.articles.find( { tags: { $all: [ 'april', 'june' ] } } )
> // no matches
```

Caveats with Parallel Arrays

When using a **compound index**, at most one of indexed values in any document can be an array. So if we have an index on `{a: 1, b: 1}`, the following documents are both fine:

```
{a: [1, 2], b: 1}
{a: 1, b: [1, 2]}
```

This document, however, will fail to be inserted, with an error message "cannot index parallel arrays":

```
{a: [1, 2], b: [1, 2]}
```

The problem with indexing parallel arrays is that each value in the cartesian product of the compound keys would have to be indexed, which can get out of hand very quickly.

See Also

- The Multikeys section of the Full Text Search in Mongo document for information about this feature.

Indexing Advice and FAQ

We get a lot of questions about indexing. Here we provide answers to a number of these. There are a couple of points to keep in mind, though. First, indexes in MongoDB work quite similarly to indexes in MySQL, and thus many of the techniques for building efficient indexes in MySQL apply to MongoDB.

Second, and even more importantly, know that advice on indexing can only take you so far. The best indexes for your application should always be based on a number of important factors, including the kinds of queries you expect, the ratio of reads to writes, and even the amount of free memory on your system. This means that the best strategy for designing indexes will always be to profile a variety of index configurations with data sets similar to the ones you'll be running in production, and see which perform best. There's no substitute for good empirical analyses.

Note: if you're brand new to indexing, you may want to read this introductory article first.

- Indexing Strategies
  - Create indexes to match your queries.
  - One index per query.
  - Make sure your indexes can fit in RAM.
  - Be careful about single-key indexes with low selectivity.
  - Use `explain`.
    - Understanding `explain`'s output.
  - Pay attention to the read/write ratio of your application.
  - Indexing Properties
    - 1. The sort column must be the last column used in the index.
    - 2. The range query must also be the last column in an index. This is an axiom of 1 above.
    - 3. Only use a range query or sort on one column.
    - 4. Conserve indexes by re-ordering columns used on equality (non-range) queries.
    - 5. MongoDB's $ne or $nin operator's aren't efficient with indexes.
- FAQ
  - I've started building an index, and the database has stopped responding. What's going on? What do I do?
  - I'm using $ne or $nin in a query, and while it uses the index, it's still slow. What's happening?
- Using Multikeys to Simulate a Large Number of Indexes

Indexing Strategies

Here are some general principles for building smart indexes.

Create indexes to match your queries.

If you only query on a single key, then a single-key index will do. For instance, maybe you're searching for a blog post's slug:

```
db.posts.find({ slug : 'state-of-mongodb-2010' })
```

In this case, a unique index on a single key is best:

```
db.posts.ensureIndex({ slug: 1 }, {unique: true});
```

However, it's common to query on multiple keys and to sort the results. For these situations, compound indexes are best. Here's an example for querying the latest comments with a 'mongodb' tag:

```
db.comments.find({ tags : 'mongodb'}).sort({ created_at : -1 });
```

And here's the proper index:

```
db.comments.ensureIndex({tags : 1, created_at : -1});
```

Note that if we wanted to sort by `created_at` ascending, this index would be less effective.

One index per query.

It's sometimes thought that queries on multiple keys can use multiple indexes; this is not the case with MongoDB. If you have a query that selects on multiple keys, and you want that query to use an index efficiently, then a compound-key index is necessary.

Make sure your indexes can fit in RAM.

The shell provides a command for returning the total index size on a given collection:

```
db.comments.totalIndexSize();
65443
```

If your queries seem sluggish, you should verify that your indexes are small enough to fit in RAM. For instance, if you're running on 4GB RAM and you have 3GB of indexes, then your indexes probably aren't fitting in RAM. You may need to add RAM and/or verify that all the indexes you've created are actually being used.

Be careful about single-key indexes with low selectivity.

Suppose you have a field called 'status' where the possible values are 'new' and 'processeed'. If you add an index on 'status' then you've created a low-selectivity index, meaning that the index isn't going to be very helpful in locating records and might just be be taking up space.

A better strategy, depending on your queries, of course, would be to create a compound index that includes the low-selectivity field. For instance, you could have a compound-key index on 'status' and 'created_at.'

Another option, again depending on your use case, might be to use separate collections, one for each status. As with all the advice here, experimentation and benchmarks will help you choose the best approach.

Use `explain`.

MongoDB includes an `explain` command for determining how your queries are being processed and, in particular, whether they're using an index. `explain` can be used from of the drivers and also from the shell:

```
db.comments.find({ tags : 'mongodb'}).sort({ created_at : -1 }).explain();
```

This will return lots of useful information, including the number of items scanned, the time the query takes to process in milliseconds, which indexes the query optimizer tried, and the index ultimately used.

If you've never used `explain`, now's the time to start.

Understanding `explain`'s output.

There are three main fields to look for when examining the `explain` command's output:

- cursor: the value for cursor can be either `BasicCursor` or `BtreeCursor`. The second of these indicates that the given query is using an index.
- nscanned: he number of documents scanned.
- n: the number of documents returned by the query. You want the value of n to be close to the value of `nscanned`. What you want to avoid is doing a collection scan, that is, where every document in the collection is accessed. This is the case when `nscanned` is equal to the number of documents in the collection.
- millis: the number of milliseconds require to complete the query. This value is useful for comparing indexing strategies, indexed vs. non-indexed queries, etc.

Pay attention to the read/write ratio of your application.

This is important because, whenever you add an index, you add overhead to all insert, update, and delete operations on the given collection. If your application is read-heavy, as are most web applications, the additional indexes are usually a good thing. But if your application is write-heavy, then be careful when creating new indexes, since each additional index with impose a small write-performance penalty.

In general, **don't be cavalier about adding indexes**. Indexes should be added to complement your queries. Always have a good reason for adding a new index, and make sure you've benchmarked alternative strategies.

Indexing Properties

Here are a few properties of compound indexes worth keeping in mind (Thanks to Doug Green and Karoly Negyesi for their help on this).

These examples assume a compound index of three fields: a, b, c. So our index creation would look like this:

```
db.foo.ensureIndex({a: 1, b: 1, c: 1})
```

Here's some advice on using an index like this:

> This information is no longer strictly correct in 1.6.0+; compound indexes can now be used to service queries where range or filter fields are used within the compound index, not just fields used from left to right. Please run explain to see how the compound index is used.

1. The sort column must be the last column used in the index.

Good:

- find(a=1).sort(a)
- find(a=1).sort(b)
- find(a=1, b=2).sort(c)

Bad:

- find(a=1).sort(c)
- even though c is the last column used in the index, a is that last column used, so you can only sort on a or b.

2. The range query must also be the last column in an index. This is an axiom of 1 above.

Good:

- find(a=1,b>2)
- find(a>1 and a<10)
- find(a>1 and a<10).sort(a)

Bad:

- find(a>1, b=2)

3. Only use a range query or sort on one column.

Good:

- find(a=1,b=2).sort(c)
- find(a=1,b>2)
- find(a=1,b>2 and b<4)
- find(a=1,b>2).sort(b)

Bad:

- find(a>1,b>2)
- find(a=1,b>2).sort(c)

4. Conserve indexes by re-ordering columns used on equality (non-range) queries.

Imagine you have the following two queries:

- find(a=1,b=1,d=1)
- find(a=1,b=1,c=1,d=1)

A single index defined on a, b, c, and d can be used for both queries.
If, however, you need to sort on the final value, you might need two indexes

5. MongoDB's $ne or $nin operator's aren't efficient with indexes.

- When excluding just a few documents, it's better to retrieve extra rows from MongoDB and do the exclusion on the client side.

FAQ

I've started building an index, and the database has stopped responding. What's going on? What do I do?

Building an index can be an IO-intensive operation, especially you have a large collection. This is true on any database system that supports secondary indexes, including MySQL. If you'll need to build an index on a large collection in the future, you'll probably want to consider building

the index in the background, a feature available beginning with 1.3.2. See the docs on background indexing for more info.

As for the long-building index, you only have a few options. You can either wait for the index to finish building or kill the current operation (see `killOp()`). If you choose the latter, the partial index will be deleted.

I'm using $ne or $nin in a query, and while it uses the index, it's still slow. What's happening?

The problem with $ne and $nin is that much of an index will match queries like these. If you need to use $nin, it's often best to make sure that an additional, more selective criterion is part of the query.

Inserting

When we insert data into MongoDB, that data will always be in document-form. Documents are data structure analogous to JSON, Python dictionaries, and Ruby hashes, to take just a few examples. Here, we discuss more about document-orientation and describe how to insert data into MongoDB.

- Document-Orientation
- JSON
- Mongo-Friendly Schema
  - Store Example

Document-Orientation

Document-oriented databases store "documents" but by document we mean a structured document – the term perhaps coming from the phrase "XML document". However other structured forms of data, such as JSON or even nested dictionaries in various languages, have similar properties.

The documents stored in Mongo DB are JSON-like. JSON is a good way to store object-style data from programs in a manner that is language-independent and standards based.

To be efficient, MongoDB uses a format called BSON which is a binary representation of this data. BSON is faster to scan for specific fields than JSON. Also BSON adds some additional types such as a data data type and a byte-array (bindata) datatype. BSON maps readily to and from JSON and also to various data structures in many programming languages.

Client drivers serialize data to BSON, then transmit the data over the wire to the db. Data is stored on disk in BSON format. Thus, on a retrieval, the database does very little translation to send an object out, allowing high efficiency. The client driver unserialized a received BSON object to its native language format.

JSON

For example the following "document" can be stored in Mongo DB:

```
{ author: 'joe',
  created : new Date('03/28/2009'),
  title : 'Yet another blog post',
  text : 'Here is the text...',
  tags : [ 'example', 'joe' ],
  comments : [ { author: 'jim', comment: 'I disagree' },
               { author: 'nancy', comment: 'Good post' }
  ]
}
```

This document is a blog post, so we can store in a "posts" collection using the shell:

```
> doc = { author : 'joe', created : new Date('03/28/2009'), ... }
> db.posts.insert(doc);
```

MongoDB understands the internals of BSON objects -- not only can it store them, it can query on internal fields and index keys based upon them. For example the query

```
> db.posts.find( { "comments.author" : "jim" } )
```

is possible and means "find any blog post where at least one comment subjobject has author == 'jim'".

Mongo-Friendly Schema

Mongo can be used in many ways, and one's first instincts when using it are probably going to be similar to how one would write an application with a relational database. While this work pretty well, it doesn't harness the real power of Mongo. Mongo is designed for and works best with a rich object model.

Store Example

If you're building a simple online store that sells products with a relation database, you might have a schema like:

```
item
     title
     price
     sku
  item_features
     sku
     feature_name
     feature_value
```

You would probably normalize it like this because different items would have different features, and you wouldn't want a table with all possible features. You could model this the same way in mongo, but it would be much more efficient to do

```
item : {
           "title" : <title> ,
           "price" : <price> ,
           "sku"   : <sku>   ,
           "features" : {
              "optical zoom" : <value> ,
              ...
           }
  }
```

This does a few nice things

- you can load an entire item with one query
- all the data for an item is on the same place on disk, thus only one seek is required to load

Now, at first glance there might seem to be some issues, but we've got them covered.

- you might want to insert or update a single feature. mongo lets you operate on embedded files like:

  ```
  db.items.update( { sku : 123 } , { "$set" : { "features.zoom" : "5" } } )
  ```

- Does adding a feature require moving the entire object on disk? No. mongo has a padding heuristic that adapts to your data so it will leave some empty space for the object to grow. This will prevent indexes from being changed, etc.

Legal Key Names

Key names in inserted documents are limited as follows:

- The '$' character must not be the first character in the key name.
- The '.' character must not appear anywhere in the key name.

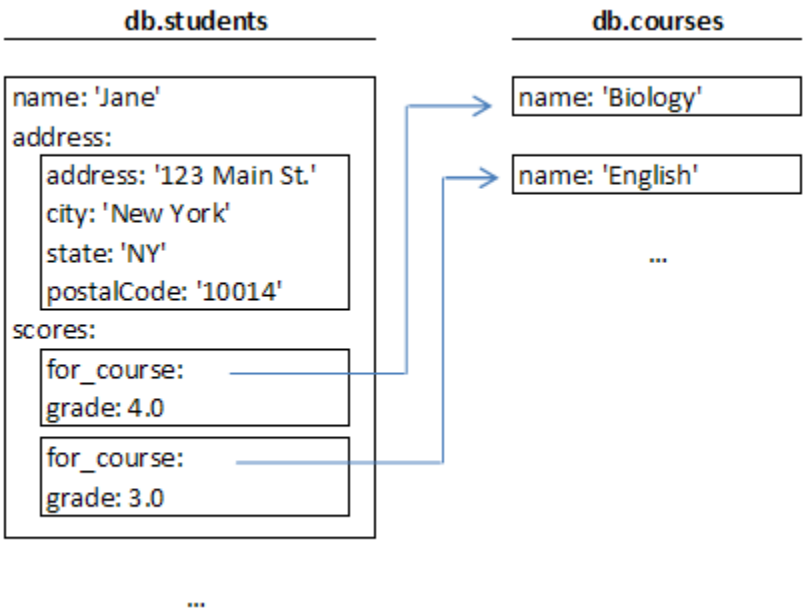
Schema Design

- Introduction
- Embed vs. Reference
  - General Rules
- Use Cases
- Index Selection
- How Many Collections?
- More Information
  - Videos
  - Books
  - See Also

Introduction

With Mongo, you do less "normalization" than you would perform designing a relational schema because there are no server-side joins. Generally, you will want one database collection for each of your top level objects.

You do not want a collection for every "class" - instead, embed objects. For example, in the diagram below, we have two collections, students and courses. The student documents embed address documents and the "score" documents, which have references to the courses.



Compare this with a relational schema, where you would almost certainly put the scores in a separate table, and have a foreign-key relationship back to the students.

Embed vs. Reference

The key question in Mongo schema design is "does this object merit its own collection, or rather should it embed in objects in other collections?" In relational databases, each sub-item of interest typically becomes a separate table (unless denormalizing for performance). In Mongo, this is not recommended - embedding objects is much more efficient. Data is then colocated on disk; client-server turnarounds to the database are eliminated. So in general the question to ask is, "why would I not want to embed this object?"

So why are references slow? Let's consider our students example. If we have a student object and perform:

```
print( student.address.city );
```

This operation will always be fast as address is an embedded object, and is always in RAM if student is in RAM. However for

```
print( student.scores[0].for_course.name );
```

if this is the first access to this course, the shell or your driver must execute the query

```
// pseudocode for driver or framework, not user code

student.scores[0].for_course = db.courses.findOne({_id:_course_id_to_find_});
```

Thus, each reference traversal is a query to the database. Typically, the collection in question is indexed on `_id`. The query will then be reasonably fast. However, even if all data is in RAM, there is a certain latency given the client/server communication from appserver to database. In general, expect 1ms of time for such a query on a ram cache hit. Thus if we were iterating 1,000 students, looking up one reference per student would be quite slow - over 1 second to perform even if cached. However, if we only need to look up a single item, the time is on the order of 1ms, and completely acceptable for a web page load. (Note that if already in db cache, pulling the 1,000 students might actually take much less than 1 second, as the results return from the database in large batches.)

General Rules

- "First class" objects, that are at top level, typically have their own collection.
- Line item detail objects typically are embedded.
- Objects which follow an object modelling "contains" relationship should generally be embedded.
- Many to many relationships are generally by reference.
- Collections with only a few objects may safely exist as separate collections, as the whole collection is quickly cached in application server memory.
- Embedded objects are harder to reference than "top level" objects in collections, as you cannot have a DBRef to an embedded object (at least not yet).
- It is more difficult to get a system-level view for embedded objects. For example, it would be easier to query the top 100 scores across all students if Scores were not embedded.
- If the amount of data to embed is huge (many megabytes), you may reach the limit on size of a single object.
- If performance is an issue, embed.

Use Cases

Let's consider a few use cases now.

- Customer / Order / Order Line-Item
  - `orders` should be a collection. `customers` a collection. line-items should be an array of line-items embedded in the `order` object.
- Blogging system.
  - `posts` should be a collection. `post author` might be a separate collection, or simply a field within posts if only an email address. `comments` should be embedded objects within a post for performance.

Index Selection

A second aspect of schema design is index selection. As a general rule, *where you want an index in a relational database, you want an index in Mongo.*

- `The _id` field is automatically indexed.
- Fields upon which keys are looked up should be indexed.
- Sort fields generally should be indexed.

The MongoDB profiling facility provides useful information for where an index should be added that is missing.

Note that adding an index slows writes to a collection, but not reads. Use lots of indexes for collections with a high read : write ratio (assuming one does not mind the storage overage). For collections with more writes than reads, indexes are very expensive.

How Many Collections?

As Mongo collections are polymorphic, one could have a collection `objects` and put everything in it! This approach is taken by some object databases. For performance reasons, we do not recommend this approach. Data within a Mongo collection tends to be contiguous on disk. Thus, table scans of the collection are possible, and efficient. Collections are very important for high throughput batch processing.

More Information

Videos

- Schema Design Basics - MongoSF Presentation (May 2011)
- Schema Design at Scale - MongoSF Presentation (May 2011)
- Schema Design: Data as Documents - MongoSV Presentation (December 2010)

Books

- Document Design for MongoDB - O'Reilly Ebook

See Also

- DBRef
- Trees in MongoDB
- MongoDB Data Modeling and Rails
- Advanced Queries
- Blog post on dynamic schemas

Trees in MongoDB

- Patterns
  - Full Tree in Single Document
  - Parent Links
  - Child Links
  - Array of Ancestors
  - Materialized Paths (Full Path in Each Node)
  - acts_as_nested_set

- Use Cases
    - Find Nodes by a Partial Path
- See Also

The best way to store a tree usually depends on the operations you want to perform; see below for some different options. In practice, most developers find that one of the "Full Tree in Single Document", "Parent Links", and "Array of Ancestors" patterns works best.

Patterns

Full Tree in Single Document

```
{
  comments: [
    {by: "mathias", text: "...", replies: []}
    {by: "eliot", text: "...", replies: [
      {by: "mike", text: "...", replies: []}
    ]}
  ]
}
```

Pros:

- Single document to fetch per page
- One location on disk for whole tree
- You can see full structure easily

Cons:

- Hard to search
- Hard to get back partial results
- Can get unwieldy if you need a huge tree. Further there is a limit on the size of documents in MongoDB – 16MB in v1.8 (limit may rise in future versions).

Parent Links

Storing all nodes in a single collection, with each node having the id of its parent, is a simple solution. The biggest problem with this approach is getting an entire subtree requires several query turnarounds to the database (or use of db.eval).

```
> t = db.tree1;

> t.find()
{ "_id" : 1 }
{ "_id" : 2, "parent" : 1 }
{ "_id" : 3, "parent" : 1 }
{ "_id" : 4, "parent" : 2 }
{ "_id" : 5, "parent" : 4 }
{ "_id" : 6, "parent" : 4 }

> // find children of node 4
> t.ensureIndex({parent:1})
> t.find( {parent : 4 } )
{ "_id" : 5, "parent" : 4 }
{ "_id" : 6, "parent" : 4 }
```

Child Links

Another option is storing the ids of all of a node's children within each node's document. This approach is fairly limiting, although ok if no operations on entire subtrees are necessary. It may also be good for storing graphs where a node has multiple parents.

```
> t = db.tree2
> t.find()
{ "_id" : 1, "children" : [ 2, 3 ] }
{ "_id" : 2 }
{ "_id" : 3, "children" : [ 4 ] }
{ "_id" : 4 }

> // find immediate children of node 3
> t.findOne({_id:3}).children
[ 4 ]

> // find immediate parent of node 3
> t.ensureIndex({children:1})
> t.find({children:3})
{ "_id" : 1, "children" : [ 2, 3 ] }
```

Array of Ancestors

Here we store all the ancestors of a node in an array. This makes a query like "get all descendents of x" fast and easy.

```
> t = db.mytree;

> t.find()
{ "_id" : "a" }
{ "_id" : "b", "ancestors" : [ "a" ], "parent" : "a" }
{ "_id" : "c", "ancestors" : [ "a", "b" ], "parent" : "b" }
{ "_id" : "d", "ancestors" : [ "a", "b" ], "parent" : "b" }
{ "_id" : "e", "ancestors" : [ "a" ], "parent" : "a" }
{ "_id" : "f", "ancestors" : [ "a", "e" ], "parent" : "e" }
{ "_id" : "g", "ancestors" : [ "a", "b", "d" ], "parent" : "d" }

> t.ensureIndex( { ancestors : 1 } )

> // find all descendents of b:
> t.find( { ancestors : 'b' })
{ "_id" : "c", "ancestors" : [ "a", "b" ], "parent" : "b" }
{ "_id" : "d", "ancestors" : [ "a", "b" ], "parent" : "b" }
{ "_id" : "g", "ancestors" : [ "a", "b", "d" ], "parent" : "d" }

> // get all ancestors of f:
> anc = db.mytree.findOne({_id:'f'}).ancestors
[ "a", "e" ]
> db.mytree.find( { _id : { $in : anc } } )
{ "_id" : "a" }
{ "_id" : "e", "ancestors" : [ "a" ], "parent" : "a" }
```

ensureIndex and MongoDB's multikey feature makes the above queries efficient.

In addition to the ancestors array, we also stored the direct parent in the node to make it easy to find the node's immediate parent when that is necessary.

Materialized Paths (Full Path in Each Node)

Materialized paths make certain query options on trees easy. We store the full path to the location of a document in the tree within each node. Usually the "array of ancestors" approach above works just as well, and is easier as one doesn't have to deal with string building, regular expressions, and escaping of characters. (Theoretically, materialized paths will be *slightly* faster.)

The best way to do this with MongoDB is to store the path as a string and then use regex queries. Simple regex expressions beginning with "^" can be efficiently executed. As the path is a string, you will need to pick a delimiter character -- we use ',' below. For example:

```
> t = db.tree
test.tree

> // get entire tree -- we use sort() to make the order nice
> t.find().sort({path:1})
{ "_id" : "a", "path" : "a," }
{ "_id" : "b", "path" : "a,b," }
{ "_id" : "c", "path" : "a,b,c," }
{ "_id" : "d", "path" : "a,b,d," }
{ "_id" : "g", "path" : "a,b,g," }
{ "_id" : "e", "path" : "a,e," }
{ "_id" : "f", "path" : "a,e,f," }
{ "_id" : "g", "path" : "a,b,g," }

> t.ensureIndex( {path:1} )

> // find the node 'b' and all its descendents:
> t.find( { path : /^a,b,/ } )
{ "_id" : "b", "path" : "a,b," }
{ "_id" : "c", "path" : "a,b,c," }
{ "_id" : "d", "path" : "a,b,d," }
{ "_id" : "g", "path" : "a,b,g," }

> // find the node 'b' and its descendents, where path to 'b' is not already known:
> nodeb = t.findOne( { _id : "b" } )
{ "_id" : "b", "path" : "a,b," }
> t.find( { path : new RegExp("^" + nodeb.path) } )
{ "_id" : "b", "path" : "a,b," }
{ "_id" : "c", "path" : "a,b,c," }
{ "_id" : "d", "path" : "a,b,d," }
{ "_id" : "g", "path" : "a,b,g," }
```

Ruby example: http://github.com/banker/newsmonger/blob/master/app/models/comment.rb

acts_as_nested_set

See http://api.rubyonrails.org/classes/ActiveRecord/Acts/NestedSet/ClassMethods.html

This pattern is best for datasets that rarely change as modifications can require changes to many documents.

Use Cases

Find Nodes by a Partial Path

Suppose we want to find a given node in a tree, given some path through a portion of the tree to that node, and then get back that node, and perhaps also everything below it.

With a materialized paths approach we can do the above. The main thing that needs tweaking is to make the operation fast if there is a path "a..b..c..d..e" to a document and we want to find documents with a path "..b..c..d..". If we are starting from the very top it is easy (and described above in the materialized paths section). However here we aren't starting at the top. One approach is to use a combination of materialized path plus an array of the node's ancestors, something like:

```
{ path : ",a,b,c,d,e,",
  ancestor : ['a','b','c','d','e'] }
```

We could index on ancestors which will create a multikey index. Then we would do a query like the following to find nodes on path "...b,c,d..." with some efficiency:

```
find({ path : /,b,c,d,/, ancestor : 'd', <more_query_expressions_optionally> })
```

In the above the index on ancestor would be used and only docs from 'd' down need be inspected. The following could be tried which might be even better depending on how smart the query optimizer is:

```
find( { path : /,b,c,d,/, ancestor : { $all : ['a','d'] }, ... } )
```

See Also

- Sean Cribbs blog post (source of several ideas on this page).

Optimization

- Additional Articles
- Optimizing A Simple Example
  - Optimization #1: Create an index
  - Optimization #2: Limit results
  - Optimization #3: Select only relevant fields
- Using the Profiler
- Optimizing Statements that Use `count()`
- Increment Operations
- Circular Fixed Size Collections
- Server Side Code Execution
- Explain
- Hint
- See Also

Additional Articles

- Optimizing Object IDs
- Optimizing Storage of Small Objects

Optimizing A Simple Example

This section describes proper techniques for optimizing database performance.

Let's consider an example. Suppose our task is to display the front page of a blog - we wish to display headlines of the 10 most recent posts. Let's assume the posts have a timestamp field `ts`.

The simplest thing we could write might be:

```
articles = db.posts.find().sort({ts:-1}); // get blog posts in reverse time order

for (var i=0; i< 10; i++) {
   print(articles[i].getSummary());
}
```

Optimization #1: Create an index

Our first optimization should be to create an index on the key that is being used for the sorting:

```
db.posts.ensureIndex({ts:1});
```

With an index, the database is able to sort based on index information, rather than having to check each document in the collection directly. This is much faster.

Optimization #2: Limit results

MongoDB cursors return results in groups of documents that we'll call 'chunks'. The chunk returned might contain more than 10 objects - in some cases, much more. These extra objects are a waste of network transmission and resources both on the app server and the database.

As we know how many results we want, and that we do not want all the results, we can use the `limit()` method for our second optimization.

```
articles = db.posts.find().sort({ts:-1}).limit(10); // 10 results maximum
```

Now, we'll only get 10 results returned to client.

Optimization #3: Select only relevant fields

The blog post object may be very large, with the post text and comments embedded. Much better performance will be achieved by selecting only the fields we need:

```
articles = db.posts.find({}, {ts:1,title:1,author:1,abstract:1}).sort({ts:-1}).limit(10);
articles.forEach( function(post) { print(post.getSummary()); } );
```

The above code assumes that the `getSummary()` method only references the fields listed in the `find()` method.

Note if you fetch only select fields, you have a partial object. An object in that form cannot be updated back to the database:

```
a_post = db.posts.findOne({}, Post.summaryFields);
a_post.x = 3;
db.posts.save(a_post); // error, exception thrown
```

Using the Profiler

MongoDB includes a database profiler which shows performance characteristics of each operation against the database. Using the profiler you can find queries (and write operations) which are slower than they should be; use this information, for example, to determine when an index is needed. See the Database Profiler page for more information.

Optimizing Statements that Use `count()`

To speed operations that rely on `count()`, create an index on the field involved in the count query expression.

```
db.posts.ensureIndex({author:1});
db.posts.find({author:"george"}).count();
```

Increment Operations

MongoDB supports simple object field increment operations; basically, this is an operation indicating "increment this field in this document at the server". This can be much faster than fetching the document, updating the field, and then saving it back to the server and are particularly useful for implementing real time counters. See the Updates section of the Mongo Developers' Guide for more information.

Circular Fixed Size Collections

MongoDB provides a special circular collection type that is pre-allocated at a specific size. These collections keep the items within well-ordered even without an index, and provide very high-speed writes and reads to the collection. Originally designed for keeping log files - log events are stored in the database in a circular fixed size collection - there are many uses for this feature. See the Capped Collections section of the Mongo Developers' Guide for more information.

Server Side Code Execution

Occasionally, for maximal performance, you may wish to perform an operation in process on the database server to eliminate client/server network turnarounds. These operations are covered in the Server-Side Processing section of the Mongo Developers' Guide.

Explain

A great way to get more information on the performance of your database queries is to use the explain plan feature. See the Explain doc page.

Hint

While the mongo query optimizer often performs very well, explicit "hints" can be used to force mongo to use a specified index, potentially improving performance in some situations. When you have a collection indexed and are querying on multiple fields (and some of those fields are indexed), pass the index as a hint to the query.

To set the hint for a particular query, call the `hint()` function on the cursor before accessing any data, and specify a document with the key to be used in the query:

```
db.collection.find({user:u, foo:d}).hint({user:1});
```

Be sure to Index
For the above hints to work, you need to have run `ensureIndex()` to index the collection on the user field.

Some other examples, for an index on {a:1, b:1} named "a_1_b_1":

```
db.collection.find({a:4,b:5,c:6}).hint({a:1,b:1});
db.collection.find({a:4,b:5,c:6}).hint("a_1_b_1");
```

To force the query optimizer to not use indexes (do a table scan), use:

```
> db.collection.find().hint({$natural:1})
```

See Also

- Query Optimizer
- currentOp()
- Sorting and Natural Order

Explain

A great way to get more information on the performance of your database queries is to use the `$explain` feature. This will display "explain plan" type info about a query from the database.

When using the mongo shell, you can find out this "explain plan" via the `explain()` function called on a cursor. The result will be a document that contains the "explain plan".

Some of the options below may not appear depending on the version of mongodb you are running

```
db.collection.find(query).explain();
```

provides information such as the following:

```
{
    "cursor" : "BasicCursor",
    "indexBounds" : [ ],
    "nscanned" : 57594,
    "nscannedObjects" : 57594,
    "nYields" : 2 ,
    "n" : 3 ,
    "millis" : 108,
    "indexOnly" : false,
    "isMultiKey" : false,
    "nChunkSkips" : 0
}
```

explain() runs the query and returns information on the actual result. If the query takes a long time to run, the explain will take a long time also.

cursor

The type of cursor used for scanning.

- BasicCursor - indicates a table scan style operation
- BtreeCursor - an index was used. When an index is used, indexBounds will be set to indicate the key bounds for scanning in the index.

nscanned

Number of items (documents or index entries) examined. Items might be objects or index keys. If a "covered index" is involved, nscanned may be higher than nscannedObjects.

nscannedObjects

Number of documents scanned.

n

Number of documents matched (on all criteria specified).

millis

Time for the query to run, in milliseconds.

nYields

Number of times this query yielded the read lock to let writes process.

indexOnly

If the query could be resolved by a covered index or not.

isMultiKey

If true, a multikey index was used.

nChunkSkips

The number of documents skipped because of active chunk migrations in a sharded system. Typically this will be zero. A number greater than zero is ok, but indicates a little bit of inefficiency.

See Also

- Optimization

Optimizing Object IDs

The _id field in MongoDB objects is very important and is always indexed. This page lists some recommendations.

Use the collections 'natural primary key' in the _id field.

_id's can be any type, so if your objects have a natural unique identifier, consider using that in _id to both save space and avoid an additional index.

Use _id values that are roughly in ascending order.

If the _id's are in a somewhat well defined order, on inserts the entire b-tree for the _id index need not be loaded. BSON ObjectIds are allocated in a manner such that they have this property.

Store GUIDs as BinData, rather than as strings

BSON includes a binary data datatype for storing byte arrays. Using this will make the id values, and their respective keys in the _id index, twice as small.

Note that unlike the BSON Object ID type (see above), most UUIDs do not have a rough ascending order, which creates additional caching needs for their index.

```
> # mongo shell bindata info:
> help misc
        b = new BinData(subtype,base64str)  create a BSON BinData value
        b.subtype()                         the BinData subtype (0..255)
        b.length()                          length of the BinData data in bytes
        b.hex()                             the data as a hex encoded string
        b.base64()                          the data as a base 64 encoded string
        b.toString()
```

Optimizing Storage of Small Objects

MongoDB records have a certain amount of overhead per object (BSON document) in a collection. This overhead is normally insignificant, but if your objects are tiny (just a few bytes, maybe one or two fields) it would not be. Below are some suggestions on how to optimize storage efficiently in such situations.

Using the _id Field Explicitly

Mongo automatically adds an object ID to each document and sets it to a unique value. Additionally this field in indexed. For tiny objects this takes up significant space.

The best way to optimize for this is to use _id explicitly. Take one of your fields which is unique for the collection and store its values in _id. By doing so, you have explicitly provided IDs. This will effectively eliminate the creation of a separate _id field. If your previously separate field was indexed, this eliminates an extra index too.

Using Small Field Names

Consider a record

```
{ last_name : "Smith", best_score: 3.9 }
```

The strings "last_name" and "best_score" will be stored in each object's BSON. Using shorter strings would save space:

```
{ lname : "Smith", score : 3.9 }
```

Would save 9 bytes per document. This of course reduces expressiveness to the programmer and is not recommended unless you have a collection where this is of significant concern.

Field names are not stored in indexes as indexes have a predefined structure. Thus, shortening field names will not help the size of indexes. In general it is not necessary to use short field names.

Combining Objects

Fundamentally, there is a certain amount of overhead per document in MongoDB. One technique is combining objects. In some cases you may be able to embed objects in other objects, perhaps as arrays of objects. If your objects are tiny this may work well, but will only make sense for certain use cases.

Query Optimizer

The MongoDB query optimizer generates query plans for each query submitted by a client. These plans are executed to return results. Thus, MongoDB supports ad hoc queries much like say, MySQL.

The database uses an interesting approach to query optimization though. Traditional approaches (which tend to be cost-based and statistical) are not used, as these approaches have a couple of problems.

First, the optimizer might consistently pick a bad query plan. For example, there might be correlations in the data of which the optimizer is unaware. In a situation like this, the developer might use a query hint.

Also with the traditional approach, query plans can change in production with negative results. No one thinks rolling out new code without testing is a good idea. Yet often in a production system a query plan can change as the statistics in the database change on the underlying data. The query plan in effect may be a plan that never was invoked in QA. If it is slower than it should be, the application could experience an outage.

The Mongo query optimizer is different. It is not cost based -- it does not model the cost of various queries. Instead, the optimizer simply tries different query plans and learn which ones work well. Of course, when the system tries a really bad plan, it may take an extremely long time to run. To solve this, *when testing new plans, MongoDB executes multiple query plans in parallel*. As soon as one finishes, it terminates the other executions, and the system has learned which plan is good. This works particularly well given the system is non-relational, which makes the space of possible query plans much smaller (as there are no joins).

Sometimes a plan which was working well can work poorly -- for example if the data in the database has changed, or if the parameter values to the query are different. In this case, if the query seems to be taking longer than usual, the database will once again run the query in parallel to try different plans.

This approach adds a little overhead, but has the advantage of being much better at worst-case performance.

See Also

- MongoDB hint() and explain() operators

Querying

One of MongoDB's best capabilities is its support for dynamic (ad hoc) queries. Systems that support dynamic queries don't require any special indexing to find data; users can find data using any criteria. For relational databases, dynamic queries are the norm. If you're moving to MongoDB from a relational databases, you'll find that many SQL queries translate easily to MongoDB's document-based query language.

- Query Expression Objects
- Query Options
  - Field Selection
  - Sorting
  - Skip and Limit
  - slaveOk (Querying Secondaries)
- Cursors
- Quick Reference Card
- More info
- See Also

In MongoDB, just like in an RDBMS, creating appropriate indexes for queries is quite important for performance. See the Indexes page for more info.

Query Expression Objects

MongoDB supports a number of query objects for fetching data. Queries are expressed as BSON documents which indicate a query pattern. For example, suppose we're using the MongoDB shell and want to return every document in the `users` collection. Our query would look like this:

```
db.users.find({})
```

In this case, our selector is an empty document, which matches every document in the collection. Here's a more selective example:

```
db.users.find({'last_name': 'Smith'})
```

Here our selector will match every document where the `last_name` attribute is 'Smith.'

MongoDB support a wide array of possible document selectors. For more examples, see the MongoDB Tutorial or the section on Advanced Queries. If you're working with MongoDB from a language driver, see the driver docs:

Query Options

Field Selection

In addition to the query expression, MongoDB queries can take some additional arguments. For example, it's possible to request only certain fields be returned. If we just wanted the social security numbers of users with the last name of 'Smith,' then from the shell we could issue this query:

```
// retrieve ssn field for documents where last_name == 'Smith':
db.users.find({last_name: 'Smith'}, {'ssn': 1});

  // retrieve all fields *except* the thumbnail field, for all documents:
db.users.find({}, {thumbnail:0});
```

Note the `_id` field is always returned even when not explicitly requested.

Sorting

MongoDB queries can return sorted results. To return all documents and sort by last name in ascending order, we'd query like so:

```
db.users.find({}).sort({last_name: 1});
```

Skip and Limit

MongoDB also supports **skip** and **limit** for easy paging. Here we skip the first 20 last names, and limit our result set to 10:

```
db.users.find().skip(20).limit(10);
db.users.find({}, {}, 10, 20); // same as above, but less clear
```

slaveOk (Querying Secondaries)

When querying a replica set, drivers route their requests to the master mongod by default; to perform a query against an (arbitrarily-selected) secondary, the query can be run with the slaveOk option. See your driver's for details on enabling slaveOk.

In the mongo shell, if you try reading from a secondary without specifying slaveOk, you will receive the error message

```
13435 not master and slaveok=false
```

In the mongo shell, to indicate slaveOk mode, enter the following:

```
rs.slaveOk(); // enable querying a secondary
db.users.find(...)
```

By indicating slaveOk, we are declaring "for my usage on this connection I am ok with eventually consistent reads".

Cursors

Database queries, performed with the find() method, technically work by returning a *cursor*. Cursors are then used to iteratively retrieve all the documents returned by the query. For example, we can iterate over a cursor in the mongo shell like this:

```
> var cur = db.example.find();
> cur.forEach( function(x) { print(tojson(x))});
{"n" : 1 , "_id" : "497ce96f395f2f052a494fd4"}
{"n" : 2 , "_id" : "497ce971395f2f052a494fd5"}
{"n" : 3 , "_id" : "497ce973395f2f052a494fd6"}
>
```

Quick Reference Card

Download the Query and Update Modifier Quick Reference Card

More info

This was just an introduction to querying in Mongo. More information:

- Mongo Query Language
- Querying and nulls
- Retrieving a Subset of Fields
- Advanced Queries
- Dot Notation (Reaching into Objects)
- Full Text Search in Mongo
- min and max Query Specifiers
- OR operations in query expressions
- Queries and Cursors
- Server-side Code Execution
- Sorting and Natural Order
- Aggregation

See Also

- Advanced Queries
- Indexes
- Queries and Cursors
- Query Optimizer

Mongo Query Language

Queries in MongoDB are expressed as JSON (BSON). Usually we think of query object as the equivalent of a SQL "WHERE" clause:

```
> db.users.find( { x : 3, y : "abc" } ).sort({x:1}); // select * from users where x=3 and y='abc'
order by x asc;
```

However, the MongoDB server actually looks at all the query parameters (ordering, limit, etc.) as a single object. In the above example from the mongo shell, the shell is adding some syntactic sugar for us. Many of the drivers do this too. For example the above query could also be written:

```
> db.users.find( { $query : { x : 3, y : "abc" }, $orderby : { x : 1 } } );
```

The possible specifies in the query object are:

- $query - the evaluation or "where" expression
- $orderby - sort order desired
- $hint - hint to query optimizer
- $explain - if true, return explain plan results instead of query results
- $snapshot - if true, "snapshot mode"

Querying and nulls

The `null` value in javascript carries different meanings. When a query involves `null`, this can have multiple interpretations.

Take the following examples:

```
> db.foo.insert( { x : 1, y : 1 } )
> db.foo.insert( { x : 2, y : "string" } )
> db.foo.insert( { x : 3, y : null } )
> db.foo.insert( { x : 4 } )

// Query #1
> db.foo.find( { "y" : null } )
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4dc1975312c677fc83b5629f"), "x" : 3, "y" : null }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4dc1975a12c677fc83b562a0"), "x" : 4 }

// Query #2
> db.foo.find( { "y" : { $type : 10 } } )
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4dc1975312c677fc83b5629f"), "x" : 3, "y" : null }

// Query #3
> db.foo.find( { "y" : { $exists : false } } )
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4dc1975a12c677fc83b562a0"), "x" : 4 }
```

To summarize the three queries:

1. documents where y has the value `null` **or** where y does not exist
2. documents where y has the value `null`
3. documents where y does not exist

Retrieving a Subset of Fields

- Field Negation
    - The _id Field
- Mixing Includes/Excludes
- Covered Indexes
- Dot Notation
- Retrieving a Subrange of Array Elements
- See Also

By default on a find operation, the entire object is returned. However we may also request that only certain fields be returned. This is somewhat analogous to the list of [column specifiers in a SQL SELECT statement (projection).

```
// select z from things where x="john"
db.things.find( { x : "john" }, { z : 1 } );
```

Field Negation

We can say "all fields except x" – for example to remove specific fields that you know will be large:

```
// get all posts about 'tennis' but without the comments field
db.posts.find( { tags : 'tennis' }, { comments : 0 } );
```

The `_id` Field

The `_id` field will be included by default.

If you do not want it, you must exclude it specifically.

```
// get all posts about 'tennis' but without the _id field
db.posts.find( { tags : 'tennis' }, { _id : 0 } );
```

Mixing Includes/Excludes

You cannot mix them, with the exception of the `_id` field.

Covered Indexes

> **New in 1.7.4**

You can now return fields with data from the index only, without inspecting the actual documents. This can speed up responses considerably since the index is compact in size and usually fits in RAM, or is sequentially located on disk. By comparison documents can be slow to inspect and generate random disk IO.

Mongod will automatically use covered index when it can. But be sure that:

- you provide list of fields to return, so that it can determine that it can be covered by index
- you must explicitly exclude the _id field by using {_id: 0}
- as soon as you insert 1 array value for one of the index key, index will immediately become "multiKey: true" and this disables covered index
- use Explain to determine if the covered index is used: the indexOnly field should be true

```
// do a login with a covered index, returning the users roles/groups
> db.users.ensureIndex( { username : 1, password : 1, roles : 1} );
> db.users.save({username: "joe", password: "pass", roles: 2})
> db.users.save({username: "liz", password: "pass2", roles: 4})
> db.users.find({username: "joe"}, {_id: 0, roles: 1})
{ "roles" : 2 }
> db.users.find({username: "joe"}, {_id: 0, roles: 1}).explain()
{
 "cursor" : "BtreeCursor username_1_password_1_roles_1",
...
 "indexOnly" : true,
...
}
```

Dot Notation

You can retrieve partial sub-objects via Dot Notation.

```
> t.find({})
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c23f0486dad1c3a68457d20"), "x" : { "y" : 1, "z" : [ 1, 2, 3 ] } }
> t.find({}, {'x.y':1})
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4c23f0486dad1c3a68457d20"), "x" : { "y" : 1 } }
```

Retrieving a Subrange of Array Elements

You can use the $slice operator to retrieve a subrange of elements in an array.

New in MongoDB 1.5.1

```
db.posts.find({}, {comments:{$slice: 5}}) // first 5 comments
db.posts.find({}, {comments:{$slice: -5}}) // last 5 comments
db.posts.find({}, {comments:{$slice: [20, 10]}}) // skip 20, limit 10
db.posts.find({}, {comments:{$slice: [-20, 10]}}) // 20 from end, limit 10
```

See Also

- example slice1

Advanced Queries

- Introduction
- Retrieving a Subset of Fields
- Conditional Operators
  - <, <=, >, >=
  - $all
  - $exists
  - $mod
  - $ne
  - $in
  - $nin
  - $nor
  - $or
  - $size
  - $type
- Regular Expressions
- Value in an Array
  - $elemMatch
- Value in an Embedded Object
- Meta operator: `$not`
- Javascript Expressions and `$where`
- Cursor Methods
  - `count()`
  - `limit()`
  - `skip()`
  - `snapshot()`
  - `sort()`
- Special operators
- `group()`
- See Also

In MongoDB, just like in an RDBMS, creating appropriate indexes for queries is quite important for performance. See the Indexes page for more info.

Introduction

MongoDB offers a rich query environment with lots of features. This page lists some of those features.

Queries in MongoDB are represented as JSON-style objects, very much like the documents we actually store in the database. For example:

```
// i.e., select * from things where x=3 and y="foo"
db.things.find( { x : 3, y : "foo" } );
```

Note that any of the operators on this page can be combined in the same query document. For example, to find all document where j is not equal to 3 and k is greater than 10, you'd query like so:

```
db.things.find({j: {$ne: 3}, k: {$gt: 10} });
```

Unless otherwise noted, the operations below can be used on array elements in the same way that they can be used on "normal" fields. For example, suppose we have some documents such as:

```
> db.things.insert({colors : ["blue", "black"]})
> db.things.insert({colors : ["yellow", "orange", "red"]})
```

Then we can find documents that aren't "red" using:

```
> db.things.find({colors : {$ne : "red"}})
{"_id": ObjectId("4dc9acea045bbf04348f9691"), "colors": ["blue","black"]}
```

Retrieving a Subset of Fields

See Retrieving a Subset of Fields

Conditional Operators

<, <=, >, >=

Use these special forms for greater than and less than comparisons in queries, since they have to be represented in the query document:

```
db.collection.find({ "field" : { $gt: value } } );   // greater than  : field > value
db.collection.find({ "field" : { $lt: value } } );   // less than  :  field < value
db.collection.find({ "field" : { $gte: value } } );  // greater than or equal to : field >= value
db.collection.find({ "field" : { $lte: value } } );  // less than or equal to : field <= value
```

For example:

```
db.things.find({j : {$lt: 3}});
db.things.find({j : {$gte: 4}});
```

You can also combine these operators to specify ranges:

```
db.collection.find({ "field" : { $gt: value1, $lt: value2 } } );    // value1 < field < value
```

$all

The `$all` operator is similar to `$in`, but instead of matching any value in the specified array all values in the array must be matched. For example, the object

```
{ a: [ 1, 2, 3 ] }
```

would be matched by

```
db.things.find( { a: { $all: [ 2, 3 ] } } );
```

but not

```
db.things.find( { a: { $all: [ 2, 3, 4 ] } } );
```

An array can have more elements than those specified by the `$all` criteria. `$all` specifies a minimum set of elements that must be matched.

$exists

Check for existence (or lack thereof) of a field.

```
db.things.find( { a : { $exists : true } } ); // return object if a is present
db.things.find( { a : { $exists : false } } ); // return if a is missing
```

Note, in versions 1.8.x or older, $exists is not able to use an index. Indexes on other fields are still used.

$mod

The `$mod` operator allows you to do fast modulo queries to replace a common case for where clauses. For example, the following $where query:

```
db.things.find( "this.a % 10 == 1")
```

can be replaced by:

```
db.things.find( { a : { $mod : [ 10 , 1 ] } } )
```

$ne

Use $ne for "not equals".

```
db.things.find( { x : { $ne : 3 } } );
```

$in

The `$in` operator is analogous to the SQL `IN` modifier, allowing you to specify an array of possible matches.

```
db.collection.find( { "field" : { $in : array } } );
```

Let's consider a couple of examples. From our *things* collection, we could choose to get a subset of documents based upon the value of the 'j' key:

```
db.things.find({j:{$in: [2,4,6]}});
```

Suppose the collection `updates` is a list of social network style news items; we want to see the 10 most recent updates from our friends. We might invoke:

```
db.updates.ensureIndex( { ts : 1 } ); // ts == timestamp
var myFriends = myUserObject.friends; // let's assume this gives us an array of DBRef's of my friends
var latestUpdatesForMe = db.updates.find( { user : { $in : myFriends } } ).sort( { ts : -1 }
).limit(10);
```

$nin

The `$nin` operator is similar to `$in` except that it selects objects for which the specified field does not have any value in the specified array. For example

```
db.things.find({j:{$nin: [2,4,6]}});
```

would match {`j:1,b:2`} but not {`j:2,c:9`}.

$nor

The `$nor` operator lets you use a boolean or expression to do queries. You give `$nor` a list of expressions, none of which can satisfy the query.

$or

The `$or` operator lets you use a boolean or expression to do queries. You give `$or` a list of expressions, any of which can satisfy the query.

> **New in MongoDB 1.5.3**

Simple:

```
db.foo.find( { $or : [ { a : 1 } , { b : 2 } ] } )
```

With another field

```
db.foo.find( { name : "bob" , $or : [ { a : 1 } , { b : 2 } ] } )
```

The `$or` operator retrieves matches for each or clause individually and eliminates duplicates when returning results. A number of `$or` optimizations are planned for 1.8. See this thread for details.

> `$or` cannot be nested.

$size

The `$size` operator matches any array with the specified number of elements. The following example would match the object {`a:["foo"]`}, since that array has just one element:

```
db.things.find( { a : { $size: 1 } } );
```

You cannot use `$size` to find a range of sizes (for example: arrays with more than 1 element). If you need to query for a range, create an extra `size` field that you increment when you add elements. Indexes cannot be used for the $size portion of a query, although if other query expressions are included indexes may be used to search for matches on that portion of the query expression.

$type

The `$type` operator matches values based on their BSON type.

```
db.things.find( { a : { $type : 2 } } ); // matches if a is a string
db.things.find( { a : { $type : 16 } } ); // matches if a is an int
```

Possible types are:

Type Name	Type Number
Double	1
String	2
Object	3
Array	4
Binary data	5
Object id	7
Boolean	8

Date	9
Null	10
Regular expression	11
JavaScript code	13
Symbol	14
JavaScript code with scope	15
32-bit integer	16
Timestamp	17
64-bit integer	18
Min key	255
Max key	127

For more information on types and BSON in general, see http://www.bsonspec.org.

Regular Expressions

You may use regexes in database query expressions:

```
db.customers.find( { name : /acme.*corp/i } );
db.customers.find( { name : { $regex : 'acme.*corp', $options: 'i' } } );
```

If you need to combine the regex with another operator, you need to use the `$regex` clause. For example, to find the customers where name matches the above regex but does not include `'acmeblahcorp'`, you would do the following:

```
db.customers.find( { name : { $regex : /acme.*corp/i, $nin : ['acmeblahcorp'] } } );
```

For simple prefix queries (also called rooted regexps) like `/^prefix/`, the database will use an index when available and appropriate (much like most SQL databases that use indexes for a `LIKE 'prefix%'` expression). This only works if you don't have `i` (case-insensitivity) in the flags.

> While `/^a/`, `/^a.*/`, and `/^a.*$/` are equivalent, they will have different performance characteristics. They will all use an index in the same way, but the latter two will be slower as they have to scan the whole string. The first format can stop scanning after the prefix is matched.

MongoDB uses PCRE for regular expressions. Valid flags are:

- `i` - Case insensitive. Letters in the pattern match both upper and lower case letters.
- `m` - Multiline. By default, Mongo treats the subject string as consisting of a single line of characters (even if it actually contains newlines). The "start of line" metacharacter (^) matches only at the start of the string, while the "end of line" metacharacter ($) matches only at the end of the string, or before a terminating newline.
  When `m` it is set, the "start of line" and "end of line" constructs match immediately following or immediately before internal newlines in the subject string, respectively, as well as at the very start and end. If there are no newlines in a subject string, or no occurrences of ^ or $ in a pattern, setting `m` has no effect.
- `x` - Extended. If set, whitespace data characters in the pattern are totally ignored except when escaped or inside a character class. Whitespace does not include the VT character (code 11). In addition, characters between an unescaped # outside a character class and the next newline, inclusive, are also ignored.
  This option makes it possible to include comments inside complicated patterns. Note, however, that this applies only to data characters. Whitespace characters may never appear within special character sequences in a pattern, for example within the sequence `(?(` which introduces a conditional subpattern.
- `s` - Dot all. **New in 1.9.0**. Allows the dot (`.`) to match all characters including new lines. By default, `/a.*b/` will not match the string `"apple\nbanana"`, but `/a.*b/s` will.

Note that javascript regex objects only support the `i` and `m` options (and g which is ignored by mongod). Therefore if you want to use other options, you will need to use the $regex, $options query syntax.

Value in an Array

To look for the value "red" in an array field `colors`:

```
db.things.find( { colors : "red" } );
```

That is, when "colors" is inspected, if it is an array, each value in the array is checked. This technique may be mixed with the embedded object technique below.

$elemMatch

Version 1.3.1 and higher.

Use $elemMatch to check if an element in an array matches the specified match expression.

```
> t.find( { x : { $elemMatch : { a : 1, b : { $gt : 1 } } } } )
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4b5783300334000000000aa9"),
  "x" : [ { "a" : 1, "b" : 3 }, 7, { "b" : 99 }, { "a" : 11 } ]
}
```

Note that a single array element must match all the criteria specified; thus, the following query is semantically different in that each criteria can match a different element in the x array:

```
> t.find( { "x.a" : 1, "x.b" : { $gt : 1 } } )
```

See the dot notation page for more.

> You only need to use this when more than 1 field must be matched in the array element.

Value in an Embedded Object

For example, to look `author.name=="joe"` in a postings collection with embedded author objects:

```
db.postings.find( { "author.name" : "joe" } );
```

See the dot notation page for more.

Meta operator: `$not`

Version 1.3.3 and higher.

The `$not` meta operator can be used to negate the check performed by a standard operator. For example:

```
db.customers.find( { name : { $not : /acme.*corp/i } } );
```

```
db.things.find( { a : { $not : { $mod : [ 10 , 1 ] } } } );
```

The `$not` meta operator can only affect other operators. The following **does not** work. For such a syntax use the `$ne` operator.

```
db.things.find( { a : { $not : true } } ); // syntax error
```

> $not is not supported for regular expressions specified using the {`$regex: ...`} syntax. When using $not, all regular expressions should be passed using the native BSON type (e.g. {`"$not": re.compile("acme.*corp")`} in PyMongo)

Javascript Expressions and `$where`

In addition to the structured query syntax shown so far, you may specify query expressions as Javascript. To do so, pass a string containing a Javascript expression to `find()`, or assign such a string to the query object member `$where`. The database will evaluate this expression for each object scanned. When the result is true, the object is returned in the query results.

For example, the following statements all do the same thing:

```
db.myCollection.find( { a : { $gt: 3 } } );
db.myCollection.find( { $where: "this.a > 3" } );
db.myCollection.find("this.a > 3");
f = function() { return this.a > 3; } db.myCollection.find(f);
```

Javascript executes more slowly than the native operators listed on this page, but is very flexible. See the server-side processing page for more information.

Cursor Methods

count()

The `count()` method returns the number of objects matching the query specified. It is specially optimized to perform the count in the MongoDB server, rather than on the client side for speed and efficiency:

```
nstudents = db.students.find({'address.state' : 'CA'}).count();
```

Note that you can achieve the same result with the following, but the following is slow and inefficient as it requires all documents to be put into memory on the client, and then counted. Don't do this:

```
nstudents = db.students.find({'address.state' : 'CA'}).toArray().length; // VERY BAD: slow and uses
excess memory
```

On a query using skip() and limit(), count ignores these parameters by default. Use count(true) to have it consider the skip and limit values in the calculation.

```
n = db.students.find().skip(20).limit(10).count(true);
```

limit()

`limit()` is analogous to the LIMIT statement in MySQL: it specifies a maximum number of results to return. For best performance, use `limit()` whenever possible. Otherwise, the database may return more objects than are required for processing.

```
db.students.find().limit(10).forEach( function(student) { print(student.name + "<p>"); } );
```

In the shell (and most drivers), a limit of `0` is equivalent to setting no limit at all.

skip()

The `skip()` expression allows one to specify at which object the database should begin returning results. This is often useful for implementing "paging". Here's an example of how it might be used in a JavaScript application:

```
function printStudents(pageNumber, nPerPage) {
   print("Page: " + pageNumber);
   db.students.find().skip((pageNumber-1)*nPerPage).limit(nPerPage).forEach( function(student) {
print(student.name + "<p>"); } );
}
```

Paging Costs
Unfortunately skip can be (very) costly and requires the server to walk from the beginning of the collection, or index, to get to the offset/skip position before it can start returning the page of data (limit). As the page number increases skip will become slower and more cpu intensive, and possibly IO bound, with larger collections.

Range based paging provides better use of indexes but does not allow you to easily jump to a specific page.

snapshot()

Indicates use of snapshot mode for the query. Snapshot mode assures no duplicates are returned, or objects missed, which were present at both the start and end of the query's execution (even if the object were updated). If an object is new during the query, or deleted during the query, it may or may not be returned, even with snapshot mode.

Note that short query responses (less than 1MB) are always effectively snapshotted.

Currently, snapshot mode may not be used with sorting or explicit hints.

sort()

`sort()` is analogous to the ORDER BY statement in SQL - it requests that items be returned in a particular order. We pass `sort()` a key pattern which indicates the desired order for the result.

```
db.myCollection.find().sort( { ts : -1 } ); // sort by ts, descending order
```

`sort()` may be combined with the `limit()` function. In fact, if you do not have a relevant index for the specified key pattern, `limit()` is recommended as there is a limit on the size of sorted results when an index is not used. Without a `limit()`, or index, a full in-memory sort must be done but by using a `limit()` it reduces the memory and increases the speed of the operation by using an optimized sorting algorithm.

Special operators

Only return the index key:

```
db.foo.find()._addSpecial("$returnKey" , true )
```

Limit the number of items to scan:

```
db.foo.find()._addSpecial( "$maxScan" , 50 )
```

Set the query:

```
db.foo.find()._addSpecial( "$query" : {x : {$lt : 5}} )
// same as
db.foo.find({x : {$lt : 5}})
```

Sort results:

```
db.foo.find()._addSpecial( "$orderby", {x : -1} )
// same as
db.foo.find().sort({x:-1})
```

Explain the query instead of actually returning the results:

```
db.foo.find()._addSpecial( "$explain", true )
// same as
db.foo.find().explain()
```

Snapshot query:

```
db.foo.find()._addSpecial( "$snapshot", true )
// same as
db.foo.find().snapshot()
```

Set index bounds (see min and max Query Specifiers for details):

```
db.foo.find()._addSpecial("$min" , {x: -20})._addSpecial("$max" , { x : 200 })
```

Show disk location of results:

```
db.foo.find()._addSpecial("$showDiskLoc" , true)
```

Force query to use the given index:

```
db.foo.find()._addSpecial("$hint", {_id : 1})
```

`group()`

The `group()` method is analogous to GROUP BY in SQL. `group()` is more flexible, actually, allowing the specification of arbitrary reduction operations. See the Aggregation section of the Mongo Developers' Guide for more information.

See Also

- Indexes
- Optimizing Queries (including explain() and hint())

Dot Notation (Reaching into Objects)

- Dot Notation vs. Subobjects
- Array Element by Position
- Matching with $elemMatch
- See Also

MongoDB is designed for store JSON-style objects. The database understands the structure of these objects and can reach into them to evaluate query expressions.

Let's suppose we have some objects of the form:

```
> db.persons.findOne()
{ name: "Joe", address: { city: "San Francisco", state: "CA" } ,
  likes: [ 'scuba', 'math', 'literature' ] }
```

Querying on a top-level field is straightforward enough using Mongo's JSON-style query objects:

```
> db.persons.find( { name : "Joe" } )
```

But what about when we need to reach into embedded objects and arrays? This involves a bit different way of thinking about queries than one would do in a traditional relational DBMS. To reach into embedded objects, we use a "dot notation":

```
> db.persons.find( { "address.state" : "CA" } )
```

Reaching into arrays is implicit: if the field being queried is an array, the database automatically assumes the caller intends to look for a value within the array:

```
> db.persons.find( { likes : "math" } )
```

We can mix these styles too, as in this more complex example:

```
> db.blogposts.findOne()
{ title : "My First Post", author: "Jane",
  comments : [{ by: "Abe", text: "First" },
              { by : "Ada", text : "Good post" } ]
}
> db.blogposts.find( { "comments.by" : "Ada" } )
```

We can also create indexes of keys on these fields:

```
db.persons.ensureIndex( { "address.state" : 1 } );
db.blogposts.ensureIndex( { "comments.by" : 1 } );
```

Dot Notation vs. Subobjects

Suppose there is an author id, as well as name. To store the author field, we can use an object:

```
> db.blog.save({ title : "My First Post", author: {name : "Jane", id : 1}})
```

If we want to find any authors named Jane, we use the notation above:

```
> db.blog.findOne({"author.name" : "Jane"})
```

To match only objects with these exact keys and values, we use an object:

```
db.blog.findOne({"author" : {"name" : "Jane", "id" : 1}})
```

Note that

```
db.blog.findOne({"author" : {"name" : "Jane"}})
```

will not match, as subobjects have to match exactly (it would match an object with one field: `{"name" : "Jane"}`). Note that the embedded document must also have the same key order, so:

```
db.blog.findOne({"author" : {"id" : 1, "name" : "Jane"}})
```

will not match, either. This can make subobject matching unwieldy in languages whose default document representation is unordered.

Array Element by Position

Array elements also may be accessed by specific array position:

```
// i.e. comments[0].by == "Abe"
> db.blogposts.find( { "comments.0.by" : "Abe" } )
```

(The above examples use the mongo shell's Javascript syntax. The same operations can be done in any language for which Mongo has a driver available.)

Matching with $elemMatch

Using the $elemMatch query operator (mongod >= 1.3.1), you can match an entire document within an array. This is best illustrated with an example. Suppose you have the following two documents in your collection:

```
// Document 1
{ "foo" : [
      {
        "shape" : "square",
        "color" : "purple",
        "thick" : false
      },
      {
        "shape" : "circle",
        "color" : "red",
        "thick" : true
      }
] }


// Document 2
{ "foo" : [
      {
        "shape" : "square",
        "color" : "red",
        "thick" : true
      },
      {
        "shape" : "circle",
        "color" : "purple",
        "thick" : false
      }
] }
```

You want to query for a purple square, and so you write the following:

```
db.foo.find({"foo.shape": "square", "foo.color": "purple"})
```

The problem with this query is that it will match the second in addition to matching the first document. In other words, the standard query syntax won't restrict itself to a single document within the `foo` array. As mentioned above, subobjects have to match exactly, so

```
db.foo.find({foo: {"shape": "square", "color": "purple"} } )
```

won't help either, since there's a third attribute specifying thickness.

To match an entire document within the foo array, you need to use $elemMatch. To properly query for a purple square, you'd use $elemMatch like so:

```
db.foo.find({foo: {"$elemMatch": {shape: "square", color: "purple"}}})
```

The query will return the first document, which contains the purple square you're looking for.

See Also

- Advanced Queries
- Multikeys

Full Text Search in Mongo

- Introduction
- Multikeys (Indexing Values in an Array)
- Text Search
- Comparison to Full Text Search Engines
- Real World Examples

Introduction

Mongo provides some functionality that is useful for text search and tagging.

Multikeys (Indexing Values in an Array)

The Mongo multikey feature can automatically index arrays of values. Tagging is a good example of where this feature is useful. Suppose you have an article object/document which is tagged with some category names:

```
obj = {
  name: "Apollo",
  text: "Some text about Apollo moon landings",
  tags: [ "moon", "apollo", "spaceflight" ]
}
```

and that this object is stored in `db.articles`. The command

```
db.articles.ensureIndex( { tags: 1 } );
```

will index all the tags on the document, and create index entries for "moon", "apollo" and "spaceflight" for that document.

You may then query on these items in the usual way:

```
> print(db.articles.findOne( { tags: "apollo" } ).name);
Apollo
```

The database creates an index entry for each item in the array. Note an array with many elements (hundreds or thousands) can make inserts very expensive. (Although for the example above, alternate implementations are equally expensive.)

Text Search

It is fairly easy to implement basic full text search using multikeys. What we recommend is having a field that has all of the keywords in it, something like:

```
{ title : "this is fun" ,
  _keywords : [ "this" , "is" , "fun" ]
}
```

Your code must split the title above into the keywords before saving. Note that this code (which is not part of Mongo DB) could do stemming, etc. too. (Perhaps someone in the community would like to write a standard module that does this...)

Comparison to Full Text Search Engines

MongoDB has interesting functionality that makes certain search functions easy. That said, it is not a dedicated full text search engine.

For example, dedicated engines provide the following capabilities:

- built-in text stemming
- ranking of queries matching various numbers of terms (can be done with MongoDB, but requires user supplied code to do so)
- bulk index building

Bulk index building makes building indexes fast, but has the downside of not being realtime. MongoDB is particularly well suited for problems where the search should be done in realtime. Traditional tools are often not good for this use case.

Real World Examples

The Business Insider web site uses MongoDB for its blog search function in production.

Mark Watson's opinions on Java, Ruby, Lisp, AI, and the Semantic Web - A recipe example in Ruby.

Full text search with MongoDB at Flowdock

min and max Query Specifiers

The `min()` and `max()` functions may be used in conjunction with an index to constrain query matches to those having index keys between the min and max keys specified. The `min()` and `max()` functions may be used individually or in conjunction. The index to be used may be specified with a `hint()` or one may be inferred from pattern of the keys passed to `min()` and/or `max()`.

```
db.f.find().min({name:"barry"}}.max({name:"larry"}).hint({name:1});
db.f.find().min({name:"barry"}}.max({name:"larry"});
db.f.find().min({last_name:"smith",first_name:"john"}};
```

> The currently supported way of using this functionality is as describe above. We document hereafter a way that we could potentially support in the future.

If you're using the standard query syntax, you must distinguish between the `$min` and `$max` keys and the query selector itself. See here:

```
db.f.find({$min: {name:"barry"}, $max: {name:"larry"}, $query:{}});
```

The min() value is included in the range and the max() value is excluded.

Normally, it is much preferred to use $gte and $lt rather than to use min and max, as min and max require a corresponding index. Min and max are primarily useful for compound keys: it is difficult to express the last_name/first_name example above without this feature (it can be done using $where).

min and max exist primarily to support the mongos (sharding) process.

OR operations in query expressions

Query objects in Mongo by default AND expressions together.

$in

The $in operator indicates a "where value in ..." expression. For expressions of the form x == a OR x == b, this can be represented as

```
{ x : { $in : [ a, b ] } }
```

$or

v1.5.3+

The `$or` operator lets you use a boolean or expression to do queries. You give $or a list of expressions, any of which can satisfy the query.

Simple:

```
db.foo.find( { $or : [ { a : 1 } , { b : 2 } ] } )
```

With another field

```
db.foo.find( { name : "bob" , $or : [ { a : 1 } , { b : 2 } ] } )
```

The `$or` operator retrieves matches for each or clause individually and eliminates duplicates when returning results.

$where

We can provide arbitrary Javascript expressiosn to the server via the $where operator. This provides a means to perform OR operations. For example in the mongo shell one might invoke:

```
db.mycollection.find( { $where : function() { return this.a == 3 || this.b == 4; } } );
```

The following syntax is briefer and also works; however, if additional structured query components are present, you will need the $where form:

```
db.mycollection.find( function() { return this.a == 3 || this.b == 4; } );
```

See Also

- Advanced Queries

Queries and Cursors

Queries to MongoDB return a cursor, which can be iterated to retrieve results. The exact way to query will vary with language driver. Details below focus on queries from the MongoDB shell (i.e. the `mongo` process).

The shell `find()` method returns a cursor object which we can then iterate to retrieve specific documents from the result. We use `hasNext()` and `next()` methods for this purpose.

```
for( var c = db.parts.find(); c.hasNext(); ) {
   print( c.next());
}
```

Additionally in the shell, `forEach()` may be used with a cursor:

```
db.users.find().forEach( function(u) { print("user: " + u.name); } );
```

Topics:

- *Topics:*
  - *Array Mode in the Shell*
  - *Getting a Single Item*
  - *Querying Embedded Objects*
  - *Greater Than / Less Than*
  - *Latent Cursors and Snapshotting*
  - *Execution of queries in batches*
  - *Performance implications*
  - *Auditing allocated cursors*
  - *Closing and Timeouts*
  - *See Also*

Array Mode in the Shell

Note that in some languages, like JavaScript, the driver supports an "array mode". Please check your driver documentation for specifics.

In the db shell, to use the cursor in array mode, use array index [] operations and the `length` property.

Array mode will load all data into RAM up to the highest index requested. Thus it should ***not*** be used for any query which can return very large amounts of data: you will run out of memory on the client.

You may also call `toArray()` on a cursor. `toArray()` will load all objects queries into RAM.

Getting a Single Item

The shell `findOne()` method fetches a single item. Null is returned if no item is found.

`findOne()` is equivalent in functionality to:

```
function findOne(coll, query) {
    var cursor = coll.find(query).limit(1);
    return cursor.hasNext() ? cursor.next() : null;
}
```

Tip: If you only need one row back and multiple match, `findOne()` is efficient, as it performs the `limit()` operation, which limits the objects returned from the database to one.

Querying Embedded Objects

To find an exact match of an entire embedded object, simply query for that object:

```
db.order.find( { shipping: { carrier: "usps" } } );
```

The above query will work if { carrier: "usps" } is an exact match for the entire contained shipping object. If you wish to match any sub-object with `shipping.carrier == "usps"`, use this syntax:

```
db.order.find( { "shipping.carrier" : "usps" } );
```

See the dot notation docs for more information.

Greater Than / Less Than

```
db.myCollection.find( { a : { $gt : 3 } } );
db.myCollection.find( { a : { $gte :3 } } );
db.myCollection.find( { a : { $lt :3 } } );
db.myCollection.find( { a : { $lte :3 } } ); // a <= 3
```

Latent Cursors and Snapshotting

A latent cursor has (in addition to an initial access) a latent access that occurs after an intervening write operation on the database collection (i.e., an insert, update, or delete). Under most circumstances, the database supports these operations.

Conceptually, a cursor has a current position. If you delete the item at the current position, the cursor automatically skips its current position forward to the next item.

Mongo DB cursors do not provide a snapshot: if other write operations occur during the life of your cursor, it is unspecified if your application will see the results of those operations or not. See the snapshot docs for more information.

Execution of queries in batches

Execution of queries on the server in mongodb is done in batches corresponding to the size of the result set required for the client-side cursor.

You can specify a limit() for how many results are returned by a query. If a limit is not specified, the server will return 100 documents or 1mb of data. If the query matches more than that quantity of results and you would like them all to be returned, you need to either specify a larger limit() to the query (see http://www.mongodb.org/display/DOCS/Advanced+Queries for setting query limits) or iterate through the result set to retrieve all results.

Performance implications

If, for example, you do

```
cursor = db.foo.find( { x : 1 } )
for ( i=0; i<100; i++ ) {
 printjson( cursor.next() );
}
```

The server will only find the first the first 100 results. If the result set is large, finding the first 100 results may be much faster than finding all results and printing the first 100.

Note that counts are performed against the entire result set, so for example

```
db.foo.find( { x : 1 } ).count()
```

Could be much slower than finding the first 100 results above.

Auditing allocated cursors

Information on allocated cursors may be obtained using the {`cursorInfo:1`} command.

```
db.runCommand({cursorInfo:1})
```

Closing and Timeouts

By default a cursor will timeout after 10 minutes of inactivity. The server will close the cursor if it isn't accessed in that time or it has been exhausted.

You can specify NoTimeout optionally for a query. If you do this please be careful to close the cursor manually – otherwise they will consume memory on the server.

See Also

- Advanced Queries
- Multikeys in the HowTo
- Mongo Wire Protocol

Tailable Cursors

> Tailable cursors are only allowed on capped collections and can only return objects in natural order.

> If the field you wish to "tail" is indexed, simply requerying for { *field* : { $gt : *value* } } is already quite efficient. Tailable will be slightly faster in situations such as that. However, if the field is not indexed, tailable provides a huge improvement in performance. Situations without indexes are the real use case for a tailable cursor.

MongoDB has a feature known as tailable cursors which are similar to the Unix "tail -f" command.

Tailable means the cursor is not closed once all data is retrieved. Rather, the cursor marks the last known object's position and you can resume using the cursor later, from where that object was located, provided more data is available.

The cursor may become invalid if, for example, the last object returned is at the end of the collection and is deleted. Thus, you should be prepared to requery if the cursor is "dead". You can determine if a cursor is dead by checking its id. An id of zero indicates a dead cursor (use isDead in the c++ driver).

In addition, the cursor may be dead upon creation if the initial query returns no matches. In this case a requery is required to create a persistent tailable cursor.

MongoDB replication uses this feature to follow the end of the master server's replication op log collection -- the tailable feature eliminates the need to create an index for the oplog at the master, which would slow log writes.

C++ example:

```
#include "client/dbclient.h"

using namespace mongo;

/* "tail" the namespace, outputting elements as they are added. Cursor blocks
 * waiting for data if no documents currently exist. For this to work something
 * field -- _id in this case -- should be increasing when items are added.
 */
void tail(DBClientBase& conn, const char *ns) {
  // minKey is smaller than any other possible value
BSONElement lastId = minKey.firstElement();

  Query query = Query().sort("$natural"); // { $natural : 1 } means in forward
// capped collection insertion order
while( 1 ) {
    auto_ptr<DBClientCursor> c =
      conn.query(ns, query, 0, 0, 0,
                 QueryOption_CursorTailable | QueryOption_AwaitData );
    while( 1 ) {
      if( !c->more() ) {
        if( c->isDead() ) {
          // we need to requery
break;
        }
        // No need to wait here, cursor will block for several sec with _AwaitData
 continue; // we will try more() again
}
      BSONObj o = c->next();
      lastId = o["_id"];
      cout << o.toString() << endl;
    }

    // prepare to requery from where we left off
query = QUERY( "_id" << GT << lastId ).sort("$natural");
  }
}
```

Javascript example:

```
var coll = db.some.capped.collection;
var lastVal = coll.find().sort({ '$natural' : 1 })
                         .limit( 1 ).next()[ 'increasing' ];
while(1){

  cursor = coll.find({ 'increasing' : { '$gte' : lastVal } });

  // tailable
cursor.addOption( 2 );
  // await data
cursor.addOption( 32 );

  // Waits several sec for more data
while( cursor.hasNext() ){
    var doc = cursor.next();
    lastVal = doc[ 'increasing' ];
    printjson( doc );
  }

}
```

See Also

- A detailed blog post on tailable cursors
- http://github.com/mongodb/mongo-snippets/blob/master/cpp-examples/tailable_cursor.cpp

Server-side Code Execution

- `$where` Clauses and Functions in Queries
  - Restrictions
- Map/Reduce
- Using `db.eval()`
  - Examples
  - Limitations of `eval`
    - Write locks
    - Sharding
- Storing functions server-side
- Notes on Concurrency
- Running .js files via a mongo shell instance on the server

Mongo supports the execution of code inside the database process.

`$where` Clauses and Functions in Queries

In addition to the regular document-style query specification for `find()` operations, you can also express the query either as a string containing a SQL-style WHERE predicate clause, or a full JavaScript function.

When using this mode of query, the database will call your function, or evaluate your predicate clause, for each object in the collection.

In the case of the string, you must represent the object as "this" (see example below). In the case of a full JavaScript function, you use the normal JavaScript function syntax.

The following four statements in mongo - The Interactive Shell are equivalent:

```
db.myCollection.find( { a : { $gt: 3 } } );
db.myCollection.find( { $where: "this.a > 3" });
db.myCollection.find( "this.a > 3" );
db.myCollection.find( { $where: function() { return this.a > 3;}});
```

The first statement is the preferred form. It will be at least slightly faster to execute because the query optimizer can easily interpret that query and choose an index to use.

You may mix data-style find conditions and a function. This can be advantageous for performance because the data-style expression will be evaluated first, and if not matched, no further evaluation is required. Additionally, the database can then consider using an index for that condition's field. To mix forms, pass your evaluation function as the `$where` field of the query object. For example:

```
db.myCollection.find( { active: true, $where: function() { return obj.credits - obj.debits < 0; } } );
```

You may mix data-style find conditions and a function. This can be advantageous for performance because the data-style expression will be evaluated first, and if not matched, no further evaluation is required. Additionally, the database can then consider using an index for that condition's field. For example:

```
db.myCollection.find( { active: true, $where: "this.credits - this.debits < 0" } );
```

Restrictions

Do not write to the collection being inspected from the `$where` expression.

Map/Reduce

MongoDB supports Javascript-based map/reduce operations on the server. See the map/reduce documentation for more information.

Using `db.eval()`

> ⚠ Use map/reduce instead of db.eval() for long running jobs. db.eval blocks other operations!

`db.eval()` is used to evaluate a function (written in JavaScript) at the database server.
This is useful if you need to touch a lot of data lightly. In that scenario, network transfer of the data could be a bottleneck.

`db.eval()` returns the return value of the function that was invoked at the server. If invocation fails an exception is thrown.

For a trivial example, we can get the server to add 3 to 3:

```
> db.eval( function() { return 3+3; } );
6
>
```

Let's consider an example where we wish to erase a given field, `foo`, in every single document in a collection. A naive client-side approach would be something like

```
function my_erase() {
  db.things.find().forEach( function(obj) {
                        delete obj.foo;
                        db.things.save(obj);
                      } );
}

my_erase();
```

Calling `my_erase()` on the client will require the entire contents of the collection to be transmitted from server to client and back again.

Instead, we can pass the function to `eval()`, and it will be called in the runtime environment of the server. On the server, the `db` variable is set to the current database:

```
db.eval(my_erase);
```

Examples

```
> myfunc = function(x){ return x; };

> db.eval( myfunc, {k:"asdf"} );
{ k : "asdf"  }

> db.eval( myfunc, "asdf" );
"asdf"

> db.eval( function(x){ return x; }, 2 );
2.0
```

If an error occurs on the evaluation (say, a null pointer exception at the server), an exception will be thrown of the form:

```
{ dbEvalException: { errno : -3.0 , errmsg : "invoke failed" , ok : 0.0  } }
```

Example of using `eval()` to do equivalent of the Mongo `count()` function:

```
function mycount(collection) {
  return db.eval( function(){return db[collection].find({},{_id:ObjId()}).length();} );
}
```

Example of using `db.eval()` for doing an atomic increment, plus some calculations:

```
function inc( name , howMuch ){
    return db.eval(
        function(){
            var t = db.things.findOne( { name : name } );
            t = t || { name : name , num : 0 , total : 0 , avg : 0 };
            t.num++;
            t.total += howMuch;
            t.avg = t.total / t.num;
            db.things.save( t );
            return t;
        }
    );
}

db.things.remove( {} );
print( tojson( inc( "eliot" , 2 )) );
print( tojson( inc( "eliot" , 3 )) );
```

Limitations of `eval`

Write locks

It's important to be aware that by default `eval` takes a write lock. This means that you can't use `eval` to run other commands that themselves take a write lock. To take an example, suppose you're running a replica set and want to add a new member. You may be tempted to do something like this from a driver:

```
db.eval("rs.add('ip-address:27017')");
```

As we just mentioned, `eval` will take a write lock on the current node. Therefore, this won't work because you can't add a new replica set member if any of the existing nodes is write-locked.

The proper approach is to run the commands to add a node manually. `rs.add` simply queries the `local.system.replSet` collection, updates the config object, and run the `replSetReconfig` command. You can do this from the driver, which, in addition to not taking out the `eval` write lock, manages to more directly perform the operation.

In 1.7.2, a `nolock` option was added to `eval`. To use `nolock` you have to use the command interface directly:

```
db.runCommand({$eval: function() {return 42;}, nolock: true})
```

or with args

```
db.runCommand({$eval: function(x,y) {return x*y;}, args: [6,7], nolock: true})
```

Sharding

Note also that `eval` doesn't work with sharding. If you expect your system to be sharded eventually, it's probably best to avoid `eval` altogether.

Storing functions server-side

There is a special system collection called `system.js` that can store JavaScript function to be re-used. To store a function, you would do:

```
db.system.js.save( { _id : "foo" , value : function( x , y ){ return x + y; } } );
```

_id is the name of the function, and is unique per database.

Once you do that, you can use `foo` from any JavaScript context (db.eval, $where, map/reduce)

See http://github.com/mongodb/mongo/tree/master/jstests/storefunc.js for a full example

Notes on Concurrency

eval() blocks the entire mongod process while running. Thus, its operations are atomic but prevent other operations from processing.

When more concurrency is needed consider using map/reduce instead of eval().

Running .js files via a mongo shell instance on the server

This is a good technique for performing batch administrative work. Run `mongo` on the server, connecting via the `localhost` interface. The connection is then very fast and low latency. This is friendlier than db.eval() as db.eval() blocks other operations.

Sorting and Natural Order

"Natural order" is defined as the database's native ordering of objects in a collection.

When executing a `find()` with no parameters, the database returns objects in forward natural order.

For standard tables, natural order is not particularly useful because, although the order is often close to insertion order, it is not *guaranteed* to be. However, for Capped Collections, natural order is guaranteed to be the insertion order. This can be very useful.

In general, the natural order feature is a very efficient way to store and retrieve data in insertion order (much faster than say, indexing on a timestamp field). But remember, the collection must be capped for this to work.

In addition to forward natural order, items may be retrieved in reverse natural order. For example, to return the 50 most recently inserted items (ordered most recent to less recent) from a capped collection, you would invoke:

```
> c=db.cappedCollection.find().sort({$natural:-1}).limit(50)
```

Sorting can also be done on arbitrary keys in any collection. For example, this sorts by 'name' ascending, then 'age' descending:

```
> c=db.collection.find().sort({name : 1, age : -1})
```

See Also

- The Capped Collections section of this Guide
- Advanced Queries
- The starting point for all Home

Aggregation

- Count
- Distinct
- Group
  - Examples
  - Using Group from Various Languages
- Map/Reduce
- See Also

Mongo includes utility functions which provide server-side `count, distinct,` and `group by` operations. More advanced aggregate functions can be crafted using MapReduce.

Count

`count()` returns the number of objects in a collection or matching a query. If a document selector is provided, only the number of matching documents will be returned.

`size()` is like `count()` but takes into consideration any limit() or skip() specified for the query.

```
db.collection.count(selector);
```

For example:

```
print( "# of objects: " + db.mycollection.count() );
print( db.mycollection.count( {active:true} );
```

`count` is faster if an index exists for the condition in the selector. For example, to make the count on `active` fast, invoke

```
db.mycollection.ensureIndex( {active:1} );
```

Distinct

The distinct command returns returns a list of distinct values for the given `key` across a collection.

Command is of the form:

```
{ distinct : <collection_name>, key : <key>[, query : <query>] }
```

although many drivers have a helper function for distinct.

```
> db.addresses.insert({"zip-code": 10010})
> db.addresses.insert({"zip-code": 10010})
> db.addresses.insert({"zip-code": 99701})

> // shell helper:
> db.addresses.distinct("zip-code");
[ 10010, 99701 ]

> // running as a command manually:
> db.runCommand( { distinct: 'addresses', key: 'zip-code' } )
{ "values" : [ 10010, 99701 ], "ok" : 1 }
```

`distinct` may also reference a nested key:

```
> db.comments.save({"user": {"points": 25}})
> db.comments.save({"user": {"points": 31}})
> db.comments.save({"user": {"points": 25}})

> db.comments.distinct("user.points");
[ 25, 31 ]
```

You can add an optional query parameter to distinct as well

```
> db.address.distinct( "zip-code" , { age : 30 } )
```

Note: the distinct command results are returned as a single BSON object. If the results could be large (> max document size – 4/16MB), use map/reduce instead.

> **Covered Index Use**
> Starting with 1.7.3 distinct can use an index not only to find the documents in the query, but also to return the data.

Group

Note: currently one must use map/reduce instead of group() in sharded MongoDB configurations.

`group` returns an array of grouped items. The command is similar to SQL's group by. The SQL statement

```
select a,b,sum(c) csum from coll where active=1 group by a,b
```

corresponds to the following in MongoDB:

```
db.coll.group(
           {key: { a:true, b:true },
            cond: { active:1 },
            reduce: function(obj,prev) { prev.csum += obj.c; },
            initial: { csum: 0 }
            });
```

Note: the result is returned as a single BSON object and for this reason must be fairly small – less than 10,000 keys, else you will get an exception. For larger grouping operations without limits, please use map/reduce .

`group` takes a single object parameter containing the following fields:

- *`key`*: Fields to group by.
- *`reduce`*: The `reduce` function aggregates (reduces) the objects iterated. Typical operations of a reduce function include summing and counting. `reduce` takes two arguments: the current document being iterated over and the aggregation counter object. In the example above, these arguments are named `obj` and `prev`.
- *`initial`*: initial value of the aggregation counter object.
- *`keyf`*: An optional function returning a "key object" to be used as the grouping key. Use this instead of *`key`* to specify a key that is not an existing member of the object (or, to access embedded members). Set in lieu of *`key`*.
- *`cond`*: An optional condition that must be true for a row to be considered. This is essentially a `find()` query expression object. If null, the reduce function will run against all rows in the collection.
- *`finalize`*: An optional function to be run on each item in the result set just before the item is returned. Can either modify the item (e.g., add an average field given a count and a total) or return a replacement object (returning a new object with just _id and average fields). See jstests/group3.js for examples.

To order the grouped data, simply sort it client-side upon return. The following example is an implementation of `count()` using `group()`.

```
function gcount(collection, condition) {
  var res =
    db[collection].group(
           { key: {},
             initial: {count: 0},
             reduce: function(obj,prev){ prev.count++;},
             cond: condition } );
  // group() returns an array of grouped items.  here, there will be a single
// item, as key is {}.
return res[0] ? res[0].count : 0;
}
```

Examples

The examples assume data like this:

```
{ domain: "www.mongodb.org"
, invoked_at: {d:"2009-11-03", t:"17:14:05"}
, response_time: 0.05
, http_action: "GET /display/DOCS/Aggregation"
}
```

Show me stats for each http_action in November 2009:

```
db.test.group(
   { cond: {"invoked_at.d": {$gte: "2009-11", $lt: "2009-12"}}
   , key: {http_action: true}
   , initial: {count: 0, total_time:0}
   , reduce: function(doc, out){ out.count++; out.total_time+=doc.response_time }
   , finalize: function(out){ out.avg_time = out.total_time / out.count }
   } );

[
  {
    "http_action" : "GET /display/DOCS/Aggregation",
    "count" : 1,
    "total_time" : 0.05,
    "avg_time" : 0.05
  }
]
```

Show me stats for each domain for each day in November 2009:

```
db.test.group(
   { cond: {"invoked_at.d": {$gte: "2009-11", $lt: "2009-12"}}
   , key: {domain: true, invoked_at.d: true}
   , initial: {count: 0, total_time:0}
   , reduce: function(doc, out){ out.count++; out.total_time+=doc.response_time }
   , finalize: function(out){ out.avg_time = out.total_time / out.count }
   } );

[
  {
    "http_action" : "GET /display/DOCS/Aggregation",
    "count" : 1,
    "total_time" : 0.05,
    "avg_time" : 0.05
  }
]
```

Using Group from Various Languages

Some language drivers provide a group helper function. For those that don't, one can manually issue the db command for group. Here's an example using the Mongo shell syntax:

```
> db.foo.find()
{"_id" :  ObjectId( "4a92af2db3d09cb83d985f6f")  , "x" : 1}
{"_id" :  ObjectId( "4a92af2fb3d09cb83d985f70")  , "x" : 3}
{"_id" :  ObjectId( "4a92afdab3d09cb83d985f71")  , "x" : 3}

> db.$cmd.findOne({group : {
... ns : "foo",
... cond : {},
... key : {x : 1},
... initial : {count : 0},
... $reduce : function(obj,prev){prev.count++;}}})
{"retval" : [{"x" : 1 , "count" : 1},{"x" : 3 , "count" : 2}] , "count" : 3 , "keys" : 2 , "ok" : 1}
```

If you use the database command with `keyf` (instead of `key`) it must be prefixed with a $. For example:

```
db.$cmd.findOne({group : {
... ns : "foo",
... $keyf : function(doc) { return {"x" : doc.x}; },
... initial : {count : 0},
... $reduce : function(obj,prev) { prev.count++; }}})
```

Map/Reduce

MongoDB provides a MapReduce facility for more advanced aggregation needs. CouchDB users: please note that basic queries in MongoDB do not use map/reduce.

See Also

- jstests/eval2.js for an example of group() usage
- Advanced Queries

Removing

Removing Objects from a Collection

To remove objects from a collection, use the `remove()` function in the mongo shell. (Other drivers offer a similar function, but may call the function "delete". Please check your driver's documentation).

`remove()` is like `find()` in that it takes a JSON-style query document as an argument to select which documents are removed. If you call `remove()` without a document argument, or with an empty document {}, it will remove all documents in the collection. Some examples :

```
db.things.remove({});    // removes all
db.things.remove({n:1}); // removes all where n == 1
```

If you have a document in memory and wish to delete it, the most efficient method is to specify the item's document _id value as a criteria:

```
db.things.remove({_id: myobject._id});
```

You may be tempted to simply pass the document you wish to delete as the selector, and this will work, but it's inefficient.

> **References**
> If a document is deleted, any existing references to the document will still exist in the database. These references will return null when resolved (queried for the referenced document) and could cause errors in some mapper/frameworks.

Concurrency and Remove

v1.3+ supports concurrent operations while a remove runs. If a simultaneous update (on the same collection) grows an object which matched the remove criteria, the updated object may not be removed (as the operations are happening at approximately the same time, this may not even be surprising). In situations where this is undesireable, pass {$atomic : true} in your filter expression:

```
db.videos.remove( { rating : { $lt : 3.0 }, $atomic : true } )
```

The remove operation is then isolated – however, it will also block other operations while executing.

Updating

MongoDB supports atomic, in-place updates as well as more traditional updates for replacing an entire document.

- update()
- `save()` in the mongo shell
- Modifier Operations
    - $inc
    - $set
    - $unset
    - $push
    - $pushAll
    - $addToSet
    - $pop
    - $pull
    - $pullAll
    - $rename
    - $bit
  - The $ positional operator

    - Upserts with Modifiers
    - Pushing a Unique Value
- Checking the Outcome of an Update Request
- Notes
    - Object Padding
    - Blocking
    - Field (re)order
- See Also

update()

`update()` replaces the document matching criteria entirely with objNew. If you only want to modify some fields, you should use the atomic modifiers below.

Here's the MongoDB shell syntax for `update()`:

`db.collection.update( criteria, objNew, upsert, multi )`

Arguments:

- *`criteria`* - query which selects the record to update;
- *`objNew`* - updated object or $ operators (e.g., $inc) which manipulate the object
- *`upsert`* - if this should be an "upsert"; that is, if the record does not exist, insert it
- *`multi`* - if all documents matching *`criteria`* should be updated

> If you are coming from SQL, be aware that by default, update() only modifies the first matched object. If you want to modify all matched objects you need to use the multi flag

`save()` in the mongo shell

The save() command in the mongo shell provides a shorthand syntax to perform a single object update with upsert:

```
// x is some JSON style object
db.mycollection.save(x); // updates if exists; inserts if new
```

`save()` does an upsert if x has an _id field and an insert if it does not. Thus, normally, you will not need to explicitly request upserts, just use `save()`.

Upsert means "update if present; insert if missing".

```
myColl.update( { _id: X }, { _id: X, name: "Joe", age: 20 }, true );
```

Modifier Operations

Modifier operations are highly-efficient and useful when updating existing values; for instance, they're great for incrementing a number.

So, while a conventional implementation does work:

```
var j=myColl.findOne( { name: "Joe" } );
j.n++;
myColl.save(j);
```

a modifier update has the advantages of avoiding the latency involved in querying and returning the object. The modifier update also features operation atomicity and very little network data transfer.

To perform an atomic update, simply specify any of the special update operators (which always start with a '$' character) with a relevant update document:

```
db.people.update( { name:"Joe" }, { $inc: { n : 1 } } );
```

The preceding example says, "Find the first document where 'name' is 'Joe' and then increment 'n' by one."

While not shown in the examples, most modifier operators will accept multiple field/value pairs when one wishes to modify multiple fields. For example, the following operation would set x to 1 and y to 2:

```
{ $set : { x : 1 , y : 2 } }
```

Also, multiple operators are valid too:

```
{ $set : { x : 1 }, $inc : { y : 1 } }
```

$inc

```
{ $inc : { field : value } }
```

increments *field* by the number *value* if *field* is present in the object, otherwise sets *field* to the number *value*.

$set

```
{ $set : { field : value } }
```

sets *field* to *value*. All datatypes are supported with `$set`.

$unset

```
{ $unset : { field : 1} }
```

Deletes a given field. v1.3+

$push

```
{ $push : { field : value } }
```

appends *value* to *field*, if *field* is an existing array, otherwise sets *field* to the array [*value*] if *field* is not present. If *field* is present but is not an array, an error condition is raised.

$pushAll

```
{ $pushAll : { field : value_array } }
```

appends each value in *value_array* to *field*, if *field* is an existing array, otherwise sets *field* to the array *value_array* if *field* is not present. If *field* is present but is not an array, an error condition is raised.

$addToSet

```
{ $addToSet : { field : value } }
```

Adds value to the array only if its not in the array already, if *field* is an existing array, otherwise sets *field* to the array *value* if *field* is not present. If *field* is present but is not an array, an error condition is raised.

To add many values

```
{ $addToSet : { a : { $each : [ 3 , 5 , 6 ] } } }
```

$pop

```
{ $pop : { field : 1  } }
```

removes the last element in an array (ADDED in 1.1)

```
{ $pop : { field : -1  } }
```

removes the first element in an array (ADDED in 1.1) |

$pull

```
{ $pull : { field : _value } }
```

removes all occurrences of *`value`* from *`field`*, if *`field`* is an array. If *`field`* is present but is not an array, an error condition is raised.

In addition to matching an exact value you can also use expressions ($pull is special in this way):

```
{ $pull : { field : {field2: value} } } removes array elements with field2 matching value
```

```
{ $pull : { field : {$gt: 3} } } removes array elements greater than 3
```

```
{ $pull : { field : {<match-criteria>} } } removes array elements meeting match criteria
```

> Because of this feature, to use the embedded doc as a match criteria, you cannot do exact matches on array elements.

$pullAll

```
{ $pullAll : { field : value_array } }
```

removes all occurrences of each value in *`value_array`* from *`field`*, if *`field`* is an array. If *`field`* is present but is not an array, an error condition is raised.

$rename

Version 1.7.2+ only.

```
{ $rename : { old_field_name : new_field_name } }
```

Renames the field with name 'old_field_name' to 'new_field_name'. Does not expand arrays to find a match for 'old_field_name'.

$bit

Version 1.7.5+ only.

```
{$bit : { field : {and : 5}}}
{$bit : {field : {or : 43}}}
{$bit : {field : {and : 5, or : 2}}}
```

Does a bitwise update of *field*. Can only be used with integers.

The $ positional operator

Version 1.3.4+ only.

The $ operator (by itself) means "position of the matched array item in the query". Use this to find an array member and then manipulate it. For example:

```
> t.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4b97e62bf1d8c7152c9ccb74"), "title" : "ABC",
  "comments" : [ { "by" : "joe", "votes" : 3 }, { "by" : "jane", "votes" : 7 } ] }

> t.update( {'comments.by':'joe'}, {$inc:{'comments.$.votes':1}}, false, true )

> t.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4b97e62bf1d8c7152c9ccb74"), "title" : "ABC",
  "comments" : [ { "by" : "joe", "votes" : 4 }, { "by" : "jane", "votes" : 7 } ] }
```

Currently the $ operator only applies to the **first** matched item in the query. For example:

```
> t.find();
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4b9e4a1fc583fa1c76198319"), "x" : [ 1, 2, 3, 2 ] }
> t.update({x: 2}, {$inc: {"x.$": 1}}, false, true);
> t.find();
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4b9e4a1fc583fa1c76198319"), "x" : [ 1, 3, 3, 2 ] }
```

The positional operator cannot be combined with an `upsert` since it requires a matching array element. If your update results in an insert then the "$" will literally be used as the field name.

Using "$unset" with an expression like this "array.$" will result in the array item becoming `null`, not being removed. You can issue an update with "{$pull:{x:null}}" to remove all nulls.

```
> t.insert({x: [1,2,3,4,3,2,3,4]})
> t.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4bde2ad3755d00000000710e"), "x" : [ 1, 2, 3, 4, 3, 2, 3, 4 ] }
> t.update({x:3}, {$unset:{"x.$":1}})
> t.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4bde2ad3755d00000000710e"), "x" : [ 1, 2, null, 4, 3, 2, 3, 4 ] }
```

$pull can now do much of this so this example is now mostly historical (depending on your version).

Upserts with Modifiers

You may use upsert with a modifier operation. In such a case, the modifiers will be applied to the update *`criteria`* member and the resulting object will be inserted. The following upsert example may insert the object {`name:"Joe",x:1,y:1`}.

```
db.people.update( { name:"Joe" }, { $inc: { x:1, y:1 } }, true );
```

There are some restrictions. A modifier may not reference the `_id` field, and two modifiers within an update may not reference the same field, for example the following is not allowed:

```
db.people.update( { name:"Joe" }, { $inc: { x: 1 }, $set: { x: 5 } } );
```

Pushing a Unique Value

To add a value to an array only if not already present:

Starting in 1.3.3, you can do

```
update( {_id:'joe'},{"$addToSet": { tags : "baseball" } } );
```

For older versions, add $ne : <value> to your query expression:

```
update( {_id:'joe', tags: {"$ne": "baseball"}},
        {"$push": { tags : "baseball" } } );
```

Checking the Outcome of an Update Request

As described above, a non-upsert update may or may not modify an existing object. An upsert will either modify an existing object or insert a new object. The client may determine if its most recent message on a connection updated an existing object by subsequently issuing a `getlasterror` command (`db.runCommand( "getlasterror" )`). If the result of the `getlasterror` command contains an `updatedExisting` field, the last message on the connection was an update request. If the `updatedExisting` field's value is true, that update request caused an existing object to be updated; if `updatedExisting` is false, no existing object was updated. An "`upserted`" field will contain the new `_id` value if an insert is performed (new as of 1.5.4).

Notes

Object Padding

When you update an object in MongoDB, the update occurs in-place if the object has not grown in size. This is good for insert performance if the collection has many indexes.

Mongo adaptively learns if objects in a collection tend to grow, and if they do, it adds some padding to prevent excessive movements. This statistic is tracked separately for each collection. More info here.

Blocking

Starting in 1.5.2, multi updates yield occasionally so you can safely update large amounts of data. If you want a multi update to be truly isolated (so no other writes happen while processing the affected documents), you can use the $atomic flag in the query like this:

```
db.students.update({score: {$gt: 60}, $atomic: true}, {$set: {pass: true}})
```

Field (re)order

During an update the field order may be changed. There is no guarantee that the field order will be consistent, or the same, after an update. At the moment, if the update can be applied in place then the order will be the same (with additions applied at the end), but if a move is required for the document (if the currently allocated space is not sufficient for the update) then the fields will be reordered (alphanumerically).

See Also

- findandmodify Command
- Atomic Operations

Atomic Operations

- Modifier operations
- "Update if Current"
  - The ABA Nuance
- "Insert if Not Present"
- Find and Modify (or Remove)
- Applying to Multiple Objects At Once

MongoDB supports atomic operations *on single documents*. MongoDB does not support traditional locking and complex transactions for a number of reasons:

- First, in sharded environments, distributed locks could be expensive and slow. Mongo DB's goal is to be lightweight and fast.
- We dislike the concept of deadlocks. We want the system to be simple and predictable without these sort of surprises.
- We want Mongo DB to work well for realtime problems. If an operation may execute which locks large amounts of data, it might stop some small light queries for an extended period of time. (We don't claim Mongo DB is perfect yet in regards to being "real-time", but we certainly think locking would make it even harder.)

MongoDB does support several methods of manipulating single documents atomically, which are detailed below.

Modifier operations

The Mongo DB update command supports several modifiers, all of which atomically update an element in a document. They include:

- $set - set a particular value
- $unset - set a particular value (since 1.3.0)
- $inc - increment a particular value by a certain amount
- $push - append a value to an array
- $pushAll - append several values to an array
- $pull - remove a value(s) from an existing array
- $pullAll - remove several value(s) from an existing array
- $bit - bitwise operations

These modifiers are convenient ways to perform certain operations atomically.

"Update if Current"

Another strategy for atomic updates is "Update if Current". This is what an OS person would call Compare and Swap. For this we

1. Fetch the object.
2. Modify the object locally.
3. Send an update request that says "update the object to this new value if it still matches its old value".

Should the operation fail, we might then want to try again from step 1.

For example, suppose we wish to fetch one object from inventory. We want to see that an object is available, and if it is, deduct it from the inventory. The following code demonstrates this using mongo shell syntax (similar functions may be done in any language):

```
> t=db.inventory
> s = t.findOne({sku:'abc'})
{"_id" : "49df4d3c9664d32c73ea865a" , "sku" : "abc" , "qty" : 30}
> qty_old = s.qty;
> --s.qty;
> t.update({_id:s._id, qty:qty_old}, s); db.$cmd.findOne({getlasterror:1});
{"err" :  , "updatedExisting" : true , "n" : 1 , "ok" : 1} // it worked
```

For the above example, we likely don't care the exact sku quantity as long as it is as least as great as the number to deduct. Thus the following code is better, although less general -- we can get away with this as we are using a predefined modifier operation ($inc). For more general updates, the "update if current" approach shown above is recommended.

```
> t.update({sku:"abc",qty:{$gt:0}}, { $inc : { qty : -1 } } ) ; db.$cmd.findOne({getlasterror:1})
{"err" : , "updatedExisting" : true , "n" : 1 , "ok" : 1} // it worked
> t.update({sku:"abcz",qty:{$gt:0}}, { $inc : { qty : -1 } } ) ; db.$cmd.findOne({getlasterror:1})
{"err" : , "updatedExisting" : false , "n" : 0 , "ok" : 1} // did not work
```

The ABA Nuance

In the first of the examples above, we basically did "update object if *qty* is unchanged". However, what if since our read, *sku* had been modified? We would then overwrite that change and lose it!

There are several ways to avoid this problem ; it's mainly just a matter of being aware of the nuance.

1. Use the entire object in the update's query expression, instead of just the _id and qty field.
2. Use $set to set the field we care about. If other fields have changed, they won't be affected.
3. Put a version variable in the object, and increment it on each update.
4. When possible, use a $ operator instead of an update-if-current sequence of operations.

"Insert if Not Present"

Another optimistic concurrency scenario involves inserting a value when not already there. When we have a unique index constraint for the criteria, we can do this. See the How to Make an Auto Incrementing Field page for an example.

Find and Modify (or Remove)

See the findandmodify Command documentation for more information.

Applying to Multiple Objects At Once

You can use multi-update to apply the same modifier to every relevant object. By default a multi-update will allow some other operations (which could be writes) to interleave. Thus, this will only be pseudo-atomic (pseudo-isolated). To make it fullly isolated you can use the $atomic motifier:

not isolated:

```
db.foo.update( { x : 1 } , { $inc : { y : 1 } } , false , true );
```

isolated:

```
db.foo.update( { x : 1 , $atomic : 1 } , { $inc : { y : 1 } } , false , true );
```

> Isolated is not atomic. Atomic implies that there is an all-or-nothing semantic to the update; this is not possible with more than one document. Isolated just means than you are the only one writing when the update is done; this means each update is done without any interference from any other.

How to Make an Auto Incrementing Field

> Generally in MongoDB, one does not use an auto-increment pattern for _id's (or other fields), as this does not scale up well on large database clusters. Instead one typically uses Object IDs.

Side counter method

One can keep a counter of the current _id in a side document, in a collection dedicated to counters.
Then use FindAndModify to atomically obtain an id and increment the counter.

```
> db.counters.insert({_id: "userId", c: 0});

> var o = db.counters.findAndModify(
...        {query: {_id: "userId"}, update: {$inc: {c: 1}}});
{ "_id" : "userId", "c" : 0 }
> db.mycollection.insert({_id:o.c, stuff:"abc"});

> o = db.counters.findAndModify(
...        {query: {_id: "userId"}, update: {$inc: {c: 1}}});
{ "_id" : "userId", "c" : 1 }
> db.mycollection.insert({_id:o.c, stuff:"another one"});
```

Once you obtain the next id in the client, you can use it and be sure no other client has it.

Optimistic loop method

One can do it with an optimistic concurrency "insert if not present" loop. The following example, in Mongo shell Javascript syntax, demonstrates.

```
// insert incrementing _id values into a collection
function insertObject(o) {
    x = db.myCollection;
    while( 1 ) {
        // determine next _id value to try
var c = x.find({},{_id:1}).sort({_id:-1}).limit(1);
        var i = c.hasNext() ? c.next()._id + 1 : 1;
        o._id = i;
        x.insert(o);
        var err = db.getLastErrorObj();
        if( err && err.code ) {
            if( err.code == 11000 /* dup key */ )
                continue;
            else
                print("unexpected error inserting data: " + tojson(err));
        }
        break;
    }
}
```

The above should work well unless there is an extremely high concurrent insert rate on the collection. In that case, there would be a lot of looping potentially.

See Also

- Atomic Operations

findAndModify Command

Find and Modify (or Remove)

> v1.3.0 and higher

MongoDB 1.3+ supports a "find, modify, and return" command. This command can be used to atomically **modify a document** (at most one) and return it. Note that, by default, the document returned will not include the modifications made on the update.

> If you don't need to return the document, you can use Update (which can affect multiple documents, as well).

The general form is

```
db.runCommand( { findAndModify : <collection>,
                 <options> } )
```

The MongoDB shell includes a helper method, findAndModify(), for executing the command. Some drivers provide helpers also.

At least one of the *update* or *remove* parameters is required; the other arguments are optional.

Argument	Description	Default
query	a filter for the query	{}
sort	if multiple docs match, choose the first one in the specified sort order as the object to manipulate	{}
remove	set to a true to remove the object before returning	N/A
update	a modifier object	N/A
new	set to true if you want to return the modified object rather than the original. Ignored for remove.	false
fields	see Retrieving a Subset of Fields (1.5.0+)	All fields
upsert	create object if it doesn't exist. examples (1.5.4+)	false

The *sort* option is useful when storing queue-like data. Let's take the example of fetching the highest priority job that hasn't been grabbed yet and atomically marking it as grabbed:

```
> db.jobs.save( {
     name: "Next promo",
     inprogress: false, priority:0,
     tasks : [ "select product", "add inventory", "do placement"]
} );

> db.jobs.save( {
     name: "Biz report",
     inprogress: false, priority:1,
     tasks : [ "run sales report", "email report" ]
} );

> db.jobs.save( {
     name: "Biz report",
     inprogress: false, priority:2,
     tasks : [ "run marketing report", "email report" ]
} );
```

```
> job = db.jobs.findAndModify({
     query: {inprogress: false, name: "Biz report"},
     sort : {priority:-1},
     update: {$set: {inprogress: true, started: new Date()}},
     new: true
});

{
 "_id" : ...,
 "inprogress" : true,
 "name" : "Biz report",
 "priority" : 2,
 "started" : "Mon Oct 25 2010 11:15:07 GMT-0700 (PDT)",
 "tasks" : [
  "run marketing report",
  "email report"
 ]
}
```

You can pop an element from an array for processing and update in a single atomic operation:

```
> task = db.jobs.findAndModify({
     query: {inprogress: false, name: "Next promo"},
     update : {$pop : { tasks:-1}}, fields: {tasks:1},
     new: false } )
{
 "_id" : ...,
 "tasks" : [
  "select product",
  "add inventory",
  "do placement"
 ]
}

> db.jobs.find( { name : "Next promo"} )
{
        "_id" : ...,
        "inprogress" : false,
        "name" : "Next promo",
        "priority" : 0,
        "tasks" : [ "add inventory", "do placement" ]
}
```

You can also simply remove the object to be returned.

```
> job = db.jobs.findAndModify( {sort:{priority:-1}, remove:true} );
{
 "_id" : ...,
 "inprogress" : true,
 "name" : "Biz report",
 "priority" : 2,
 "started" : "Mon Oct 25 2010 10:44:15 GMT-0700 (PDT)",
 "tasks" : [
  "run marketing report",
  "email report"
 ]
}

> db.jobs.find()
{
       "_id" : ...,
       "inprogress" : false,
       "name" : "Next promo",
       "priority" : 0,
       "tasks" : [ "add inventory", "do placement" ]
}
{
       "_id" : ...,
       "name" : "Biz report",
       "inprogress" : false,
       "priority" : 1,
       "tasks" : [ "run sales report", "email report" ]
}
```

If the client crashes before processing the job or task in the above examples, the data will be lost forever.

See the tests for more examples.

If your driver doesn't provide a helper function for this command, run the command directly with something like this:

```
job = db.runCommand({ findAndModify : "jobs",
                      sort : { priority : -1 },
                      remove : true
                    }).value;
```

Sharding limitations

findandmodify will behave the same when called through a *mongos* as long as the collection it is modifying is unsharded. If the collection is sharded, then the query must contain the shard key. This is the same as regular sharded updates.

See Also

- Atomic Operations

Padding Factor

When you update an object in MongoDB, the update occurs in-place if the object has not grown in size. This is good for insert performance if the collection has many indexes.

Mongo adaptively learns if objects in a collection tend to grow, and if they do, it adds some padding to prevent excessive movements. This statistic is tracked separately for each collection. More info here.

You can check the collection's current padding factor by running

> db.mycollection.stats()

in the shell. Note this is the padding factor for new inserts – this does not mean documents historically have this padding factor value.

The paddingfactor is 1.0 if there is no padding. 1.5 would indicate 50% padding on a new insert.

No padding after imports, repairs and compactions

After compaction and import operations, there is generally no padding on newly imported items, as they were inserted and there were no updates. Thus you may see slower update performance in these cases.

Shrinking Documents

If a document gets smaller (e.g., because of an $unset or $pop), the document does not move but stays at its current location. It thus effectively has more padding. Thus space is never reclaimed if documents shrink by large amounts and never grow again. To reclaim that space run a compact operation.

See Also

- http://blog.mongodb.org/post/248614779/fast-updates-with-mongodb-update-in-place

two-phase commit

A common problem with non-relational database is that it is not possible to do transactions across several documents. When executing a transaction composed of several sequential operations, some issues arise:

- Atomicity: it is difficult to rollback changes by previous operations if one fails.
- Isolation: changes to a single document are seen by concurrent processes, which may have an inconsistent view of the data during the transaction execution.
- Consistency: In case of a major failure (network, hardware) it is possible that the data will be left inconsistent and difficult to repair.

MongoDB provides atomicity for an operation on a single document. Since documents can be fairly complex, this actually covers many more cases than with a traditional DB. Still there are cases where transactions across documents are needed, and that is when a two-phase commit can be used. The two-phase commit is made possible by the fact that documents are complex and can represent pending data and states. This process makes sure that the data is eventually consistent, which is usually what matters most to the system.

Account transfer example

Problem overview

The most common example of transaction is to transfer funds from account A to B in a reliable way. With a traditional RDBMS, funds are substracted from A and added to B within an atomic transaction. With MongoDB, a viable solution is to use a two-phase commit.

Let's have one collection holding accounts:

```
foo:PRIMARY> db.accounts.save({name: "A", balance: 1000, pendingTransactions: []})
foo:PRIMARY> db.accounts.save({name: "B", balance: 1000, pendingTransactions: []})
foo:PRIMARY> db.accounts.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d7bc66cb8a04f512696151f"), "name" : "A", "balance" : 1000, "pendingTransactions"
: [ ] }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d7bc67bb8a04f5126961520"), "name" : "B", "balance" : 1000, "pendingTransactions"
: [ ] }
```

And we need one collection representing transactions:

```
foo:PRIMARY> db.transactions.save({source: "A", destination: "B", value: 100, state: "initial"})
foo:PRIMARY> db.transactions.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d7bc7a8b8a04f5126961522"), "source" : "A", "destination" : "B", "value" : 100,
"state" : "initial" }
```

Transaction description

Step 1: the transaction state is switched to, "pending":

```
foo:PRIMARY> t = db.transactions.findOne({state: "initial"})
{
 "_id" : ObjectId("4d7bc7a8b8a04f5126961522"),
 "source" : "A",
 "destination" : "B",
 "value" : 100,
 "state" : "initial"
}
foo:PRIMARY> db.transactions.update({_id: t._id}, {$set: {state: "pending"}})
foo:PRIMARY> db.transactions.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d7bc7a8b8a04f5126961522"), "source" : "A", "destination" : "B", "value" : 100,
"state" : "pending" }
```

Step 2: apply the transaction to both accounts, and make sure the transaction is not already pending:

```
foo:PRIMARY> db.accounts.update({name: t.source, pendingTransactions: {$ne: t._id}}, {$inc: {balance:
-t.value}, $push: {pendingTransactions: t._id}})
foo:PRIMARY> db.accounts.update({name: t.destination, pendingTransactions: {$ne: t._id}}, {$inc:
{balance: t.value}, $push: {pendingTransactions: t._id}})
foo:PRIMARY> db.accounts.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d7bc97fb8a04f5126961523"), "balance" : 900, "name" : "A", "pendingTransactions" :
[ ObjectId("4d7bc7a8b8a04f5126961522") ] }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d7bc984b8a04f5126961524"), "balance" : 1100, "name" : "B", "pendingTransactions"
: [ ObjectId("4d7bc7a8b8a04f5126961522") ] }
```

Step 3: set the transaction's state to "committed":

```
foo:PRIMARY> db.transactions.update({_id: t._id}, {$set: {state: "committed"}})
foo:PRIMARY> db.transactions.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d7bc7a8b8a04f5126961522"), "destination" : "B", "source" : "A", "state" :
"committed", "value" : 100 }
```

Step 4: remove the pending transaction from accounts:

```
foo:PRIMARY> db.accounts.update({name: t.source}, {$pull: {pendingTransactions: ObjectId(
"4d7bc7a8b8a04f5126961522")}})
foo:PRIMARY> db.accounts.update({name: t.destination}, {$pull: {pendingTransactions: ObjectId(
"4d7bc7a8b8a04f5126961522")}})
foo:PRIMARY> db.accounts.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d7bc97fb8a04f5126961523"), "balance" : 900, "name" : "A", "pendingTransactions" :
[ ] }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d7bc984b8a04f5126961524"), "balance" : 1100, "name" : "B", "pendingTransactions"
: [ ] }
```

Step 5: set transaction's state to "done":

```
foo:PRIMARY> db.transactions.update({_id: t._id}, {$set: {state: "done"}})
foo:PRIMARY> db.transactions.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d7bc7a8b8a04f5126961522"), "destination" : "B", "source" : "A", "state" : "done",
"value" : 100 }
```

Failure scenarios

Now let's look at the failure scenarios and how to deal with them. For example, a failure can be that the application making the sequential operations suddenly dies, and is restarted.

Cases to cover:

- any failure between after step 1 and before step 3: Application should get a list of transactions in state "pending" and resume from step 2.
- any failure after step 3 and before step 5: Application should get a list of transactions in state "applied" and resume from step 4.

Application is thus always able to resume the transaction and eventually get to a consistent state.

These "repair" jobs should be run at application startup and possibly at regular interval to catch any unfinished transaction.
The time it takes to get to a consistent state may vary depending on how long it takes to resume a failed transaction.

Rollback

A common need may be to rollback a transaction, either because it has been cancelled or because it can never succeed (e.g. account B is closed).

Two cases:

- after step 3, the transaction is considered committed and should not be rolled back. Instead, to undo the transaction, a new transaction can be created with an opposite source and destination.
- after step 1 and before step 3: the process below should be applied.

Step 1: set the transaction's state to "cancelling":

```
foo:PRIMARY> db.transactions.update({_id: t._id}, {$set: {state: "pending"}})
```

Step 2: undo the transaction from accounts:

```
foo:PRIMARY> db.accounts.update({name: t.source, pendingTransactions: t._id}, {$inc: {balance:
t.value}, $pull: {pendingTransactions: t._id}})
foo:PRIMARY> db.accounts.update({name: t.destination, pendingTransactions: t._id}, {$inc: {balance:
-t.value}, $pull: {pendingTransactions: t._id}})
foo:PRIMARY> db.accounts.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d7bc97fb8a04f5126961523"), "balance" : 1000, "name" : "A", "pendingTransactions"
: [ ] }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d7bc984b8a04f5126961524"), "balance" : 1000, "name" : "B", "pendingTransactions"
: [ ] }
```

Step 3: set the transaction's state to "cancelled":

```
foo:PRIMARY> db.transactions.update({_id: t._id}, {$set: {state: "cancelled"}})
```

Multiple applications

A common issue that exists with any DBs is how to make it safe for several applications to run transactions.
It is important that only 1 application handles a given transaction at one point in time, because otherwise conflicts can happen.

One example is:

- application A1 and A2 both grab transaction T1 which is in "initial" state.
- A1 applies the whole transaction before A2 starts
- A2 applies transaction a 2nd time because it does not appear as pending in the accounts

To handle multiple applications, there should be a marker at the transaction level that the transaction is being handled.
One can use findAndModify:

```
foo:PRIMARY> t = db.transactions.findAndModify({query: {state: "initial", application: {$exists: 0}},
update: {$set: {state: "pending", application: "A1"}}, new: true})
{
 "_id" : ObjectId("4d7be8af2c10315c0847fc85"),
 "application" : "A1",
 "destination" : "B",
 "source" : "A",
 "state" : "pending",
 "value" : 150
}
```

The only remaining issue is if application A1 dies during transaction execution.
The resume processes described in "Failure scenarios" can be applied, but application should make sure it owns the transactions.
For example to resume pending jobs, query should be:

```
foo:PRIMARY> db.transactions.find({application: "A1", state: "pending"})
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4d7be8af2c10315c0847fc85"), "application" : "A1", "destination" : "B", "source" :
"A", "state" : "pending", "value" : 150 }
```

Proper two-phase commit

This implementation tries to be simple on purpose, it assumes that:

- an account operation can always be rolled back
- the account balance can go negative

A proper real world implementation would probably differ:

- accounts have both a current balance, pending credits, pending debits.
- during step 2, application makes sure accounts has sufficient funds for transaction, modifies credits/debits and adds transaction as pending, all in one update.
- during step 4, application actually applies the transaction on balance, modifies credits/debits and removes transaction from pending, all in one update.

Additional notes:

In the context of important transactions, you will probably want to use:

- reasonable "getLastError" to check that operations are actually written to the DB (see "getLastError" or "write concern" for your drivers).
- durability so that operations are consistently saved on disk when an operation returns successfully.

Updating Data in Mongo

- Updating a Document in the mongo Shell with `save()`
- Embedding Documents Directly in Documents
- Database References

Updating a Document in the mongo Shell with `save()`

As shown in the previous section, the `save()` method may be used to save a new document to a collection. We can also use `save()` to update an existing document in a collection.

Continuing with the *example* database from the last section, lets add new information to the document {`name:"mongo"`} that already is in the collection.

```
> var mongo = db.things.findOne({name:"mongo"});
> print(tojson(mongo));
{"_id" : "497dab624ee47b3a675d2d9c" , "name" : "mongo"}
> mongo.type = "database";
database
> db.things.save(mongo);
> db.things.findOne({name:"mongo"});
{"_id" : "497dab624ee47b3a675d2d9c" , "name" : "mongo" , "type" : "database"}
>
```

This was a simple example, adding a string valued element to the existing document. When we called `save()`, the method saw that the document already had an "_id" field, so it simply performed an update on the document.

In the next two sections, we'll show how to embed documents within documents (there are actually two different ways), as well as show how to query for documents based on values of embedded documents.

Embedding Documents Directly in Documents

As another example of updating an existing document, lets embed a document within an existing document in the collection. We'll keep working with the original {`name:"mongo"`} document for simplicity.

```
> var mongo = db.things.findOne({name:"mongo"});
> print(tojson(mongo));
{"_id" : "497da93d4ee47b3a675d2d9b" , "name" : "mongo", "type" : "database"}
> mongo.data = { a:1, b:2};
{"a" : 1 , "b" : 2}
> db.things.save(mongo);
> db.things.findOne({name:"mongo"});
{"_id" : "497da93d4ee47b3a675d2d9b" , "name" : "mongo" , "type" : "database", "data" : {"a" : 1 , "b"
: 2}}
>
```

As you can see, we added new data to the mongo document, adding `{a:1, b:2}` under the key "data".

Note that the value of "data" is a document itself - it is embedded in the parent mongo document. With BSON, you may nest and embed documents to any level. You can also query on embedded document fields, as shown here:

```
> db.things.findOne({ "data.a" : 1});
{"_id" : "497da93d4ee47b3a675d2d9b" , "name" : "mongo" , "data" : {"a" : 1 , "b" : 2}}
> db.things.findOne({ "data.a" : 2});
>
```

Note that the second `findOne()` doesn't return anything, because there are no documents that match.

Database References

Alternatively, a document can reference other documents which are not embedded via a *database reference*, which is analogous to a foreign key in a relational database. A database reference (or "DBRef" for short), is a reference implemented according to the Database References. Most drivers support helpers for creating DBRefs. Some also support additional functionality, like dereference helpers and auto-referencing. See specific driver documentation for examples / more information

Lets repeat the above example, but create a document and place in a different collection, say *otherthings*, and embed that as a reference in our favorite "mongo" object under the key "otherdata":

```
// first, save a new doc in the 'otherthings' collection

> var other = { s : "other thing", n : 1};
> db.otherthings.save(other);
> db.otherthings.find();
{"_id" : "497dbcb36b27d59a708e89a4" , "s" : "other thing" , "n" : 1}

// now get our mongo object, and add the 'other' doc as 'otherthings'

> var mongo = db.things.findOne();
> print(tojson(mongo));
{"_id" : "497dab624ee47b3a675d2d9c" , "name" : "mongo" , "type" : "database" , "data" : {"a" : 1 , "b"
: 2}}
> mongo.otherthings = new DBRef( 'otherthings' , other._id );
{"s" : "other thing" , "n" : 1 , "_id" : "497dbcb36b27d59a708e89a4"}
> db.things.save(mongo);
> db.things.findOne().otherthings.fetch();
{"_id" : "497dab624ee47b3a675d2d9c" , "name" : "mongo" , "type" : "database" , "data" : {"a" : 1 , "b"
: 2} , "otherthings" : {"_id" : "497dbcb36b27d59a708e89a4" , "s" : "other thing" , "n" : 1}}

// now, lets modify our 'other' document, save it again, and see that when the dbshell
// gets our mongo object and prints it, if follows the dbref and we have the new value

> other.n = 2;
2
> db.otherthings.save(other);
> db.otherthings.find();
{"_id" : "497dbcb36b27d59a708e89a4" , "s" : "other thing" , "n" : 2}
> db.things.findOne().otherthings.fetch();
{"_id" : "497dab624ee47b3a675d2d9c" , "name" : "mongo" , "type" : "database" , "data" : {"a" : 1 , "b"
: 2} , "otherthings" : {"_id" : "497dbcb36b27d59a708e89a4" , "s" : "other thing" , "n" : 2}}
>
```

MapReduce

Map/reduce in MongoDB is useful for batch processing of data and aggregation operations. It is similar in spirit to using something like Hadoop with all input coming from a collection and output going to a collection. Often, in a situation where you would have used GROUP BY in SQL, map/reduce is the right tool in MongoDB.

> Indexing and standard queries in MongoDB are separate from map/reduce. If you have used CouchDB in the past, note this is a big difference: MongoDB is more like MySQL for basic querying and indexing. See the queries and indexing documentation for those operations.

- Overview
    - Output options
    - Result object
  - Map Function
  - Reduce Function
    - A more technical explanation
  - Finalize Function
- Sharded Environments
- Examples
  - Shell Example 1
  - Shell Example 2
  - More Examples
  - Note on Permanent Collections
- Parallelism
- Presentations
- Troubleshooting
- See Also

Overview

`map/reduce` is invoked via a database command. Typically the database creates a collection to hold output of the operation. `map` and `reduce` functions are written in JavaScript and execute on the server.

Command syntax:

```
db.runCommand(
 { mapreduce : <collection>,
   map : <mapfunction>,
   reduce : <reducefunction>
   [, query : <query filter object>]
   [, sort : <sorts the input objects using this key. Useful for optimization, like sorting by the
emit key for fewer reduces>]
   [, limit : <number of objects to return from collection>]
   [, out : <see output options below>]
   [, keeptemp: <true|false>]
   [, finalize : <finalizefunction>]
   [, scope : <object where fields go into javascript global scope >]
   [, verbose : true]
 }
);
```

* `finalize` - function to apply to all the results when finished

- `keeptemp` - if true, the generated collection is not treated as temporary. Defaults to false. When `out` is specified, the collection is automatically made permanent. (MongoDB <=1.6)
- `scope` - can pass in variables that can be access from map/reduce/finalize. example mr5
- `verbose` - provide statistics on job execution time

Output options

MongoDB v1.7.3 and below: If you do not specify a value for `out`, then the results will be placed into a temporary collection whose name will be given in command's output (see below). Otherwise, you can specify the name of a collection for the `out` option and the results will be placed there.

MongoDB 1.7.4+: the output options have changed. Map-reduce no longer generates temporary collections (thus, `keepTemp` has been removed). Now, you must always supply a value for `out`. The `out` directives are:

- "collectionName" - By default the output will by of type "replace".
- { **replace** : "collectionName" } - the output will be inserted into a collection which replaces any existing collection with the same name.
- { **merge** : "collectionName" } - This option will merge new data into the old output collection. In other words, if the same key exists in both the result set and the old collection, the new key will overwrite the old one.
- { **reduce** : "collectionName" } - If documents exists for a given key in the result set and in the old collection, then a reduce operation (using the specified reduce function) will be performed on the two values and the result will be written to the output collection. If a finalize function was provided, this will be run after the reduce as well.
- { **inline** : 1} - With this option, no collection will be created, and the whole map-reduce operation will happen in RAM. Also, the results of the map-reduce will be returned within the result object. Note that this option is possible only when the result set fits within the 16MB limit of a single document.

For example:

```
db.users.mapReduce(map, reduce, {out: { inline : 1}});
```

Additional options within `out` objects are:

- "db" - the db name to output to.

```
out : {replace : "collectionName", db : "otherDB"}
```

Result object

```
{
  [results : <document_array>,]
  [result : <collection_name> | {db: <db>, collection: <collection_name>},]
  timeMillis : <job_time>,
  counts : {
       input :  <number of objects scanned>,
       emit  : <number of times emit was called>,
       output : <number of items in output collection>
  } ,
  ok : <1_if_ok>
  [, err : <errmsg_if_error>]
}
```

Either the `result` or the `results` field will be present depending on your output type. The `results` element is only present if the inline output option was used. The value of the `results` element is an array of embedded documents containing the results. If you chose any other output type the `result` field will be a string with the name of the collection holding the results, or an embedded document containing the db and collection if you chose to output to another db.

A command helper is available in the MongoDB shell :

```
db.collection.mapReduce(mapfunction,reducefunction[,options]);
```

`map`, `reduce`, and `finalize` functions are written in JavaScript.

Map Function

The `map` function references the variable `this` to inspect the current object under consideration. A map function calls `emit(key,value)` any number of times to feed data to the reducer. In most cases you will emit once per input document, but in some cases such as counting tags, a given document may have one, many, or even zero tags. Each emit is limited to 50% of the maximum document size (e.g. 4MB for 1.6.x and 8MB for 1.8.x).

```
function map(void) -> void
```

Reduce Function

When you run a map/reduce, the `reduce` function will receive an array of emitted values and reduce them to a single value. Because the reduce function might be invoked more than once for the same key, the structure of the object returned by the reduce function must be identical to the structure of the `map` function's emitted value. We can clarify this with a simple example.

Suppose we're iterating over a collection of documents that represent user comments. A sample document might look like this:

```
{ username: "jones",
    likes: 20,
    text: "Hello world!"
  }
```

We want to use map/reduce to count the total number of comments per user and aggregate the total number of "likes" received across all of a user's comments. To do this, we'd first write a `map` function like this one:

```
function() {
    emit( this.username, {count: 1, likes: this.likes} );
  }
```

This essentially says that we'll be grouping by `username` and aggregating using an object with fields for `count` and `likes`.

When map/reduce is actually run, an array of values for each username will be sent to the `reduce` function. That's why the `reduce` function is always written to process an array of values. Here's the appropriate function for this example:

```
function(key, values) {
    var result = {count: 0, likes: 0};

    values.forEach(function(value) {
      result.count += value.count;
      result.likes += value.likes;
    });

    return result;
  }
```

Notice that the result document has the same structure as the documents emitted by the `map` function. This is important because, when the `reduce` function is run against a given key, it's not guaranteed to process every single value for that key (or username). In fact, the `reduce` function may have to run more than once. For example, while processing the comments collection, the `map` function might encounter ten comments from the user "jones." It then sends those comments' data to be reduced, and this results in the following aggregate object:

```
{ count: 10, likes: 247 }
```

Later, the `map` function encounters one more comment document by "jones." When this happens, the values in the extra comment must be reduced against the already existing aggregate value. If the new emitted document looks like this:

```
{ count: 1, likes: 5 }
```

Then the `reduce` function will be invoked in this way:

```
reduce("jones", [ {count: 10, likes: 247}, { count: 1, likes: 5} ] )
```

And the resulting document will be a simple combination (or reduction) of those values:

```
{ count: 11, likes: 252 }
```

So long as you understand that the `reduce` function might be invoked more than once for the same key, it's easy to see why the this function must return a value whose structure matches the `map` function's emitted value.

A more technical explanation

```
function reduce(key, array_of_value) -> value
```

OR

```
function reduce(key_obj, [value_obj, value_obj, ...]) -> value_obj
```

The map/reduce engine may invoke reduce functions iteratively; thus, these functions must be idempotent. That is, the following must hold for your reduce function:

```
for all k,vals : reduce( k, [reduce(k,vals)] ) == reduce(k,vals)
```

This also means the following is true:

```
reduce( k, [A, B] ) == reduce( k, [B, A] )
```

If you need to perform an operation only once, use a finalize function.

> The output of the map function's emit (the second argument) and the value returned by reduce should be the same format to make iterative reduce possible. If not, there will be weird bugs that are hard to debug.

> Currently, the return value from a reduce function cannot be an array (it's typically an object or a number).

Finalize Function

A `finalize` function may be run after reduction. Such a function is optional and is not necessary for many map/reduce cases. The finalize function takes a key and a value, and returns a finalized value.

```
function finalize(key, value) -> final_value
```

Your reduce function may be called multiple times for the same object. Use finalize when something should only be done a single time at the end; for example calculating an average.

Sharded Environments

In sharded environments, data processing of map/reduce operations runs in parallel on all shards.

Examples

Shell Example 1

The following example assumes we have an `events` collection with objects of the form:

```
{ time : <time>, user_id : <userid>, type : <type>, ... }
```

We then use MapReduce to extract all users who have had at least one event of type "sale":

```
> m = function() { emit(this.user_id, 1); }
> r = function(k,vals) { return 1; }
> res = db.events.mapReduce(m, r, { query : {type:'sale'} });
> // or in v1.8+:
> // res = db.events.mapReduce(m, r, { query : {type:'sale'}, out : 'example1' });
> db[res.result].find().limit(2)
{ "_id" : 8321073716060 , "value" : 1 }
{ "_id" : 7921232311289 , "value" : 1 }
```

If we also wanted to output the number of times the user had experienced the event in question, we could modify the reduce function like so:

```
> r = function(k,vals) {
...     var sum=0;
...     for(var i in vals) sum += vals[i];
...     return sum;
... }
```

Note, here, that we cannot simply return `vals.length`, as the reduce may be called multiple times.

Shell Example 2

```
$ ./mongo
> db.things.insert( { _id : 1, tags : ['dog', 'cat'] } );
> db.things.insert( { _id : 2, tags : ['cat'] } );
> db.things.insert( { _id : 3, tags : ['mouse', 'cat', 'dog'] } );
> db.things.insert( { _id : 4, tags : []  } );

> // map function
> m = function(){
...    this.tags.forEach(
...        function(z){
...            emit( z , { count : 1 } );
...        }
...    );
...};

> // reduce function
> r = function( key , values ){
...    var total = 0;
...    for ( var i=0; i<values.length; i++ )
...        total += values[i].count;
...    return { count : total };
...};

> res = res = db.things.mapReduce(m, r, { out : "myoutput" } );
> res = db.things.mapReduce(m,r);
> res
{
 "result" : "myoutput",
 "timeMillis" : 12,
 "counts" : {
  "input" : 4,
  "emit" : 6,
  "output" : 3
 },
 "ok" : 1,
}
> db.myoutput.find()
{"_id" : "cat" , "value" : {"count" : 3}}
{"_id" : "dog" , "value" : {"count" : 2}}
{"_id" : "mouse" , "value" : {"count" : 1}}

> db.myoutput.drop()
```

* gist

More Examples

- example mr1
- Finalize example: example mr2

Note on Permanent Collections

Even when a permanent collection name is specified, a temporary collection name will be used during processing. At map/reduce completion, the temporary collection will be renamed to the permanent name atomically. Thus, one can perform a map/reduce job periodically with the same target collection name without worrying about a temporary state of incomplete data. This is very useful when generating statistical output collections on a regular basis.

Parallelism

As of right now, MapReduce jobs on a single mongod process are single threaded. This is due to a design limitation in current JavaScript engines. We are looking into alternatives to solve this issue, but for now if you want to parallelize your MapReduce jobs, you will need to either use sharding or do the aggregation client-side in your code.

Presentations

Map/reduce, geospatial indexing, and other cool features - Kristina Chodorow at MongoSF (April 2010)

Troubleshooting

- See Troubleshooting MapReduce

See Also

- Aggregation
- Kyle's Map/Reduce basics

Troubleshooting MapReduce

Tips on troubleshooting map/reduce.

Troubleshooting the `map` function

We can troubleshoot the map function in the shell by defining a test `emit` function in the shell and having it print out trace information.

For example suppose we have some data:

```
> db.articles.find()
{ "_id" : 123, "author" : "joe", "text" : "hello", "votes" : [
        {
                "who" : "john",
                "vote" : 1
        },
        {
                "who" : "jane",
                "vote" : 1
        },
        {
                "who" : "vince",
                "vote" : -1
        }
] }
{ "_id" : 127, "author" : "sri", "text" : "It was...", "votes" : [
        { "who" : "jane",
          "vote" : 2
        }
] }
```

And we have written a map function:

```
function map() {
    this.votes.forEach( function(x){emit(x.who,1);} );
}
```

It would be nice to visualize the output of this function. We can do this in the shell by defining a client side debug version of emit():

```
function emit(k, v) {
    print("emit");
    print("  k:" + k + " v:" + tojson(v));
}
```

For example, we could run the emit on a single document from the collection:

```
> x = db.articles.findOne(); // grab an object
> map.apply(x); // call our map function, client side, with x as 'this'
emit
  k:john v:1
emit
  k:jane v:1
emit
  k:vince v:1
```

Additionally we could apply the map on several objects:

```
> for( var c = db.articles.find(); c.hasNext(); ) {
...     var doc = c.next();
...     print("document _id=" + tojson(doc._id));
...     map.apply( doc );
...     print();
... }
document _id=123
emit
  k:john v:1
emit
  k:jane v:1
emit
  k:vince v:1

document _id=127
emit
  k:jane v:1
```

After verifying the emits from map are as expected, we write a reduce function and run the real job:

```
> function reduce(k, vals) {
...    var sum = 0;
...    for (var i in vals) {
...        sum += vals[i];
...    }
...    return sum;
...}
>
> db.articles.mapReduce(map,reduce,"out");
{
        "result" : "out",
        "timeMillis" : 62,
        "counts" : {
                "input" : 2,
                "emit" : 4,
                "output" : 3
        },
        "ok" : 1,
}
>
> db.out.find()
{ "_id" : "jane", "value" : 2 }
{ "_id" : "john", "value" : 1 }
{ "_id" : "vince", "value" : 1 }
```

Troubleshooting the `reduce` function

When troubleshooting the reduce function, problems usually crop up in two places:

1. `emit()` outputting different values than `reduce`
2. `reduce( k, [A, B] ) != reduce( k, [B, A] )`

Fortunately, it is easy to test for both of these cases directly from the shell.

> ⚠ When performing a reduce, there is no guarantee on the order of incoming values.

#1 - Test value format

Run a reduce on a sample key / value from `emit`. Wrap the value in an array construct. The output of the reduce should have the same format at the input. In most cases, it should actually *be* the same.

```
> reduce( { name : 'joe' }, [ { votes : 1 } ] )
{ votes : 1 }
```

The same can also be tested with two values. The format should still be the same.

```
> reduce( { name : 'joe' }, [ { votes : 1 }, { votes : 3 } ] )
{ votes : 4 }
```

#2 - Test Commutativity / Idempotence

Again, two simple tests that should work.

Order of the objects should not matter:

```
> reduce( { name : 'joe' }, [ { votes : 1 }, { votes : 3 } ] )
{ votes : 4 }
> reduce( { name : 'joe' }, [ { votes : 3 }, { votes : 1 } ] )
{ votes : 4 }
```

Reduce output can be re-reduced:

```
> reduce( { name : 'joe' }, [
    { votes : 1 },
    reduce ( { name : 'joe' }, [ { votes : 3 } ] )
  ] )
{ votes : 4 }
```

Data Processing Manual

DRAFT - TO BE COMPLETED.

This guide provides instructions for using MongoDB batch data processing oriented features including map/reduce.

By "data processing", we generally mean operations performed on large sets of data, rather than small interactive operations.

Import

One can always write a program to load data of course, but the mongoimport utility also works for some situations. mongoimport supports importing from json, csv, and tsv formats.

A common usage pattern would be to use mongoimport to load data in a relatively raw format and then use a server-side script (db.eval() or map/reduce) to reduce the data to a more clean format.

See Also

- Import/Export Tools
- Server-Side Code Execution
- Map/Reduce

mongo - The Interactive Shell

- More Information
- Presentations

The MongoDB distribution includes `bin/mongo`, the MongoDB interactive shell. This utility is a JavaScript shell that allows you to issue commands to MongoDB from the command line. (*it is basically an extended SpiderMonkey shell*)

The shell is useful for:

- inspecting a database's contents
- testing queries
- creating indices
- maintenance scripts
- other administrative functions

When you see sample code in this wiki and it looks like JavaScript, assume it is a shell example. See the driver syntax table for a chart that can be used to convert those examples to any language.

More Information

- Shell Overview
- Shell Scripts
- Shell Reference
- Shell APIDocs

Presentations

- Hacking the Shell - MongoSF (May 2011)
- CRUD and the JavaScript Shell - MongoSF (April 2010)

Scripting the shell

The MongoDB shell is not just an interactive shell, it can also be scripted using JS files. In addition to specifying a Javascript file (*.js) you can also use `--eval` with a snippet of JS.

Using the shell this way allows for tasks to be performed without the need for any additional drivers or language support; it can be used in cron, or automated administrative tasks. Please be aware there are data format issues in javascript so you should be careful how much you do in Javascript.

Common uses for the scripted shell includes:

- backups
- scheduled Map-Reduce commands
- offline reports
- administration

Running a Script

```
./mongo server:27017/dbname--quiet my_commands.js
```

The syntax stems from the interactive shell. This command will execute the `my_commands.js` as if it had been entered into the shell directly, with some exceptions.

- `./mongo`: command to start the interactive shell, may vary on your shell of choice
- `server:27017/dbname`: basic connection information
- `--quiet`: this is a flag for the `mongo` command. This switch removes some header information that is not typically necessary when building unattended scripts.
- `my_commands.js`: a file containing a series of shell commands to execute

`--eval`

In addition to using a full Javascript file you can also pass in a Javascript fragment:

```
bash-3.2$ ./mongo test --eval "printjson(db.getCollectionNames())"
MongoDB shell version: 1.8.0
connecting to: test
[
        "system.indexes",
        "t1",
        "t2",
        "test.fam",
        "test1",
        "test11",
        "testBinary",
        "testarray"
]
```

Differences between scripted and interactive

Printing

When using the shell interactively, the shell will print returned values and format where possible. This is done as a general convenience from within the shell. However, when building a script, the printing needs to be defined explicitly.

There are two functions commonly used for this:

1. `print()`: works as normal javascript
2. `printjson()`: prints a nicely formatted JSON representation of the given object

***Example**: print JSON for the first 10 objects from a `find`*

```
db.foo.find({x:1}).forEach(printjson)
```

`use dbname`

This command does not work in scripted mode. Instead you will need to explicitly define the database in the connection (`/dbname` in the example above).

Alternately, you can also create a connection within the script:

```
db2 = connect("server:27017/otherdbname")
```

`it`

The iterator command `it` does not work outside of the interactive scripting environment.

getLastError

When running an `update/insert` command from the shell, the shell automatically awaits a reply (*i.e. runs a get last error*).

The same is not true when running from a script file. To wait for the status of an operation (such as a write), run the getLastError function after `update/insert`.

```
db.getLastErrorObj()
// or
db.getLastError()
```

Overview - The MongoDB Interactive Shell

- Running the Shell
  - .mongorc.js

- Operations
  - Help
  - Select Database
  - Querying
  - Inserting
  - Updating
  - Deleting
  - Indexes
  - Open Additional Connections
- Working from the Prompt
  - Line Continuation
  - Key Shortcuts
  - Custom Prompt
- Some Notes on Datatypes in the Shell
  - Numbers
  - Dates
  - BinData
- See Also

Running the Shell

The interactive shell is included in the standard MongoDB distribution. To start the shell, go into the root directory of the distribution and type

```
./bin/mongo
```

It might be useful to add *mongo_distribution_root*/bin to your PATH so you can just type mongo from anywhere.

If you start with no parameters, it connects to a database named "test" running on your local machine on the default port (27017). You can see the db to which you are connecting by typing db:

```
./mongo
type "help" for help
> db
test
```

You can pass mongo an optional argument specifying the address, port and even the database to initially connect to:

./mongo *foo*	connects to the *foo* database on your local machine
./mongo 192.168.13.7/*foo*	connects to the *foo* database on 192.168.13.7
./mongo dbserver.mydomain.com/*foo*	connects to the *foo* database on dbserver.mydomain.com
./mongo 192.168.13.7:9999/*foo*	connects to the *foo* database on 192.168.13.7 on port 9999

.mongorc.js

1.9.1+

When the shell is launched, it checks the user's home directory for a javascript file named .mongorc.js. If this file is found, its contents are interpreted and run by the shell prior to displaying the prompt for the first time. This allows the user to define variables, customize the prompt, or update information that they would like updated every time they launch a shell. This functionality can be overridden with the --norc flag. It should be noted that if a file is specified to be executed by the shell, the rc file will not be run until after that file has completed.

Operations

Help

```
> help                          // top level help
> db.help()                     // help on db-specific methods
> db.mycollection.help()        // help on collection methods
> db.mycollection.find().help() // cursor help
```

Select Database

The following are three basic commands that provide information about the available databases, and collections in a given database.

`show dbs`	displays all the databases on the server you are connected to
`use` *`db_name`*	switches to *`db_name`* on the same server
`show collections`	displays a list of all the collections in the current database

Querying

`mongo` uses a JavaScript API to interact with the database. Because `mongo` is also a complete JavaScript shell, `db` is the variable that is the current database connection.

To query a collection, you simply specify the collection name as a property of the `db` object, and then call the `find()` method. For example:

```
db.foo.find();
```

This will display the first 10 objects from the *`foo`* collection. Typing ***`it`*** after a find() will display the next 10 subsequent objects.

> By setting the shellBatchSize you can change this:
>
> ```
> DBQuery.shellBatchSize = #
> ```

> If the shell does not accept the collection name (for example if it starts with a number, contains a space etc), use
>
> ```
> db['foo'].find()
> ```
>
> instead.

Inserting

In order to insert data into the database, you can simply create a JavaScript object, and call the `save()` method. For example, to save an object { `name: "sara"`} in a collection called *foo*, type:

```
db.foo.save({ name : "sara"});
```

Note that MongoDB will implicitly create any collection that doesn't already exist.

Updating

Let's say you want to change someone's address. You can do this using the following `mongo` commands:

```
person = db.people.findOne( { name : "sara" } );
person.city = "New York";
db.people.save( person );
```

Deleting

`db.`*`foo`*`.drop()`	drop the entire *`foo`* collection
`db.`*`foo`*`.remove()`	remove all objects from the collection
db.*foo*.remove({ name : "sara" })	remove objects from the collection where `name` is `sara`

Indexes

`db.foo.getIndexKeys()`	get all fields that have indexes on them
`db.foo.ensureIndex({ _field_ : 1 })`	create an index on *field* if it doesn't exist

Open Additional Connections

You can use the following commands to open additional connections (normally you don't need to do this, but might from a script):

```
conn = new Mongo(host);
db = conn.getDB(dbname);
db.auth(username,password);
```

where `host` is a string that contains either the name or address of the machine you want to connect to (e.g. "192.168.13.7") or the machine and port (e.g. "192.168.13.7:9999"). Note that host in an optional argument, and can be omitted if you want to connect to the database instance running on your local machine. (e.g. `conn = new Mongo()`)

Alternatively you can use the `connect` helper method:

```
> db = connect("localhost:27020/mytestdb"); // example with a nonstandard port #
```

Working from the Prompt

Line Continuation

If a line contains open '(' or '{' characters, the shell will request more input before evaluating:

```
> function f() {
... x = 1;
... }
>
```

You can press Ctrl-C to escape from "..." mode and terminate line entry.

Key Shortcuts

- up/down array for command history
- in v1.9+ some basic emacs keystrokes work
- ctrl-l to clear the screen
- tab for auto-complete (newer versions only)
- ctrl-c to exit, or to break out of line continuation mode

Custom Prompt

1.9.1+

The shell's prompt can be customized by creating variable 'prompt' in the shell. It can be any arbitrary javascript, including a function that returns a string. This flexibility allows for additional information to be displayed in the prompt. For example, to have a prompt that contains the number of commands issued, type:

```
> cmdCount = 1;
> prompt = function() {
... return (cmdCount++) + "> ";
... }
1> command
2> anothercommand
3>
```

To make the prompt look a bit more familiar, we can make it database@host$:

```
> host = db.serverStatus().host; \\ since host should not change
> prompt = function() {
... return db+"@"+host+"$ ";
... }
admin@mylaptop.local$ use monkeys
switched to db monkeys
monkeys@mylaptop.local$
```

You could use the prompt to do a bit of database monitoring as well:

```
> prompt = function() {
... return "Uptime:"+db.serverStatus().uptime+" Files:"+db.stats().objects+" > ";
... }
Uptime:5897 Files:6 > db.monkeys.save({name : "James"});
Uptime:5948 Files:7 >
```

Some Notes on Datatypes in the Shell

Numbers

By default, the shell treats all numbers as floating-point values. You have the option to work with 64 bit integers by using a class built into the shell called NumberLong() If you have long/integer BSON data from the database you may see something like this:

```
"bytes" : {
   "floatApprox" : 575175
}
```

or something like this for larger numbers (in 1.6+):

```
{..., "bytes" : NumberLong("5284376243087482000") ,...}
```

Note that prior to 1.6 long numbers might be displayed like this:

```
"bytes" : {
   "floatApprox" : 5284376243087482000,
   "top" : 1230364721,
   "bottom" : 4240317554
}
```

In addition, setting/incrementing any number from javascript will (most likely) change the data type to a floating point value.

Here is an example of creating a document with a `long` field:

```
doc = { field: new NumberLong("123212313")}
```

Dates

The Date() function returns a string and a "**new** Date()" will return an object (which is what you should use to store values).

```
> Date()
Sun May 02 2010 19:07:40 GMT-0700 (Pacific Daylight Time)
> new Date()
"Sun May 02 2010 19:07:43 GMT-0700 (Pacific Daylight Time)"
> typeof(new Date())
object
> typeof(Date())
string
//newer (1.7+) versions print this
> new Date()
ISODate("2010-11-29T19:41:46.730Z")
```

BinData

The BSON BinData datatype is represented via class BinData in the shell. Run `help misc` for more information.

```
> new BinData(2, "1234")
BinData(2,"1234")
```

See Also

- MongoDB Shell Reference

dbshell Reference

- Command Line
- Special Command Helpers
- Basic Shell Javascript Operations
- Queries
- Error Checking
- Administrative Command Helpers
- Opening Additional Connections
- Miscellaneous
- Examples

Command Line

`--help`	Show command line options
`--nodb`	Start without a db, you can connect later with `new Mongo()` or `connect()`
`--shell`	After running a .js file from the command line, stay in the shell rather than terminating

Special Command Helpers

Non-javascript convenience macros:

`help`	Show help
`db.help()`	Show help on db methods
`db.`*`myColl`*`.help()`	Show help on collection methods
`show dbs`	Print a list of all databases on this server
`use` *`dbname`*	Set the db variable to represent usage of *dbname* on the server
`show collections`	Print a list of all collections for current database
`show users`	Print a list of users for current database
`show profile`	Print most recent profiling operations that took >= 1ms

Basic Shell Javascript Operations

`db`	The variable that references the current database object / connection. Already defined for you in your instance.
`db.auth(user,pass)`	Authenticate with the database (if running in secure mode).
`coll = db.`*`collection`*	Access a specific *collection* within the database.
`cursor = coll.find();`	Find all objects in the collection. See queries.
`coll.remove(`*`objpattern`*`);`	Remove matching objects from the collection. *`objpattern`* is an object specifying fields to match. E.g.: `coll.remove( { name: "Joe" } );`
`coll.save(`*`object`*`)`	Save an object in the collection, or update if already there. If your object has a presave method, that method will be called before the object is saved to the db (before both updates and inserts)
`coll.insert(object)`	Insert object in collection. No check is made (i.e., no upsert) that the object is not already present in the collection.
`coll.update(...)`	Update an object in a collection. See the Updating documentation; update() has many options.
`coll.ensureIndex( {`*`name`*` : 1 } )`	Creates an index on `tab.`*`name`*. Does nothing if index already exists.
`coll.update(...)`	
`coll.drop()`	Drops the collection `coll`
`db.getSisterDB(name)`	Return a reference to another database using this same connection. This allows for cross database queries. Usage example: `db.getSisterDB('production').getCollectionNames()`

Queries

`coll.find()`	Find all.
`it`	Continue iterating the last cursor returned from find().
`coll.find(`*`criteria`*`);`	Find objects matching *`criteria`* in the collection. E.g.: `coll.find( { name: "Joe" } );`
`coll.findOne(`*`criteria`*`);`	Find and return a single object. Returns null if not found. If you want only one object returned, this is more efficient than just `find()` as `limit(1)` is implied. You may use regular expressions if the element type is a string, number, or date: `coll.find( { name: /joe/i } );`
`coll.find( criteria, fields );`	Get just specific fields from the object. E.g.: `coll.find( {}, {name:true} );`
`coll.find().sort({`*`field`*`:1[,`*`field`*`:1] });`	Return results in the specified order (field ASC). Use -1 for DESC.
`coll.find(`*`criteria`*`).sort( {`*`field`*` : 1 } )`	Return the objects matching *`criteria`*, sorted by *`field`*.
`coll.find( ... ).limit(`*`n`*`)`	Limit result to *n* rows. Highly recommended if you need only a certain number of rows for best performance.
`coll.find( ... ).skip(`*`n`*` )`	Skip *n* results.
`coll.count()`	Returns total number of objects in the collection.
`coll.find( ... ).count()`	Returns the total number of objects that match the query. Note that the number ignores limit and skip; for example if 100 records match but the limit is 10, `count()` will return 100. This will be faster than iterating yourself, but still take time.

More information: see queries.

Error Checking

`db.getLastError()`	Returns error from the last operation.
`db.getPrevError()`	Returns error from previous operations.
`db.resetError()`	Clear error memory.

Administrative Command Helpers

`db.cloneDatabase(fromhost)`	Clone the current database from the other host specified. fromhost database must be in noauth mode.
`db.copyDatabase(fromdb, todb, fromhost)`	Copy fromhost/fromdb to todb on this server. fromhost must be in noauth mode.
`db.repairDatabase()`	Repair and compact the current database. This operation can be very slow on large databases.
`db.addUser(user,pwd)`	Add user to current database.
`db.getCollectionNames()`	get list of all collections.
`db.dropDatabase()`	Drops the current database.

Opening Additional Connections

`db = connect("<host>:<port>/<dbname>")`	Open a new database connection. One may have multiple connections within a single shell, however, automatic getLastError reporting by the shell is done for the 'db' variable only.
`conn = new Mongo("hostname")`	Open a connection to a new server. Use `getDB()` to select a database thereafter.
`db = conn.getDB("dbname")`	Select a specific database for a connection

Miscellaneous

`Object.bsonsize(db.foo.findOne())`	prints the bson size of a db object (mongo version 1.3 and greater)
`db.foo.findOne().bsonsize()`	prints the bson size of a db object (mongo versions predating 1.3)

For a full list of functions, see the shell API.

Examples

The MongoDB source code includes a jstests/ directory with many mongo shell scripts.

Developer FAQ

- What's a "namespace"?
- How do I copy all objects from one database collection to another?
- If you remove an object attribute is it deleted from the store?
- Are null values allowed?
- Does an update fsync to disk immediately?
- How do I do transactions/locking?
- How do I do equivalent of SELECT count * and GROUP BY?
- What are so many "Connection Accepted" messages logged?
- What RAID should I use?
- Can I run on Amazon EBS? Any issues?
- Why are my data files so large?

- Do I Have to Worry About SQL Injection
- How does concurrency work
- SQL to Mongo Mapping Chart
- What is the Compare Order for BSON Types

Also check out Markus Gattol's excellent FAQ on his website.

What's a "namespace"?

MongoDB stores BSON objects in *collections*. The concatenation of the database name and the collection name (with a period in between) is called a *namespace*.

For example, `acme.users` is a namespace, where `acme` is the database name, and `users` is the collection name. Note that periods can occur in collection names, so a name such as `acme.blog.posts` is legal too (in that case `blog.posts` is the collection name.

How do I copy all objects from one database collection to another?

See below. The code below may be ran server-side for high performance with the eval() method.

```
db.myoriginal.find().forEach( function(x){db.mycopy.insert(x)} );
```

If you remove an object attribute is it deleted from the store?

Yes, you remove the attribute and then re-`save()` the object.

Are null values allowed?

For members of an object, yes. You cannot add null to a database collection though as null isn't an object. You can add {}, though.

Does an update fsync to disk immediately?

No, writes to disk are lazy by default. A write may hit disk a couple of seconds later. For example, if the database receives a thousand increments to an object within one second, it will only be flushed to disk once. (Note fsync options are available though both at the command line and via getLastError_old.)

How do I do transactions/locking?

MongoDB does not use traditional locking or complex transactions with rollback, as it is designed to be lightweight and fast and predictable in its performance. It can be thought of as analogous to the MySQL MyISAM autocommit model. By keeping transaction support extremely simple, performance is enhanced, especially in a system that may run across many servers.

The system provides alternative models for atomically making updates that are sufficient for many common use cases. See the wiki page Atomics Operations for detailed information.

How do I do equivalent of SELECT count * and GROUP BY?

See aggregation.

What are so many "Connection Accepted" messages logged?

If you see a tremendous number of connection accepted messages in the mongod log, that means clients are repeatedly connecting and disconnected. This works, but is inefficient.

With CGI this is normal. If you find the speed acceptable for your purposes, run mongod with --quiet to suppress these messages in the log. If you need better performance, switch to a solution where connections are pooled -- such as an Apache module.

What RAID should I use?

We recommend not using RAID-5, but rather, RAID-10 or the like. Both will work of course.

Can I run on Amazon EBS? Any issues?

Works fine in our experience; more information here.

Why are my data files so large?

MongoDB does aggressive preallocation of reserved space to avoid file system fragmentation. This is configurable. More info here.

Do I Have to Worry About SQL Injection

Generally, with MongoDB we are not building queries from strings, so traditional SQL Injection attacks are not a problem. More details and some nuances are covered below.

MongoDB queries are represented as BSON objects. Typically the programming language gives a convenient way to build these objects that is injection free. For example in C++ one would write:

```
BSONObj my_query = BSON( "name" << a_name );
auto_ptr<DBClientCursor> cursor = c.query("tutorial.persons", my_query);
```

my_query then will have a value such as { name : "Joe" }. If my_query contained special characters such as ", :, {, etc., nothing bad happens, they are just part of the string.

Javascript

Some care is appropriate when using server-side Javascript. For example when using the $where statement in a query, do not concatenate user supplied data to build Javascript code; this would be analogous to a SQL injection vulnerability. Fortunately, most queries in MongoDB can be expressed without Javascript. Also, we can mix the two modes. It's a good idea to make all the user-supplied fields go straight to a BSON field, and have your Javascript code be static and passed in the $where field.

If you need to pass user-supplied values into a $where clause, a good approach is to escape them using the CodeWScope mechanism. By setting the user values as variables in the scope document you will avoid the need to have them eval'ed on the server-side.

If you need to use db.eval() with user supplied values, you can either use a CodeWScope or you can supply extra arguments to your function. Something like: db.eval(function(userVal){...}, user_value); This will ensure that user_value gets sent as data rather than code.

User-Generated Keys

Sometimes it is useful to build a BSON object where the key is user-provided. In these situations, keys will need to have substitutions for the reserved $ and . characters. If you are unsure what characters to use, the Unicode full width equivalents aren't a bad choice: U+FF04 () and U+FFOE ()

For example:

```
BSONObj my_object = BSON( a_key << a_name );
```

The user may have supplied a $ value within a_key. my_object could be { $where : "things" }. Here we can look at a few cases:

- Inserting. Inserting into the the database will do no harm. We are not executing this object as a query, we are inserting the data in the database.
  Note: properly written MongoDB client drivers check for reserved characters in keys on inserts.
- Update. update(query, obj) allows $ operators in the obj field. $where is not supported in update. Some operators are possible that manipulate the single document only -- thus, the keys should be escaped as mentioned above if reserved characters are possible.
- Querying. Generally this is not a problem as for { x : user_obj }, dollar signs are not top level and have no effect. In theory one might let the user build a query completely themself and provide it to the database. In that case checking for $ characters in keynames is important. That however would be a highly unusual case.

One way to handle user-generated keys is to always put them in sub-objects. Then they are never at top level (where $operators live) anyway.

See Also

- Driver-specific security concerns:
- Do I have to worry about SQL injection? (mailing list thread)

How does concurrency work

- mongos
- mongod
  - Viewing Operations in Progress
  - Read/Write Lock
  - Operations
  - On Javascript
  - Multicore
  - Future

mongos

For sharded environments, mongos can perform any number of operations concurrently. This results in downstream operations to mongod instances. Execution of operations at each mongod is independent; that is, one mongod does not block another.

mongod

The original mongod architecture is concurrency friendly; however, some work with respect to granular locking and latching is not yet done.

Viewing Operations in Progress

Use `db.currentOp()` to view operations in progress, and `db.killOp()` to terminate an operation.

You can also see operations in progress from the adminstrative Http Interface.

Read/Write Lock

mongod uses a read/write lock for many operations. Any number of concurrent read operations are allowed, but typically only one write operation (although some write operations *yield* and in the future more concurrency will be added). The write lock acquisition is *greedy*: a pending write lock acquisition will prevent further read lock acquisitions until fulfilled.

The read/write lock is currently global, but collection-level locking is coming soon.

Operations

Operation	Lock type	Notes
OP_QUERY (query)	Acquires read lock	see also: SERVER-517
OP_GETMORE (get more from cursor)	Acquires read lock	
OP_INSERT (insert)	Acquires write lock	Inserts are normally fast and short-lived operations
OP_DELETE (remove)	Acquires write lock	Yields while running to allow other operations to interleave.
OP_UPDATE (update)	Acquires write lock	Will yield for interleave (1.5.2+)
map/reduce	At times locked	Allows substantial concurrent operation.
create index	See notes	Batch build acquires write lock. But a background build option is available.
db.eval()	Acquires write lock	
getLastError command	Non-blocking	
ismaster command	Non-blocking	
serverStatus command	Non-blocking	

On Javascript

Only one thread in the mongod process executes Javascript at a time (other database operations are often possible concurrent with this).

Multicore

With read operations, it is easy for mongod 1.3+ to saturate all cores. However, because of the read/write lock above, write operations will not yet fully utilize all cores. This will be improved in the future.

Future

In versions 2.0 and 2.2 there will a great deal of work done on increasing concurrency. Please check this page or jira for more information.

SQL to Mongo Mapping Chart

This page not done. Please help us finish it!

MySQL executable	Oracle executable	Mongo executable
`mysqld`	`oracle`	`mongod`
`mysql`	`sqlplus`	`mongo`

MySQL term	Mongo term
database	database
table	collection
index	index
row	BSON document
column	BSON field
join	embedding and linking

MongoDB queries are expressed as JSON (BSON) objects. The following chart shows examples as both SQL and in Mongo Query Language syntax.

The query expression in MongoDB (and other things, such as index key patterns) is represented as JSON (BSON). However, the actual verb (e.g. "find") is done in one's regular programming language; thus the exact forms of these verbs vary by language. The examples below are Javascript and can be executed from the mongo shell.

SQL Statement	Mongo Query Language Statement
`CREATE TABLE USERS (a Number, b Number)`	implicit; can also be done explicitly with `db.createCollection("mycoll")`
`INSERT INTO USERS VALUES(3,5)`	`db.users.insert({a:3,b:5})`
`SELECT a,b FROM users`	`db.users.find({}, {a:1,b:1})`
`SELECT * FROM users`	`db.users.find()`
`SELECT * FROM users WHERE age=33`	`db.users.find({age:33})`
`SELECT a,b FROM users WHERE age=33`	`db.users.find({age:33}, {a:1,b:1})`
`SELECT * FROM users WHERE age=33 ORDER BY name`	`db.users.find({age:33}).sort({name:1})`
`SELECT * FROM users WHERE age>33`	`db.users.find({'age':{$gt:33}})`

SELECT * FROM users WHERE age<33	db.users.find({'age':{$lt:33}})
SELECT * FROM users WHERE name LIKE "%Joe%"	db.users.find({name:/Joe/})
SELECT * FROM users WHERE name LIKE "Joe%"	db.users.find({name:/^Joe/})
SELECT * FROM users WHERE age>33 AND age<=40	db.users.find({'age':{$gt:33,$lte:40}})
SELECT * FROM users ORDER BY name DESC	db.users.find().sort({name:-1})
SELECT * FROM users WHERE a=1 and b='q'	db.users.find({a:1,b:'q'})
SELECT * FROM users LIMIT 10 SKIP 20	db.users.find().limit(10).skip(20)
SELECT * FROM users WHERE a=1 or b=2	db.users.find({ $or : [{ a : 1 } , { b : 2 }] })
SELECT * FROM users LIMIT 1	db.users.findOne()
SELECT DISTINCT last_name FROM users	db.users.distinct('last_name')
SELECT COUNT(*y) FROM users	db.users.count()
SELECT COUNT(*y) FROM users where AGE > 30	db.users.find({age: {'$gt': 30}}).count()

`SELECT COUNT(AGE) from users`	`db.users.find({age: {'$exists': true }}).count()`
`CREATE INDEX myindexname ON users(name)`	`db.users.ensureIndex({name:1})`
`CREATE INDEX myindexname ON users(name,ts DESC)`	`db.users.ensureIndex({name:1,ts:-1})`
`EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM users WHERE z=3`	`db.users.find({z:3}).explain()`
`UPDATE users SET a=1 WHERE b='q'`	`db.users.update({b:'q'}, {$set:{a:1}}, false, true)`
`UPDATE users SET a=a+2 WHERE b='q'`	`db.users.update({b:'q'}, {$inc:{a:2}}, false, true)`
`DELETE FROM users WHERE z="abc"`	`db.users.remove({z:'abc'});`

See Also

- The MongoDB Manual Pages are a good place to learn more.
- SQL to Shell to C++

SQL to Shell to C++

MongoDB queries are expressed as JSON (BSON) objects. This quick reference chart shows examples as SQL, Mongo shell syntax, and Mongo C++ driver syntax.

A query expression in MongoDB (and other things, such as an index key pattern) is represented as BSON. In C++ you can use BSONObjBuilder (aka bson::bob) to build BSON objects, or the BSON() macro. The examples below assume a connection c already established:

```
using namespace bson;
DBClientConnection c;
c.connect("somehost");
```

Several of the C++ driver methods throw mongo::DBException, so you will want a try/catch statement as some level in your program.

SQL	Mongo Shell	C++ Driver

`INSERT INTO USERS VALUES(1,1)`	`db.users.insert({a:1,b:1})`	`// GENOID is optional.`
		`if not done by client,`
		`server will add an _id`
		`c.insert("mydb.users",`
		`BSON(GENOID<<"a"<<1<<`
		`"b"<<1));`
		`// then optionally:`
		`string err =`
		`c.getLastError();`

`SELECT a,b FROM users`	`db.users.find({}, {a:1,b:1})`	`auto_ptr<DBClientCursor>`
		`cursor = c.query(`
		`"mydb.users", Query(),`
		`0, 0, BSON("a"<<1<<"b"`
		`<<1));`

`SELECT * FROM users`	`db.users.find()`	`auto_ptr<DBClientCursor>`
		`cursor = c.query(`
		`"mydb.users", Query());`

`SELECT * FROM users WHERE age=33`	`db.users.find({age:33})`	`auto_ptr<DBClientCursor>`
		`cursor = c.query(`
		`"mydb.users", QUERY(`
		`"age"<<33))`
		`// or:`
		`auto_ptr<DBClientCursor>`
		`cursor = c.query(`
		`"mydb.users", BSON(`
		`"age"<<33))`

`SELECT * FROM users WHERE age=33 ORDER BY name`	`db.users.find({age:33}).sort({name:1})`	`auto_ptr<DBClientCursor>`
		`cursor = c.query(`
		`"mydb.users", QUERY(`
		`"age"<<33).sort("name"`
		`));`

`SELECT * FROM users WHERE age>33 AND age<=40`	`db.users.find({'age':{$gt:33},{$lte:40}})`	`auto_ptr<DBClientCursor>`
		`cursor = c.query(`
		`"mydb.users", QUERY(`
		`"age"`
		`<<GT<<33<<LTE<<40));`

CREATE INDEX myindexname ON users(name)	db.users.ensureIndex({name:1})	c.ensureIndex("mydb.users", BSON("name"<<1));
SELECT * FROM users LIMIT 10 SKIP 20	db.users.find().limit(10).skip(20)	auto_ptr<DBClientCursor> cursor = c.query("mydb.users", Query(), 10, 20);
SELECT * FROM users LIMIT 1	db.users.findOne()	bo obj = c.findOne("mydb.users", Query());
SELECT DISTINCT last_name FROM users	db.users.distinct('last_name')	// no helper for distinct in c++ driver, so send command manually bo cmdResult; bool ok = c.runCommand("mydb", BSON("distinct" <<"users"<<key<< "last_name"), cmdResult); list<bo> results; cmdResult["values"].Obj().Vals(results);
SELECT COUNT(*y) FROM users where AGE > 30	db.users.find({age: {'$gt': 30}}).count()	unsigned long long n = c.count("mydb.users", QUERY("age:"<<GT<<30));
UPDATE users SET a=a+2 WHERE b='q'	db.users.update({b:'q'}, {$inc:{a:2}}, false, true)	c.update("mydb.users", QUERY("b"<<"q"), BSON("$inc"<<BSON("a"<<2)), false, true); // then optionally: string err = c.getLastError(); bool ok = err.empty();

`DELETE FROM users WHERE z="abc"`	`db.users.remove({z:'abc'});`	`c.remove("mydb.users", QUERY("z"<<"abc"));`
		`// then optionally:`
		`string err = c.getLastError();`

See Also

- Several more examples (in shell syntax) are on the SQL to Mongo Mapping Chart page.
- C++ Language Center

What is the Compare Order for BSON Types

MongoDB allows objects in the same collection which have values which may differ in type. When comparing values from different types, a convention is utilized as to which value is less than the other. This (somewhat arbitary but well defined) ordering is listed below.

Note that some types are treated as equivalent for comparison purposes -- specifically numeric types which undergo conversion before comparison.

See also the BSON specification.

- Null
- Numbers (ints, longs, doubles)
- Symbol, String
- Object
- Array
- BinData
- ObjectID
- Boolean
- Date, Timestamp
- Regular Expression

Example (using the mongo shell):

```
> t = db.mycoll;
> t.insert({x:3});
> t.insert( {x : 2.9} );
> t.insert( {x : new Date()} );
> t.insert( {x : true } )
> t.find().sort({x:1})
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4b03155dce8de6586fb002c7"), "x" : 2.9 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4b03154cce8de6586fb002c6"), "x" : 3 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4b031566ce8de6586fb002c9"), "x" : true }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4b031563ce8de6586fb002c8"), "x" : "Tue Nov 17 2009 16:28:03 GMT-0500 (EST)" }
```

MinKey and MaxKey

In addition to the above types MongoDB internally uses a special type for MinKey and MaxKey which are less than, and greater than all other possible BSON element values, respectively.

From the mongo Javascript Shell

For example we can continue our example from above adding two objects which have x key values of MinKey and MaxKey respectively:

```
> t.insert( { x : MaxKey } )
> t.insert( { x : MinKey } )
> t.find().sort({x:1})
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4b04094b7c65b846e2090112"), "x" : { $minKey : 1 } }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4b03155dce8de6586fb002c7"), "x" : 2.9 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4b03154cce8de6586fb002c6"), "x" : 3 }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4b031566ce8de6586fb002c9"), "x" : true }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4b031563ce8de6586fb002c8"), "x" : "Tue Nov 17 2009 16:28:03 GMT-0500 (EST)" }
{ "_id" : ObjectId("4b0409487c65b846e2090111"), "x" : { $maxKey : 1 } }
```

From C++

See also the Tailable Cursors page for an example of using MinKey from C++. See also minKey and maxKey definitions in jsobj.h.

Admin Zone

- Components
- Journaling
- Production Notes
- Replication
- Sharding
- Hosting Center
- Monitoring and Diagnostics
- Backups
- Durability and Repair
- Security and Authentication
- Admin UIs
- Starting and Stopping Mongo
- GridFS Tools
- DBA Operations from the Shell
- Architecture and Components
- Windows
- Troubleshooting

Community Admin-Related Articles

- boxedice.com - notes from a production deployment
- Survey of Admin UIs for MongoDB
- MongoDB Nagios Check
- MongoDB Cacti Graphs

See Also

- Commands in Developer Zone

Components

This is a list of the components (processes) in the MongoDB server package.

- mongod - The core database process
- mongos - Sharding controller
- mongo - The database shell (uses interactive javascript)
- Import Export Tools
  - mongoimport
  - mongoexport
  - mongodump
  - mongorestore
  - bsondump
- mongofiles - the GridFS utility

- mongostat

Journaling

- Enabling
- Disabling
- Journal Files
- Recovery
- The journal Subdirectory
- Group Commits
- Commit Acknowledgement
- FAQ
  - If I am using replication, can some members use `--journal` and others not?
  - How's performance?
  - Can I use the journaling feature to perform safe hot backups?
  - 32 bit nuances?
  - Why isn't --journal the default?
  - When did the --journal option change from --dur?
  - Will the journal replay have problems if entries are incomplete (like the failure happened in the middle of one)?
  - How many times is data written to disk when replication and journaling are both on?
- See Also

MongoDB v1.7.5+ supports write-ahead journaling of operations to facilitate fast crash recovery and durability in the storage engine.

Enabling

To enable, use the mongod `--journal` command line option.

```
# mongod --journal
```

MongoDB may determine that it is faster to preallocate journal files than to create them as needed. If MongoDB decides to preallocate the files, it will not start listening on port 27017 until this process completes, which can take a few minutes. This means that your applications and the shell will not be able to connect to the database immediately on initial startup. Check the logs to see if MongoDB is busy preallocating. It will print the standard "waiting for connections on port *whatever*" when it has finished.

Disabling

If journaling has been on, and you would like to run without it, simply (1) shut down `mongod` cleanly; (2) restart without the `--journal` option.

Journal Files

With `--journal` enabled, journal files will be created in a `journal/` subdirectory under your chosen db path. These files are write-ahead redo logs. In addition, a last sequence number file, `journal/lsn`, will be created. A clean shutdown removes all files under `journal/`.

The Mongo data files (*database*.ns, *database*.0, *database*.1, ...) have the same format as in previous releases. Thus, the upgrade process is seamless, and a rollback would be seamless too. (If you roll back to a pre v1.7.5 release, try to shut down cleanly first. Regardless, remove the journal/ directory before starting the pre v1.7.5 version of mongod.)

Recovery

On a restart after a crash, journal files in `journal/` will be replayed before the server goes online. This will be indicated in the log output. You do not need to run a repair.

The journal Subdirectory

You may wish, before starting `mongod` to symlink the `journal/` directory to a dedicated hard drive to speed the frequent (fsynced) sequential writes which occur to the current journal file.

Group Commits

MongoDB performs *group commits* (batch commits) when using the `--journal` option. This means that a series of operations over many milliseconds are committed all at once. This is done to achieve high performance.

Group commits are performed approximately every 100ms in v1.8.0. In future versions, the commit frequency will be more frequent.

Commit Acknowledgement

You can wait for group commit acknowledgement with the getLastError command. When running with `--journal`, the `fsync:true` option returns after the data is physically written to the journal (rather than actually fsync'ing all the data files). Note that the group commit interval (see above) is considerable: you may prefer to call getLastError without fsync, or with a `w:` parameter instead with replication. In releases after 1.8.0 the delay for commit acknowledgement will be shorter.

FAQ

If I am using replication, can some members use `--journal` and others not?

Yes.

How's performance?

Read performance should be the same. Write performance should be very good but there is some overhead over the non-durable version as the journal files must be written. If you find a case where there is a large difference in performance between running with and without `--journal`, please let us know so we can tune it. Additionally, some performancing tuning enhancements in this area are already queued for v1.8.1+.

Can I use the journaling feature to perform safe hot backups?

Not yet, as the journal files are rotated out (unlinked) after data is safely in the data files.

32 bit nuances?

There is extra memory mapped file activity with the `--journal` option. This will further constrain the limited db size of 32 bit builds. Thus, for now it is recommended to use `--journal` with 64 bit systems.

Why isn't --journal the default?

Mainly, just to be conservative for now, as it is new code. It will be the default at some point in the future.

When did the --journal option change from --dur?

In 1.8 the option was renamed to `--journal`, but the old name is still accepted for backwards compatibility; please change to `--journal` if you are using the old option.

Will the journal replay have problems if entries are incomplete (like the failure happened in the middle of one)?

Each journal (group) write is consistent and won't be replayed during recovery unless it is complete.

How many times is data written to disk when replication and journaling are both on?

In v1.8, for an insert, four times. The object is written to the main collection, and also the oplog collection (so that is twice). Both of those writes are journaled as a single mini-transaction in the journal file (the files in /data/db/journal). Thus 4 times total.

There is an open item in to reduce this by having the journal be compressed. This will reduce from 4x to probably ~2.5x.

The above applies to collection data and inserts which is the worst case scenario. Index updates are written to the index and the journal, but not the oplog, so they should be 2X today not 4X. Likewise updates with things like $set, $addToSet, $inc, etc. are compactly logged all around so those are generally small.

See Also

- Journaling Administration Notes
- getLastError command for controlling writes per operation
- Durability Internals
- Presentations
  - Recorded Webinar on Journaling (April 2011)
  - Journaling and the Storage Engine (May 2011)

Journaling Administration Notes

- Journal Files (*e.g.* journal/j._0)
- Prealloc Files (*e.g.* journal/prealloc.0)
- serverStatus command
- journalLatencyTest Command

Journal Files (e.g. journal/j._0)

Journal files are append-only and are written to the `journal/` directory under the dbpath directory (which is `/data/db/` by default).

Journal files are named `j._0`, `j._1`, etc. When a journal file reached 1GB in size, a new file is created. Old files which are no longer needed are rotated out (automatically deleted). Unless your write bytes/second rate is extremely high, you should have only two or three journal files.

Note: in more recent versions, the journal files are smaller when using the `--smallfiles` command line option.

Prealloc Files (e.g. journal/prealloc.0)

`mongod` will create `prealloc` files in the journal directory under some circumstances to minimize journal write latency. On some filesystems, appending to a file and making it larger can be slower than writing to a file of a predefined size. `mongod` checks this at startup and if it finds this to be the case will use preallocated journal files. If found to be helpful, a small pool of prealloc files will be created in the journal directory before startup begins. This is a one time initiation and does not occur with future invocations. Approximately 3GB of files will be preallocated (and truly prewritten, not sparse allocated) - thus in this situation, expect roughly a 3 minute delay on the first startup to preallocate these files.

If you don't want to wait three minutes on startup, you can preallocate the files using another instance of `mongod` and then move them to your normal dbpath before starting with `--journal`.

For example, if you had an instance of `mongod` running on port 27017 with a dbpath of */data/db* (the defaults), you could preallocate journal files for it with:

```
$ mkdir ~/tmpDbpath
$ mongod --port 10000 --dbpath ~/tmpDbpath --journal
# startup messages
# .
# .
# .
# wait for prealloc to finish
Thu Mar 17 10:02:52 [initandlisten] preallocating a journal file ~/tmpDbpath/journal/prealloc.0
Thu Mar 17 10:03:03 [initandlisten] preallocating a journal file ~/tmpDbpath/journal/prealloc.1
Thu Mar 17 10:03:14 [initandlisten] preallocating a journal file ~/tmpDbpath/journal/prealloc.2
Thu Mar 17 10:03:25 [initandlisten] flushing directory ~/tmpDbpath/journal
Thu Mar 17 10:03:25 [initandlisten] flushing directory ~/tmpDbpath/journal
Thu Mar 17 10:03:25 [initandlisten] waiting for connections on port 10000
Thu Mar 17 10:03:25 [websvr] web admin interface listening on port 11000
# then Ctrl-C to kill this instance
^C
$ mv ~/tmpDbpath/journal /data/db/
$ # restart mongod on port 27017 with --journal
```

prealloc files do not contain data, but are rather simply preallocated files that are ready to use that are truly preallocated by the file system (i.e. they are not "sparse"). It is thus safe to remove them, but if you restart mongod with journaling, it will create them again if they are missing.

serverStatus command

The serverStatus command now includes some statistics regarding journaling.

journalLatencyTest Command

You can use the `journalLatencyTest` command to measure how long it takes on your volume to write to the disk (including fsyncing the data) in an append-only fashion.

```
> use admin
> db.runCommand("journalLatencyTest")
```

You can run this command on an idle system to get a baseline sync time for journaling. In addition, it is safe to run this command on a busy system to see the sync time on a busy system (which may be higher if the journal directory is on the same volume as the data files).

The exact journal latency is not very important in 1.8.0, as in this release the group commit latency is a large number (100ms). However in future releases it will be much lower, and the limiting factor will be this time, which is the time to physically do a new write to the disk.

This command is also a good way to check if your disk drive is buffering writes in its local cache. If the number is very low (e.g., less than 2ms) and the drive is non-ssd, the drive is probably buffering writes. In that case, you will want to enable cache write-through for the device in your operating system. (Unless you have a disk controller card with battery backed ram, then this is a good thing.)

Production Notes

- Backups
- TCP Port Numbers
- Linux
  - General Unix Notes
  - Linux File Systems
    - Remote mounts
  - Linux Kernel Versions
  - Checking Disk IO
  - Checking Network IO
- Solid State Disks (SSDs)
- Tips

Backups

- Import Export Tools
- Backups Doc Page

TCP Port Numbers

Default TCP port numbers for MongoDB processes:

- Standalone *mongod* : 27017
- *mongos* : 27017
- shard server (`mongod --shardsvr`) : 27018
- config server (`mongod --configsvr`) : 27019
- web stats page for *mongod* : add 1000 to port number (28017, by default)

Linux

General Unix Notes

- Turn off *atime* for the data volume
- Set file descriptor limit to 4k+ (see *etc/limits* and *ulimit*)
- **Do not** use large VM pages with Linux (more info)
- Use `dmesg` to see if box is behaving strangely

Linux File Systems

MongoDB uses large files for storing data, and preallocates these. These filesystems seem to work well:

- ext4
- xfs

In addition to the file systems above you might also want to (explicitly) disable file/directory modification times by using these mount options:

- noatime (also enables nodiratime)

We have found **`ext3`** to be very slow in allocating files (or removing them) as well as access within large files is also poor.

Remote mounts

We have found that some versions of NFS perform very poorly, or simply don't work, and do not suggest using NFS.

Linux Kernel Versions

Some have reported skepticism on behavior of LInux 2.6.33-31 and 2.6.32 kernel. 2.6.36 is given a thumbs up by the community.

Checking Disk IO

```
iostat -xm 2
```

Checking Network IO

- Munin
- ethtool eth0 - check network port speed
- bwm-ng

- iptraf

Solid State Disks (SSDs)

Multiple MongoDB users have reported good success running MongoDB databases on solid state drives.

A paper in ACM Transactions on Storage (Sep2010) listed the following results for measured 4KB peak random direct IO for some popular devices:

Device	Read IOPS	Write IOPS
Intel X25-E	33,400	3,120
FusionIO ioDrive	98,800	75,100

Intel's larger drives seem to have higher write IOPS than the smaller ones (up to 23,000 claimed for the 320 series). More info here.

Real-world results should be lower, but the numbers are still impressive.

Note: On some devices, "smartctl -A" will show you the Media_Wearout_Indicator.

- Blog post on SSD lifespan

Tips

- Handling Halted Replication
- Starting and Stopping the Database

iostat

On Linux, use the iostat command to check if disk I/O is a bottleneck for your database.

We generally find the form:

```
iostat -xm 2
```

to work well. (Use a number of seconds with iostat, otherwise it will display stats since server boot, which is not very useful.)

Use the `mount` command to see what device your `/data/db` directory resides on.

Fields

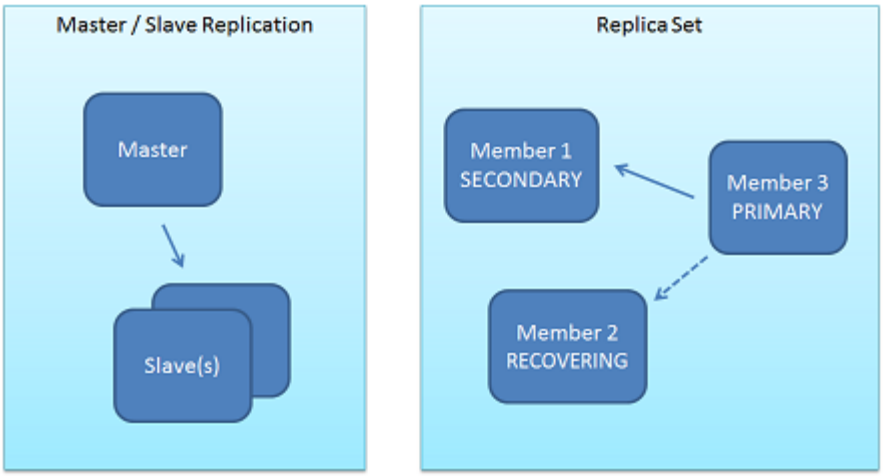
- %util - this is the most useful field for a quick check, it indicates what percent of the time the device/drive is in use. If the number if near 100%, your server is disk I/O bound.
- r/s - reads per second.
- w/s - writes per second
- rMB/s - read megabytes per second
- wMB/s - write megabytes per second
- avgrq-sz - average request size. The smaller this number, the more random your IO operations are

Replication

MongoDB supports asynchronous replication of data between servers for failover and redundancy. Only one server (in the set/shard) is active for writes (the primary, or master) at a given time. With a single active master at any point in time, strong consistency semantics are available. One can optionally send read operations to the slaves/secondaries when eventual consistency semantics are acceptable.

Two forms of replication are available. Replica sets are preferred.

- Master-Slave Replication
- Replica Sets (recommended)



Which should I use?

- using version < v1.6 : Master Slave
- using version >= v1.6 : Replica Sets
- need automatic fail-over and recovery : Replica Sets
- using Sharding : Replica Sets

Verifying propagation of writes with `getlasterror`

A client can block until a write operation has been replicated to N servers -- read more here .

Presentations

- Replication Video
- Replication Slides Only

About the local database

`mongod` reserves the database `local` for special functionality. It is special in that its contents are never replicated.

When authentication is used, authenticating against the `local` database is equivalent to authenticating against the `admin` database: it gives you permissions across all databases, not just `local`.

Replica Sets

Replica sets use the following collections in `local`:

- `local.system.replset` the replica set's configuration object is stored here. (View via the `rs.conf()` helper in the shell – or query it directly.)
- `local.oplog.rs` is a capped collection that is the oplog. You can use the `--oplogSize` command line parameter to set the size of this collection.
- `local.replset.minvalid` sometimes contains an object used internally by replica sets to track sync status

Master/Slave Replication

- Master
  - `local.oplog.$main` the "oplog"
  - `local.slaves`
- Slave
  - `local.sources`
- Other
  - `local.me`
  - `local.pair.*` (replica pairs, which are deprecated)

Verifying Propagation of Writes with getLastError

v1.5+.

A client can block until a write operation has been replicated to N servers. Use the getlasterror command with the parameter `w`:

```
db.runCommand( { getlasterror : 1 , w : 2 } )
```

If `w` is not set, or equals 1, the command returns immediately, implying the data is on 1 server (itself). If w is 2, then the data is on the current server and 1 other server (a secondary).

There is an optional `wtimeout` parameter that allows you to timeout after a certain number of milliseconds and perhaps return an error or warning to a user. For example, the following will wait for 3 seconds before giving up:

```
> db.runCommand({getlasterror : 1, w : 40, wtimeout : 3000})
{
        "err" : null,
        "n" : 0,
        "wtimeout" : true,
        "waited" : 3006,
        "errmsg" : "timed out waiting for slaves",
        "ok" : 0
}
```

Note: the current implementation returns when the data has been delivered to w servers. Future versions will provide more options for delivery vs. say, physical fsync at the server.

See also replica set configuration for information on how to change the getlasterror default parameters.

See Also

- getLastError Command
- Replica Set Design Concepts

Replica Sets

Overview

Replica sets are basically asynchronous master/slave replication, adding automatic failover and automatic recovery of member nodes.

- A replica set consists of two or more nodes that are copies of each other. (*i.e.: replicas*)
- The replica set automatically elects a *primary* (master) if there is no primary currently available.
- Drivers can automatically detect when a replica set primary changes and will begin sending writes to the new primary. (also works with sharding)

Replica sets have several common uses:

- Data Redundancy
- Automated Failover
- Distribute read load
- Simplify maintenance (*compared to "normal" master-slave*)
- Disaster recovery from user error

Replica pairs are deprecated. Replica pairs have been removed as of version 1.9.0. (Replica sets are effectively replica pairs 2.0)

Docs

Get started

- Why use replica sets?
- The basics
- Upgrading your client code

    - Reading from secondary (`slaveOkay`)
- How does replication work?
    - Oplog
    - Voting
    - Priorities
- Limitations
- **Tutorial**: single server replica set (*dev-only*)

Advanced Replica Sets

- Advanced Configuration
- Authentication
- Replica Set Commands
- The admin UI
- Learn what a replica set is and is not
- Recommended configurations
    - Data center awareness
- Replica set internals
    - About the local database

How-tos

- Sample Replica Set Config Session (PDF)
- Learn how to migrate your existing setup
- Adding a New Set Member
- Adding an Arbiter
- Forcing a Member to be Primary
- Moving or Replacing a Member
- Reconfiguring when members are up

Troubleshooting

- Troubleshooting
- Resyncing a Very Stale Replica Set Member
- Reconfiguring when members are down

See Also

- Replication Video
- Replica Sets Slides
- Webcast Demo of Replica Sets

Replica Sets - Basics

- Minimum Configuration
- Basic Configuration
    - Example: 3 full servers
- Getting Started - A sample session
    - Step 1: Start mongod with --replSet
        - Step 1a: Check the Replication UI (*optional*)
    - Step 2: Initiate the replica set
    - Step 3: Add nodes to the replica set
- Changing Client Code

Minimum Configuration

For production use you will want a minimum of three nodes in the replica set.

Either:

- 2 full nodes and 1 arbiter
- 3 full nodes

To avoid a single point of failure, these nodes must be on different computers.

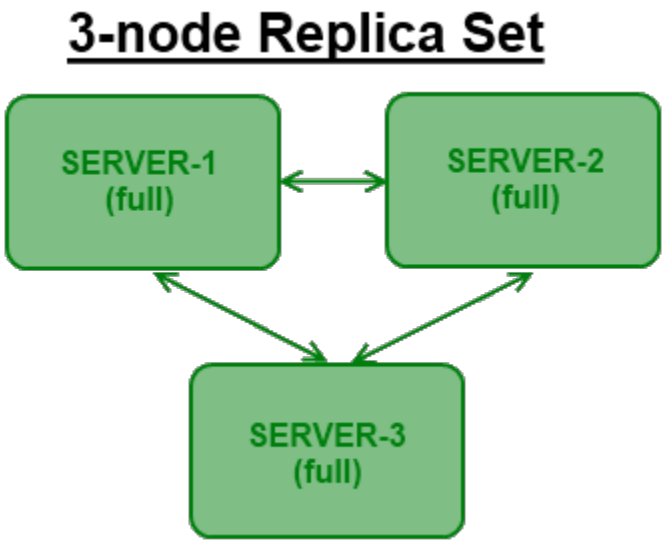
> It is standard to have at least 2 nodes equipped to handle primary duties.

Basic Configuration

- Replica sets typically operate with 3 to 7 full nodes and some number of arbiter nodes.
- Within a given data, there should be an odd number of total nodes.
    - If full nodes are only available in even numbers, then an arbiter should be added to provide an odd number.
    - The **arbiter** is a lightweight `mongod` process whose purpose is to break ties when electing a primary.
    - The arbiter does not typically require a dedicated machine.

Example: 3 full servers

In this example, three servers are connected together in a single cluster. If the primary fails any of the secondary nodes can take over.



Getting Started – A sample session

The following is a simple configuration session for replica sets.

For this example assume a 3-node Replica set with 2 full nodes and one arbiter node. These servers will be named `sf1`, `sf2` and `sf3`.

Step 1: Start mongod with --replSet

On each of the servers start an instance of the mongo daemon:

```
Sf1$ mongod --rest --replSet myset
sf2$ mongod --rest --replSet myset
sf3$ mongod --rest --replSet myset
```

the `--replSet` parameter has the same value myset on all three instances.

Step 1a: Check the Replication UI (optional)

Visit http://sf1:28017/_replSet, this will give you an idea on the current status of the replica set. As you proceed through the remaining steps, refreshing this dashboard to see changes. See the docs [here] for more details.

Step 2: Initiate the replica set

Connect to mongo on sf1.

```
$ mongo --host sf1
> rs.initiate()
{
    "info2" : "no configuration explicitly specified -- making one",
    "info" : "Config now saved locally.  Should come online in about a minute.",
    "ok" : 1
}
>
```

Initializing the replica set this way will cause the replica set to use the hostname of the current server in the replica set configuration. If your hostnames are not known to all mongo and application servers, you may need to initialize the hosts explicitly - see Replica Set Configuration for more details.

Step 3: Add nodes to the replica set

```
$ mongo --host sf1
> rs.add("sf2")
{ "ok" : 1 }
> rs.addArb("sf3")
{ "ok" : 1 }
```

Any operations that change data will now be replicated from `sf1` to `sf2`.

If `sf1` is shut down, you will see `sf2` take over as primary

Changing Client Code

- To leverage replica sets from your client code, you will need to modify your client connection code.
- The details for doing this will vary with each driver (*language*).
    - See a summary of the options [here].

Replica Sets - Oplog

Replication of data between nodes is done using a special collection known as the `oplog`.

- The basic replication process
- The oplog collection
- Falling Behind
- Becoming Stale
- Preventing a Stale Replica

See also : Replication Oplog Length.

The basic replication process

1. All write operations are sent to the server (Insert, Update, Remove, DB/Collection/Index creation/deletion, etc.)
2. That operation is written to the database.
    - That operation is also written to the oplog.
3. Replicas (slaves) listen to the oplog for changes (known as "tailing the oplog").
4. Each secondary copies the (idempotent) operation to their own oplog and applies the operations to their data.
5. This read + apply step is repeated

The oplog collection

- The oplog is a special collection type known as a capped collection. The oplog is a collection of fixed size containing information about the operation and a timestamp for that operation.
- Because the oplog has a fixed size, it over-writes old data to make room for new data. At any given time, the oplog only contains a finite history of operations.

Falling Behind

- Each secondary keeps track of which oplog items have been copied, and applied locally. This allows the secondary to have a copy of the primary's oplog, which is consistent across the replicaset.
- If a secondary falls behind for a short period of time, it will make a best effort to "catch-up".

Example:

- A secondary needs 5 minutes of downtime to be rebooted.
- When this computer comes online, the mongod process will compare its oplog to that of the Master.
- `mongod` will identify that it is 5 minutes behind.
- `mongod` will begin processing the primary's oplog sequentially until it is "caught up".

This is the ideal situation. The oplog has a finite length, so it can only contain a limited amount of history.

Becoming Stale

- If a secondary falls too far behind the primary's oplog that node will become **stale**.
- A stale member will stop replication since it can no longer catch up through the oplog.

Example:

- an oplog contains 20 hours of data
- a secondary is offline for 21 hours
- that secondary will become stale, it will stop replicating

If you have a stale replica, see the documents for resyncing.

Preventing a Stale Replica

- The oplog should be large enough to allow for unplanned downtime, replication lag (due to network or machine load issues), and planned maintanance.
- The size of the oplog is configured at startup using the ~~`-oplogSize` command line parameter. This value is used when you initialize the set, which is the time when the oplog is created (1.7.2+). If you change the~~ oplogSize parameter later, it has no effect on your existing oplog.
- There is no easy formula for deciding on an oplog size. The size of each write operation in the oplog is not fixed.
    - Running your system for a while is the best way to estimate the space required. The size and amount of time in your oplog is related to the types and frequency of your writes/updates.
- Recovering a stale replica is similar to adding a new replica.

> ⚠ A completely re-sync can often take a long time, especially with large datasets. To be able to bring up a new replica "from scratch" ensure that you have a large enough oplog to cover the time to re-sync.

Replica Sets - Priority

By default, all full nodes in a replica set have equal priority. If a primary steps down, all other full nodes are equally likely to be elected as the new primary. Put differently, each node has `priority:1`.

Arbiters are an exception. Arbiters can never become primary.

> ⚠ A node with `hidden=true` must have `priority:0`

In 1.9+, MongoDB provides more fine-grained control over priorities.

Priority 0 nodes

A node with `priority:0` can never become primary. Typical uses:

- delayed slave
- secondary data center with manual fail-over
- a server used for taking backups

Version 1.6-1.8

In version 1.6-1.8, the priority of a node can be set to 0 or 1.

Version 1.9: specific priorities

As of version 1.9, each full node can receive a specific priority number.

When an election is triggered, the highest priority amongst the most up-to-date nodes will be elected.

- "up-to-date" implies within 10 seconds of the primary. This is not configurable
- **Note** - if a node with a higher priority than the primary "catches up", this will trigger a new election (*which the higher priority node will win*)

Example: if B and C are candidates in an election, B having a higher priority but C being the most up to date:

1. C will be elected primary
2. Once B catches up a re-election should be triggered and B (the higher priority node) should win the election between B and C
3. Alternatively, suppose that, once B is within 12 seconds of synced to C, C goes down.
    - B will be elected primary.
    - When C comes back up, those 12 seconds of unsynced writes will be written to a file in the *rollback* directory of your data directory (*rollback* is created when needed).
    - You can manually apply the rolled-back data, see Replica Sets - Rollbacks.

Replica Sets - Voting

Each replica sets contains only one primary node. This is the only node in the set that can accept write commands (**insert/update/delete**).

The primary node is elected by a consensus vote of all reachable nodes.

- Consensus Vote
- Reachable Node
- Triggering an Election
- Changing votes

Consensus Vote

For a node to be elected primary, it must receive a majority of votes. Each node in the set receives a single vote. This includes arbiters. Each node knows the number of available votes.

If no node can achieve a majority, then there is no primary and no data can be written to that replica set (although slaveOk reads are still possible).

- An arbiter is a member which votes but has no data. An arbiter cannot be a primary or a secondary, as it has no data.
- Priority zero means a node is "secondary only" and cannot be primary. This is useful when a node is a disaster recovery or backup instance only. Secondaries do get to vote.

Reachable Node

Replicas in a set are in regular communication with each other. They do this via a "heartbeat" that is communicated to all nodes in the set.

A node is defined as not reachable when one of the following happens

1. heartbeat request receives a connection error
2. heartbeat request times out (10s)

The heartbeat timeout is not currently configurable.

Triggering an Election

An election is triggered when the following is true:

- a node sees that the primary is not reachable
- that node is not an arbiter
- that node has priority greater than or equal to other eligible nodes in the set

This means that an election is triggered if the primary node is turned off (*mongod stopped, computer shutdown, port blocked,...*). An election can also be triggered is the primary stops responding due to a network issue (*DNS, internet connectivity,...*)

Changing votes

In general, do not configure custom vote values.

- Do not change vote weights in an attempt to create a "preferred master" – this will not work. Instead use priorities to achieve this.
- In a two node replica set, it is far better to have an arbiter than to give one of the two members an extra vote.

By default each machine in a replica set receives one vote. The vote field can be set to any non-negative integer, however it is highly suggested that this number be either 0 or 1.

The primary purpose for changing the voting weight is to allow for larger replica sets. Each replica set is limited to 12 total nodes and 7 voting nodes. The limit on voting nodes is to limit contention during a new election.

The number of votes can be modified in the replica set configuration. Generally, you should not change the number of votes per member unless your set has more than seven members.

Why Replica Sets

Replica sets provide five distinct benefits over the use of a single node.

A system requiring one or more of the following features should consider using replica sets.

- Data Redundancy
- Automated Failover
- Read Scaling
- Maintenance
- Disaster Recovery

Data Redundancy

- Replica sets provide an automated method for storing multiple copies of your data.
- Supported drivers allow for the control of "write concerns". This allows for writes to be confirmed by multiple nodes before returning a success message to the client.

Automated Failover

- Replica sets will coordinate to have a single primary in a given set.
- Supported drivers will recognize the change of a primary within a replica set.
    - In most cases, this means that the failure of a primary can be handled by the client without any configuration changes.
- A correctly configured replica set basically provides a “hot backup”. Recovering from backups is typically very time consuming and can result in data loss. Having an active replica set is generally much faster than working with backups.

Read Scaling

- By default, the primary node of a replica set is accessed for all reads and writes.
- Most drivers provide a `slaveOkay` method for identifying that a specific operation can be run on a secondary node. When using `slaveOkay`, a system can share the read load amongst several nodes.

Maintenance

- When performing tasks such as upgrades, backups and compaction, it is typically required to remove a node from service.
- Replica sets allow for these maintenance tasks to be performed while operating a production system. As long as the production system can withstand the removal of a single node, then it’s possible to perform a “rolling” upgrade on such things.

Disaster Recovery

- Replica sets allows for a “delayed secondary” node.
- This node can provide a window for recovering from disastrous events such as:
    - bad deployments
    - dropped tables and collections

Moving or Replacing a Member

In the shell you can use the rs.remove() helper to remove a node from a replica set.

Then use rs.add() to add the new member to the set. See rs.help() in the shell for more information.

See the Adding a New Set Member for details on how to pre-copy all the datafiles from the old member to the new member if that is desired. (The new member will automatically sync all data on its own; copying the files would only be done if the administrator wants to get the new member up and online more quickly.)

Replica Set Versions and Compatibility

Features

Feature	Version
Syncing from secondaries	v1.8.0

replSetFreeze and replSetStepDown	v1.7.3+
Fastsync	v1.8.0+
Slave delay	v1.6.3+
Hidden	v1.7+
Replicated ops in `mongostat`	v1.7.3+
Authentication	v1.8.0

Syncing

1.8.x slaves **can** replicate from 1.6.x masters.

1.6.x slaves **cannot** replicate from 1.8.x masters.

See the upgrade documentation for advice on upgrading.

Replica Set Design Concepts

A replica set has at most one primary at a given time. If a majority of the set is up, the most up-to-date secondary will be elected primary. If a majority of the set is not up or reachable, no member will be elected primary.

There is no way to tell (from the set's point of view) the difference between a network partition and nodes going down, so members left in a minority will not attempt to become master (to prevent a set from ending up with masters on either side of a partition).

This means that, if there is no majority on either side of a network partition, the set will be read only (thus, we suggest an odd number of servers: e.g., two servers in one data center and one in another). The upshot of this strategy is that data is consistent: there are no multi-master conflicts to resolve.

There are several important concepts concerning data integrity with replica sets that you should be aware of:

1. A write is only truly committed once it has replicated to a majority of members of the set.

For important writes, the client should request acknowledgement of this with a `getLastError({w:...})` call.

2. Writes which are committed at the primary of the set may be visible before the true cluster-wide commit has occurred.

Thus we have "READ UNCOMMITTED" read semantics. These more relaxed read semantics make theoretically achievable performance and availability higher (for example we never have an object locked in the server where the locking is dependent on network performance).

3. On a failover, if there are writes which has not replicated from the primary, the writes are un-written (thus the use of `getlasterror` in #1 above).

The data is backed up to files in the *rollback* directory, although the assumption is that in most cases this data is never recovered as that would require operator intervention. However, it is not "lost," it can be manually applied at any time with mongorestore.

Rationale

Merging back old operations later, after another node has accepted writes, is a hard problem. One then has multi-master replication, with potential for conflicting writes. Typically that is handled in other products by manual version reconciliation code by developers. We think that is too much work : we want MongoDB usage to be less developer work, not more. Multi-master also can make atomic operation semantics problematic.

It is possible (as mentioned above) to manually recover these events, via manual DBA effort, but we believe in large system with many, many nodes that such efforts become impractical.

Comments

Some drivers support 'safe' write modes for critical writes. For example via setWriteConcern in the Java driver.

Additionally, defaults for { w : ... } parameter to getLastError can be set in the replica set's configuration.

Note a call to getLastError will cause the client to have to wait for a response from the server. This can slow the client's throughput on writes if large numbers are made because of the client/server network turnaround times. Thus for "non-critical" writes it often makes sense to make no getLastError check at all, or only a single check after many writes.

Replica Set Tutorial

This tutorial will guide you through the basic configuration of a replica set. Given the tutorial is an example and should be easy to try, it runs

several mongod processes on a single machine (in the real world one would use several machines). If you are attempting to deploy replica sets in production, be sure to read the replica set documentation. Replica sets are available in MongoDB V1.6+.

- Introduction
- Starting the nodes
- Initiating the Set
- Replication
- Failover
- Changing the replica set configuration
- Running with two nodes
- Drivers
- getLastError

Introduction

A replica set is group of *n* `mongod` nodes (members) that work together. The goal is that each member of the set has a complete copy (replica) of the data form the other nodes.

Setting up a replica set is a two-step process that requires starting each mongod process and then formally initiating the set. Here, we'll be configuring a set of three nodes, which is standard.

Once the `mongod` processes are started, we will issue a command to initialize the set. After a few seconds, one node will be elected master, and you can begin writing to and querying the set.

Starting the nodes

First, create a separate data directory for each of the nodes in the set. In a real environment with multiple servers we could use the default /data/db directory if we wanted to, but on a single machine we will have to set up non-defaults:

```
$ mkdir -p /data/r0
$ mkdir -p /data/r1
$ mkdir -p /data/r2
```

Next, start each `mongod` process with the `--replSet` parameter. The parameter requires that you specify a logical name for our replica set. Let's call our replica set "foo". We'll launch our first node like so:

```
$ mongod --replSet foo --port 27017 --dbpath /data/r0
```

Let's now start the second and third nodes:

```
$ mongod --replSet foo --port 27018 --dbpath /data/r1
$ mongod --replSet foo --port 27019 --dbpath /data/r2
```

You should now have three nodes running. At this point, each node should be printing the following warning:

```
Mon Aug  2 11:30:19 [startReplSets] replSet can't get local.system.replset config from self or any
seed (EMPTYCONFIG)
```

We can't use the replica set until we've *initiated* it, which we'll do next.

Initiating the Set

We can initiate the replica set by connecting to one of the members and running the replSetInitiate command (that is, `rs.initiate()` in the mongo shell). This command takes a configuration object that specifies the name of the set and each of the members.

The replSetInitiate command may be sent to any member of an uninitiated set. However, only the member performing the initiation may have any existing data. This data becomes the initial data for the set. The other members will begin synchronizing and receiving that data (if present; starting empty is fine too). This is called the "initial sync". Secondaries will not be online for reads (in state 2, "SECONDARY") until their initial sync completes.

Note: the replication oplog (in the local database) is allocated at initiation time. The oplog can be quite large, thus initiation may take some time.

```
$ mongo localhost:27017
MongoDB shell version: 1.5.7
connecting to: localhost:27017/test
> rs.help(); // if you are curious run this (optional)
>
> config = {_id: 'foo', members: [
                          {_id: 0, host: 'localhost:27017'},
                          {_id: 1, host: 'localhost:27018'},
                          {_id: 2, host: 'localhost:27019'}]
           }
> rs.initiate(config);
{
   "info" : "Config now saved locally.  Should come online in about a minute.",
   "ok" : 1
}
```

We specify the config object and then pass it to `rs.initiate()`. Then, if everything is in order, we get a response saying that the replica set will be online in a minute. During this time, one of the nodes will be elected master.

To check the status of the set, run `rs.status()`:

```
> rs.status()
{
 "set" : "foo",
 "date" : "Mon Aug 02 2010 11:39:08 GMT-0400 (EDT)",
 "myState" : 1,
 "members" : [
  {
   "name" : "arete.local:27017",
   "self" : true,
  },
  {
   "name" : "localhost:27019",
   "health" : 1,
   "uptime" : 101,
   "lastHeartbeat" : "Mon Aug 02 2010 11:39:07 GMT-0400",
  },
  {
   "name" : "localhost:27018",
   "health" : 1,
   "uptime" : 107,
   "lastHeartbeat" : "Mon Aug 02 2010 11:39:07 GMT-0400",
  }
 ],
 "ok" : 1
}
```

You'll see that the other members of the set are up. You may also notice that the `myState` value is 1, indicating that we're connected to the member which is currently primary; a value of 2 indicates a secondary.

You can also check the set's status in the HTTP Admin UI.

Replication

Go ahead and write something to the master node:

```
db.messages.insert({name: "ReplSet Tutorial"});
```

If you look at the logs on the secondary nodes, you'll see the write replicated.

Failover

The purpose of a replica set is to provide automated failover. This means that, if the primary node goes down, a secondary node can take over. When this occurs the set members which are up perform an election to select a new primary. To see how this works in practice, go ahead and kill the master node with Control-C (^C) (or if running with --journal, kill -9 would be ok too):

```
^CMon Aug  2 11:50:16 got kill or ctrl c or hup signal 2 (Interrupt), will terminate after current cmd
ends
Mon Aug  2 11:50:16 [interruptThread] now exiting
Mon Aug  2 11:50:16  dbexit:
```

If you look at the logs on the secondaries, you'll see a series of messages indicating fail-over. On our first slave, we see this:

```
Mon Aug  2 11:50:16 [ReplSetHealthPollTask] replSet info localhost:27017 is now down (or slow to
respond)
Mon Aug  2 11:50:17 [conn1] replSet info voting yea for 2
Mon Aug  2 11:50:17 [rs Manager] replSet not trying to elect self as responded yea to someone else
recently
Mon Aug  2 11:50:27 [rs_sync] replSet SECONDARY
```

And on the second, this:

```
Mon Aug  2 11:50:17 [ReplSetHealthPollTask] replSet info localhost:27017 is now down (or slow to
respond)
Mon Aug  2 11:50:17 [rs Manager] replSet info electSelf 2
Mon Aug  2 11:50:17 [rs Manager] replSet PRIMARY
Mon Aug  2 11:50:27 [initandlisten] connection accepted from 127.0.0.1:61263 #5
```

Both nodes notice that the master has gone down and, as a result, a new primary node is elected. In this case, the node at port 27019 is promoted. If we bring the failed node on 27017 back online, it will come back up as a secondary.

Changing the replica set configuration

There are times when you'll want to change the replica set configuration. Suppose, for instance, that you want to make a member have priority zero, indicating the member should never be primary. To do this, you need to pass a new configuration object to the database's `replSetReconfig` command. The shell `rs.reconfig()` helper makes this easier.

One note: the reconfig command must be sent to the current primary of the set. This implies that you need a majority of the set up to perform a reconfiguration.

```
> // we should be primary.  can be checked with rs.status() or with:
> rs.isMaster();
> var c = rs.conf();
{_id: 'foo', members: [
                       {_id: 0, host: 'localhost:27017'},
                       {_id: 1, host: 'localhost:27018'},
                       {_id: 2, host: 'localhost:27019'}]
}
> c.members[2].priority = 0;
> c
{_id: 'foo', members: [
                       {_id: 0, host: 'localhost:27017'},
                       {_id: 1, host: 'localhost:27018'},
                       {_id: 2, host: 'localhost:27019', priority: 0}]
}
> rs.reconfig(c);
> //done. to see new config,and new status:
> rs.conf()
> rs.status()
```

Running with two nodes

Suppose you want to run replica sets with just two database servers (that is, have a replication factor of two). This is possible, but as replica sets perform elections, here a majority would be 2 out of 2 which is not helpful. Thus in this situation one normally also runs an *arbiter* on a separate server. An arbiter is a set member which has no data but gets to vote in elections. In the case here, the arbiter is the tie breaker in elections. Arbiters are very lightweight and can be ran anywhere – say, on an app server or a micro vm. With an arbiter in place, the replica set will behave appropriately, recovering automatically during both network partitions and node failures (e.g., machine crashes).

You start up an arbiter just as you would a standard replica set node, as a mongod process with the `--replSet` option. However, when initiating, you need to include the `arbiterOnly` option in the config document.

With an arbiter, the configuration presented above would look like this instead:

```
config = {_id: 'foo', members: [
                          {_id: 0, host: 'localhost:27017'},
                          {_id: 1, host: 'localhost:27018'},
                          {_id: 2, host: 'localhost:27019', arbiterOnly: true}]
           }
```

Drivers

Most of the MongoDB drivers are replica set aware. The driver when connecting takes a list of seed hosts from the replica set and can then discover which host is primary and which are secondary (the isMaster command is used internally by the driver for this).

With this complete set of potential master nodes, the driver can automatically find the new master if the current master fails. See your driver's documentation for specific details.

If you happen to be using the Ruby driver, you may want to check out Replica Sets in Ruby.

getLastError

It is sometimes important to use getLastError with replica sets to ensure cluster-wide commits of critical writes.

Replica Set Configuration

- Command Line
- Initial Setup
- The Replica Set Config Object
  - Minimum Config - Required Arguments
  - Advanced Config - Optional Arguments
    - Member options
    - Set options
- Shell Example 1
- Shell Example 2
- See Also

Command Line

Each `mongod` participating in the set should have a `--replSet` parameter on its command line. The syntax is

```
mongod --replSet setname --rest
```

setname is the logical name of the set.

> Use the `--rest` command line parameter when using replica sets, as the web admin interface of *mongod* (normally at port 28017) shows status information on the set. See Replica Set Admin UI for more information.

Initial Setup

We use the `replSetInitiate` command for initial configuration of a replica set. Send the initiate command to a single server to christen the set. The member being initiated may have initial data; the other servers in the set should be empty.

```
> db.runCommand( { replSetInitiate : <config_object> } )
```

A shorthand way to type the above is via a helper method in the shell:

```
> rs.initiate(<config_object>)
```

A quick way to initiate a set is to leave out the config object parameter. The initial set will then consist of the member to which the shell is communicating, along with all the seeds that member knows of. However, see the configuration object details below for more options.

```
> rs.initiate()
```

The Replica Set Config Object

The `local.system.replset` collection holds a singleton object which contains the replica set configuration. The config object automatically propagates among members of the set. The object is not directly manipulated, but rather changed via commands (such as `replSetInitiate`).

Minimum Config - Required Arguments

At its simplest, the config object contains the name of the replica set and a list of its members:

```
{
    _id : <setname>,
    members : [
        {_id : 0, host : <host0>},
        {_id : 1, host : <host1>},
        ...
    ]
}
```

Every replica set configuration must contain an `_id` field and a `members` field with one or more hosts listed.

Setting	Description
`_id`	The set name. This must match command line setting. Set names are usually alphanumeric and, in particular, cannot contain the '/' character.
`members`	An array of servers in the set. For simpler configs, one can often simply set `_id` and `host` fields only – all the rest are optional. • `_id` - Each member has an _id ordinal, typically beginning with zero and numbered in increasing order. When a node is retired (removed from the config), its `_id` should not be reused. • `host` - Host name and optionally the port for the member

Advanced Config - Optional Arguments

There are many optional settings that can also be configured using the config object. The full set is:

```
{
  _id : <setname>,
  members: [
    {
      _id : <ordinal>,
      host : <hostname[:port]>
      [, arbiterOnly : true]
      [, buildIndexes : <bool>]
      [, hidden : true]
      [, priority: <priority>]
      [, tags: [tag1, tag2, ..., tagN]]
      [, slaveDelay : <n>]
      [, votes : <n>]
    }
    , ...
  ],
  [settings: {
    [getLastErrorDefaults: <lasterrdefaults>]
    [, getLastErrorModes : <modes>]
  }]
}
```

Member options

Each member can be configured to have any of the following options.

Command	Default	Description	Min Version
`arbiterOnly`	`false`	If `true`, this member will participate in vote but receive no data.	1.6
`buildIndexes`	`true`	When `false`, prevent secondary indexes from being created on this member. This is typically used on machines that are pure "backup" machines that are never queried. By not having the secondary indexes, the member performs less works on writes and requires less ram. Note the _id index is still created. Can only be set to `false` if `priority:0`. It is rare to use this option.	1.6
`hidden`	`false`	If `true`, do not advertise the member's existence to clients in `isMaster` command responses. It is rare to use this option.	1.7
`priority`	1.0	Priority of the server for elections. Higher priority servers will be preferred as primary. (*more information*)	1.6, 1.9
`tags`	`[]`	An array of strings representing the location of this server. These can be used for location-aware write guarantees, see Data Center Awareness	1.9.1
`slaveDelay`	0	Number of seconds to remain behind the primary. A value of 0 implies "as up-to-date as possible". Used to recover from human errors (*e.g.: accidentally dropping a database*). Can only be set on members with priority 0. Slave delay members are a great way to keep a rolling backup from a certain amount of time in the past.	1.6.3
`votes`	1	Number of votes this member has in an election. Generally you should not change this. (*more information*)	1.6

Set options

The final optional argument, `settings`, can be used to set options on the set as a whole. Often one can leave out `settings` completely from the config as the defaults are reasonable.

Setting	Description	Min Version
`getLastErrorDefaults`	Specifies defaults for the `getlasterror` command. If the client calls `getLastError` with no parameters, the default object specified here is used.	1.6.2
`getLastErrorModes`	Define and name combinations of tags that can be used by the application to guarantee writes to certain servers, racks, data centers, etc. See Data Center Awareness.	1.9.1

Shell Example 1

```
> // all at once method
> cfg = {
... _id : "acme_a",
... members : [
... { _id : 0, host : "sf1.acme.com" },
... { _id : 1, host : "sf2.acme.com" },
... { _id : 2, host : "sf3.acme.com" } ] }
> rs.initiate(cfg)
> rs.status()
```

Shell Example 2

```
$ # incremental configuration method
$ mongo sf1.acme.com/admin
> rs.initiate();
> rs.add("sf2.acme.com");
> rs.add("sf3.acme.com");
> rs.status();
```

See Also

- Adding a New Set Member
- Reconfiguring when Members are Up
- Reconfiguring a replica set when members are down

Adding an Arbiter

Arbiters are nodes in a replica set that only participate in elections: they don't have a copy of the data and will never become the primary node (or even a readable secondary). They are mainly useful for breaking ties during elections (e.g. if a set only has two members).

To add an arbiter, bring up a new node as a replica set member (`--replSet` on the command line) - just like when Adding a New Set Member.

> For version 1.7.1 and earlier: it is best to also use `--oplogSize 1` so that 5% of your avail. disk space isn't allocated to the oplog, when it isn't needed. Version 1.7.2+ does not create an oplog for arbiters.

To start as an arbiter, we'll use `rs.addArb()` instead of `rs.add()`. While connected to the current primary:

```
> rs.addArb("broadway:27017");
{ "ok" : 1 }
```

See Also

- Adding a New Set Member

Adding a New Set Member

Adding a new node to an existing replica set is easy. The new node should either have an empty data directory or a recent copy of the data from another set member. When we start the new node, we only need to provide the replica set name:

```
$ mongod --replSet foo
```

After bringing up the new server (we'll call it `broadway:27017`) we need to add it to the set - we connect to our primary server using the shell:

```
$ mongo
MongoDB shell version: ...
connecting to: test
> rs.add("broadway:27017");
{ "ok" : 1 }
```

After adding the node it will perform a full resync and come online as a secondary.

Adding a former member

If you remove a member from the set and then add it again, you must ensure that its `_id` doesn't change in the replica set configuration. You can do this by specifying the `_id` (and any other attributes) in `rs.add()`.

For example, suppose we have a three-member replica set with the following configuration:

```
{
    _id : "foo",
    members : [
       {_id : 0, host : "A"},
       {_id : 1, host : "B"},
       {_id : 2, host : "C"}
    ]
}
```

Now we shut down *B* and call `rs.remove("B")`. Later, we change our mind and call `rs.add("B")`. However, this won't work, because `rs.add` will automatically use 3 (as the next available `_id`). So, instead of `rs.add("B")`, we can run:

```
rs.add({_id : 1, host : "B"})
```

Now *B* will be able to rejoin the set.

Starting with an existing copy of the dataset

If you have a backup or snapshot of an existing member, you can move the data files to a new machine and use them to quickly add a new member. These files must be:

- clean: the database assumes that this data is not corrupted and comes from a member in the same replica set
- recent: the snapshot/backup must have been taken more recently than the oldest operation in the primary's oplog (so that it can catch up by just copying from the oplog)

You do not have to make any modifications to the files before starting up a member.

In versions lower than 1.9.1, you must start the new member before running `rs.add()`. In version 1.9.1+, you can do it in either order. Additionally with versions lower than 1.9.1 you need to restart mongod on the newly added node after the rs.add.

See Also

- Adding an Arbiter

Reconfiguring when Members are Up

Version 1.7.1+

Use the rs.reconfig() helper in the shell (version 1.7.1+). (Run "rs.reconfig" in the shell with no parenthesis to see what it does.)

```
$ mongo
> // shell v1.7.x:
> // example : give 1st set member 2 votes
> cfg = rs.conf()
> cfg.members[0].votes = 2
> rs.reconfig(cfg)
```

Earlier versions (1.6.x)

You can reconfigure a set from any other language/driver/version using the `replSetReconfig` command directly.

```
$ mongo
> // shell v1.6:
> // example : give 1st set member 2 votes
> cfg = rs.conf()
> cfg.members[0].votes = 2
> cfg.version++
> use admin
> db.runCommand( { replSetReconfig : cfg } )
```

Requirements

- You must connect to the admin db of the current primary.
- A majority of members of the set must be up.

Notes

- You may experience a short downtime period while the set renegotiates master after a reconfiguration. This typically is 10-20 seconds. As always, it is best to do admin work during planned maintenance windows regardless just to be safe.
- In certain circumstances, the primary steps down (perhaps transiently) on a reconfiguration. On a step-down, the primary closes sockets from clients to assure the clients know quickly that the server is no longer primary. Thus, your shell session may experience a disconnect on a reconfig command.

See Also

- Reconfiguring when members are down

Recommended Configurations

Replica sets support quite a few options, and it can be confusing determining the best configuration. Here following a few good suggestions.

One data center

If you have just one data center, then the most economical setup is a three-node replica set, one of which is designated as an arbiter. The standard nodes each get their own box, and the arbiter lives on an application server.

Two data centers

With two data centers, you'll want to designate one data center as primary and the other as a backup for the very rare case where the first data center fails entirely.

From here, a three-node replica set is sufficient. You'll keep two replica set nodes in the primary data center and one node in the backup data center. You'll also want to give the node in the backup DC a priority of 0. As long as the first data center continues to function, your primary node will always live there. If you lose any one node, the replica set will still be able to elect a primary in the main data center.

With this relatively economical setup, you're protected against the failure of any one node and against the failure of any one data center. Of course, if it's the primary data center that fails, then you'll need to manually promote the node in the secondary data center to primary. But if you use write concern carefully, then you won't lose any data, the manual failover won't lead to much downtime.

Data Center Awareness

- Simple Data Center Awareness
  - Primary plus DR site
  - Multi-site with local reads
- Tagging (version 1.9.1+)
  - Server *X* should have a copy.
  - Make *n* backups
  - Make sure two data centers have a copy.
  - Make sure there are at least three copies of the data and it is present on at least two continents.
  - Make sure at least three servers across at least two racks in `dc.nyc` have it.
  - `w : "majority"`

Simple Data Center Awareness

In version 1.6, 1.8, and when more sophisticated setups are not necessary, basic configuration choices can be sufficient to ensure good performance across multiple data centers.

Primary plus DR site

Use one site, with one or more set members, as primary. Have a member at a remote site with priority=0. For example:

```
{ _id: 'myset',
  members: [
   { _id:0, host:'sf1', priority:1 },
   { _id:1, host:'sf2', priority:1 },
   { _id:2, host:'ny1', priority:0 }
  ]
}
```

Multi-site with local reads

Another configuration would be to have one member in each of three data centers. One node arbitrarily becomes primary, the others though are secondaries and can process reads locally.

```
{ _id: 'myset',
  members: [
   { _id:0, host:'sf1', priority:1 },
   { _id:1, host:'ny1', priority:1 },
   { _id:2, host:'uk1', priority:1 }
  ]
}
```

Refer to your driver's documentation for more information about read routing.

Tagging (version 1.9.1+)

Tagging gives you fine-grained control over where data is written. It is:

- Customizable: you can express your architecture in terms of machines, racks, data centers, PDUs, continents, etc. (in any combination or level that is important to your application).
- Developer/DBA-friendly: developers do not need to know anything about where servers are or changes in architecture.

Each member of a replica set can be tagged with one or more hierarchical location strings, e.g., `["dc.ny.rack1", "us.ny.nyc.ues", "192.168.4.11"]`. *Modes* can be defined that combine these tags into targets for `getLastError`'s *w* option.

For example, suppose we have 5 servers, *A*, *B*, *C*, *D*, and *E*. *A*, *B*, and *C* are in New York. *D* and *E* are in San Francisco.

Our replica set configuration might look like:

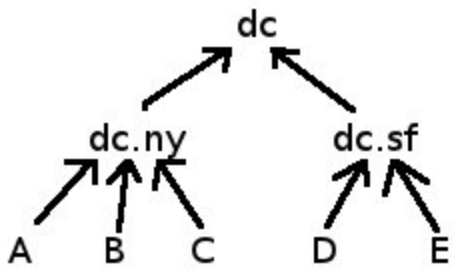
```
{
    _id : "someSet",
    members : [
        {_id : 0, host : "A", tags : ["dc.ny"]},
        {_id : 1, host : "B", tags : ["dc.ny"]},
        {_id : 2, host : "C", tags : ["dc.ny"]},
        {_id : 3, host : "D", tags : ["dc.sf"]},
        {_id : 4, host : "E", tags : ["dc.sf"]}
    ]
    settings : {
        getLastErrorModes : {
            prettySafe : {"dc" : 2},
            sortaSafe : {"dc.sf" : 1},
            alsoSortaSafe : {"dc.ny" : 1}
            absolutelyEverywhere : {"dc.ny" : 3, "dc.sf" : 2}
        }
    }
}
```

Now, when a developer calls `getLastError`, they can use any of the modes declared to ensure writes are propagated to the desired locations, e.g.:

```
> db.foo.insert({x:1})
> db.runCommand({getLastError : 1, w : "prettySafe"})
```

`prettySafe` makes sure that the write is on at least two servers with two different tags starting with "dc". As there are only two distinct tags starting with "dc", the write will make it to at least one server tagged `dc.ny` and one server tagged `dc.sf` before the `getLastError` returns.

The diagram below shows how MongoDB oganizes servers based on tag. All "dc.ny" servers are kept in one bucket and all "dc.sf" servers are kept in another bucket. When "dc" is used in a `getLastErrorMode`, it looks at these two buckets.



Below are some common examples and how you'd specify tags and `w` modes for them.

Server *X* should have a copy.

Suppose you want to be able to specify that your backup server (B) should have a copy of a write. Then you'd use the following tags:

Server	Tags
B	`["B"]`

To define a mode for "server *B* should have a copy," create the mode:

```
onB : {"B" : 1}
```

So, your config would look like:

```
{
   _id : replSetName,
   members : [
       {
           "_id" : 0,
           "host" : B,
           "tags" : ["B"]
       },
       ...
   ],
   settings : {
       getLastErrorModes : {
           onB : {B : 1}
       }
   }
}
```

To use this mode in your application, you'd call `getLastError` with `w` set to `onB`:

```
> db.runCommand({getLastError : 1, w : "onB"})
```

In the next examples, we will skip the configuration and the usage for brevity. Tags are always added to a member's configuration, modes are always added to `getLastErrorModes`.

Make *n* backups

Suppose you have three backup servers (*B1*, *B2*, *B3*) and you want at least two of them to have a copy. Then you'd give each of them the same tag:

Server	Tags
B1	`["backup"]`
B2	`["backup"]`
B3	`["backup"]`

Then you would create the mode:

```
backedUp : {"backup" : 2}
```

Make sure two data centers have a copy.

To group all of the servers (or racks, or whatever hierarchy we choose) in our data center into one "unit," we need to use hierarchical tags. That is, we use the "." character to specify a hierarchy for a server's location. So, if we had two data centers with two servers in one and three in the other, we could tag them as:

Server	Tags
S1	`["dc.nyc"]`
S2	`["dc.nyc"]`
S3	`["dc.sf"]`
S4	`["dc.sf"]`
S5	`["dc.sf"]`

Now *S1* and *S2* are grouped together and *S3*, *S4*, and *S5* are grouped together. These two groups both "belong to" the top-level location `dc`.

We can specify that we want a write to be copied to both data centers by using a rule such as:

```
twoDCs : {"dc" : 2}
```

Note that hierarchical tags can be treated the same as the simple tags shown above. For example, if we wanted it to be replicated to two servers in `dc.sf`, we could write:

```
twoSF : {"dc.sf" : 2}
```

You can have as many levels as you want, representing whatever hierarchy you want. As mentioned above, servers might be organized into racks, so we might have tags like `"dc.nyc.rack1.S1"`. Then we could specify any or all of the following levels:

- `"dc"` - cross-data-center replication
- `"dc.nyc"` - cross-rack replication
- `"dc.nyc.rack1"` - within-a-rack replication
- `"dc.nyc.rack1.S1"` - server-specific replication

Make sure there are at least three copies of the data and it is present on at least two continents.

All of the rules up until now have only had one condition, but you can include as many and-conditions as you want. Suppose we have the following:

Server	Tags

S1	`["continent.nAmerica", "num"]`
S2	`["continent.sAmerica", "num"]`
S3	`["continent.Europe", "num"]`
S4	`["continent.Africe", "num"]`
S5	`["continent.Asia", "num"]`

Then create a rule like:

```
level : {num : 3, continent : 2}
```

Make sure at least three servers across at least two racks in `dc.nyc` have it.

These two rules demand different hierarchies (data centerrack vs. data centerserver), so we must use more than one tag in our tags array for the first time.

Server	Tags
S1	`["dc.nyc.rack1.S1", "nyc.S1"]`
S2	`["dc.nyc.rack2.S2", "nyc.S2"]`
S3	`["dc.nyc.rack2.S3", "nyc.S3"]`
S4	`["dc.sf.rack1.S4", "sf.S4"]`
S5	`["dc.sf.rack1.S5", "sf.S5"]`

The new tag has a distinct prefix from the original tag (`nyc` and `sf` vs. `dc`). Each prefix creates a new hierarchy (so we have two data centerserver hierarchies, as we wanted). If we used the same prefix for all tags, all of the tags would be part of the same hierarchy.

Now our rule would look like:

```
customerData : {"dc.nyc" : 2, "nyc" : 3}
```

`w : "majority"`

There is one built-in mode: "majority". This will make sure that the write is propagated to a majority of the set before returning. For example, if you had a three-member replica set, calling `db.runCommand({getLastError : 1, w : "majority"})` would make sure the last write was propagated to at least 2 servers.

Writing to a majority of the members of the set is typically all that is required to guarantee a write is committed (see Replica Set Design Concepts).

Replica Set Authentication

> Authentication was added in 1.7.5

Replica set authentication works a little differently from single-server authentication, so that each member can automatically authenticate itself to the other members of the set. See the main docs on authentication for details.

Example

If we had a two-member replica set with members *a* and *b*, we could start them up with authentication enabled by running:

```
a$ echo "this is my super secret key" > mykey
a$ chmod 600 mykey
a$ mongod --keyFile mykey # other options...

b$ echo "this is my super secret key" > mykey
b$ chmod 600 mykey
b$ mongod --keyFile mykey # other options...
```

Then run `rs.initiate()` and so on.

Using the Database with Replica Set Authentication On

From the client's perspective, authentication works the same way with replica sets as it does with single servers.

For example, suppose you create a new replica set and start the members with `--keyFile`. Connect to the master locally to add users:

```
master$ mongo
MongoDB shell version: x.y.z
connecting to: test
> db.addUser("foo", "bar")
```

Clients should authenticate as usual when they make connections.

```
any-member$ mongo -u foo -p
MongoDB shell version: x.y.z
Enter password: <bar>
```

Upgrading to Replica Sets

- Upgrading From a Single Server
- Upgrading From Replica Pairs or Master/Slave
  - Resyncing the Slaves
  - Using a Slave's Existing Data
  - Adding the arbiter
- Upgrading Drivers

Upgrading From a Single Server

If you're running MongoDB on a single server, upgrading to replica sets is trivial (and a good idea!). First, we'll initiate a new replica set with a single node. We need a name for the replica set - in this case we're using `foo`. Start by shutting down the server and restarting with the `--replSet` option, and our set name:

```
$ ./mongod --replSet foo
```

> Add the --rest option too (just be sure that port is secured): the <host>:28017/_replSet diagnostics page is incredibly useful.

The server will allocate new *local* data files before starting back up. Consider pre-allocating those files if you need to minimize downtime.

Next we'll connect to the server from the shell and initiate the replica set:

```
$ ./mongo
MongoDB shell version: ...
connecting to: test
> rs.initiate();
{
    "info2" : "no configuration explicitly specified -- making one",
    "info" : "Config now saved locally.  Should come online in about a minute.",
    "ok" : 1
}
```

The server should now be operational again, this time as the primary in a replica set consisting of just a single node. The next step is to add some additional nodes to the set.

Upgrading From Replica Pairs or Master/Slave

The best way to upgrade is to simply restart the current master as a single server replica set, and then add any slaves after wiping their data directory. To find the master in a replica pair, run `db.isMaster()`.

```
s> db.isMaster()
{
        "ismaster" : 0,
        "remote" : "localhost:27018",
        "info" : "direct negotiation",
        "maxBsonObjectSize" : 16777216,
        "ok" : 1
}
```

Once you know the master, shut down the *mongod* processes on the master and slave.

```
m$ killall mongod
s$ killall mongod
```

Backup your */data/db* directories, just in case.

```
m$ cp /data/db/* /to_somewhere_backup/
s$ cp /data/db/* /to_slave_backup/
```

Now, start up the master with the *--replSet* option, and initialize a one-member replica set.

```
m$ mongod --rest --replSet mysetname
m$ mongo
m> rs.initiate()
```

Now there are two paths we can take: either resyncing the slaves from scratch or using their existing data. Resyncing takes longer. Using the existing data is only possible if the slave was up-to-date before the replica pair was shut down **and** you add it to the replica set before the master has handled "too many" new writes (the size of the oplog determines what "too many" is).

Resyncing the Slaves

To resync, clear the data directory:

```
s$ rm -r /data/db/* # if you're using a non-default dbpath, this may be somewhere else
s$ # /data/db is now empty
```

Then start up the slave with the *--replSet* option.

```
s$ mongod --rest --replSet mysetname
```

In the database shell, add the slave as a new member in the replica set.

```
m> // still in the mongo shell on the master
m> rs.add("s") // "s" is your slave host name
m> rs.status(); // see also http://localhost:28017/_replSet
```

Using a Slave's Existing Data

Start up the slave with *--replSet* and *--fastsync* options.

```
s$ mongod --rest --replSet mysetname --fastsync
```

In the database shell, add the slave as a new member in the replica set.

```
m> // still in the mongo shell on the master
m> rs.add("s") // "s" is your slave host name
m> rs.status(); // see also http://localhost:28017/_replSet
```

Adding the arbiter

We should now add an arbiter so break ties on elections and know who is up in a network partition. An arbiter is very lightweight and can run on about any server (including 32 bit servers). We use different directories and ports here so that the server is still available as a "normal" mongod server if that is desired and also to avoid confusion. The */data/arb* directory will be very light in content.

```
arb$ mkdir /data/arb
arb$ mongod --rest --replSet mysetname --dbpath /data/arb --port 30000
```

Then add the arbiter to your replica set:

```
m> rs.addArb("arb:30000"); // replace 'arb' with your arb host name
m> rs.status()
```

Upgrading Drivers

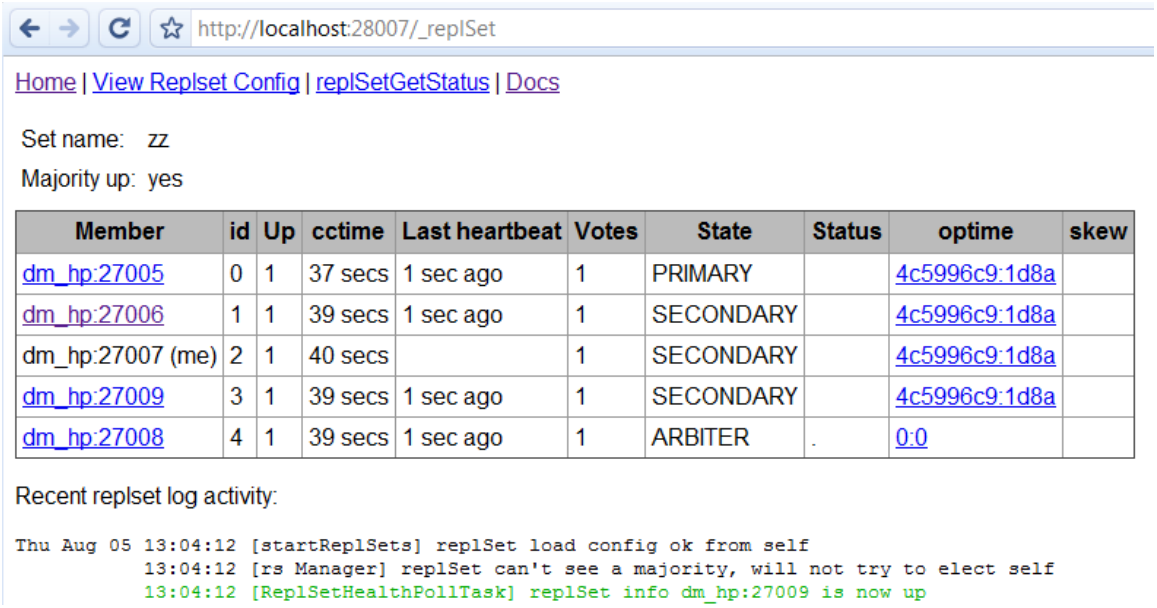
There are new versions of most MongoDB Drivers which support replica sets elegantly. See the documentation pages for the specific driver of interest.

Replica Set Admin UI

The `mongod` process includes a simple administrative UI for checking the status of a replica set.

To use, first enable `--rest` from the `mongod` command line. The rest port is the db port plus 1000 (thus, the default is 28017). Be sure this port is secure before enabling this.

Then you can navigate to `http://<hostname>:28017/` in your web browser. Once there, click Replica Set Status (/_replSet) to move to the Replica Set Status page.



See Also

- Http Interface

Replica Set Commands

- Shell Helpers
- Commands
  - { isMaster : 1 }
  - { replSetGetStatus : 1 }
    - State
    - Health
    - Networking
    - optime, optimeDate
    - errmsg
  - { replSetInitiate : <config> }
  - { replSetReconfig: <config> }
  - { replSetStepDown : <seconds> }
  - { replSetFreeze : <seconds> }

Shell Helpers

```
rs.help()                       show help
rs.status()                     { replSetGetStatus : 1 }
rs.initiate()                   { replSetInitiate : null } initiate
                                    with default settings
rs.initiate(cfg)                { replSetInitiate : cfg }
rs.add(hostportstr)             add a new member to the set
rs.add(membercfgobj)            add a new member to the set
rs.addArb(hostportstr)          add a new member which is arbiterOnly:true
rs.remove(hostportstr)          remove a member from the set
rs.stepDown()                   { replSetStepDown : true }
rs.conf()                       return configuration from local.system.replset
db.isMaster()                   check who is primary
```

Commands

{ isMaster : 1 }

Checks if the node to which we are connecting is currently primary. Most drivers do this check automatically and then send queries to the current primary.

Returns an object that looks like:

```
{
    "ismaster" : false,
    "secondary" : true,
    "hosts" : [
        "sf1.example.com",
        "sf4.example.com",
        "ny3.example.com"
    ],
    "passives" : [
        "sf3.example.com",
        "sf2.example.com",
        "ny2.example.com",
    ],
    "arbiters" : [
        "ny1.example.com",
    ]
    "primary" : "sf4.example.com",
    "ok" : 1
}
```

The *hosts* array lists primary and secondary servers, the *passives* array lists passive servers, and the *arbiters* array lists arbiters.

If the "`ismaster`" field is `false`, there will be a "`primary`" field that indicates which server is primary.

{ replSetGetStatus : 1 }

Status information on the replica set from this node's point of view.

The output looks like:

```
{
    "set" : "florble",
    "date" : "Wed Jul 28 2010 15:01:01 GMT-0400 (EST)",
    "myState" : 1,
    "members" : [
        {
            "name" : "dev1.example.com",
            "self" : true,
            "errmsg" : ""
        },
        {
            "name" : "dev2.example.com",
            "health" : 1,
            "uptime" : 13777,
            "lastHeartbeat" : "Wed Jul 28 2010 15:01:01 GMT-0400 (EST)",
            "pingMs" : 12,
            "errmsg" : "initial sync done"
        }
    ],
    "ok" : 1
}
```

State

The *state*, *myState*, and *stateStr* fields indicates the state of this server. Valid states are:

0	Starting up, phase 1 (parsing configuration)
1	Primary
2	Secondary
3	Recovering (initial syncing, post-rollback, stale members)
4	Fatal error
5	Starting up, phase 2 (forking threads)

6	Unknown state (member has never been reached)
7	Arbiter
8	Down
9	Rollback

Health

The *health* field indicates the health of this server. Typical values are zero if a server is down (from this server's POV) and 1 if it is up.

Networking

The *pingMs* (version 1.9.1+) field is the length of time in milliseconds that the last heartbeat command was outstanding to the other member. I a member is highly responsive this value might be close to round trip ping times.

optime, optimeDate

This value will be a bit behind realtime as heartbeat requests between servers only occur every few seconds. Thus the real replication lag might be very low even if this statistic shows a few seconds.

errmsg

The *errmsg* field can contain informational messages, as shown above.

{ replSetInitiate : <config> }

Initiate a replica set. Run this command at one node only, to initiate the set. Whatever data is on the initiating node becomes the initial data for the set. This is a one time operation done at cluster creation. See also Configuration.

{ replSetReconfig: <config> }

Adjust configuration of a replica set (just like initialize)

```
db._adminCommand({replSetReconfig: cfg })
```

Note: `db._adminCommand` is short-hand for `db.getSisterDB("admin").runCommand();`

Note: as of v1.7.2, `replSetReconfig` closes all connections, meaning there will be no database response to this command.

{ replSetStepDown : <seconds> }

Manually tell a member to step down as primary. Node will become eligible to be primary again after the specified number of seconds. (Presumably, another node will take over by then if it were eligible.)

If the primary cannot see anyone who has synced to within 10 seconds of its latest op, the primary will reject the step down request. You can force the request by passing a `force : true` option.

For example:

```
> db.adminCommand({replSetStepDown : 1})
{
        "closest" : 1302040824,
        "difference" : 25,
        "errmsg" : "no secondaries within 10 seconds of my optime",
        "ok" : 0
}
> db.adminCommand({replSetStepDown : 1, force : true})
// works
```

v1.7.2+: `replSetStepDown` closes all connections, meaning there will be no database response to this command.

v1.7.3+: the seconds parameter above can be specified. In older versions, the step down was always for one minute only.

v1.9.0+: Added ability for primary to reject step down and added force option.

{ replSetFreeze : <seconds> }

v1.7.3+ (also in currently nightly).

'Freeze' state of this member to the extent we can do that. What this really means is that this node will not attempt to become primary until the time period specified expires.

You can call again with {`replSetFreeze:0`} to unfreeze sooner. A process restart unfreezes the member also.

If the node is already primary, you need to use `replSetStepdown` instead.

Forcing a Member to be Primary

Replica sets automatically negotiate which member of the set is primary and which are secondaries. If you want a certain member to be primary, there are a couple ways to force this.

Version 1.9.0+

In version 1.9.0 and higher, you can set the priority of the preferred primary to be higher than the priorities of the other nodes.

For example, if we had members A, B, and C and A is the current primary and we want B to be primary, we could give B a higher priority like so:

```
> config = rs.conf()
{
    "_id" : "foo",
    "version" : 1,
    "members" : [
        {
            "_id" : 0,
            "host" : "A",
        },
        {
            "_id" : 1,
            "host" : "B",
        },
        {
            "_id" : 2,
            "host" : "C",
        }
    ]
}
> config.version++
> // the default priority is 1
> config.members[1].priority = 2
> rs.reconfig(config)
```

Assuming B is synced to within 10 seconds of A, A will step down, B (and C) will catch up to where A is, and B will be elected primary.

If B is far behind A, A will not step down until B is within 10 seconds of its optime. This minimizes the amount of time there will be no primary on failover. If you do not care about how long the set is primary-less, you can force A to step down by running:

```
> db.adminCommand({replSetStepDown:1000000, force:1})
```

B will sync until it is caught up with A and then become primary.

Older versions

If you want to force a node to be primary at a given point in time, use the `replSetFreeze` and `replSetStepdown` commands. If we have members A, B, and C, and A is current primary, and we want B to become primary, we would send freeze to C so that it does not attempt to become primary, and then stepDown to A.

> replSetFreeze is new to v1.7.2

See the Commands page for more information.

```
$ mongo --host C
> // first check that everyone is healthy and in the states we expect:
> rs.status()
> // C : not eligible to be primary for 120 seconds
> rs.freeze(120)
> exit

$ mongo --host A
> // A : step down as primary and ineligible to be primary for 120 seconds
> rs.stepDown(120)
> // B will now become primary. for this to work B must be up to date.
```

Note that during transitions of primary, there is a short window when no node is primary.

Command replSetStepDown

```
> db.adminCommand( { replSetStepDown : <seconds> } )
```

Step down as primary. Will not try to reelect self for the specified time period (1 minute if no numeric secs value specified). (If another member with same priority takes over in the meantime, that member will stay primary.)

Note: seconds parameter is new to recent versions (v1.8). Old versions default to 60 seconds regardless of param value.

Command replSetFreeze

```
> db.adminCommand( { replSetFreeze : <seconds> } )
```

'freeze' state of member to the extent we can do that. What this really means is that this node will not attempt to become primary until the time period specified expires. You can call again with {replSetFreeze:0} to unfreeze sooner. A process restart unfreezes the member also.

Only present in newer versions (v1.8 for example).

Connecting to Replica Sets from Clients

Most drivers have been updated to provide ways to connect to a replica set. In general, this is very similar to how the drivers support connecting to a replica pair.

Instead of taking a pair of hostnames, the drivers will typically take a comma separated list of host[:port] names. This is a *seed host list*; it need not be every member of the set. The driver then looks for the primary from the seeds. The seed members will report back other members of the set that the client is not aware of yet. Thus we can add members to a replica set without changing client code.

With Sharding

With sharding, the client connects to a `mongos` process. The `mongos` process will then automatically find the right member(s) of the set.

See Also

- Driver authors should review Connecting Drivers to Replica Sets.

Replica Set FAQ

- How long does replica set failover take?
- What's a master or primary?
- What's a secondary or slave?
- Can I replicate over a WAN? The internet? What if the connection is noisy?
- Should I use master/slave replication, or replica sets?
- Should I use replica sets or replica pairs?
- Why is journaling recommended with replica sets given that replica set members already have redundant copies of the data?
- What happens if I accidentally delete the local.* files on a node?

How long does replica set failover take?

It may take 10-30 seconds for the primary to be declared down by the other members and a new primary elected. During this window of time, the cluster is down for "primary" operations – that is, writes and strong consistent reads. However, you may execute eventually consistent queries to secondaries at any time (in slaveOk mode), including during this window.

What's a master or primary?

This is a node/member which is currently the primary and processes all writes for the replica set. In a replica set, on a failover event, a different member can become primary.

By default all reads and writes go to the primary. To read from a secondary use the slaveOk option.

What's a secondary or slave?

A secondary is a node/member which applies operations from the current primary. This is done by tailing the replication oplog (local.oplog.rs). Replication from primary to secondary is asynchronous, however the secondary will try to stay as close to current as possible (often this is just a few milliseconds on a LAN).

Can I replicate over a WAN? The internet? What if the connection is noisy?

This typically works well as the replication is asynchronous; for example some MongoDB users replicate from the U.S. to Europe over the Internet. If the TCP connection between secondary and primary breaks, the secondary will try reconnecting until it succeeds. Thus network flaps do not require administrator intervention. Of course, if the network is very slow, it may not be possible for the secondary to keep up.

Should I use master/slave replication, or replica sets?

v1.8+, replica sets are preferred. (Most r&d at this point is done on replica sets.)

Should I use replica sets or replica pairs?

v1.6+, use Replica Sets. Replica pairs are deprecated.

Why is journaling recommended with replica sets given that replica set members already have redundant copies of the data?

We recommend using journaling with replica sets. A good way to start is to turn it on for a single member, then you can see if there is any noticable performance difference between that member and the others.

Journaling facilitates fast crash recovery and eliminates the need for repairDatabase or a full resync from another member. Also if you are working with only one data center it is helpful if all machines lose power simultaneously.

Additionally this makes nodes going down and up fully automated with no sys admin intervention (at least for the database layer of the stack).

Note there is some write overhead from journaling; reads are the same speed.

What happens if I accidentally delete the local.* files on a node?

When you restart the node it will be contacted by the primary and sent the (current) configuration, and the oplog will be created. If `--fastsync` is not enabled then a full resync will be done (i.e., all databases on that host will be dropped and then re-copied from another member).

Replica Sets Troubleshooting

can't get local.system.replset config from self or any seed (EMPTYCONFIG)

Set needs to be initiated. Run `rs.initiate()` from the shell.

If the set is already initiated and this is a new node, verify it is present in the replica set's configuration and there are no typos in the host names:

```
> // send to a working node in the set:
> rs.conf()
```

Replication halts with "objects in a capped ns cannot grow" (assertion 10003)

Generally this happens if you have a capped collection without an `_id` index and you are using a custom `_id`.

To fix, make sure that any capped collections you are using have a unique index on the `_id` field and resync the halted slave.

"couldn't initiate : can't find self in the replset config my port: 27017" under Mac OS X

Generally this happens because your hostname and computer name do not match. The safest solution is to supply a config object to rs.initiate. Another solution is to:

Open `System Preferences`, select the `Sharing` page, and set your `Computer Name` at the top. Then open `Terminal` and run

```
$ sudo hostname (name chosen above including the .local at the end)
```

It will prompt you for your password. Once the command has finished, rs.initiate should work.

Reconfiguring a replica set when members are down

One can easily reconfigure a replica set when some members are down as long as a majority is still up. In that case, simply send the reconfig command to the current primary.

If there is no primary (and this condition is not transient), you must manually intervene to change the set configuration. Reconfiguring a minority partition can be dangerous, as two sides of a network partition won't both be aware of the reconfiguration. Thus, this should not be done "automatically," but only by an operator after careful thought.

In 1.9.1, the `force : true` option was added for reconfiguring the set when a majority is down. `force` is for **manually** reconfiguring the set when there is a serious problem, such as a disaster recovery failover. Do not use it every time you reconfigure, or put it into a script that's automatically run at certain times, or use it when there still a primary.

> ⚠ If you use `force` and look at your replica set config, you will notice that your version number has jumped a lot (by tens or hundreds of thousands). This is normal and can be ignored.

Suggestions on how to deal with majority outages are outlined below.

Example 1

A replica set has three members, which in the past were healthy. Two of the servers are permanently destroyed. We wish to bring the remaining member online immediately.

Version 1.9.1+

1. Consider doing a backup on the surviving member, both for safety and to bring up more new set members more easily.
2. Reconfigure the set using the `force` option on the surviving member:

```
> // remove the other members of the set
> config = rs.config()
> config.members = [config.members[survivingMember]]
> rs.reconfig(config, {force : true})
```

Now you should have a functioning primary again. To add secondaries, copy the backup you made to other machines, start up `mongod` on those machines, and add them to the set.

Pre-1.9.1 versions: option #1

One option is to make the last standing mongod a standalone server and not a set member:

1. stop the surviving `mongod`
2. consider doing a backup...
3. delete the `local.*` datafiles in the data directory. this will prevent potential future confusion if it is ever restarted with --replSet in the future.
4. restart `mongod` without the `--replSet` parameter.

We are now back online with a single node that is not a replica set member. Clients can use it for both reads and writes.

Pre-1.9.1 versions: option #2

Suppose we wish to bring the remaining member online and add a new member to its set. We cannot reconfigure the existing set with only 1 of 3 members available. However, we can "break the mirror" and start a new set:

1. stop the surviving `mongod`
2. consider doing a backup...
3. delete the `local.*` datafiles in the data directory.
4. restart the `mongod` with a new replica set name
5. initiate this new set
6. then, add the new second member

Example 2

A replica set has five members, which in the past were healthy. Three of the servers are permanently destroyed. We wish to bring the remaining members online.

Version 1.9.1+

Choose one of the members (either is fine) and force reconfigure the set with a new config containing just the two alive nodes. Once the config has been propegated, whichever member was more up-to-date will become primary.

Earlier versions

As in the previous example, we will use the "break the mirror" technique. Unfortunately one of the two members must be re-synced.

1. stop the surviging `mongod`'s
2. consider doing a backup...
3. delete the `local.*` datafiles on server 1
4. delete (ideally just move to a backup location) all the datafiles from server 2
5. restart both `mongod`'s with the new replica set name on the command line for each
6. initiate this new set on server 1
7. then, add the new second member (server 2)

See Also

- Reconfiguring when Members are Up

Resyncing a Very Stale Replica Set Member

Error RS102

MongoDB writes operations to an oplog. For replica sets this data is stored in collection local.oplog.rs. This is a capped collection and wraps when full "RRD"-style. Thus, it is important that the oplog collection is large enough to buffer a good amount of writes when some members of a replica set are down. If too many writes occur, the down nodes, when they resume, cannot catch up. In that case, a full resync would be required.

In v1.8+, you can run db.printReplicationInfo() to see the status of the oplog on both the current primary and the overly stale member. This should show you their times, and if their logs have an overlapping time range. If the time ranges don't overlap, there is no way for the stale secondary to recover and catch up (except for a full resync).

```
x:SECONDARY> db.printReplicationInfo()
configured oplog size:   47.6837158203125MB
log length start to end: 132secs (0.04hrs)
oplog first event time:  Wed Apr 13 2011 02:58:08 GMT-0400
oplog last event time:   Wed Apr 13 2011 03:00:20 GMT-0400
now:                     Wed Apr 13 2011 14:09:08 GMT-0400
```

Sizing the oplog

The command line `--oplogSize` parameter sets the oplog size. A good rule of thumb is 5 to 10% of total disk space. On 64 bit builds, the default is large and similar to this percentage. You can check your existing oplog sizes from the `mongo` shell :

```
> use local
> db.oplog.rs.stats()
```

What to do on a RS102 sync error

If one of your members has been offline and is now too far behind to catch up, you will need to resync. There are a number of ways to do this.

1. **Delete all data**: If you stop the failed `mongod`, delete all data in the dbpath (including subdirectories), and restart it, it will automatically resynchronize itself. Of course this may be slow if the database is huge or the network slow.
2. **Copy data from another member**: You can copy all the data files from another member of the set IF you have a snapshot of that member's data file's. This can be done in a number of ways. The simplest is to stop `mongod` on the source member, copy all its files, and then restart `mongod` on both nodes. The Mongo fsync and lock feature is another way to achieve this if you are using EBS or a SAN. On a slow network, snapshotting all the datafiles from another (inactive) member to a gziped tarball is a good solution. Also similar strategies work well when using SANs and services such as Amazon Elastic Block Service snapshots.
3. **Find a member with older data**: *Note: this is only possible (and occurs automatically) in 1.8.0+*. If another member of the replica set has a large enough oplog or is far enough behind that the stale member can sync from it, the stale member can bootstrap itself from this member.

See Also

- Adding a New Set Member
- Moving or Replacing a Member

Replica Sets Limits

v1.6

- Authentication mode not supported. JIRA
- Limits on config changes to sets at first. Especially when a lot of set members are down.
- Map/reduce writes new collections to the server. Because of this, for now it may only be used on the primary. This will be enhanced later.
- A set can contain
    - A maximum of 12 members
    - A maximum of 7 members that can vote

Replica Set Internals

- Design Concepts
- Configuration
    - Command Line
    - Node Types
    - local.system.replset
    - Set Initiation (Initial Setup)
- Design
    - Server States
    - Applying Operations
    - OpOrdinal
    - Picking Primary
    - Heartbeat Monitoring
    - Assumption of Primary
    - Failover
    - Resync (Connecting to a New Primary)
    - Consensus
    - Increasing Durability
    - Reading from Secondaries and Staleness
- Example
- Administration
- Future Versions

Design Concepts

Check out the Replica Set Design Concepts for some of the core concepts underlying MongoDB Replica Sets.

Configuration

Command Line

We specify --replSet *set_name*/*seed_hostname_list* on the command line. *seed_hostname_list* is a (partial) list of some members of the set. The system then fetches full configuration information from the collection local.system.replset. *set_name* is specified to help the system catch misconfigurations.

Node Types

Conceptually, we have some different types of nodes:

- Standard - a standard node as described above. Can transition to and from being a *primary* or a *secondary* over time. There is only one primary (master) server at any point in time.
- Passive - a server can participate as if it were a member of the replica set, but be specified to never be Primary.
- Arbiter - member of the cluster for consensus purposes, but receives no data. Arbiters cannot be seed hosts.

Each node in the set has a *priority* setting. On a resync (see below), the rule is: choose as master the node with highest priority that is healthy. If multiple nodes have the same priority, pick the node with the freshest data. For example, we might use 1.0 priority for Normal members, 0.0 for passive (0 indicates cannot be primary no matter what), and 0.5 for a server in a less desirable data center.

local.system.replset

This collection has one document storing the replica set's configuration. See the configuration page for details.

Set Initiation (Initial Setup)

For a new cluster, on negotiation the max OpOrdinal is zero everywhere. We then know we have a new replica set with no data yet. A special command

```
{replSetInitiate:1}
```

is sent to a (single) server to begin things.

Design

Server States

- *Primary* - Can be thought of as "master" although which server is primary can vary over time. Only 1 server is primary at a given point in time.
- *Secondary* - Can be thought of as a slave in the cluster; varies over time.
- *Recovering* - getting back in sync before entering Secondary mode.

Applying Operations

Secondaries apply operations from the Primary. Each applied operation is also written to the secondary's local oplog. We need only apply from the current primary (and be prepared to switch if that changes).

OpOrdinal

We use a monotonically increasing ordinal to represent each operation.

These values appear in the oplog (local.oplog.$main). maxLocalOpOrdinal() returns the largest value logged. This value represents how up-to-date we are. The first operation is logged with ordinal 1.

Note two servers in the set could in theory generate different operations with the same ordinal under some race conditions. Thus for full uniqueness we must look at the combination of server id and op ordinal.

Picking Primary

We use a consensus protocol to pick a primary. Exact details will be spared here but that basic process is:

1. get maxLocalOpOrdinal from each server.
2. if a majority of servers are not up (from this server's POV), remain in Secondary mode and stop.
3. if the last op time seems very old, stop and await human intervention.
4. else, using a consensus protocol, pick the server with the highest maxLocalOpOrdinal as the Primary.

Any server in the replica set, when it fails to reach master, attempts a new election process.

Heartbeat Monitoring

All nodes monitor all other nodes in the set via heartbeats. If the current primary cannot see half of the nodes in the set (including itself), it will fall back to secondary mode. This monitoring is a way to check for network partitions. Otherwise in a network partition, a server might think it is still primary when it is not.

Assumption of Primary

When a server becomes primary, we assume it has the latest data. Any data newer than the new primary's will be discarded. Any discarded data is backed up to a flat file as raw BSON, to allow for the possibility of manual recovery (see this case for some details). In general, manual recovery will not be needed - if data must be guaranteed to be committed it should be written to a majority of the nodes in the set.

Failover

We renegotiate when the primary is unavailable, see Picking Primary.

Resync (Connecting to a New Primary)

When a secondary connects to a new primary, it must resynchronize its position. It is possible the secondary has operations that were never committed at the primary. In this case, we roll those operations back. Additionally we may have new operations from a previous primary that never replicated elsewhere. The method is basically:

- for each operation in our oplog that does not exist at the primary, (1) remove from oplog and (2) resync the document in question by a query to the primary for that object. update the object, deleting if it does not exist at the primary.

We can work our way back in time until we find a few operations that are consistent with the new primary, and then stop.

Any data that is removed during the rollback is stored offline (see Assumption of Primary, so one can manually recover it. It can't be done automatically because there may be conflicts.

Reminder: you can use w= to ensure writes make it to a majority of slaves before returning to the user, to ensure no writes need to be rolled back.

Consensus

Fancier methods would converge faster but the current method is a good baseline. Typically only ~2 nodes will be jockeying for primary status at any given time so there isn't be much contention:

- query all others for their maxappliedoptime
- try to elect self if we have the highest time and can see a majority of nodes
    - if a tie on highest time, delay a short random amount first
    - elect (selfid,maxoptime) msg -> others
- if we get a msg and our time is higher, we send back NO
- we must get back a majority of YES
- if a YES is sent, we respond NO to all others for 1 minute. Electing ourself counts as a YES.
- repeat as necessary after a random sleep

Increasing Durability

We can trade off durability versus availability in a replica set. When a primary fails, a secondary will assume primary status with whatever data it has. Thus, we have some desire to see that things replicate quickly. Durability is guaranteed once a majority of servers in the replica set have an operation.

To improve durability clients can call getlasterror and wait for acknowledgement until replication of a an operation has occurred. The client can then selectively call for a blocking, somewhat more synchronous operation.

Reading from Secondaries and Staleness

Secondaries can report via a command how far behind the primary they are. Then, a read-only client can decide if the server's data is too stale or close enough for usage.

Example

```
server-a: secondary oplog: ()
server-b: secondary oplog: ()
server-c: secondary oplog: ()
…
server-a: primary oplog: (a1,a2,a3,a4,a5)
server-b: secondary oplog: ()
server-c: secondary oplog: ()
…
server-a: primary oplog: (a1,a2,a3,a4,a5)
server-b: secondary oplog: (a1)
server-c: secondary oplog: (a1,a2,a3)
…
// server-a goes down
…
server-b: secondary oplog: (a1)
server-c: secondary oplog: (a1,a2,a3)
...
server-b: secondary oplog: (a1)
server-c: primary oplog: (a1,a2,a3) // c has highest ord and becomes primary
...
server-b: secondary oplog: (a1,a2,a3)
server-c: primary oplog: (a1,a2,a3,c4)
...
server-a resumes
...
server-a: recovering oplog: (a1,a2,a3,a4,a5)
server-b: secondary oplog: (a1,a2,a3)
server-c: primary oplog: (a1,a2,a3,c4)
…
server-a: recovering oplog: (a1,a2,a3,c4)
server-b: secondary oplog: (a1,a2,a3,c4)
server-c: primary oplog: (a1,a2,a3,c4)
…
server-a: secondary oplog: (a1,a2,a3,c4)
server-b: secondary oplog: (a1,a2,a3,c4)
server-c: primary oplog: (a1,a2,a3,c4,c5,c6,c7,c8)
…
server-a: secondary oplog: (a1,a2,a3,c4,c5,c6,c7,c8)
```

server-b: secondary oplog: (a1,a2,a3,c4,c5,c6,c7,c8)
server-c: primary oplog: (a1,a2,a3,c4,c5,c6,c7,c8)

In the above example, server-c becomes primary after server-a fails. Operations (a4,a5) are lost. c4 and c5 are new operations with the same ordinals.

Administration

See the Replica Set Commands page for full info.

Commands:

- { replSetFreeze : <bool> } "freeze" or unfreeze a set. When frozen, new nodes cannot be elected master. Used when doing administration. Details TBD.
- { replSetGetStatus : 1 } get status of the set, from this node's POV
- { replSetInitiate : 1 }
- { ismaster : 1 } check if this node is master

Future Versions

- add support for replication trees / hierarchies
- replicating to a slave that is not a member of the set (perhaps we do not need this given we have the Passive set member type)

Master Slave

- Configuration and Setup
- Command Line Options
  - Master
  - Slave
  - --slavedelay
- Diagnostics
- Security
- Master Slave vs. Replica Sets
- Administrative Tasks
  - Failing over to a Slave (Promotion)
  - Inverting Master and Slave
  - Creating a slave from an existing master's disk image
  - Creating a slave from an existing slave's disk image
  - Resyncing a slave that is too stale to recover
  - Slave chaining
  - Correcting a slave's source
- See Also

Configuration and Setup

To configure an instance of Mongo to be a master database in a master-slave configuration, you'll need to start two instances of the database, one in *master* mode, and the other in *slave* mode.

> **Data Storage**
> The following examples explicitly specify the location of the data files on the command line. This is unnecessary if you are running the master and slave on separate machines, but in the interest of the readers who are going try this setup on a single node, they are supplied in the interest of safety.

```
$ bin/mongod --master [--dbpath /data/masterdb/]
```

As a result, the master server process will create a `local.oplog.$main` collection. This is the "transaction log" which queues operations which will be applied at the slave.

To configure an instance of Mongo to be a slave database in a master-slave configuration:

```
$ bin/mongod --slave --source <masterhostname>[:<port>]  [--dbpath /data/slavedb/]
```

Details of the source server are then stored in the slave's `local.sources` collection. Instead of specifying the `--source` parameter, one can add an object to `local.sources` which specifies information about the master server:

```
$ bin/mongo <slavehostname>/local
> db.sources.find(); // confirms the collection is empty.  then:
> db.sources.insert( { host: <masterhostname> } );
```

- *host: masterhostname* is the IP address or FQDN of the master database machine. Append *:port* to the server hostname if you wish to run on a nonstandard port number.
- *only: databasename* (optional) if specified, indicates that only the specified database should replicate. NOTE: A bug with `only` is fixed in v1.2.4+.

A slave may become out of sync with a master if it falls far behind the data updates available from that master, or if the slave is terminated and then restarted some time later when relevant updates are no longer available from the master. If a slave becomes out of sync, replication will terminate and operator intervention is required by default if replication is to be restarted. An operator may restart replication using the {`resync:1`} command. Alternatively, the command line option `--autoresync` causes a slave to restart replication automatically (after ten second pause) if it becomes out of sync. If the `--autoresync` option is specified, the slave will not attempt an automatic resync more than once in a ten minute periond.

The `--oplogSize` command line option may be specified (along with `--master`) to configure the amount of disk space in megabytes which will be allocated for storing updates to be made available to slave nodes. If the `--oplogSize` option is not specified, the amount of disk space for storing updates will be 5% of available disk space (with a minimum of 1GB) for 64bit machines, or 50MB for 32bit machines.

Command Line Options

Master

```
--master              master mode
  --oplogSize arg       size limit (in MB) for op log
```

Slave

```
--slave               slave mode
  --source arg          arg specifies master as <server:port>
  --only arg            arg specifies a single database to replicate
  --slavedelay arg      arg specifies delay (in seconds) to be used
                        when applying master ops to slave
  --autoresync          automatically resync if slave data is stale
```

--slavedelay

Sometimes its beneficial to have a slave that is purposefully many hours behind to prevent human error. In MongoDB 1.3.3+, you can specify this with the --slavedelay mongod command line option. Specify the delay in seconds to be used when applying master operations to the slave.

Specify this option at the slave. Example command line:

```
mongod --slave --source mymaster.foo.com --slavedelay 7200
```

Diagnostics

Check master status from the `mongo` shell with:

```
// inspects contents of local.oplog.$main on master and reports status:
db.printReplicationInfo()
```

Check slave status from the `mongo` shell with:

```
// inspects contents of local.sources on the slave and reports status:
db.printSlaveReplicationInfo()
```

(Note you can evaluate the above functions without the parenthesis above to see their javascript source and a bit on the internals.)

As of 1.3.2, you can do this on the slave

```
db._adminCommand( { serverStatus : 1 , repl : N } )
```

`N` is the level of diagnostic information and can have the following values:

- 0 - none
- 1 - local (doesn't have to connect to other server)
- 2 - remote (has to check with the master)

Security

When security is enabled, one must configure a user account for the local database that exists on both servers.

The slave-side of a replication connection first looks for a user repl in local.system.users. If present, that user is used to authenticate against the local database on the source side of the connection. If repl user does not exist, the first user object in local.system.users is tried.

The local database works like the admin database: an account for local has access to the entire server.

Example security configuration when security is enabled:

```
$ mongo <slavehostname>/admin -u <existingadminusername> -p<adminpassword>
> use local
> db.addUser('repl', <replpassword>);
^c
$ mongo <masterhostname>/admin -u <existingadminusername> -p<adminpassword>
> use local
> db.addUser('repl', <replpassword>);
```

Master Slave vs. Replica Sets

Master/slave and replica sets are alternative ways to achieve replication with MongoDB.

Replica sets are newer (v1.6+) and more flexible, although a little more work to set up and learn at first.

The following replica set configuration is equivalent to a two node master/slave setup with hosts M (master) and S (slave):

```
$ # run mongod instances with "--replSet mysetname" parameter
$ # then in the shell:
$ mongo --host M
> cfg = {
>   _id : 'mysetname',
>   members : [
>     { _id : 0, host : 'M', priority : 1 },
>     { _id : 1, host : 'S', priority : 0, votes : 0 }
>   ]
> };
> rs.initiate(cfg);
```

Administrative Tasks

Failing over to a Slave (Promotion)

To permanently fail over from a down master (*A*) to a slave (*B*):

- shut down *A*
- stop `mongod` on B
- backup or delete local.* datafiles on B
- restart `mongod` on B with the `--master` option

Note that is a one time cutover and the "mirror" is broken. A cannot be brought back in sync with B without a full resync.

Inverting Master and Slave

If you have a master (*A*) and a slave (*B*) and you would like to reverse their roles, this is the recommended sequence of steps. Note the following assumes *A* is healthy, up-to-date and up.

1. Halt writes on *A* (using the fsync command)
2. Make sure *B* is caught up
3. Shut down *B*
4. Wipe *local.** on B to remove old local.sources
5. Start up *B* with the `--master` option
6. Do a write on *B* (primes the oplog to provide a new sync start point).
7. Shut down *B*. *B* will now have a new set of local.* files.
8. Shut down *A* and replace *A*'s *local.** files with a copy of *B*'s new *local.** files. Remember to compress the files before/while copying them – they can be quite large.
9. Start *B* with the `--master` option
10. Start *A* with all the usual slave options plus `--fastsync`

If *A* is **not** healthy but the hardware is okay (power outage, server crash, etc.):

- Skip the first two steps
- Replace **all** of *A*'s files with *B*'s files in step 8.

If the hardware is not okay, replace *A* with a new machine and then follow the instructions in the previous paragraph.

Creating a slave from an existing master's disk image

`--fastsync` is a way to start a slave starting with an existing master disk image/backup. This option declares that the adminstrator guarantees the image is correct and completely up to date with that of the master. If you have a full and complete copy of data from a master you can use this option to avoid a full synchronization upon starting the slave.

Creating a slave from an existing slave's disk image

You can just copy the other slave's data file snapshot without any special options. Note data snapshots should only be taken when a `mongod` process is down or in fsync-and-lock state.

Resyncing a slave that is too stale to recover

Slaves asynchronously apply write operations from the master. These operations are stored in the master's oplog. The oplog is finite in length. If a slave is too far behind, a full resync will be necessary. See the Halted Replication page.

Slave chaining

Slaves cannot be "chained", they must all connect to the master directly. If a slave is chained to another slave you may see the following in the logs: `assertion 13051 tailable cursor requested on non capped collection ns:local.oplog.$main`

Correcting a slave's source

If you accidentally type the wrong host for the slave's source or wish to change it, you can do so by manually modifying the slave's *local.sources* collection. For example, say you start the slave with:

```
$ mongod --slave --source prod.missisippi
```

Restart the slave without the *--slave* and *--source* arguments.

```
$ mongod
```

Now start the shell and update the *local.sources* collection.

```
> use local
switched to db local
>  db.sources.update({host : "prod.missisippi"}, {$set : {host : "prod.mississippi"}})
```

Restart the slave with the correct command line arguments or no *--source* argument (once *local.sources* is set, no *--source* is necessary).

```
$ ./mongod --slave --source prod.mississippi
$ # or
$ ./mongod --slave
```

Now your slave will be pointing at the correct master.

See Also

- Replica Sets

Halted Replication

> These instructions are for master/slave replication. For replica sets, see Resyncing a Very Stale Replica Set Member instead.

If you're running mongod with master-slave replication, there are certain scenarios where the slave will halt replication because it hasn't kept up with the master's oplog.

The first is when a slave is prevented from replicating for an extended period of time, due perhaps to a network partition or the killing of the slave process itself. The best solution in this case is to resyc the slave. To do this, open the mongo shell and point it at the slave:

```
$ mongo <slave_host_and_port>
```

Then run the resync command:

```
> use admin
> db.runCommand({resync: 1})
```

This will force a full resync of all data (which will be very slow on a large database). The same effect can be achieved by stopping `mongod` on the slave, delete all slave datafiles, and restarting it.

Increasing the OpLog Size

Since the oplog is a capped collection, it's allocated to a fixed size; this means that as more data is entered, the collection will loop around and overwrite itself instead of growing beyond its pre-allocated size. If the slave can't keep up with this process, then replication will be halted. The solution is to increase the size of the master's oplog. There are a couple of ways to do this, depending on how big your oplog will be and how much downtime you can stand. But first you need to figure out how big an oplog you need.

If the current oplog size is wrong, how do you figure out what's right? The goal is not to let the oplog age out in the time it takes to clone the database. The first step is to print the replication info. On the master node, run this command:

```
> db.printReplicationInfo();
```

You'll see output like this:

```
configured oplog size:   1048.576MB
log length start to end: 7200secs (2hrs)
oplog first event time:  Wed Mar 03 2010 16:20:39 GMT-0500 (EST)
oplog last event time:   Wed Mar 03 2010 18:20:39 GMT-0500 (EST)
now:                     Wed Mar 03 2010 18:40:34 GMT-0500 (EST)
```

This indicates that you're adding data to the database at a rate of 524MB/hr. If an initial clone takes 10 hours, then the oplog should be at least 5240MB, so something closer to 8GB would make for a safe bet.

The standard way of changing the oplog size involves stopping the `mongod` master, deleting the local.* oplog datafiles, and then restarting with the oplog size you need, measured in MB:

```
$ # Stop mongod - killall mongod or kill -2 or ctrl-c) - then:
$ rm /data/db/local.*
$ mongod --oplog=8038 --master
```

Once you've changed the oplog size, restart with slave with --autoresync:

```
mongod --slave --autoresync
```

This method of oplog creation might pose a problem if you need a large oplog (say, > 10GB), since the time it takes `mongod` to pre-allocate the oplog files may mean too much downtime. If this is the case, read on.

Manually Allocating OpLog Files

An alternative approach is to create the oplog files manually before shutting down `mongod`. Suppose you need an 20GB oplog; here's how you'd go about creating the files:

1. Create a temporary directory, /tmp/local.
2. You'll be creating ten 2GB datafiles. Here's a shell script for doing just that:

```
cd /tmp/local
  for i in {0..9}
      do
      echo $i
      head -c 2146435072 /dev/zero > local.$i
      done
```

Note that the datafiles aren't exactly 2GB due MongoDB's max int size.

3. Shut down the `mongod` master (kill -2) and then replace the oplog files:

```
$ mv /data/db/local.* /safe/place
$ mv /tmp/local/* /data/db/
```

4. Restart the master with the new oplog size:

```
$ mongod --master --oplogSize=20000
```

5. Finally, resync the slave. This can be done by shutting down the slave, deleting all its datafiles, and restarting it.

Replica Pairs

> **Replica pairs will be removed for 1.8**
>
> Replica pairs should be migrated to their replacement, Replica Sets.

- Setup of Replica Pairs
- Consistency
- Security
- Replacing a Replica Pair Server
- Querying the slave
- What is and when should you use an arbiter?
- Working with an existing (non-paired) database

Setup of Replica Pairs

Mongo supports a concept of *replica pairs*. These databases automatically coordinate which is the master and which is the slave at a given point in time.

At startup, the databases will negotiate which is master and which is slave. Upon an outage of one database server, the other will automatically take over and become master from that point on. In the event of another failure in the future, master status would transfer back to the other

server. The databases manage this themselves internally.

Note: Generally, start with empty /data/db directories for each pair member when creating and running the pair for the first time. See section on Existing Databases below for more information.

To start a pair of databases in this mode, run each as follows:

```
$ ./mongod --pairwith <remoteserver> --arbiter <arbiterserver>
```

where

- *remoteserver* is the hostname of the other server in the pair. Append *:port* to the server hostname if you wish to run on a nonstandard port number.
- *arbiterserver* is the hostname (and optional port number) of an *arbiter*. An arbiter is a Mongo database server that helps negotiate which member of the pair is master at a given point in time. Run the arbiter on a third machine; it is a "tie-breaker" effectively in determining which server is master when the members of the pair cannot contact each other. You may also run with no arbiter by not including the --arbiter option. In that case, both servers will assume master status if the network partitions.

One can manually check which database is currently the master:

```
$ ./mongo
> db.$cmd.findOne({ismaster:1});
{ "ismaster" : 0.0 , "remote" : "192.168.58.1:30001" , "ok" : 1.0  }
```

(Note: When security is on, `remote` is only returned if the connection is authenticated for the `admin` database.)

However, Mongo drivers with replica pair support normally manage this process for you.

Consistency

Members of a pair are only eventually consistent on a failover. If machine L of the pair was master and fails, its last couple seconds of operations may not have made it to R - R will not have those operations applied to its dataset until L recovers later.

Security

Example security configuration when security is enabled:

```
$ ./mongo <lefthost>/admin -u <adminusername> -p<adminpassword>
> use local
> db.addUser('repl', <replpassword>);
^c
$ ./mongo <righthost>/admin -u <adminusername> -p<adminpassword>
> use local
> db.addUser('repl', <replpassword>);
```

Replacing a Replica Pair Server

When one of the servers in a Mongo replica pair set fails, should it come back online, the system recovers automatically. However, should a machine completely fail, it will need to be replaced, and its replacement will begin with no data. The following procedure explains how to replace one of the machines in a pair.

Let's assume nodes (`n1`, `n2`) is the old pair and that `n2` dies. We want to switch to (`n1`,`n3`).

1. If possible, assure the dead `n2` is offline and will not come back online: otherwise it may try communicating with its old pair partner.
2. We need to tell `n1` to pair with `n3` instead of `n2`. We do this with a `replacepeer` command. Be sure to check for a successful return value from this operation.

   ```
   n1> ./mongo n1/admin
   > db.$cmd.findOne({replacepeer:1});
   {
       "info" : "adjust local.sources hostname; db restart now required" ,
       "ok" : 1.0
   }
   ```

   At this point, `n1` is still running but is reset to not be confused when it begins talking to `n3` in the future. The server is still up although

replication is now disabled.

3. Restart n1 with the right command line to talk to n3

```
n1> ./mongod --pairwith n3 --arbiter <arbiterserver>
```

4. Start n3 paired with n1.

```
n3> ./mongod --pairwith n1 --arbiter <arbiterserver>
```

Note that n3 will not accept any operations as "master" until fully synced with n1, and that this may take some time if there is a substantial amount of data on n1.

Querying the slave

You can query the slave if you set the slave ok flag. In the shell:

```
db.getMongo().setSlaveOk()
```

What is and when should you use an arbiter?

The arbiter is used in some situations to determine which side of a pair is master. In the event of a network partition (left and right are both up, but can't communicate) whoever can talk to the arbiter becomes master.

If your left and right server are on the same switch, an arbiter isn't necessary. If you're running on the same ec2 availability zone, probably not needed as well. But if you've got left and right on different ec2 availability zones, then an arbiter should be used.

Working with an existing (non-paired) database

Care must be taken when enabling a pair for the first time if you have existing datafiles you wish to use that were created from a singleton database. Follow the following procedure to start the pair. Below, we call the two servers "left" and "right".

- assure no mongod processes are running on both servers
- we assume the data files to be kept are on server left. Check that there is no local.* datafiles in left's /data/db (--dbpath) directory. If there are, remove them.
- check that there are no datafiles at all on right's /data/db directory
- start the left process with the appropriate command line including --pairwith argument
- start the right process with the appropriate paired command line

If both left and right servers have datafiles in their dbpath directories at pair initiation, errors will occur. Further, you do not want a local database (which contains replication metadata) during initiation of a new pair.

Replication Oplog Length

Replication uses an operation log ("oplog") to store write operations. These operations replay asynchronously on other nodes.

The length of the oplog is important if a secondary is down. The larger the log, the longer the secondary can be down and still recover. Once the oplog has exceeded the downtime of the secondary, there is no way for the secondary to apply the operations; it will then have to do a full synchronization of the data from the primary.

By default, on 64 bit builds, oplogs are quite large - perhaps 5% of disk space. Generally this is a reasonable setting.

The oplog is a capped collection, and fixed size once allocated. Once it is created it is not easy to change without losing the existing data. This will be addressed in future versions so that it can be extended.

The `mongod --oplogSize` command line parameter sets the size of the oplog. Changing this parameter after the oplog is created does not change the size of your oplog.

This collection is named:

- `local.oplog.$main` for **master/slave** replication
- `local.oplog.rs` **for replica sets**

See also

- The Halted Replication page

- Resyncing a Very Stale Replica Set Member
- Replica Sets - Oplog

Sharding

MongoDB scales horizontally via an auto-sharding architecture.

Sharding offers:

- Automatic balancing for changes in load and data distribution
- Easy addition of new machines
- Scaling out to one thousand nodes
- No single points of failure
- Automatic failover

Getting Started

- Introduction Philosophy, use cases, and its core components.
- Simple Initial Sharding Architecture
- Configuration Setting up your cluster.
- Administration

Additional Info

- Failover How failover/HA works.
- Sharding Internals Implementation details.
- Restrictions and Limitations
- FAQ Frequently asked questions.
- HOWTO
    - Changing Config Servers

Presentations and Further Materials

- How Sharding Works - O'Reilly Webcast (February 2011)
- How queries work with sharding (PDF)
- Illustration of chunks and migration (PDF) http://www.10gen.com/video/mongosf2011/sharding
- Scaling MongoDB - O'Reilly ebook
- Schema design at scale (video)
- Mongo Sharding Architecture, Implementation, Internals (video)

See Also

- Replication

Changing Config Servers

Sections:

- Upgrading from one config server to three
- Renaming or moving your config servers.
- Replacing a dead config server

> The config server data is the most important data in your entire cluster. Back it up before doing config server maintenance.

Adding and changing config servers is a bit tricky right now. This will be improved in a future release, see http://jira.mongodb.org/browse/SERVER-1658.

Note that config servers are **not** a replica set: instead they use a two phase commit protocol to keep their data synchronous. Thus each config server (if you have 3) has exactly the same data. When one or more config servers are down, the others are available for reading, but not for writing. During that window of time, sharding metadata will be static (which is fine for a while).

Upgrading from one config server to three

Unfortunately you will need to shutdown the entire system.

1. Shutdown all processes (mongod, mongos, config server).

2. Copy the data subdirectories (dbpath tree) from the config server to the new config servers.
3. Start the config servers.
4. Restart mongos processes with the new --configdb parameter.
5. Restart mongod processes.

Renaming or moving your config servers.

If you wish to use a different name or ip address in the *--configdb* option then this applies to you.

- Follows the directions above but skip steps 2 and 3.

Replacing a dead config server

Let's assume we have been running with mongos commands lines of:

```
mongos --configdb hosta,hostb,hostc
```

and that hostb has died. We want to replace it.

> You cannot change the name/ip used in the `mongos --configdb` line; if you wish to do this you must follow the directions above for renaming or moving your servers.

1. Provision a new machine. Give it the same hostname (hostb) that the host to be replaced had.
2. Shut down (only) one of the other config server processes – say, hostc. Then copy its data files to hostb. (We shut down so that we know we have a consistent image of the datafiles. See also the backups page for alternatives.)
3. Restart the config server on hostc.
4. Start the config server for the first time on hostb.

That's it. The key above is that we reused the logical (DNS) name of the host. That way we do not have to tell the other (many) processes in the system where the config servers are. Check the length of your DNS ttl using the dig command.

Simple Initial Sharding Architecture

- Overview
- Goal
- Machines Locations
  - Datacenter Roles
- Replica sets
- Config Servers
- MongoS (routers)
  - Suggested
  - Alternative
  - Startup Options
- Everything is running
  - Notes

Overview

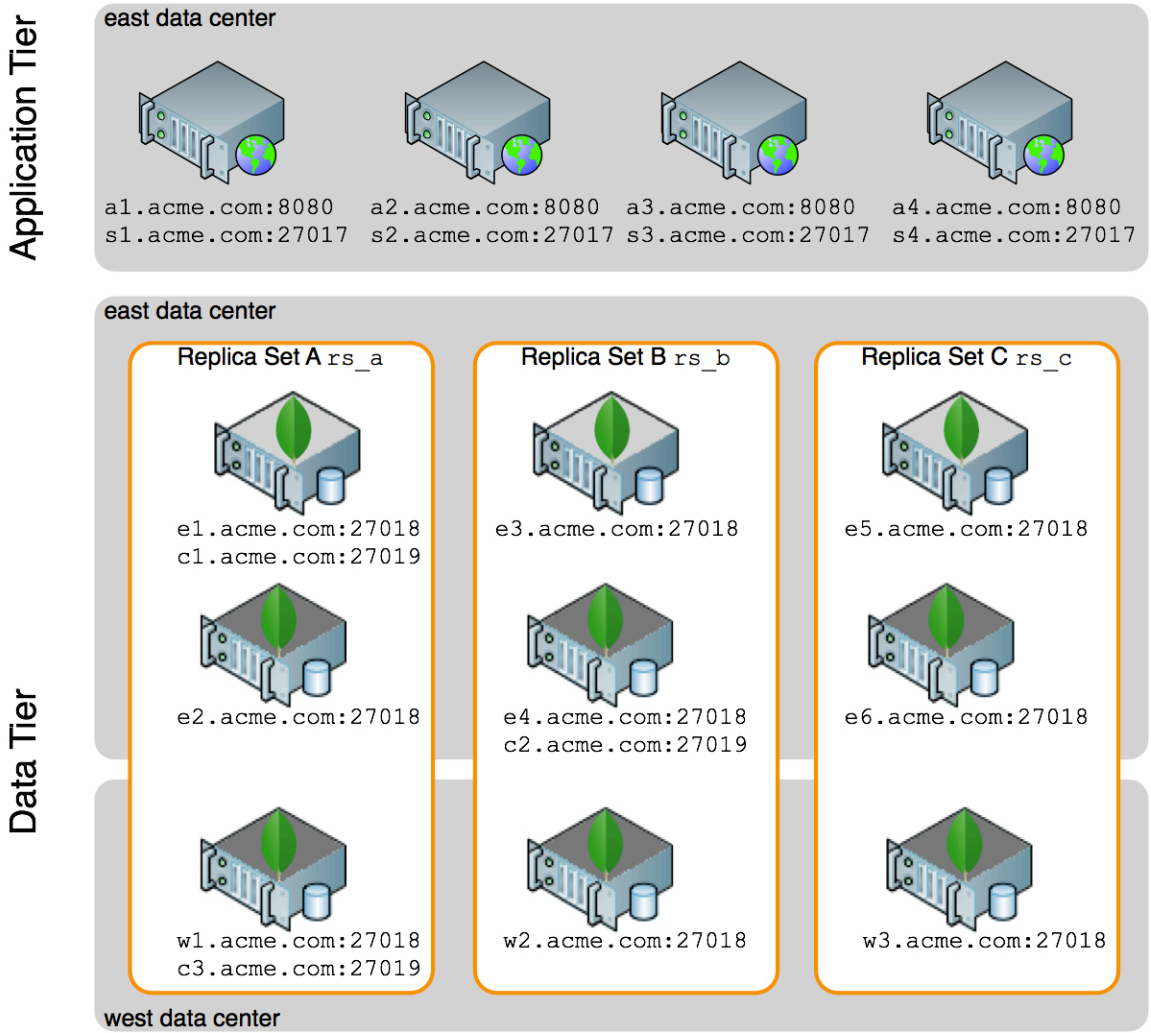
This is a sample sharding architecture that is a good starting point for building your cluster.

Goal

- Two datacenters (East=primary, West=backup/DR)
- Data Tier (MongoDB)
  - 3 shards
  - 3 nodes per shard
  - 9 hosts total
- Application Tier
  - 4 application servers

Machines Locations

- e1-e6 are in 1 datacenter (East)
- w1-w3 are in another datacenter (West)



Datacenter Roles

We'll use datacenter East as the primary, and data center West as disaster recovery.

Replica sets

The replica set nodes in West will be priority 0 so they don't become master automatically.

The first thing we need to do is setup the 3 replica sets

- Replica Set A:
  - e1.acme.com : priority=1
  - e2.acme.com : priority=1
  - w1.acme.com : priority=0

Start the mongod process on each node, e.g.

```
e1.acme.com# mongod --shardsvr --replSet rs_a
e2.acme.com# mongod --shardsvr --replSet rs_a
w1.acme.com# mongod --shardsvr --replSet rs_a
```

Note: --shardsvr will default the port to 27018

In the mongo shell, create the replica set

```
> cfg = {
    _id : "rs_a",
    members : [
        {_id : 0, host : "e1.acme.com:27018", priority : 1},
        {_id : 1, host : "e2.acme.com:27018", priority : 1},
        {_id : 2, host : "w1.acme.com:27018", priority : 0}
    ]
}

> rs.initiate(cfg)
```

Repeat for each replica set as follows

- Replica Set B:
  - e3.acme.com : priority=1
  - e4.acme.com : priority=1
  - w2.acme.com : priority=0
- Replica Set C:
  - e5.acme.com : priority=1
  - e6.acme.com : priority=1
  - w3.acme.com : priority=0

Config Servers

The next thing we need is to choose 3 config server locations.

We'll pick 2 random nodes in E (primary) and 1 in W (backup/DR). Since we have multiple MongoDB process on a node we need to ensure that different ports are being used, so we will use 27019 for the Config Servers.

- Config Servers
  - e1 - c1.acme.com:27019
  - e4 - c2.acme.com:27019
  - w1 - c3.acme.com:27019

> **DNS Aliases**
> We should make dns aliases for these so its easy to change later

Start up the config servers, e.g.

```
e1.acme.com> mongod --configsvr
e4.acme.com> mongod --configsvr
w1.acme.com> mongod --configsvr
```

Note: --configsvr will default the port to 27019

MongoS (routers)

The last question is where to put the mongos.

Suggested

The suggested configuration is to run an instance on **each app-server** (as shown by a1-a4 in diagram above).

Alternative

These are the other common options:

- On each server (all 9)
- Create a (sticky) load-balanced cluster (independent of client/shards)

Startup Options

When we start the mongos, we'll use

```
> mongos --configdb c1.acme.com:27019,c2.acme.com:27019,c3.acme.com:27019
```

Then we'll need to add the 3 replica sets as shards

```
> db.adminCommand( { addShard : "rs_a/e1.acme.com:27018,e2.acme.com:27018,w1.acme.com:27018" } )
> db.adminCommand( { addShard : "rs_b/e3.acme.com:27018,e4.acme.com:27018,w2.acme.com:27018" } )
> db.adminCommand( { addShard : "rs_c/e5.acme.com:27018,e6.acme.com:27018,w3.acme.com:27018" } )
```

Everything is running

At this point your basic architecture is ready to go. You've got 3 shards for scalability, and 3 copies of each piece of data (with one ready for DR). There are obviously many ways to configure this, but this is a pretty simple way to get started.

Your next step is to enable sharding for any database you would like to use sharded, and to then enable sharding for any collection you want sharded. Databases and collections by default will be "unsharded" and simply reside in the first shard.

To save yourself time, don't bother sharding tiny collections, just do the big ones.

Notes

- Names (DNS) should be used everywhere, and consistently
- All client writes/reads will be isolated to the Primary Datacenter (East)
- SlaveOk can be used to allow stale/eventually-consistent reads
    - If this is done, hidden should be used with the West nodes e.g.

```
> cfg = {
    _id : "rs_a",
    members : [
        {_id : 0, host : "e1.acme.com:27018", priority : 1},
        {_id : 1, host : "e2.acme.com:27018", priority : 1},
        {_id : 2, host : "w1.acme.com:27018", priority : 0, hidden : true}
    ]
}

> rs.initiate(cfg)
```

Sharding Introduction

MongoDB supports an automated sharding/partitioning architecture, enabling horizontal scaling across multiple nodes. For applications that outgrow the resources of a single database server, MongoDB can convert to a sharded cluster, automatically managing failover and balancing of nodes, with few or no changes to the original application code.

This document explains MongoDB's auto-sharding approach to scalability in detail and provides an architectural overview of the various components that enable it.

Be sure to acquaint yourself with the current limitations.

- MongoDB's Auto-Sharding
    - Sharding in a Nutshell
    - Balancing
    - Failover
    - Scaling Model
- Architectural Overview
    - Shards
        - Shard Keys
        - Chunks
    - Config Servers
    - Routing Processes (mongos)
    - Operation Types
    - Server Layout
    - Next : Configuration

MongoDB's Auto-Sharding

Sharding in a Nutshell

Sharding is the partitioning of data among multiple machines in an order-preserving manner. To take an example, let's imagine sharding a collection of users by their state of residence. In a simplistic view, if we designate three machines as our shard servers, the users might be divided up by machine as follows:

Machine 1	Machine 2	Machine 3
Alabama Arizona	Colorado Florida	Arkansas California
Indiana Kansas	Idaho Illinois	Georgia Hawaii
Maryland Michigan	Kentucky Maine	Minnesota Missouri
Montana Montana	Nebraska New Jersey	Ohio Pennsylvania
New Mexico North Dakota	Rhode Island South Dakota	Tennessee Utah
	Vermont West Virgina	Wisconsin Wyoming

Note that each machine stores multiple "chunks" of data, based on state of residence. MongoDB distributes these chunks evenly across all of the machines available.

The chunking mechanism would only kick in if the amount of data you were storing reached the threshold where sharding is advantageous.

Our application connects to the sharded cluster through a `mongos` process, which routes operations to the appropriate shard(s). In this way, the sharded MongoDB cluster looks like a single logical server to our application. If our `users` collection receives heavy writes, those writes are now distributed across three shard servers. Most queries continue to be efficient, as well, because they too are distributed. And since the documents are organized in an order-preserving manner, any operations specifying the state of residence will be routed only to those nodes containing that state.

Sharding is performed on a per-collection basis. Small collections need not be sharded. For instance, if we were building a service like Twitter, our collection of tweets would likely be several orders of magnitude larger than the next biggest collection. The size and throughput demands of such a collection would be prime for sharding, whereas smaller collections would still live on a single server. Nnon-sharded collections reside on just one shard.

Balancing

Balancing is necessary when the load on any one shard node grows out of proportion with the remaining nodes. In this situation, the data must be redistributed to equalize load across shards.

Failover

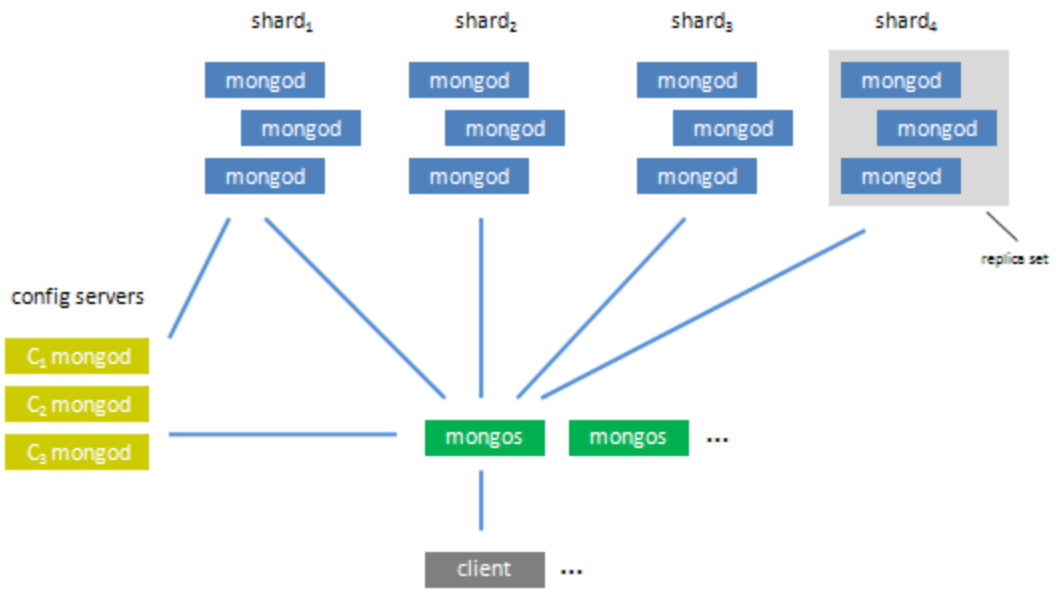
Failover is also quite important since proper system functioning requires that each logical shard be always online. In practice, this means that each shard consists of more than one machine in a configuration known as a replica set. A replica set is a set of *n* servers, typically two or three, each of which contains a replica of the entire data set for the given shard. One of the *n* servers in a replica set will always be primary. If the primary fails, the remaining replicas are capable of electing a new master.

Scaling Model

MongoDB's auto-sharding scaling model shares many similarities with Yahoo's PNUTS and Google's BigTable. Readers interested in detailed discussions of distributed databases using order-preserving partitioning are encouraged to look at the PNUTS and BigTable white papers.

Architectural Overview

A MongoDB shard cluster consists of two or more shards, one or more config servers, and any number of routing processes to which the application servers connect. Each of these components is described below in detail.



Shards

Each shard consists of one or more servers and stores data using `mongod` processes (`mongod` being the core MongoDB database process). In a production situation, each shard will consist of multiple replicated servers per shard to ensure availability and automated failover. The set of servers/`mongod` process within the shard comprise a *replica set*.

Replica sets, as discussed earlier, represent an improved version of MongoDB's replication (SERVER-557).

For testing, you can use sharding with a single `mongod` instance per shard. If you need redundancy, use one or more slaves for each shard's `mongod` master. This configuration will require manual failover until replica sets become available.

Shard Keys

To partition a collection, we specify a shard key pattern. This pattern is similar to the key pattern used to define an index; it names one or more fields to define the key upon which we distribute data. Some example shard key patterns include the following:

```
{ state : 1 }
{ name : 1 }
{ _id : 1 }
{ lastname : 1, firstname : 1 }
{ tag : 1, timestamp : -1 }
```

MongoDB's sharding is order-preserving; adjacent data by shard key tends to be on the same server. The config database stores all the metadata indicating the location of data by range:

collection	minkey	maxkey	location
users	{ name : 'Miller' }	{ name : 'Nessman' }	$shard_2$
users	{ name : 'Nessman' }	{ name : 'Ogden' }	$shard_4$
...			

Chunks

A chunk is a contiguous range of data from a particular collection. Chunks are described as a triple of `collection`, `minKey`, and `maxKey`. Thus, the shard key K of a given document assigns that document to the chunk where minKey <= K < maxKey.

Chunks grow to a maximum size, usually 64MB. Once a chunk has reached that approximate size, the chunk *splits* into two new chunks. When a particular shard has excess data, chunks will then *migrate* to other shards in the system. The addition of a new shard will also influence the migration of chunks.

When choosing a shard key, keep in mind that these values should be *granular* enough to ensure an even distribution of data. For instance, in the above example, where we're sharding on `name`, we have to be careful that we don't have a disproportionate number of users with the same name. In that case, the individual chunk can become too large and find itself unable to split, e.g., where the entire range comprises just a single key.

Thus, if it's possible that a single value within the shard key range might grow exceptionally large, it's best to use a compound shard key instead so that further discrimination of the values will be possible.

Config Servers

The config servers store the cluster's metadata, which includes basic information on each shard server and the chunks contained therein.

Chunk information is the main data stored by the config servers. Each config server has a complete copy of all chunk information. A two-phase commit is used to ensure the consistency of the configuration data among the config servers. Note that config server use their own replication model; they are not run in as a replica set.

If any of the config servers is down, the cluster's meta-data goes read only. However, even in such a failure state, the MongoDB cluster can still be read from and written to.

Routing Processes (mongos)

The `mongos` process can be thought of as a routing and coordination process that makes the various components of the cluster look like a single system. When receiving client requests, the `mongos` process routes the request to the appropriate server(s) and merges any results to be sent back to the client.

`mongos` processes have no persistent state; rather, they pull their state from the config server on startup. Any changes that occur on the the config servers are propagated to each `mongos` process.

`mongos` processes can run on any server desired. They may be run on the shard servers themselves, but are lightweight enough to exist on each application server. There are no limits on the number of `mongos` processes that can be run simultaneously since these processes do not coordinate between one another.

Operation Types

Operations on a sharded system fall into one of two categories: *global* and *targeted*.

For targeted operations, `mongos` communicates with a very small number of shards -- often a single shard. Such targeted operations are quite efficient.

Global operations involve the `mongos` process reaching out to all (or most) shards in the system.

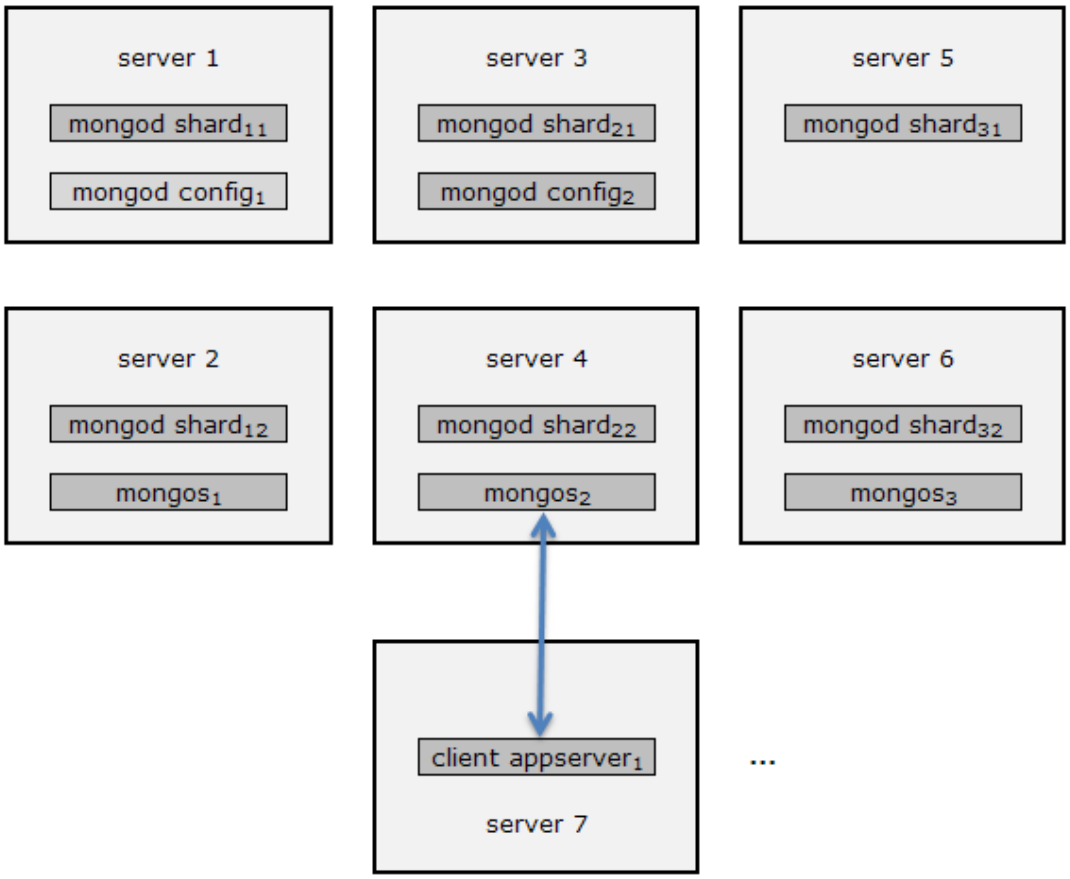
The following table shows various operations and their type. For the examples below, assume a shard key of { x : 1 }.

Operation	Type	Comments
db.foo.find({ x : 300 })	Targeted	Queries a single shard.
db.foo.find({ x : 300, age : 40 })	Targeted	Queries a single shard.
db.foo.find({ age : 40 })	Global	Queries all shards.
db.foo.find()	Global	sequential
db.foo.find(...).count()	Variable	Same as the corresponding find() operation
db.foo.find(...).sort({ age : 1 })	Global	parallel
db.foo.find(...).sort({ x : 1 })	Global	sequential
db.foo.count()	Global	parallel
db.foo.insert(<object>)	Targeted	
db.foo.update({ x : 100 }, <object>) db.foo.remove({ x : 100 })	Targeted	
db.foo.update({ age : 40 }, <object>) db.foo.remove({ age : 40 })	Global	
db.getLastError()		

db.foo.ensureIndex(...)	Global	

Server Layout

Machines may be organized in a variety of fashions. For instance, it's possible to have separate machines for each config server process, `mongos` process, and `mongod` process. However, this can be overkill since the load is almost certainly low on the config servers. Here, then, is an example where some sharing of physical machines is used to lay out a cluster.



Yet more configurations are imaginable, especially when it comes to `mongos`. For example, it's possible to run `mongos` processes on all of servers 1-6. Alternatively, as suggested earlier, the `mongos` processes can exists on each application server (server 7). There is some potential benefit to this configuration, as the communications between app server and `mongos` then can occur over the localhost interface.

Next : Configuration

Sharding becomes a bit easier to understand one you've set it up. It's even possible to set up a sharded cluster on a single machine. To try it for yourself, see the configuration docs.

Configuring Sharding

Introduction

This document describes the steps involved in setting up a basic sharding cluster. A sharding cluster requires, at minimum, three components:

1. Two or more shards.
2. At least one config server.
3. A `mongos` routing process.

For testing purposes, it's possible to start all the required processes on a single server, whereas in a production situation, a number of server configurations are possible.

Once the shards, config servers, and `mongos` processes are running, configuration is simply a matter of issuing a series of commands to establish the various shards as being part of the cluster. Once the cluster has been established, you can begin sharding individual collections.

This document is fairly detailed; if you're the kind of person who prefers a terse, code-only explanation, see the sample shard configuration. If you'd like a quick script to set up a test cluster on a single machine, we have a python sharding script that can do the trick.

- Introduction
- Sharding Components
    - Shard Servers
    - Config Servers
    - `mongos` Router
- Configuring the Shard Cluster
    - Adding shards
        - Optional Parameters
    - Listing shards
    - Removing a shard
- Enabling Sharding on a Database
- Sharding a Collection
- Relevant Examples and Docs

Sharding Components

First, start the individual shards, config servers, and `mongos` processes.

Shard Servers

Any `mongod` can become a shard server. For auto failover support, use a replica set as a shard. See replica sets for more info.

Note that replica pairs are deprecated will never be supported as shards.

To get started with a simple test, we recommend running a single `mongod` process per shard, as a test configuration doesn't demand automated failover.

Config Servers

Run `mongod` on the config server(s) with the --configsvr command line parameter. If you're only testing, you can use only one config server. For production, you're expected to run three of them.

Note: Replicating data to each config server is managed by the router (mongos); they have a synchronous replication protocol optimized for three machines, if you were wondering why that number. Do not run any of the config servers with --replSet; that is not how replication works for the config servers.

`mongos` Router

Run `mongos` on the servers of your choice. Specify the --configdb parameter to indicate location of the config database(s).

Configuring the Shard Cluster

Once the shard components are running, issue the sharding commands. You may want to automate or record your steps below in a .js file for replay in the shell when needed.

Start by connecting to one of the `mongos` processes, and then switch to the `admin` database before issuing any commands.

The mongos will route commands to the right machine(s) in the cluster and, if commands change metadata, the mongos will update that on the config servers. So, regardless of the number of `mongos` processes you've launched, you'll only need run these commands on one of those processes.

You can connect to the admin database via `mongos` like so:

```
./mongo <mongos-hostname>:<mongos-port>/admin
> db
admin
```

Adding shards

Each shard can consist of more than one server (see replica sets); however, for testing, only a single server with one `mongod` instance need be used.

You must explicitly add each shard to the cluster's configuration using the `addshard` command:

```
> db.runCommand( { addshard : "<serverhostname>[:<port>]" } );
{"ok" : 1 , "added" : ...}
```

Run this command once for each shard in the cluster.

If the individual shards consist of replica sets, they can be added by specifying *replicaSetName* /<serverhostname>[:port][,serverhostname2[:port],...], where at least one server in the replica set is given.

```
> db.runCommand( { addshard : "foo/<serverhostname>[:<port>]" } );
{"ok" : 1 , "added" : "foo"}
```

Any databases and collections that existed already in the mongod/replica set will be incorporated to the cluster. The databases will have as the "primary" host that mongod/replica set and the collections will not be sharded (but you can do so later by issuing a shardCollection command).

Optional Parameters

name
Each shard has a name, which can be specified using the `name` option. If no name is given, one will be assigned automatically.

maxSize
The `addshard` command accepts an optional `maxSize` parameter. This parameter lets you tell the system a maximum amount of disk space in megabytes to use on the specified shard. If unspecified, the system will use the entire disk. maxSize is useful when you have machines with different disk capacities or when you want to prevent storage of too much data on a particular shard.

As an example:

```
> db.runCommand( { addshard : "sf103", maxSize:100000/*MB*/ } );
```

Listing shards

To see current set of configured shards, run the `listshards` command:

```
> db.runCommand( { listshards : 1 } );
```

This way, you can verify that all the shard have been committed to the system.

Removing a shard

Before a shard can be removed, we have to make sure that all the chunks and databases that once lived there were relocated to other shards. The 'removeshard' command takes care of "draining" the chunks out of a shard for us. To start the shard removal, you can issue the command

```
> db.runCommand( { removeshard : "localhost:10000" } );
{ msg : "draining started successfully" , state: "started" , shard :"localhost:10000" , ok : 1
```

That will put the shard in "draining mode". Its chunks are going to be moved away slowly over time, so not to cause any disturbance to a running system. The command will return right away but the draining task will continue on the background. If you issue the command again during it, you'll get a progress report instead:

```
> db.runCommand( { removeshard : "localhost:10000" } );
{ msg: "draining ongoing" ,  state: "ongoing" , remaining : { chunks :23 , dbs : 1 }, ok : 1 }
```

Whereas the chunks will be removed automatically from that shard, the databases hosted there -- the 'dbs' counter attribute in the above output -- will need to be moved manually. (This has to do with a current limitation that will go away eventually). If you need to figure out which database the removeshard output refers to, you can use the printShardingStatus command. It will tell you what is the "primary" shard for each non-partitioned database. You would need to remove these with the following command:

```
> db.runCommand( { moveprimary : "test", to : "localhost:10001" } );
{ "primary" : "localhost:10001", "ok" : 1 }
```

When the shard is empty, you could issue the 'removeshard' command again and that will clean up all metadata information:

```
> db.runCommand( { removeshard : "localhost:10000" } );
{ msg: "remove shard completed succesfully" , stage: "completed", host: "localhost:10000", ok : 1 }
```

After the 'removeshard' command reported being done with that shard, you can take that process down.

Enabling Sharding on a Database

Once you've added one or more shards, you can enable sharding on a database. This is an important step; without it, all data in the database will be stored on the same shard.

```
> db.runCommand( { enablesharding : "<dbname>" } );
```

Once enabled, `mongos` will place new collections on the primary shard for that database. Existing collections within the database will stay on the original shard. To enable real partitioning of data, we have to shard an individual collection.

Sharding a Collection

Use the `shardcollection` command to shard a collection. When you shard a collection, you must specify the shard key. If there is data in the collection, mongo will require an index to be create upfront (it speeds up the chunking process) otherwise an index will be automatically created for you.

```
> db.runCommand( { shardcollection : "<namespace>",
                   key : <shardkeypatternobject> });
```

> Important note: running "shardcollection" command will mark the collection as sharded with a specific key. Once called, there is currently no way to disable sharding or change the shard key, even if all the data is still contained within the same shard. It is assumed that the data may already be spread around the shards. If you need to "unshard" a collection, drop it (of course making a backup of data if needed), and recreate the collection (loading the back up data).

For example, let's assume we want to shard a GridFS `chunks` collection stored in the `test` database. We'd want to shard on the `files_id` key, so we'd invoke the `shardcollection` command like so:

```
> db.runCommand( { shardcollection : "test.fs.chunks", key : { files_id : 1 } } )
{ "collectionsharded" : "mydb.fs.chunks", "ok" : 1 }
```

You can use the {`unique: true`} option to ensure that the underlying index enforces uniqueness so long as the unique index is a prefix of the shard key. (note: this works only if the collection is empty until SERVER-2326 is resolved).

```
db.runCommand( { shardcollection : "test.users" , key : { email : 1 } , unique : true } );
```

If the "unique: true" option is **not** used, the shard key does not have to be unique.

```
db.runCommand( { shardcollection : "test.products" , key : { category : 1, _id : 1 } } );
```

You can shard on multiple fields if you are using a compound index.

In the end, picking the right shard key for your needs is extremely important for successful sharding. For more information on choosing the key, be sure to check
Choosing a Shard Key

Relevant Examples and Docs

Examples

- Sample configuration session
- The following example shows how to run a simple shard setup on a single machine for testing purposes: Sharding JS Test.

Docs

- Sharding Administration
- Notes on TCP Port Numbers

A Sample Configuration Session

The following example uses two shards (one server each), one config db, and one *mongos* process, all running on a single test server. In addition

to the script below, a python script for starting and configuring shard components on a single machine is available.

Creating the Shards

First, start up a couple _mongod_s to be your shards.

```
$ mkdir /data/db/a /data/db/b
$ ./mongod --shardsvr --dbpath /data/db/a --port 10000 > /tmp/sharda.log &
$ cat /tmp/sharda.log
$ ./mongod --shardsvr --dbpath /data/db/b --port 10001 > /tmp/shardb.log &
$ cat /tmp/shardb.log
```

Now you need a configuration server and *mongos*:

```
$ mkdir /data/db/config
$ ./mongod --configsvr --dbpath /data/db/config --port 20000 > /tmp/configdb.log &
$ cat /tmp/configdb.log
$ ./mongos --configdb localhost:20000 > /tmp/mongos.log &
$ cat /tmp/mongos.log
```

mongos does not require a data directory, it gets its information from the config server.

> ⚠ In a real production setup, mongod's, mongos's and configs would live on different machines. The use of hostnames or IP addresses is mandatory in that case. 'localhost' appearance here is merely illustrative – but fully functional – and should be confined to single-machine, testing scenarios only.

You can toy with sharding by using a small `--chunkSize`, e.g. 1MB. This is more satisfying when you're playing around, as you won't have to insert 200MB of documents before you start seeing them moving around. It should not be used in production.

```
$ ./mongos --configdb localhost:20000 --chunkSize 1 > /tmp/mongos.log &
```

Setting up the Cluster

We need to run a few commands on the shell to hook everything up. Start the shell, connecting to the *mongos* process (at localhost:27017 if you followed the steps above).

To set up our cluster, we'll add the two shards (*a* and *b*).

```
$ ./mongo
MongoDB shell version: 1.6.0
connecting to: test
> use admin
switched to db admin
> db.runCommand( { addshard : "localhost:10000" } )
{ "shardadded" : "shard0000", "ok" : 1 }
> db.runCommand( { addshard : "localhost:10001" } )
{ "shardadded" : "shard0001", "ok" : 1 }
```

Now you need to tell the database that you want to spread out your data at a database and collection level. You have to give the collection a key (or keys) to partition by.
This is similar to creating an index on a collection.

```
> db.runCommand( { enablesharding : "test" } )
{"ok" : 1}
> db.runCommand( { shardcollection : "test.people", key : {name : 1} } )
{"ok" : 1}
```

Administration

To see what's going on in the cluster, use the *config* database.

```
> use config
switched to db config
> show collections
chunks
databases
lockpings
locks
mongos
settings
shards
system.indexes
version
```

These collections contain all of the sharding configuration information.

Choosing a Shard Key

Sections:

- Example Document
- Cardinality
- Write scaling
- Query isolation
- Sorting
- Reliability
- Index optimization
- GridFS

Example Document

```
{
   server : "ny153.example.com" ,
   application : "apache" ,
   time : "2011-01-02T21:21:56.249Z" ,
   level : "ERROR" ,
   msg : "something is broken"
}
```

Cardinality

All data in a sharded collection is broken into chunks. A chunk is a range on the shard key. It is very important that the shard key is fine enough that you won't get large chunks that can't be split.

Using the logging example above, if you chose

```
{server:1}
```

as the shard key, then all data for a single server is 1 chunk. You can easily imagine having more than 200mb (default chunk size) of data for a server. If the shard key was

```
{server:1,time:1}
```

then you can keep splitting up data for a single server down to the millisecond. So as long as you don't have 200mb of data per server per millisecond, no chunk will ever not be splittable.

Keeping chunks to a reasonable size is very important so data can be balanced and moving chunks isn't too expensive.

Write scaling

One of the primary reasons for using sharding is to distribute writes. To do this, its important that writes hit as many chunks as possible.

Again using the example above, choosing

```
{ time : 1 }
```

as the shard key will cause all writes to go to the newest chunk. If the shard key was

```
{server:1,application:1,time:1}
```

then each server,application pair will be written somewhere different. So if there are 100 server,application pairs, and 10 servers, then each server will get 1/10th the writes.

Query isolation

The other consideration is how many shards any query has to hit. Ideally a query would go directly from mongos to the mongod that owns the document requested. So if you know that most common queries start with a condition on *server*, then starting the shard key with server will make your setup much more efficient.

All queries will work regardless of shard key, but if mongos cannot determine a single mongod shard that owns the data, it will have to hit all shards sequentially. This will increase the response latency time, and increase the volume of network traffic and load.

Sorting

Given that a mongos might be able to perform a request against just one (or, more generally, not all) shards, it's worthwhile to consider how results are returned when
a request is to be sorted.

When a request asks for a sort() along a field that is to the left side the shard key after those keys used to determine what shards contain the result documents, mongos is able to ask each mongod sequentially the pre-sorted result, and just streams it back to the requestor. This results in minimum processing time and resource utilization for mongos.

If instead the sort() uses a key that is not on the left of the part of the shard key that determines the relevant shards, mongos will have to request sorted results from all shards in parallel, and merge the results back to the requestor, which will add extra strain on mongos.

Reliability

One important aspect of sharding is how much of the system will be affected in case an entire shard becomes unavailable (even though it is usually a reliable replica set).
Say you have a twitter-like system, with comment entries like:

```
{
   _id: ObjectId("4d084f78a4c8707815a601d7"),
   user_id : 42 ,
   time : "2011-01-02T21:21:56.249Z" ,
   comment : "I am happily using MongoDB",
}
```

Since the system is write intensive, and you want to spread the writes on all servers, you need to use either the *id* or *user_id* as shard key. The *id* will give you better granularity and spread, but in case a shard goes down, it will impact almost all your users (some data missing). If you use *user_id* instead, a lower percentage of users will be impacted (say 20% for a 5 shard setup), although these users will not see any of their data.

Index optimization

As mentioned in other sections about indexing, it is usually much better performance-wise if only a portion of the index is read/updated, so that this "active" portion can stay in RAM most of the time. Most shard keys described above result in an even spread over the shards but also within each mongod's index. Instead, it can be beneficial to factor on in some kind of timestamp at the beginning of the shard key in order to limit the portion of the index that gets hit.
Say you have a photo storage system, with photo entries like:

```
{
   _id: ObjectId("4d084f78a4c8707815a601d7"),
   user_id : 42 ,
   title: "sunset at the beach",
   upload_time : "2011-01-02T21:21:56.249Z" ,
   data: ...,
}
```

You could instead build a custom *id* that includes the month of the upload time, and a unique identifier (ObjectId, MD5 of data, etc). Your entry now looks like:

```
{
   _id: "2011-01-02_4d084f78a4c8707815a601d7",
   user_id : 42 ,
   title: "sunset at the beach",
   upload_time : "2011-01-02T21:21:56.249Z" ,
   data: ...,
}
```

This custom id would be the key used for sharding, and also the id used to retrieve a document. It gives both a good spread across all servers, and it reduces the portion of the index hit on most queries.

Further notes:

- at the beginning of each month, only one server would be hit for some time until the balancer starts splitting buckets. To avoid this potential slowdown and migration of data, it is advised to create ranges ahead of time (e.g. 5 ranges for each month if you have 5 servers).
- As a further improvement, you can incorporate the user id into the photo id. This way it will keep all documents belonging to same user within the same shard. For example: "2011-01-02_42_4d084f78a4c8707815a601d7"

GridFS

There are different ways that GridFS can be sharded, depending on the need. One common way to shard, based on pre-existing indexes, is:

- "files" collection is not sharded. All file records will live in 1 shard. It is highly recommended to make that shard very resilient (at least 3 node replica set)
- "chunks" collection should be sharded using the index "files_id: 1". The existing "files_id, n" index created by the drivers cannot be used to shard on "files_id" (this is a sharding limitation that will be fixed), so you have to create a separate index on just "files_id". The reason to use "files_id" is so that all chunks of a given file live on the same shard, which is safer and allows "filemd5" command to work (required by certain drivers).
  Run the commands:

  ```
  > db.fs.chunks.ensureIndex({files_id: 1});
  > db.runCommand({ shardcollection : "test.fs.chunks", key : { files_id : 1 }})
  { "collectionsharded" : "test.fs.chunks", "ok" : 1 }
  ```

As the default `files_id` is an ObjectId, `files_id` will be ascending and thus all GridFS chunks will be sent to a single sharding chunk. If your write load is too high for a single server to handle, you may want to shard on a different key or use a different value for the `_id` in the files collection.

Upgrading from a Non-Sharded System

A `mongod` process can become part of a sharded cluster without any change to that process or downtime. If you haven't done so yet, feel free to have a look at the Sharding Introduction to familiarize yourself with the components of a sharded cluster and at the Sample Configuration Sesssion to get to know the basic commands involved.

> ⚠ Sharding is a new feature introduced at the 1.6.0 release. This page assumes your non-sharded `mongod` is on that release.

Adding the `mongod` process to a cluster

If you haven't changed the `mongod` default port, it would be using port 27017. You care about this now because a mongo shell will always try to connect to it by default. But in a sharded environment, **you want your shell to connect to a `mongos` instead**.

If the port 27017 is taken by a `mongod` process, you'd need to bring up the `mongos` in a different port. Assuming that port is 30000 you can connect your shell to it by issuing:

```
$ mongo <mongos-host-address>:30000/admin
```

We're switching directly to the `admin` database on the `mongos` process. That's where we will be able to issue the following command

```
MongoDB shell version: 1.6.0
connecting to: <mongos-address>:30000/admin
> db.runCommand( { addshard : "192.168.25.203:27017" } )
> { "shardAdded" : "shard0000", "ok" : 1 }
```

The host address and port you see on the command are the original `mongod`'s. All the databases of that process were added to the cluster and are accessible now through `mongos`.

```
> db.runCommand( { listdatabases : 1 } )
{
        "databases" : [
                {
                     "name" : "mydb"
                     ...
                     "shards" : {
                             "shard0000" : <size-in-shard00000>
                     }
                },
                ...
```

Note that that doesn't mean that the database or any of its collections is sharded. They haven't moved (see next). All we did so far is to make them visible within the cluster environment.

You should stop accessing the former stand-alone `mongod` directly and should have all the clients connect to a `mongos` process, just as we've been doing here.

Sharding a collection

All the databases of your `mongod`-process-turned-shard can be chunked and balanced among the cluster's shards. The commands and examples to do so are listed at the
Configuring Sharding page. Note that a chunk size defaults to 200MB in version 1.6.0, so if you want to change that – for testing purposes, say – you would do so by starting the `mongos` process with the additional --chunkSize parameter.

Difference between upgrading and starting anew

You should pay attention to the host addresses and ports when upgrading, is all.
Again, if you haven't changed the default ports of your `mongod` process, it would be listening on 27017, which is the port that `mongos` would try to bind by default, too.

Sharding Administration

Here we present a list of useful commands for obtaining information about a sharding cluster.

To set up a sharding cluster, see the docs on sharding configuration.

- Identifying a Shard Cluster
- List Existing Shards
- List Which Databases are Sharded
- View Sharding Details
- Balancing
- Chunk Size Considerations

Identifying a Shard Cluster

```
// Test if we're speaking to a mongos process or straight to a mongod process.
// If connected to a mongod this will return a "no such cmd" message.
> db.runCommand({ isdbgrid : 1});

// If connected to mongos, this command returns { "ismaster": true,
// "msg": "isdbgrid", "maxBsonObjectSize": XXX, "ok": 1 }
> db.runCommand({ismaster:1});
```

List Existing Shards

```
> db.runCommand({ listShards : 1});
{"servers" :
 [{"_id" :  ObjectId( "4a9d40c981ba1487ccfaa634")  ,
   "host" : "localhost:10000"},
  {"_id" :  ObjectId( "4a9d40df81ba1487ccfaa635")  ,
   "host" : "localhost:10001"}
 ],
 "ok" : 1
}
```

List Which Databases are Sharded

Here we query the config database, albeit through `mongos`. The `getSisterDB` command is used to return the config database.

```
> config = db.getSisterDB("config")
> config.system.namespaces.find()
```

View Sharding Details

```
> use admin
> db.printShardingStatus();

// A very basic sharding configuration on localhost
sharding version: { "_id" : 1, "version" : 2 }
  shards:
      { "_id" : ObjectId("4bd9ae3e0a2e26420e556876"), "host" : "localhost:30001" }
      { "_id" : ObjectId("4bd9ae420a2e26420e556877"), "host" : "localhost:30002" }
      { "_id" : ObjectId("4bd9ae460a2e26420e556878"), "host" : "localhost:30003" }

  databases:
 { "name" : "admin", "partitioned" : false,
          "primary" : "localhost:20001",
          "_id" : ObjectId("4bd9add2c0302e394c6844b6") }
 my chunks

        { "name" : "foo", "partitioned" : true,
          "primary" : "localhost:30002",
          "sharded" : { "foo.foo" : { "key" : { "_id" : 1 }, "unique" : false } },
          "_id" : ObjectId("4bd9ae60c0302e394c6844b7") }
        my chunks
        foo.foo { "_id" : { $minKey : 1 } } -->> { "_id" : { $maxKey : 1 } }
                  on : localhost:30002 { "t" : 1272557259000, "i" : 1 }
```

Notice the output to the `printShardingStatus` command. First, we see the locations the the three shards comprising the cluster. Next, the various databases living on the cluster are displayed.

The first database shown is the admin database, which has not been partitioned. The **primary** field indicates the location of the database, which, in the case of the admin database, is on the config server running on port 20001.

The second database *is* partitioned, and it's easy to see the shard key and the location and ranges of chunks comprising the partition. Since there's no data in the `foo` database, only a single chunk exists. That single chunk includes the entire range of possible shard keys.

Balancing

The balancer is a background task that tries to keep the number of chunks even across all servers of the cluster. The activity of balancing is transparent to querying. In other words, your application doesn't need to know or care that there is any data moving activity ongoing.

To make that so, the balancer is careful about when and how much data it would transfer. Let's look at how much to tranfer first. The unit of transfer is a chunk. On the steady state, the size of chunks should be in the range of 100-200MBs of data. This range has shown to be the sweet spot of how much data to move at once. More than that, and the migration would take longer and the queries might perceive that in a wider difference in response times. Less than that, and the overhead of moving wouldn't pay off as highly.

Regarding when to transfer load, the balancer waits for a threshold of uneven chunk counts to occur before acting. In the field, having a difference of 8 chunks between the least and most loaded shards showed to be a good heuristic. (This is an arbitrary number, granted.) The concern here is not to incur overhead if -- exagerating to make a point -- there is a difference of one doc between shard A and shard B. It's just inneficient to monitor load differences at that fine of a grain.

Now, once the balancer "kicked in," it will redistribute chunks, one at a time -- in what we call rounds -- until that difference in chunks beween any two shards is down to 2 chunks.

A common source of questions is why a given collection is not being balanced. By far, the most probable cause is: it doesn't need to. If the chunk difference is small enough, redistributing chunks won't matter enough. The implicit assumption here is that you actually have a large enough collection and the overhead of the balancing machinery is little compared to the amount of data your app is handling. If you do the math, you'll find that you might not hit "balancing threshold" if you're doing an experiment on your laptop.

Another possibility is that the balancer is not making progress. The balancing task happens at an arbitrary mongos (query router) in your cluster. Since there can be several query routers, there is a mechanism they all use to decide which mongos will take the responsibility. The mongos acting as balancer takes a "lock" by inserting a document into the 'locks' collection of the config database. When a mongos is running the balancer the 'state' of that lock is 1 (taken).

To check the state of that lock

```
// connect to mongos
> use config
> db.locks.find( { _id : "balancer" } )
```

A typical output for that command would be

```
{ "_id" : "balancer", "process" : "guaruja:1292810611:1804289383", "state" : 1, "ts" : ObjectId(
"4d0f872630c42d1978be8a2e"), "when" : "Mon Dec 20 2010 11:41:10 GMT-0500 (EST)", "who" :
"guaruja:1292810611:1804289383:Balancer:846930886", "why" : "doing balance round" }
```

There are at least three points to note in that output. One, the ***state*** attribute is 1, which means that lock is taken. We can assume the balancer is active. Two, that balancer has been running since Monday, December the 20th. That's what the attribute "when" tells us. And, the third thing, the balancer is running on a machine called "guaruja". The attribute "who" gives that away.

To check what the balancer is actually doing, we'd look at the mongos log on that machine. The balancer outputs rows to the log prefixed by "[Balancer]".

```
Mon Dec 20 11:53:00 [Balancer] chose [shard0001] to [shard0000] { _id: "test.foo-_id_52.0", lastmod:
Timestamp 2000|1, ns: "test.foo", min: { _id: 52.0 }, max: { _id: 105.0 }, shard: "shard0001" }
```

What this entry is saying is that the balancer decided to move the chunk _id:[52..105) from shard0001 to shard0000. Both mongod's log detailed entries of how that migrate is progressing.

The lock will always appear in db.locks.find even if the balancer is deactivated:

```
{ "_id" : "balancer", "process" : "guaruja:1292810611:1804289383", "state" : 1, "ts" :
ObjectId("4d0f872630c42d1978be8a2e"), "when" : "Mon Dec 20 2010 11:41:10 GMT-0500 (EST)"
, "who" : "guaruja:1292810611:1804289383:Balancer:846930886", "why" : "doing balance
round" }
```

To detect if the balancer is doing balancing rounds, you need to look for the Balancer entries in the log files. We will update this in a future release so that you can check if the balancer is active without looking in the logs. see jira 2632

If you want to pause the balancer temporarily for maintenance, you can by modifying the settings collection in the config db.

```
// connect to mongos
> use config
> db.settings.update( { _id: "balancer" }, { $set : { stopped: true } } , true );
```

As a result of that command, one should stop seeing "[Balancer]" entries in the mongos that was running the balancer. If, for curiosity, you're running that mongos in a more verbose level, you'd see an entry such as the following.

```
Mon Dec 20 11:57:35 "[Balancer]" skipping balancing round because balancing is disabled
```

You would just set `stopped` to false to turn on again.

For more information on chunk migration and commands, see: Moving Chunks

Chunk Size Considerations

mongoDB sharding is based on *range partitioning*. Chunks are split automatically when they reach a certain size threshold. The threshold varies, but the rule of thumb is, expect it to between a half and the maximum chunk size in the steady state. The default maximum chunk size has been 200MB (sum of objects in the collection, not counting indices).

Chunk size has been intensely debated -- and much hacked. So let's understand the tradeoff's that that choice of size implies.

When you move data, there's some state resetting in mongos, the query router. Queries that used to hit a given shard for a the migrated chunk, now need to hit a new shard. This state reseting isn't free, so we want to move chunks not too frequently (pressure to move a lot of keys at once). But the actual moving has a cost that's proportional to the number of keys you're moving (pressure to move few keys).

If you opt to change the default chunk size for a production site, you can do that via the --maxSize parameter of the mongos. Note though that for an existing cluster, it may take some time for the collections to split to that size, if smaller than before, and currently autosplitting is only triggered if the collection gets new documents or updates.

For more information on chunk splitting and commands, see: Splitting Chunks

Backing Up Sharded Cluster

Following is information on how to backup to full sharded environment. The most important concept is that **the balancer <u>must</u>** be turned off when doing a backup of the system.

See also Backups and Import Export Tools for more information on backups.

Small clusters

If you have a small sharded cluster, the easiest thing to do is use mongodump through a mongos.
This is easy, but only works if one machine can store all the data reasonably.
The dump will contain both the sharding config metadata and the data itself.
Note that this procedure cannot be used if you need to modify the hosts information before populating the data (in that case, use the procedure below).

Large clusters

Backup

1. Turn off the balancer

```
// connect to mongos (not a config server!)
>use config
>db.settings.update( { _id: "balancer" }, { $set : { stopped: true } } , true );
```

- Wait for a bit till all migrations are done. You can use `db.currentOP()` to see the status of the balancer/migrations.

1. Run lock+fsync on each shard, and one config server.
2. Make backups (from locked servers)

- On each locked shard take a snapshot or backup the data directory (dbpath)
- Do the same the config server

1. Unlock shards and config server
2. Turn balancer back on

```
>use config
>db.settings.update( { _id: "balancer" }, { $set : { stopped: false } } , true );
```

The same process can be used with mongodump and there is no need to lock a shard (or replica). See Backups for more information.

Restore

1. Make sure processes are stopped: no server should be running (mongod, mongos, config)
2. Restore the shard and config servers (all of them) data files (dbpath)
    - If you have a replicaset then you must replace all the replicas files.
    - if shard IPs/hosts are different, you have to manually update config.shards to use the new servers.
3. start mongos and connect to it. Use "printShardingStatus()" or "show collections" to make sure all shards are correctly seen.

Sharding and Failover

A properly-configured MongoDB shard cluster will have no single point of failure.

This document describes the various potential failure scenarios of components within a shard cluster, and how failure is handled in each situation.

1. Failure of a `mongos` routing process.

One `mongos` routing process will be run on each application server, and that server will communicate to the cluster exclusively through the `mongos` process. `mongos` process aren't persistent; rather, they gather all necessary config data on startup from the config server.

This means that the failure of any one application server will have no effect on the shard cluster as a whole, and all other application servers will continue to function normally. Recovery is simply a matter starting up a new app server and `mongos` process.

2. Failure of a single `mongod` server within a shard.

Each shard will consist of a group of *n* servers in a configuration known as a replica set. If any one server in the replica set fails, read and write operations on the shard are still permitted. What's more, no data need be lost on the failure of a server because the replica allows an option on write that forces replication of the write before returning. This is similar to setting *W* to 2 on Amazon's Dynamo.

Replica sets will be available as of MongoDB v1.6. Read more about replica set internals or follow the jira issue.

3. Failure of all `mongod` servers comprising a shard.

If all replicas within a shard are down, the data within that shard will be unavailable. However, operations that can be resolved at other shards will continue to work properly. See the documentation on global and targeted operations to see why this is so.

If the shard is configured as a replica set, with at least one member of the set in another data center, then an outage of an entire shard is extremely unlikely. This will be the recommended configuration for maximum redundancy.

4. Failure of a config server.

A production shard cluster will have three config server processes, each existing on a separate machine. Writes to config servers use a two-phase commit to ensure an atomic and replicated transaction of the shard cluster's metadata.

On the failure of any one config server, the system's metadata becomes read-only. The system will continue to function, but chunks will be unable to split within a single shard or migrate across shards. For most use cases, this will present few problems, since changes to the chunk metadata will be infrequent.

That said, it will be important that the down config server be restored in a reasonable time period (say, a day) so that shards do not become unbalanced due to lack of migrates (again, for many production situations, this may not be an urgent matter).

Sharding Limits

- Security
- Differences from Unsharded Configurations
    - $where
    - db.eval
    - getPrevError
    - Unique Indexes
- Scale Limits
    - Query speed
    - Sharding an existing collection

Security

Security/authentication mode is not yet available with sharding. Jira

Differences from Unsharded Configurations

- Sharding must be ran in trusted security mode, without explicit security.
- Shard keys are immutable in the current version.
- All (non-multi)updates, upserts, and inserts must include the current shard key. This may cause issues for anyone using a mapping library since you don't have full control of updates.

$where

$where works with sharding. However do not reference the db object from the $where function (one normally does not do this anyway).

db.eval

db.eval() may not be used with sharded collections. However, you may use db.eval() if the evaluation function accesses unsharded collections within your database. Use map/reduce in sharded environments.

getPrevError

getPrevError is unsupported for sharded databases, and may remain so in future releases (TBD). Let us know if this causes a problem for you.

Unique Indexes

For a sharded collection, you may (optionally) specify a unique constraint on the shard key. You also have the option to have other unique indices **if and only if** the shard key is a prefix of their attributes. In other words, MongoDB **does not** enforce uniqueness across shards. You may specify other secondary, non-unuique indexes (via a global operation), again, as long as no unique constraint is specified.

Scale Limits

Goal is support of systems of up to 1,000 shards. Testing so far has been limited to clusters with a modest number of shards (e.g., 100). More information will be reported here later on any scaling limitations which are encountered.

There is no hard-coded limit to the size of a collection -- but keep in mind the last paragraph. You can create a sharded collection and go about adding data for as long as you add the corresponding number of shards that your workload requires. And, of course, as long as your queries are targeted enough (more about that in a bit).

Query speed

Queries involving the shard key should be quite fast and comparable to the behavior of the query in an unsharded environment.

Queries not involving the shard key use a scatter/gather method which sends the query to all shards. This is fairly efficient if one has 10 shards, but would be fairly inefficient on 1000 shards (although still ok for infrequent queries).

Sharding an existing collection

It is possible to shard an existing collection, but there are some limitations. Put differently, if you have an existing single node (or single replica set) and you want to upgrade that data to a sharded configuration, this is possible.

The current limitations are **size** and **time**.

1. **Size**: In 1.6 we put a cap on the maximum size of the original collection of 25GB (increased to 256GB in 1.8). This limit is going to be pushed up and may eventually disappear. If you are above that limit and you shard an existing collection it will work, but all of your data will start out in one chunk, making initial distribution slower. (*please contact support directly if you need help in this situation*) In practice, if your collection contains many large documents this limit may be slightly higher (due to the statistical way in which split points are calculated).
2. **Time**: When sharding an existing collection, please be aware that this process will take some time. If a collection has 200GB of data, the process of re-chunking that data is tantamount to moving 100GB+ of data while maintaining existing read/write rates.

Sharding Internals

This section includes internal implementation details for MongoDB auto sharding. See also the main sharding documentation.

Note: some internals docs could be out of date -- if you see that let us know so we can fix.

Internals

- Moving Chunks
- Sharding Config Schema

- Sharding Design
- Sharding Use Cases
- Shard Ownership
- Splitting Chunks

Unit Tests

```
./mongo --nodb jstests/sharding/*js
```

Moving Chunks

At any given time, a chunk is hosted at one **mongod** server. The sharding machinery routes all the requests to that server automatically, without the application needing to know which server that is. From times to time, the balancer may decide to move chunks around.

It is possible to issue a manual command to move a chunk, using the following command:

```
db.runCommand( { moveChunk : "test.blog.posts" ,
                 find : { author : "eliot" } ,
                 to : "shard1" } )
```

Parameters:

- `moveChunk`: a full collection namespace, including the database name
- `find`: a query expression that falls within the chunk to be moved; the command will find the FROM (donor) shard automatically
- `to`: shard id where the chunk will be moved

The command will return as soon as the TO and FROM shards agreed that it is now the TO's responsibility to handle the chunk.

Moving a chunk is a complex, but under the covers operation. It involves two interconnected protocols. One, to clone the data of the actual chunk, including any changes made during the cloning process itself. The second protocol is a commmit protocol that makes sure that all the migration participants – the TO-shard, the FROM-shard, and the config servers – agreed that the migration has completed.

Example

Suppose we are sharding the *test.foo* collection using the *x* field as the shard key. Suppose that we want to move a chunk that looks like:

```
> db.chunks.find({ns : "test.foo", min : {x : 4}})
{ "_id" : "test.foo-x_17", "lastmod" : { "t" : 43000, "i" : 0 }, "ns" : "test.foo", "min" : { "x" : 4
}, "max" : { "x" : 9 }, "shard" : "bar" }
```

This chunk is currently on the shard called "bar" and we want to move it to the shard called "baz". We can do this by choosing some value *v* in the range `4 <= v < 9`, so we'll choose 5:

```
> db.adminCommand({moveChunk : "test.foo", find : {x : 5}, to : "baz"})
{ "millis" : 146880, "ok" : 1 }
```

MongoDB will find the chunk with {{ {x:5} }} in its range and move it to shard baz. The command will return when the move is complete.

If someone is already doing something to that particular chunk, it will be locked and you will not be able to migrate it until the other operation is complete.

```
> db.adminCommand({moveChunk : "test.foo", find : {x : 5}, to : "baz"})
{
        "cause" : {
                "who" : {
                        "_id" : "test.foo",
                        "process" : "ip-10-114-74-220:1299610147:182607800",
                        "state" : 1,
                        "ts" : ObjectId("4d768c5d6bf858cd08a80ac8"),
                        "when" : ISODate("2011-03-08T20:06:53.687Z"),
                        "who" : "ip-10-114-74-220:1299610147:182607800:conn22:510531961",
                        "why" : "migrate-{ x: 5 }"
                },
                "errmsg" : "The collection's metadata lock is already taken.",
                "ok" : 0
        },
        "ok" : 0,
        "errmsg" : "move failed"
}
```

Sharding Config Schema

Sharding configuration schema. This lives in the config servers.

Collections

version

This is a singleton that contains the current meta-data version number.

```
> db.getCollection("version").findOne()
{ "_id" : 1, "version" : 2 }
```

settings

Key/Value table for configurable options (chunkSize)

```
> db.settings.find()
{ "_id" : "chunksize", "value" : 200 }
{ "_id" : "balancer", "who" : "ubuntu:27017", "x" : ObjectId("4bd0cb39503139ae28630ee9") }
```

shards

Stores information about the shards.

```
> db.shards.findOne()
{ "_id" : "shard0", "host" : "localhost:30001" }
```

databases

```
{
  "_id" : "admin",
  "partitioned" : false,
  "primary" : "localhost:20001"
}
```

chunks

```
{
 "_id" : "test.foo-x_MinKey",
 "lastmod" : {
  "t" : 1271946858000,
  "i" : 1
 },
 "ns" : "test.foo",
 "min" : {
  "x" : { $minKey : 1 }
 },
 "max" : {
  "x" : { $maxKey : 1 }
 },
 "shard" : "localhost:30002"
}
```

mongos

Record of all mongos affiliated with this cluster. mongos will ping every 30 seconds so we know who is alive.

```
> db.mongos.findOne()
{
 "_id" : "erh-wd1:27017",
 "ping" : "Fri Apr 23 2010 11:08:39 GMT-0400 (EST)",
 "up" : 30
}
```

changelog

Human readable log of all meta-data changes. Capped collection that defaults to 10mb.

```
> db.changelog.findOne()
{
 "_id" : "erh-wd1-2010-3-21-17-24-0",
 "server" : "erh-wd1",
 "time" : "Wed Apr 21 2010 13:24:24 GMT-0400 (EST)",
 "what" : "split",
 "ns" : "test.foo",
 "details" : {
  "before" : {
   "min" : {
    "x" : { $minKey : 1 }
   },
   "max" : {
    "x" : { $maxKey : 1 }
   }
  },
  "left" : {
   "min" : {
    "x" : { $minKey : 1 }
   },
   "max" : {
    "x" : 5
   }
  },
  "right" : {
   "min" : {
    "x" : 5
   },
   "max" : {
    "x" : { $maxKey : 1 }
   }
  }
 }
}
```

Changes

2 (<= 1.5.0) -> 3 (1.5.1)

- shards : _id is now the name
- databases : _id is now the db name
- general : all references to a shard can be via name or host

Sharding Design

concepts

- *config database* - the top level database that stores information about servers and where things live.
- *shard*. this can be either a single server or a replica pair.
- *database* - one top level namespace. a database can be partitioned or not
- *chunk* - a region of data from a particular collection. A chunk can be though of as (*collectionname,fieldname,lowvalue,highvalue*). The range is inclusive on the low end and exclusive on the high end, *i.e.*, [lowvalue,highvalue).

components and database collections

- config database
- config.servers - this contains all of the servers that the system has. These are logical servers. So for a replica pair, the entry would be *192.168.0.10,192.168.0.11*
- config.databases - all of the databases known to the system. This contains the *primary* server for a database, and information about whether its partitioned or not.
    - config.shards - a list of all database *shards*. Each shard is a db pair, each of which runs a db process.
    - config.homes - specifies which shard is *home* for a given client db.
- shard databases
    - *client*.system.chunklocations - the home shard for a given client db contains a *client*.system.chunklocations collection. this

collection lists where to find particular chunks; that is, it maps chunk->shard.
- mongos process
  - "routes" request to proper db's, and performs merges. can have a couple per system, or can have 1 per client server.
  - gets chunk locations from the client db's home shard. load lazily to avoid using too much mem.
    - chunk information is cached by mongos. This information can be stale at a mongos (it is always up to date at the owning shard; you cannot migrate an item if the owning shard is down). If so, the shard contacted will tell us so and we can then retry to the proper location.

db operations

- moveprimary - move a database's primary server
- migrate - migrate a chunk from one machine to another.
  - lock and migrate
  - shard db's coordinate with home shard to atomically pass over ownership of the chunk (two phase commit)
- split - split a chunk that is growing too large into pieces. as the two new chunks are on the same machine after the split, this is really just a metadata update and very fast.
- reconfiguration operations
  - add shard - dbgrid processes should lazy load information on a new (unknown) shard when encountered.
  - retire shard - in background gradually migrate all chunks off

minimizing lock time

If a chunk is migrating and is 50MB, that might take 5-10 seconds which is too long for the chunk to be locked.

We could perform the migrate much like Cloner works,where we copy the objects and then apply all operations that happened during copying. This way lock time is minimal.

Sharding Use Cases

What specific use cases do we want to address with db partioning (and other techniques) that are challenging to scale? List here for discussion.

- video site (e.g., youtube) (also, GridFS scale-up)
  - seems straightforward: partition by video
  - for related videos feature, see search below
- social networking (e.g., facebook)
  - this can be quite hard to partition, because it is difficult to cluster people.
- very high RPS sites with small datasets
  - N replicas, instead of partioning, might help here
    - replicas only work if the dataset is really small as we are using/wasting the same RAM on each replica. thus, partioning might help us with ram cache efficiency even if entire data set fits on one or two drives.
- twitter
- search & tagging

Log Processing

Use cases related to map-reduce like things.

- massive sort
- top N queries per day
- compare data from two nonadjacent time periods

Shard Ownership

By shard ownership we mean which server owns a particular key range.

Early draft/thoughts will change:

Contract

- the master copy of the ownership information is in the config database
- mongos instances have cached info on which server owns a shard. this information may be stale.
- mongod instances have definitive information on who owns a shard (atomic with the config db) when they know about a shards ownership

mongod

The mongod processes maintain a cache of shards the mongod instance owns:

```
map<ShardKey,state> ownership
```

State values are as follows:

- missing - no element in the map means no information available. In such a situation we should query the config database to get the state.
- 1 - this instance owns the shard
- 0 - this instance does not own the shard (indicates we queried the config database and found another owner, and remembered that fact)

Initial Assignment of a region to a node.

This is trivial: add the configuration to the config db. As the ShardKey is new, no nodes have any cached information.

Splitting a Key Range

The mongod instance A which owns the range R breaks it into R1,R2 which are still owned by it. It updates the config db. We take care to handle the config db crashing or being unreachable on the split:

```
lock(R) on A
update the config db -- ideally atomically perhaps with eval().  await return code.
ownership[R].erase
unlock(R) on A
```

After the above the cache has no information on the R,R1,R2 ownerships, and will requery configdb on the next request. If the config db crashed and failed to apply the operation, we are still consistent.

Migrate ownership of keyrange R from server A->B. We assume here that B is the coordinator of the job:

```
B copies range from A
lock(R) on A and B
  B copies any additional operations from A (fast)
  clear ownership maps for R on A and B.  B waits for a response from A on this operation.
  B then updates the ownership data in the config db. (Perhaps even fsyncing.) await return code.
  unlock(R) on B
  delete R on A (cleanup)
unlock (R) on A
```

We clear the ownership maps first. That way, if the config db update fails, nothing bad happens, IF mongos filters data upon receipt for being in the correct ranges (or in its query parameters).

R stays locked on A for the cleanup work, but as that shard no longer owns the range, this is not an issue even if slow. It stays locked for that operation in case the shard were to quickly migrate back.

Migrating Empty Shards

Typically we migrate a shard after a split. After certain split scenarios, a shard may be empty but we want to migrate it.

Splitting Chunks

Normally, splitting chunks is done automatically for you. Currently, the splits happen as a side effect of inserting (and are transparent). In the future, there may be other cases where a chunk is automatically split.

A recently split chunk may be moved immediately to a new shard if the system finds that future insertions will benefit from that move. (Chunk moves are transparent, too.)

Moreover, MongoDB has a sub-system called Balancer, which constantly monitors shards loads and, as you guessed, moves chunks around if it finds an imbalance. Balancing chunks automatically helps incremental scalability. If you add a new shard to the system, some chunks will eventually be moved to that shard to spread out the load.

That all being said, in certain circumstances one may need to force a split manually.

> ⚠ The Balancer will treat all chunks the same way, regardless if they were generated by a manual or an automatic split.

The following command splits the chunk where the _id 99 would reside in two. The key used as the middle key is computed internally to roughly

divide the chunk in equally sized parts.

```
> use admin
switched to db admin
> db.runCommand( { split : "test.foo" , find : { _id : 99 } } )
...
```

Pre-splitting

There is a second version of the split command that takes the exact key you'd like to split on.

In the example below the command splits the chunk where the _id 99 would reside using that key as the split point. Note that a **key need not exist** for a chunk to use it in its range. The chunk may even be empty.

```
> use admin
switched to db admin
> db.runCommand( { split : "test.foo" , middle : { _id : 99 } } )
...
```

This version of the command allows one to do a **data presplitting** that is especially useful in a load. If the range and distribution of keys to be inserted are known in advance, the collection can be split proportionately to the number of servers using the command above, and the (empty) chunks could be migrated upfront using the moveChunk command.

Pre-Splitting Example

Lets say you have 5 shards, and want to insert 100M user profiles sharded by email address. What you should do before inserting is

```
for ( var x=97; x<97+26; x++ ){
  for( var y=97; y<97+26; y+=6 ) {
    var prefix = String.fromCharCode(x) + String.fromCharCode(y);
    db.runCommand( { split : <collection> , middle : { email : prefix } } );
  }
}
```

Then wait for the system to balance (should take about 5 minutes).

Sharding FAQ

- Should I start out with sharded or with a non-sharded MongoDB environment?
- How does sharding work with replication?
- Where do unsharded collections go if sharding is enabled for a database?
- When will data be on more than one shard?
- What happens if I try to update a document on a chunk that is being migrated?
- What if a shard is down or slow and I do a query?
- How do queries distribute across shards?
- How do queries involving sorting work?
- Now that I sharded my collection, how do I <...> (e.g. drop it)?
- If I don't shard on _id how is it kept unique?
- Why is all my data on one server?
- Can I remove old files in the `moveChunk` directory?
- How many connections does each mongos need?
- Why does `mongos` never seem to give up connections?
- How can I see the connections used by `mongos`?
- What is `writebacklisten` in my logs and currentOp()?
- If a moveChunk fails do I need to cleanup the partially moved docs?
- Can I move/rename my config servers, or go from one to three?

Should I start out with sharded or with a non-sharded MongoDB environment?

We suggest starting unsharded for simplicity and quick startup unless your initial data set will not fit on single servers. Upgrading to sharding from unsharded is easy and seamless, so there is not a lot of advantage to setting up sharding before your data set is large.

Whether with or without sharding, you should be using replication (replica sets) early on for high availability and disaster recovery.

How does sharding work with replication?

Each shard is a logical collection of partitioned data. The shard could consist of a single server or a cluster of replicas. We recommmend using a replica set for each shard.

Where do unsharded collections go if sharding is enabled for a database?

In alpha 2 unsharded data goes to the "primary" for the database specified (query config.databases to see details). Future versions will parcel out unsharded collections to different shards (that is, a collection could be on any shard, but will be on only a single shard if unsharded).

When will data be on more than one shard?

MongoDB sharding is range based. So all the objects in a collection get put into a chunk. Only when there is more than 1 chunk is there an option for multiple shards to get data. Right now, the chunk size is 200mb, so you need at least 200mb for a migration to occur.

What happens if I try to update a document on a chunk that is being migrated?

The update will go through immediately on the old shard, and then the change will be replicated to the new shard before ownership transfers.

What if a shard is down or slow and I do a query?

If a shard is down, the query will return an error. If a shard is responding slowly, mongos will wait for it. You won't get partial results.

How do queries distribute across shards?

There are a few different cases to consider, depending on the query keys and the sort keys. Suppose 3 distinct attributes, X, Y, and Z, where X is the shard key. A query that keys on X and sorts on X will translate straightforwardly to a series of queries against successive shards in X-order. This is faster than querying all shards in parallel because mongos can determine which shards contain the relevant chunks without waiting for all shards to return results. A query that keys on X and sorts on Y will execute in parallel on the appropriate shards, and perform a merge sort keyed on Y of the documents found. A query that keys on Y must run on all shards: if the query sorts by X, the query will serialize over shards in X-order; if the query sorts by Z, the query will parallelize over shards and perform a merge sort keyed on Z of the documents found.

How do queries involving sorting work?

Each shard pre-sorts its results and the mongos does a merge before sending to the client. See the How queries work with sharding PDF for more details.

Now that I sharded my collection, how do I <...> (e.g. drop it)?

Even if chunked, your data is still part of a collection and so all the collection commands apply.

If I don't shard on _id how is it kept unique?

If you don't use _id as the shard key then it is your responsibility to keep the _id unique. If you have duplicate _id values in your collection **bad things will happen** (as mstearn says).

Best practice on a collection not sharded by _id is to use an identifier that will always be unique, such as a BSON ObjectID, for the _id field.

Why is all my data on one server?

Be sure you declare a shard key for your large collections. Until that is done they will not partition.

MongoDB sharding breaks data into chunks. By default, the default for these chunks have been 200MB. Sharding will keep chunks balanced across shards. You need many chunks to trigger balancing, typically 2gb of data or so. db.printShardingStatus() will tell you how many chunks you have, typically need 10 to start balancing.

Can I remove old files in the `moveChunk` directory?

Yes, these files are made as backups during normal shard balancing operations. Once the operations are done then they can be deleted. The cleanup process is currently manual so please do take care of this to free up space.

How many connections does each mongos need?

In a sharded configuration `mongos` will have 1 incoming connection from the client but may need 1 outgoing connection to each shard (possibly times the number of nodes if the shard is backed by a replicaset).

This means that the possible number of open connections that a `mongos` server requires could be `(1 + (N*M) * C)` where N = number of shards, M = number of replicaset nodes, and C = number of client connections.

Why does `mongos` never seem to give up connections?

`mongos` uses a set of connection pools to communicate to each shard (or shard replicaset node). These pools of connections do not currently constrict when the number of clients decreases. This will lead to a possibly large number of connections being kept if you have even used the `mongos` instance before, even if it is currently not being used.

How can I see the connections used by `mongos`?

Run this command on each `mongos` instance:

```
db._adminCommand("connPoolStats");
```

What is `writebacklisten` in my logs and currentOp()?

Writeback listeners are part of the internal communications between shards and config dbs. If you are seeing these in the currentOp or in the slow logs on the server this is part of the normal operation. In particular, the writeback listener is performing long operations, so it can appear in the slow logs even during normal operation.

If a moveChunk fails do I need to cleanup the partially moved docs?

No, chunk moves are consistent and deterministic; the move will retry and when completed the data will only be on the new shard.

Can I move/rename my config servers, or go from one to three?

Yes, see Changing Config Servers

Hosting Center

Database-as-a-Service

- MongoHQ
- MongoLab
- Mongo Machine

Platform-as-a-Service

- alwaysdata
- cloudControl offers a fully managed platform-as-a-service solution with MongoDB as one of their powerful add-ons. Read the blog post MongoDB Setup at cloudControl for more information.
- Heroku has add-on connectors to allow you to use from MongoDB from Heroku applications
- RedHat OpenShift
- VMware CloudFoundry

Dedicated Servers

- ServerBeach offers preconfigured, dedicated MongoDB servers Blog

VPS

- (mt) Media Temple's (ve) server platform is an excellent choice for easy MongoDB deployment.
- Dreamhost offers instant configuration and deployment of MongoDB
- LOCUM Hosting House is a project-oriented shared hosting and VDS. MongoDB is available for all customers as a part of their subscription plan.

More

- Amazon EC2
- Azure
- Joyent
- Linode
- Webfaction
- Presentations

Amazon EC2

- Instance Types
- Linux
- EC2 TCP Port Management
- EBS
  - EBS Snapshotting
  - EBS vs. Local Drives
- Distribution Notes
- Backup, Restore & Verify
- Presentations

MongoDB runs well on Amazon EC2 . This page includes some notes in this regard.

Instance Types

MongoDB works on most EC2 types including Linux and Windows. We recommend you use a 64 bit instance as this is required for all MongoDB databases of significant size. Additionally, we find that the larger instances tend to be on the freshest ec2 hardware.

Linux

One can download a binary or build from source. Generally it is easier to download a binary. We can download and run the binary without being root. For example on 64 bit Linux:

```
[~]$ curl -O http://downloads.mongodb.org/linux/mongodb-linux-x86_64-1.0.1.tgz
[~]$ tar -xzf mongodb-linux-x86_64-1.0.1.tgz
[~]$ cd mongodb-linux-x86_64-1.0.1/bin
[bin]$ ./mongod --version
```

Before running the database one should decide where to put datafiles. Run df -h to see volumes. On some images /mnt will be the many locally attached storage volume. Alternatively you may want to use Elastic Block Store which will have a different mount point.

If you mount the file-system, ensure that you mount with the noatime and nodiratime atributes, for example

```
/dev/mapper/my_vol /var/lib/mongodb xfs noatime,noexec,nodiratime 0 0
```

The create the mongodb datafile directory in the desired location and then run the database:

```
mkdir /mnt/db
./mongod --fork --logpath ~/mongod.log --dbpath /mnt/db/
```

EC2 TCP Port Management

By default the database will now be listening on port 27017. The web administrative UI will be on port 28017.

EBS

EBS Snapshotting

> ⚠ v1.3.1+

If your datafiles are on an EBS volume, you can snapshot them for backups. Use the lock+fsync command to lock the database to prevent writes. Then, snapshot the volume. Then use the unlock command to allow writes to the database again. See the full EC2 Backup, Verify & Recovery guide for more information. This method may also be used with slaves / secondaries.

Note: if you are using --journal, you do not need to fsync/lock, simply take a snapshot.

EBS vs. Local Drives

For production use, we recommend raid 10 across 4-8 ebs drives for best performance.

Multiple ebs drives increase the potential number of random IO's per second (iops), but not necessarily sequential read/write throughput much. In most database applications random iops are important.

See also amazon web site.

Distribution Notes

Some people have reported problems with ubuntu 10.04 on ec2.
Please read https://bugs.launchpad.net/ubuntu/+source/linux-ec2/+bug/614853 and https://bugzilla.kernel.org/show_bug.cgi?id=16991

Backup, Restore & Verify

Tips for backing up a MongoDB on EC2 with EBS.

Presentations

- Running MongoDB in the Cloud - MongoSF (May 2011)
- MongoDB on Amazon EC2 - Webinar (March 2011)

Joyent

For installing MongoDB on a Joyent Node Smart Machine, see this article

The prebuilt MongoDB Solaris 64 binaries work with Joyent accelerators.

Some newer gcc libraries are required to run -- see sample setup session below.

```
$ # assuming a 64 bit accelerator
$ /usr/bin/isainfo -kv
64-bit amd64 kernel modules

$ # get mongodb
$ # note this is 'latest' you may want a different version
$ curl -O http://downloads.mongodb.org/sunos5/mongodb-sunos5-x86_64-latest.tgz
$ gzip -d mongodb-sunos5-x86_64-latest.tgz
$ tar -xf mongodb-sunos5-x86_64-latest.tar
$ mv "mongodb-sunos5-x86_64-2009-10-26" mongo

$ cd mongo

$ # get extra libraries we need (else you will get a libstdc++.so.6 dependency issue)
$ curl -O http://downloads.mongodb.org.s3.amazonaws.com/sunos5/mongo-extra-64.tgz
$ gzip -d mongo-extra-64.tgz
$ tar -xf mongo-extra-64.tar
$ # just as an example - you will really probably want to put these somewhere better:
$ export LD_LIBRARY_PATH=mongo-extra-64
$ bin/mongod --help
```

RedHat OpenShift

MongoDB is a supported service on the RedHat OpenShift Flex platform

This blog post describes how to get a MongoDB application up and running on OpenShift.

VMware CloudFoundry

MongoDB is a supported service on VMware's Cloud Foundry.

Starting a MongoDB service

```
vmc create-service mongodb --name MyMongoDB
```

Once you create a MongoDB service, you can bind and use it inside of Cloud Foundry applications.

Developing applications with MongoDB and Cloud Foundry

- Developing applications with Java

- Developing applications with Ruby
- Developing applications with Node.js

See Also

- Getting started with VMware CloudFoundry, MongoDB and Rails
- Getting started with VMware Cloud Foundry, MongoDB and Node.js
- VMware Cloud Foundry with MongoDB webinar

Monitoring and Diagnostics

- Mongostat
- Query Profiler
- Http Console
- mongo Shell Diagnostic Commands
- Trending/Monitoring Adaptors
- Hosted Monitoring
- Database Record/Replay (diagLogging command)

- Checking Server Memory Usage
- collStats Command
- Database Profiler
- Munin configuration examples
- serverStatus Command
- Http Interface
- mongostat
- mongosniff

- Admin UIs

Mongostat

mongostat is a great utility which exposes many internal MongoDB metrics. For any MongoDB related issues it is a good start for the analysis of performance issues.

Query Profiler

Use the Database Profiler to analyze slow queries.

db.currentOp() is another way to get a snapshot of what is currently happening.

Http Console

The mongod process includes a simple diagnostic screen at http://localhost:28017/. See the Http Interface docs for more information.

mongo Shell Diagnostic Commands

- db.serverStatus()
  - See the serverStatus Command command page.
- db.stats()
  - Stats on the current database. Command takes some time to run, typically a few seconds unless the .ns file is very large (via use of --nssize). While running other operations may be blocked.
  - fileSize is the total size of all files allocated for the db.
- db.foo.find().explain()
  - explain plan
- help
  - db.help()
  - db.foo.help()

Trending/Monitoring Adaptors

- munin
  - Server stats: this will retrieve server stats (requires python; uses http interface)
  - Collection stats, this will display collection sizes, index sizes, and each (configured) collection count for one DB (requires python; uses driver to connect)
- Ganglia:
  - ganglia-gmond
  - mongodb-ganglia
- cacti

- Mikoomi provides a MongoDB plugin for Zabbix
- Nagios
- mtop - A top like utility for Mongo

Chris Lea from (mt) Media Temple has made an easy to install Ubuntu package for the munin plugin.

Hosted Monitoring

- Server Density provides hosted monitoring for your hardware and software infrastructure, and supports a number of status checks for MongoDB.
- Cloudkick
- scout app slow queries
- AppFirst

Database Record/Replay (diagLogging command)

Recording database operations, and replaying them later, is sometimes a good way to reproduce certain problems in a controlled environment.

To enable logging:

```
db._adminCommand( { diagLogging : 1 } )
```

To disable:

```
db._adminCommand( { diagLogging : 0 } )
```

Values for diagLogging:

- 0 off. Also flushes any pending data to the file.
- 1 log writes
- 2 log reads
- 3 log both
  Note: if you log reads, it will record the findOnes above and if you replay them, that will have an effect!

Output is written to diaglog.bin_ in the /data/db/ directory (unless --dbpath is specified).

To replay the logged events:

```
nc ''database_server_ip'' 27017 < ''somelog.bin'' | hexdump -c
```

Checking Server Memory Usage

- Commands
- Working Set Size
- Unix Utilities
- Memory Mapped Files
- Windows
- Historical Memory Leak Bugs (that are fixed)

Commands

The serverStatus() command provides memory usage information. Shell example:

```
> db.serverStatus()
> db.serverStatus().mem
> db.serverStatus().extra_info
```

One can verify there is no memory leak in the mongod process by comparing the mem.virtual and mem.mapped values (these values are in megabytes). If you are running with journaling disabled, the difference should be relatively small compared to total RAM on the machine. If you are running with journaling enabled, compare mem.virtual to 2*mem.mapped. Also watch the delta over time; if it is increasing consistently, that could indicate a leak.

The mem.mapped value reflects the size of all databases currently open. When replication is on, this includes the size of the local database which

includes the oplog. When journaling is enabled each file is mapped twice, once as a writable memmapped view and once as a protected view. The total amount of RAM used is roughly the same; the larger virtual memory size should not be a cause for concern.

One large component of the difference between mem.virtual and mem.mapped (or 2*mem.mapped when journaling is enabled) can be stack memory. In particular, each connection that you have open has a stack frame. The size of each stack frame is determined by the stack size; in Linux this typically defaults to 8MB, which means that each connection will use 8MB on the server. If you are using many connections and are concerned with memory usage you should reduce the stack size to 1MB (this is automatic in the upcoming v2.0 release).

On Linux, extra_info will contain information about the total heap size in a heap bytes field.

You can also see the virtual size and mapped values in the mongostat utility's output.

While increasing virtual size can indicate a memory leak, increasing resident size (ie, what is reflected as RES in the output of top) indicates that the operating system is using a larger portion of available memory to hold mongodb data, which often occurs under normal operations as a system warms up.

Note: OS X includes the operating system image in virtual size (~2GB on a small program). Thus interpretation of the values on OS X is a bit harder.

Working Set Size

In MongoDB it is fine if databases (and thus virtual size) are much larger than ram (terabytes for example); however, you will want your *working set* to memory to achieve good performance. Otherwise lots of random disk IO's will occur, and unless you are using SSD, this can be quite slow. One area to watch specifically in managing the size of your working set is index access patterns. If you are inserting into indexes at random locations (for example, with id's which are effectively randomly generated by hashes), you will continually be updating the whole index. If instead you are able to create your id's in approximately ascending order (for example, day concatenated with a random id), all the updates will occur at the right side of the b-tree and the working set size for index pages will be much smaller.

Unix Utilities

`mongod` uses memory-mapped files; thus the memory stats in top require interpretation in a special way. On a large database, virtual bytes/VSIZE will tend to be the size of the entire database, and if the server doesn't have other processes running, resident bytes/RSIZE will be the total memory of the machine (as this counts file system cache contents).

`vmstat` can be useful – try running `vmstat 2`. on OS X, just `vm_stat`.

Memory Mapped Files

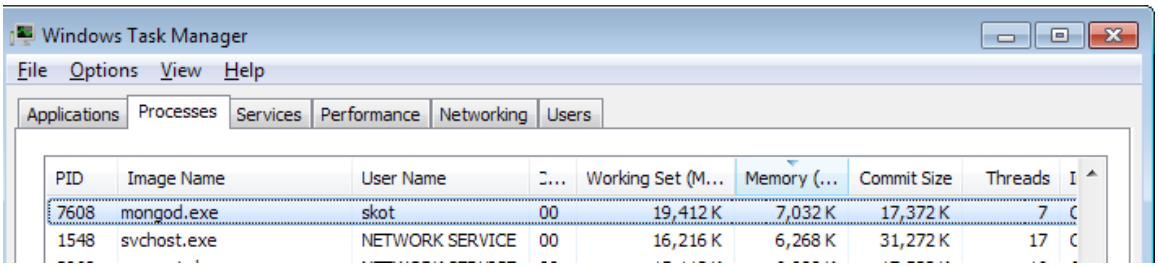
Depending on the platform you may see the mapped files as memory in the process, but this is not strictly correct. Unix top may show way more memory for mongod than is really appropriate. The Operating System (the virtual memory manager specifically, depending on OS) manages the memory where the "Memory Mapped Files" reside. This number is usually shown in a program like "free -lmt".

It is called "cached" memory:

```
skot@stump:~$ free -tm
             total       used       free     shared    buffers     cached
Mem:          3962       3602        359          0        411       2652
-/+ buffers/cache:        538       3423
Swap:         1491         52       1439
Total:        5454       3655       1799
```

Windows

By bringing up the Task Manager you can see the process memory allocation for mongod.



In addition in the Performance tab the "cached" memory which represents the memory allocated by the memory mapped (data) files.

Physical Memory (MB)	
Total	3838
Cached	855
Available	920
Free	72

Kernel Memory (MB)	
Paged	816

Historical Memory Leak Bugs (that are fixed)

(13 issues)		
Key	**FixVersion**	**Summary**
SERVER-2497	1.7.6	memory leak in ModSet::prepare()
SERVER-2522	1.7.6	State::reduceInMemory leaks InMemory on exception
SERVER-2520	1.9.1	add comments in code about intentional memory leak in ReplSetImpl::initFromConfig()
SERVER-2511	1.9.0	memory leak of _MultiCommandJob
SERVER-1827		Memory leak when there's multiple query plans with empty result
SERVER-1897		admin page plugins and handlers leak memory
SERVER-768	1.3.4	Memory leak and high memory usage from snapshots thread
SERVER-774		MessagingPorts are leaking
SERVER-2122	debugging with submitter	memory leak of shard + replication
SERVER-2558	1.8.0-rc0	memory and cursor leak in FindingStartCursor
SERVER-2521	2.1 planning	1300 byte memory leak in PiggyBackData on socket exception
SERVER-2498	2011 - phase 2	small memory leak when closing a database
SERVER-3157	debugging with submitter	Replicaset becomes inaccessable and instable after mapreduce job

collStats Command

Statistics on a collection. The command name is "collStats" and the shell helper is *database.collection*.stats().

```
> db.commandHelp("collStats")
help for: collStats { collStats:"blog.posts" , scale : 1 } scale divides sizes e.g. for KB use 1024
```

In the shell:

```
> // to see params etc.:
> db.foo.stats
function (scale) {
    return this._db.runCommand({collstats:this._shortName, scale:scale});
}

// to run:
> db.foo.stats()
{
        "ns" : "test.foo",
        "count" : 9,            // number of documents
"size" : 432,           // collection size
"avgObjSize" : 48,      // average object size in bytes
"storageSize" : 3840,  // (pre)allocated space for the collection
"numExtents" : 1,       // extents are contiguously allocated
// chunks of datafile space
"nindexes" : 2,
        "lastExtentSize" : 3840,
        "paddingFactor" : 1,   // padding can make updates faster
// if documents grow
"flags" : 1,
        "totalIndexSize" : 16384,
        "indexSizes" : {
                "_id_" : 8192,
                "x_1" : 8192
        },
        "ok" : 1
}
```

- Slave ok : true
- Lock type : read
- Slow to run : no

Database Profiler

Mongo includes a profiling tool to analyze the performance of database operations.

- Enabling Profiling
  - Through the profile command
  - Through the command-line/config-file
- Viewing
- Understanding the Output
- Optimizing Query Performance
- Optimizing Update Performance
- Profiler Overhead
- Profiling and Replication
- Changing the system.profile Collection Size
- Alternatives to Profiling
- See Also

See also the currentOp command.

Enabling Profiling

Through the profile command

You can enable and disable profiling from the mongo shell, or through a driver, via the profile command.

```
> db.commandHelp("profile") // see how to run from drivers
```

When using the profile command, profiling is enabled or disabled per database. A system.profile collection will be created for the database.

To enable profiling, from the `mongo` shell invoke:

```
> db.setProfilingLevel(2);
{"was" : 0 , "slowms" : 100, "ok" : 1} // "was" is the old setting
> db.getProfilingLevel()
2
```

Profiling levels are:

- 0 - off
- 1 - log slow operations (by default, >100ms is considered slow)
- 2 - log all operations

In addition to the default levels you can also specify a `slowms` option:

```
> db.setProfilingLevel(1,20) // log slow operations, slow threshold=20ms
> db.getProfilingStatus() // new shell helper method as of v1.7+
{ "was" : 1, "slowms" : 20 }
```

Through the command-line/config-file

You can also enable profiling on the command line; for example:

```
$ mongo --profile=1 --slowms=15
```

Viewing

Profiling data is recorded in the database's `system.profile` collection. Query that collection to see the results.

> Because profile data is written to `system.profile`, you will see write activity on the database, even if only reading, because of the writes to `system.profile`.

```
> db.system.profile.find()
{"ts" : "Thu Jan 29 2009 15:19:32 GMT-0500 (EST)" , "info" : "query test.$cmd ntoreturn:1 reslen:66
nscanned:0  <br>query: { profile: 2 }  nreturned:1 bytes:50" , "millis" : 0}
...
```

To see output without $cmd (command) operations, invoke:

```
db.system.profile.find( function() { return this.info.indexOf('$cmd')<0; } )
```

To view operations for a particular collection:

```
> db.system.profile.find( { info: /test.foo/ } )
{"ts" : "Thu Jan 29 2009 15:19:40 GMT-0500 (EST)" , "info" : "insert test.foo" , "millis" : 0}
{"ts" : "Thu Jan 29 2009 15:19:42 GMT-0500 (EST)" , "info" : "insert test.foo" , "millis" : 0}
{"ts" : "Thu Jan 29 2009 15:19:45 GMT-0500 (EST)" , "info" : "query test.foo ntoreturn:0 reslen:102
nscanned:2  <br>query: {}  nreturned:2 bytes:86" , "millis" : 0}
{"ts" : "Thu Jan 29 2009 15:21:17 GMT-0500 (EST)" , "info" : "query test.foo ntoreturn:0 reslen:36
nscanned:2  <br>query: { $not: { x: 2 } }  nreturned:0 bytes:20" , "millis" : 0}
{"ts" : "Thu Jan 29 2009 15:21:27 GMT-0500 (EST)" , "info" : "query test.foo ntoreturn:0 exception
bytes:53" , "millis" : 88}
```

To view operations slower than a certain number of milliseconds:

```
> db.system.profile.find( { millis : { $gt : 5 } } )
{"ts" : "Thu Jan 29 2009 15:21:27 GMT-0500 (EST)" , "info" : "query test.foo ntoreturn:0 exception
bytes:53" , "millis" : 88}
```

To see newest information first:

```
db.system.profile.find().sort({$natural:-1})
```

The mongo shell includes a helper to see the most recent 5 profiled events that took at least 1ms to execute. Type show profile at the command prompt to use this feature.

Understanding the Output

The output reports the following values:

- `ts` Timestamp of the profiled operation.
- `millis` Time, in milliseconds, to perform the operation. This time does not include time to acquire the lock or network time, just the time for the server to process.
- `info` Details on the operation.
  - `query` A database query operation. The query info field includes several additional terms:
    - `ntoreturn` Number of objects the client requested for return from a query. For example, <code>findOne()</code> sets ntoreturn to 1. <code>limit()</code> sets the appropriate limit. Zero indicates no limit.
    - `query` Details of the query spec.
    - `nscanned` Number of objects scanned in executing the operation.
    - `reslen` Query result length in bytes.
    - `nreturned` Number of objects returned from query.
  - `update` A database update operation. <code>save()</code> calls generate either an update or insert operation.
    - `fastmod` Indicates a fast modify operation. See Updates. These operations are normally quite fast.
    - `fastmodinsert` - indicates a fast modify operation that performed an upsert.
    - `upsert` Indicates on upsert performed.
    - `moved` Indicates the update moved the object on disk (not updated in place). This is slower than an in place update, and normally occurs when an object grows.
    - `key updates` How many index keys changed during the update. Key updates are a little bit expensive since the db needs to remove the old key and insert a new key into the b-tree index.
  - `insert` A database insert.
  - `getmore` For large queries, the database initially returns partial information. `getmore` indicates a call to retrieve further information.

Optimizing Query Performance

- If `nscanned` is much higher than `nreturned`, the database is scanning many objects to find the target objects. Consider creating an index to improve this.

- `reslen` A large number of bytes returned (hundreds of kilobytes or more) causes slow performance. Consider passing <code>find()</code> a second parameter of the member names you require.

`Note:` There is a cost for each index you create. The index causes disk writes on each insert and some updates to the collection. If a rare query, it may be better to let the query be "slow" and not create an index. When a query is common relative to the number of saves to the collection, you will want to create the index.

Optimizing Update Performance

- Examine the `nscanned` info field. If it is a very large value, the database is scanning a large number of objects to find the object to update. Consider creating an index if updates are a high-frequency operation.
- Use fast modify operations when possible (and usually with these, an index). See Updates.

Profiler Overhead

When enabled, profiling affects performance, although not severely.

Profile data is stored in the database's `system.profile` collection, which is a Capped Collection. By default it is set to a very small size and thus only includes recent operations.

Profiling and Replication

In v1.9+, you can use profiling on secondaries in addition to the current primary. In older versions of MongoDB, use profiling on the primary only.

Changing the system.profile Collection Size

Profiling information is written to the system.profile capped collection. There is a separate profile collection per database. By default the collection is very small and like all capped collections works in a rotating RRD-like style. To make it bigger you can create it explicitly. You will need to drop it first; you may need to disable profiling before the drop/recreate. Example in the shell:

```
> db.system.profile.drop()
> db.createCollection("system.profile", {capped:true, size:4000000})
> db.system.profile.stats()
```

Alternatives to Profiling

The profiler can generate write locks as it writes to the profile collection. Thus other tools to consider for optimizing queries are:

1. Running db.currentOp(), perhaps many times in a row to get a good sample;
2. Using the explain() helper in the shell

See Also

- Optimization
- explain()
- Viewing and Terminating Current Operation

Munin configuration examples

Overview

Munin can use be used monitoring aspects of you running system. The following is a mini tutorial to help you setup and use the MongoDB plugin with munin.

Setup

Munin is made up of two components

- agent and plugins that are installed on the system you want to monitor
- server which polls the agent(s) and creates the basic web pages and graphs to visualize the data

Install

You can download from SourceForge , but pre-built packages are also available. For example on Ubuntu you can do the following

Agent install

To install the agent, repeat the following steps on each node you want to monitor

```
shell> sudo apt-get install munin-node
```

Server install

The server needs to be installed once. It relies on apache2, so you will need to ensure that it is installed as well

```
shell> apt-get install apache2
shell> apt-get install munin
```

Configuration

Both the agent(s) and server need to be configured with the IP address and port to contact each other. In the following examples we will use these nodes

- db1 : 10.202.210.175
- db2 : 10.203.22.38
- munin-server : 10.194.102.70

Agent configuration

On each node, add an entry as follows into
for db1:

```
/etc/munin/munin-node.conf
host_name db1-ec2-174-129-52-161.compute-1.amazonaws.com
allow ^10\.194\.102\.70$
```

for db2:

```
/etc/munin/munin-node.conf
host_name db2-ec2-174-129-52-161.compute-1.amazonaws.com
allow ^10\.194\.102\.70$
```

* host_name : can be whatever you like, this name will be used by the server

- allow : this is the IP address of the server, enabling the server to poll the agent

Server configuration

Add an entry for each node that is being monitored as follows in

```
[db1-ec2-174-129-52-161.compute-1.amazonaws.com]
address 10.202.210.175
use_node_name no

[db2-ec2-184-72-191-169.compute-1.amazonaws.com]
address 10.203.22.38
use_node_name no
```

* the name in between the [] needs to match the name set in the agents munin-node.conf

- address : IP address of the node where the agent is running
- use_node_name : dtermine if the IP or the name between [] is used to contact the agent

MongoDB munin plugin

A plugin is available that provide metrics for

- B-Tree stats
- Current connections
- Memory usage
- Database operations (inserts, updates, queries etc.)

The plugin can be installed as follows on each node where MongoDB is running

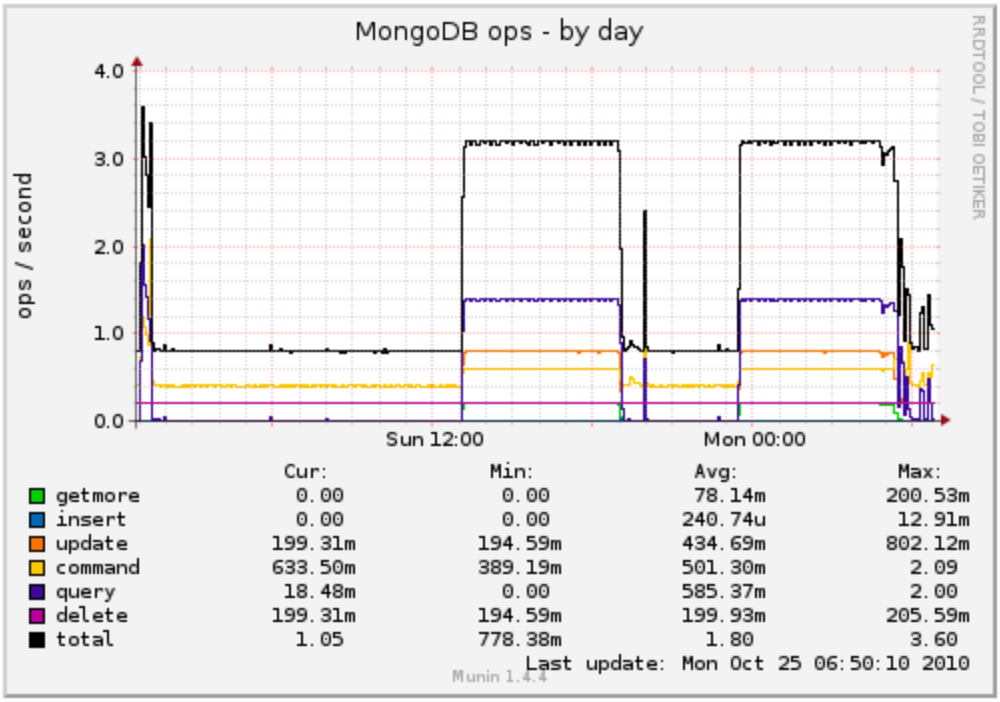
```
shell> wget http://github.com/erh/mongo-munin/tarball/master
shell> tar xvf erh-mongo-munin-*tar.gz
shell> cp erh-mongo-munin-*/mongo_* /etc/munin/plugins/
```

Check your setup

After installing the plugin and making the configuration changes, force the server to update the information to check your setup is correct using the following

```
shell> sudo -u munin /usr/share/munin/munin-update
```

If everything is setup correctly, you will get a chart like this



Advanced charting

If you are running a large MongoDB cluster, you may want to aggregate the values (e.g. inserts per second) across all the nodes in the cluster. Munin provides a simple way to aggregate.

```
/etc/munin/munin.conf
[compute-1.amazonaws.com;CLUSTER]
update no
```

* Defines a new segment called CLUSTER

- update no : munin can generate the chart based on existing data, this tell munin not to poll the agents for the data

Now lets define a chart to aggregate the inserts, updates and deletefor the cluster

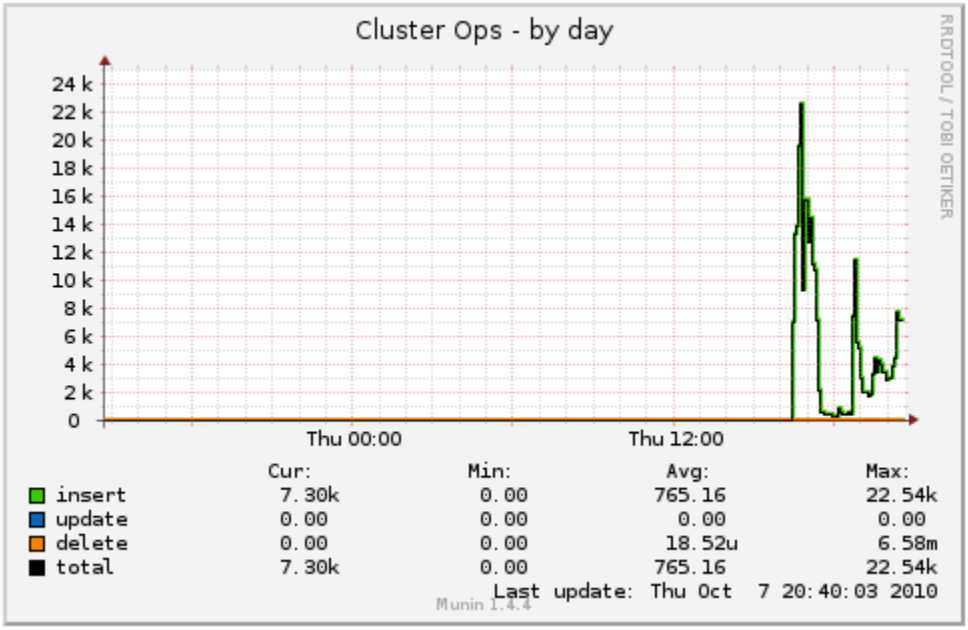
```
cluster_ops.graph_title Cluster Ops
cluster_ops.graph_category mongodb
cluster_ops.graph_total total
cluster_ops.total.graph no
cluster_ops.graph_order insert update delete
cluster_ops.insert.label insert
cluster_ops.insert.sum \
  db1-ec2-174-129-52-161.compute-1.amazonaws.com:mongo_ops.insert \
  db2-ec2-184-72-191-169.compute-1.amazonaws.com:mongo_ops.insert
cluster_ops.update.label update
cluster_ops.update.sum \
  db1-ec2-174-129-52-161.compute-1.amazonaws.com:mongo_ops.update \
  db2-ec2-184-72-191-169.compute-1.amazonaws.com:mongo_ops.update
cluster_ops.delete.label delete
cluster_ops.delete.sum \
  db1-ec2-174-129-52-161.compute-1.amazonaws.com:mongo_ops.delete \
  db2-ec2-184-72-191-169.compute-1.amazonaws.com:mongo_ops.delete
```

* cluster_ops : name of this chart

- cluster_ops.graph_category mongodb : puts this chart into the "mongodb" category. Allows you to collect similar charts on a single page
- cluster_ops.graph_order insert update delete : indicates the order of the line son the key for the chart
- cluster_ops.insert : represents a single line on the chart, in this case the "insert"
- cluster_ops.insert.sum : indicates the values are summed

- db1-ec2-174-129-52-161.compute-1.amazonaws.com : indicates the node to aggregate
- mongo_ops.insert : indicates the chart (mongo_ops) and the counter (insert) to aggregate

And this is what is looks like



serverStatus Command

The serverStatus command provides very useful diagnostic information for a mongod instance.

From the shell:

```
> db.commandHelp("serverStatus")
help for: serverStatus returns lots of administrative server statistics

> db.serverStatus()
```

Field	Example Value	Explanation
host	my.node.com	The hostname of this server
version	1.8.0-rc1-pre-	The version number of this server
process	mongod	What is the process? (mongod, mongos)
uptime	14143	Uptime in seconds
uptimeEstimate	12710	Uptime based on MongoDB's internal coarse grained timer
localTime	ISODate("2011-03-01T05:30:16.682Z")	The local time at this server (time is in UTC).
globalLock.totalTime	14143457121	The number of microseconds since startup that the global lock was created
globalLock.lockTime	17166	The number of microseconds that the global lock has been held since it was created
globalLock.ratio	0.0000012137060870720337	The ratio between lockTime & totalTime
globalLock.currentQueue.total	12	The current number of operations queued waiting for the global lock
globalLock.currentQueue.readers	10	The current number of operations queued waiting on a read lock
globalLock.currentQueue.writers	2	The current number of operations queued waiting for a write lock

globalLock.activeClients.total	3	Total number of active clients connected to this server
globalLock.activeClients.readers	2	The total number of active clients currently performing read operations
globalLock.activeClients.writers	1	The total number of active clients currently performing write operations
mem.bits	64	Is this a 32 or 64 bit architecture?
mem.resident	20	number of megabytes resident. It is typical over time, on a dedicated database server, for this number to approach the amount of physical ram on the box.
mem.virtual	2502	virtual megabytes for the mongod process. Generally virtual should be a little larger than mapped, but if virtual is many gigabytes larger, that could indicate a memory leak - with journalling, virtual is twice mapped
mem.supported	true	Whether or not this machine supports extended memory info. If this is false, other values in 'mem' may not be present
mem.mapped	80	As MongoDB memory maps all the data files, this number is likely similar to your total database(s) size.
connections.current	23	The number of currently active connections to this server
connections.available	50	The number of available connections remaining
extra_info.heap_usage_bytes	234342	The number of bytes of heap used by this process. Only available on linux
extra_info.page_faults	2523	The number of page faults on this process. Only available on linux
indexCounters.btree.accesses	2342	The number of times the btree indexes have been accessed
indexCounters.btree.hits	2340	The number of times a btree page was in memory
indexCounters.btree.misses	2	The number of times a btree page was not in memory
indexCounters.btree.resets	0	The number of times the index counters have been reset to 0
indexCounters.btree.missRatio	0	The ratio of misses to hits on the btree
backgroundFlushing.flushes	214	The number of times the database has flushed writes to disk
backgroundFlushing.total_ms	1357	The total number of ms that the database has spent flushing data to disk
backgroundFlushing.average_ms	6.341121495327103	The average number of ms it takes to perform a single flush
backgroundFlushing.last_ms	7	The number of ms that the last flush took to complete
backgroundFlushing.last_finished	ISODate("2011-03-01T05:29:44.124Z")	The timestamp from when the last flush was completed
cursors.totalOpen	0	The total number of cursors that the server is maintaining for clients
cursors.clientCursors_size	[deprecated] Same as cursors.totalOpen	
cursors.timedOut	0	The number of cursors that have timed out since this server was started
network.bytesIn	1430	The total number of bytes sent to this database
network.bytesOut	2140	The total number of bytes sent from this database
network.numRequests	20	The total number of requests that have been sent to this database
repl.setName	mySet	The name of the replica set that this server is a part of
repl.ismaster	true	Whether or not this node is the master of the replica set
repl.secondary	false	Whether or not this node is a secondary of the replica set

repl.hosts	["my.node.com:27017", "other.node.com:27017", "third.node.com:27017"]	The set of hosts in this replica sets
opcounters.insert	0	The total number of inserts performed since this process started
opcounters.query	9	The total number of queries performed since this process started
opcounters.update	0	The total number of updates performed since this process started
opcounters.delete	0	The total number of deletes performed since this process started
opcounters.getmore	0	The total number of times getMore has been called on any cursor since this process started
opcounters.command	13	The total number of other commands performed since this process started
asserts.regular	0	The number of regular asserts raised since this process started
asserts.warning	0	The number of warnings raised since this process started
asserts.msg	0	The number of message asserts. These are internal server errors that have a well defined text string. Stack traces are logged for these
asserts.user	0	The number of user asserts. These are errors that can be generated by a user such as out of disk space or duplicate key
asserts.rollovers	0	The number of times the assert counters have rolled over since this process started
writeBacksQueued	false	Whether or not there are any operations from a mongos that have to be retried
dur.commits	0	The number of commits to the journal that have occured in the last interval
dur.journaledMB	0	MBs of data written to the journal in the last interval
dur.writeToDataFilesMB	0	MBs of data written from journal to data files in the last interval
dur.commitsInWriteLock	0	The number of commits in the last interval which were in a write lock. Commits in a write lock are undesirable
dur.earlyCommits	0	Number of times a commit was requested before the scheduled time
dur.timeMs.dt	3011	The time length of the interval over which the dur statswere collected
dur.timeMs.prepLogBuffer	0	The amount of time spent preparing to write to the journal
dur.timeMs.writeToJournal	0	The amount of time spent actually writing to the journal
dur.timeMs.writeToDataFiles	0	The amount of time spent writing to datafiles after journaing
dur.timeMs.remapPrivateView	0	The amount of time spent remapping copy-on-write memory mapped views
ok	1	Whether or not serverStatus returned correctly

- Slave ok : true
- Lock type : none

Http Interface

- REST Interfaces
  - Sleepy Mongoose (Python)
  - MongoDB Rest (Node.js)
- HTTP Console
  - HTTP Console Security
- Simple REST Interface
  - JSON in the simple REST interface
- See Also

REST Interfaces

Sleepy Mongoose (Python)

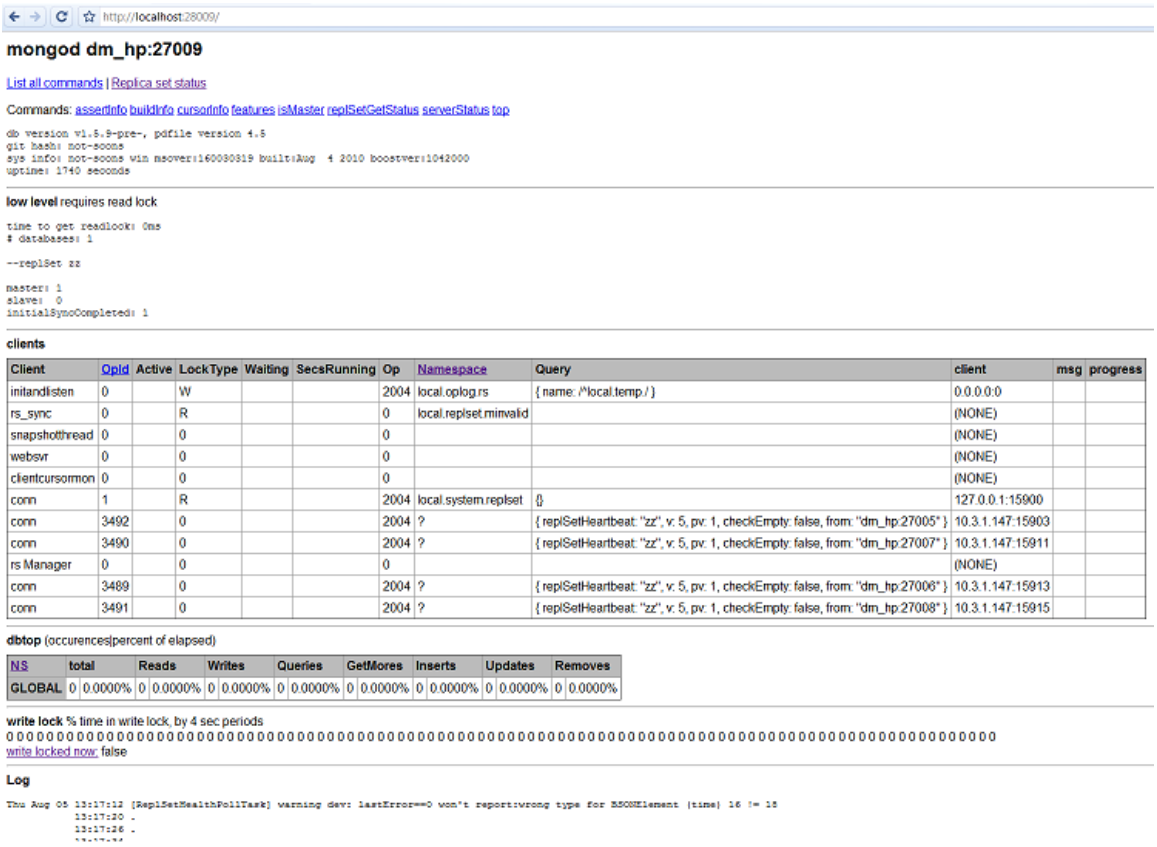
Sleepy Mongoose is a full featured REST interface for MongoDB which is available as a separate project.

MongoDB Rest (Node.js)

MongoDB Rest is an **alpha** REST interface to MongoDB, which uses the MongoDB Node Native driver.

HTTP Console

MongoDB provides a simple http interface listing information of interest to administrators. This interface may be accessed at the port with numeric value 1000 more than the configured mongod port; the default port for the http interface is 28017. To access the http interface an administrator may, for example, point a browser to http://localhost:28017 if mongod is running with the default port on the local machine.



Here is a description of the informational elements of the http interface:

element	description
db version	database version information
git hash	database version developer tag
sys info	mongod compilation environment
dblocked	indicates whether the primary mongod mutex is held
uptime	time since this mongod instance was started
assertions	any software assertions that have been raised by this mongod instance
replInfo	information about replication configuration
currentOp	most recent client request
# databases	number of databases that have been accessed by this mongod instance

curclient	last database accessed by this mongod instance
Cursors	describes outstanding client cursors
master	whether this mongod instance has been designated a master
slave	whether this mongod instance has been designated a slave
initialSyncCompleted	whether this slave or repl pair node has completed an initial clone of the mongod instance it is replicating
DBTOP	Displays the total time the mongod instance has devoted to each listed collection, as well as the percentage of available time devoted to each listed collection recently and the number of reads, writes, and total calls made recently
dt	Timing information about the primary mongod mutex

HTTP Console Security

If security is configured for a mongod instance, authentication is required for a client to access the http interface from another machine.

Simple REST Interface

The mongod process includes a simple read-only REST interface for convenience. For full REST capabilities we recommend using an external tool such as Sleepy.Mongoose.

Note: in v1.3.4+ of MongoDB, this interface is disabled by default. Use `--rest` on the command line to enable.

To get the contents of a collection (note the trailing slash):

```
http://127.0.0.1:28017/databaseName/collectionName/
```

To add a limit:

```
http://127.0.0.1:28017/databaseName/collectionName/?limit=-10
```

To skip:

```
http://127.0.0.1:28017/databaseName/collectionName/?skip=5
```

To query for {a : 1}:

```
http://127.0.0.1:28017/databaseName/collectionName/?filter_a=1
```

Separate conditions with an &:

```
http://127.0.0.1:28017/databaseName/collectionName/?filter_a=1&limit=-10
```

Same as `db.$cmd.findOne({listDatabase:1})` on the "admin" database in the shell:

```
http://localhost:28017/admin/$cmd/?filter_listDatabases=1&limit=1
```

JSON in the simple REST interface

The simple ReST interface uses strict JSON (as opposed to the shell, which uses Dates, regular expressions, etc.). To display non-JSON types, the web interface wraps them in objects and uses the key for the type. For example:

```
# ObjectIds just become strings
"_id" : "4a8acf6e7fbadc242de5b4f3"

# dates
"date" : { "$date" : 1250609897802 }

# regular expressions
"match" : { "$regex" : "foo", "$options" : "ig" }
```

The code type has not been implemented yet and causes the DB to crash if you try to display it in the browser.

See Mongo Extended JSON for details.

See Also

- Replica Set Admin UI
- Diagnostic Tools

mongostat

Use the mongostat utility to quickly view statistics on a running mongod instance.

```
connected to: 127.0.0.1
insert  query update delete getmore command flushes mapped  vsize    res locked % idx miss %     qr|qw   ar|aw  netIn netOut  conn       time
     0      0      0      0       0       1       0     0m  2.36g     4m        0          0       0|0     0|0    62b     1k     1   17:25:35
     0      0      0      0       0       1       0     0m  2.36g     4m        0          0       0|0     0|0    62b     1k     1   17:25:36
     0      0      0      0       0       1       0     0m  2.36g     4m        0          0       0|0     0|0    62b     1k     1   17:25:37
     0      0      0      0       0       1       0     0m  2.36g     4m        0          0       0|0     0|0    62b     1k     1   17:25:38
```

Run *mongostat --help* for help.

```
Fields:
   insert       - # of inserts per second (* means replicated op)
   query        - # of queries per second
   update       - # of updates per second
   delete       - # of deletes per second
   getmore      - # of get mores (cursor batch) per second
   command      - # of commands per second (on a slave, it's local|replicated)
   flushes      - # of fsync flushes per second
   mapped       - amount of data mmaped (total data size) megabytes
   vsize        - virtual size of process in megabytes
   res          - resident size of process in megabytes
   faults       - # of pages faults/sec (linux only)
   locked       - percent of time in global write lock
   idx miss     - percent of btree page misses (sampled)
   qr | qw      - queue lengths for clients waiting (read|write)
   ar | aw      - active clients (read|write)
   netIn        - network traffic in - bits
   netOut       - network traffic out - bits
   conn         - number of open connections
   set          - replica set name
   repl         - replication type
                    M    - master
                    SEC  - secondary
                    REC  - recovering
                    UNK  - unknown
                    SLV  - slave
```

multiple servers:

```
mongostat --host a,b,c
```

find all connected servers (added in 1.7.2):

```
mongostat --discover (--host optional)
```

mongosniff

Unix releases of MongoDB include a utility called mongosniff. This utility is to MongoDB what tcpdump is to TCP/IP; that is, fairly low level and for complex situations. The tool is quite useful for authors of driver tools.

```
$ ./mongosniff --help
Usage: mongosniff [--help] [--forward host:port] [--source (NET <interface> | FILE <filename>)]
[<port0> <port1> ...]
--forward       Forward all parsed request messages to mongod instance at
                specified host:port
--source        Source of traffic to sniff, either a network interface or a
                file containing perviously captured packets, in pcap format.
                If no source is specified, mongosniff will attempt to sniff
                from one of the machine's network interfaces.
<port0>...      These parameters are used to filter sniffing.  By default,
                only port 27017 is sniffed.
--help          Print this help message.
```

Building

mongosniff is including in the binaries for Unix distributions. As mongosniff depends on libpcap, the MongoDB SConstruct only builds mongosniff if libpcap is installed.

```
sudo yum install libpcap-devel
scons mongosniff
```

Example

To monitor localhost:27017, run `ifconfig` to find loopback's name (usually something like `lo` or `lo0`). Then run:

```
mongosniff --source NET lo
```

If you get the error message "error opening device: socket: Operation not permitted" or "error finding device: no suitable device found", try running it as root.

Other Tools

If you want to use a GUI with more detailed introspection, there is Wireshark support for MongoDB.

Wireshark Support for MongoDB Protocol

Wireshark, an advanced interactive network traffic sniffer, has full support for the MongoDB Wire protocol.

You can visually inspect MongoDB traffic, do complex filters on specific values of MongoDB wire messages and dig into individual documents both sent and received.

Note: wireshark looks for port 27017 and infers MongoDB protocol from this. If you are running on a different port number, go to Preferences...Protocols...Mongo and set your port number and it should then interpret the data.

Filter: mongo.response_to | Expression... | Clear | Apply

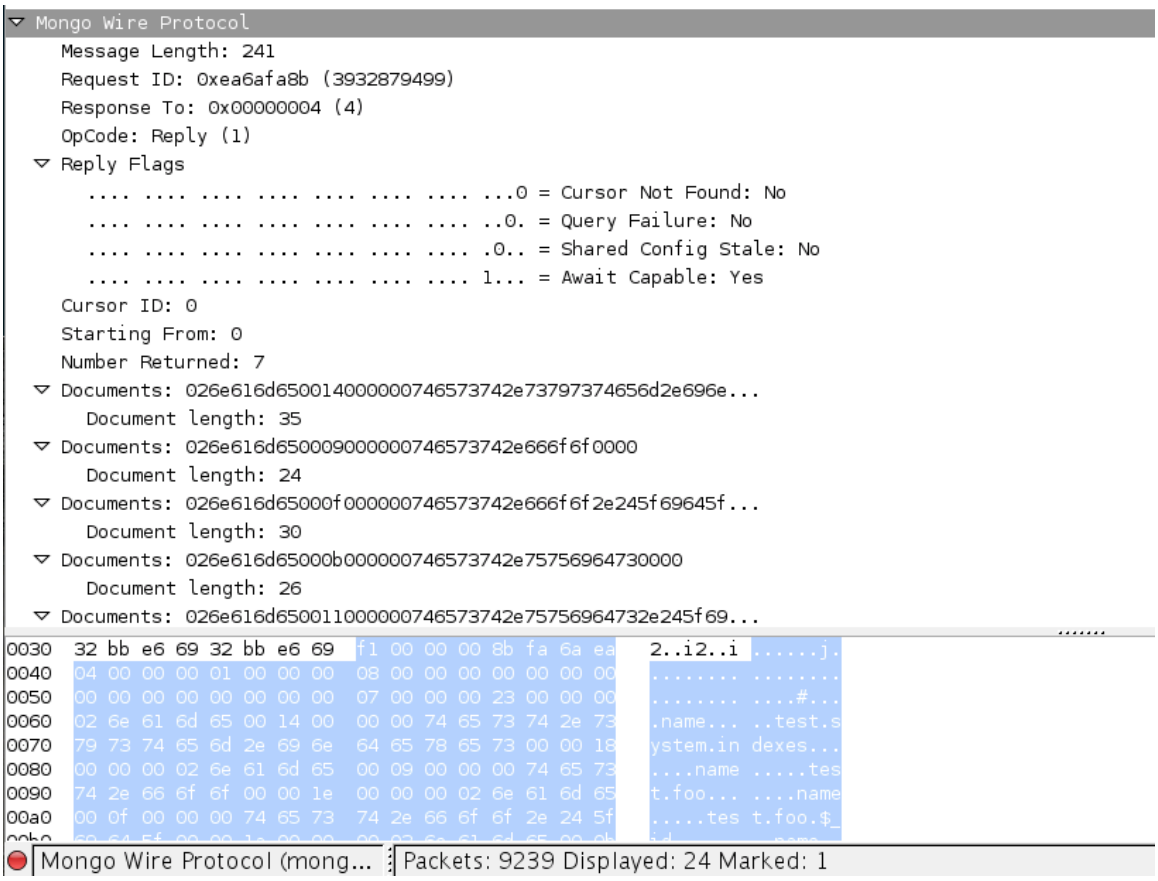
No.	Time	Source	Destination	Protocol	Length	Info
82	291.492997	127.0.0.1	127.0.0.1	MONGO	297	Response : Reply
233	715.263148	127.0.0.1	127.0.0.1	MONGO	119	Request : Query
235	715.263296	127.0.0.1	127.0.0.1	MONGO	143	Response : Reply
237	719.208796	127.0.0.1	127.0.0.1	MONGO	124	Request : Query
239	719.212085	127.0.0.1	127.0.0.1	MONGO	1477	Response : Reply

Field name

- MONGO – Mongo Wire Protocol
  - mongo.message_length – Message Length (Total me
  - mongo.request_id – Request ID (Identifier for this m
  - mongo.response_to – Response To (RequestID from
  - mongo.opcode – OpCode (Type of request message)
  - mongo.query.flags – Query Flags (Bit vector of query
  - mongo.full_collection_name – fullCollectionName (T
  - mongo.database_name – Database Name
  - mongo.collection_name – Collection Name
  - mongo.reply.flags – Reply Flags (Bit vector of reply c
  - mongo.reply.flags.cursornotfound – Cursor Not Fou
  - mongo.reply.flags.queryfailure – Query Failure (Set v
  - mongo.reply.flags.sharedconfigstale – Shared Confi
  - mongo.reply.flags.awaitcapable – Await Capable (Set
  - mongo.message – Message (Message for the databa
  - mongo.cursor_id – Cursor ID (Cursor id if client nee
  - mongo.starting_from – Starting From (Where in the
  - mongo.number_returned – Number Returned (Numb
  - mongo.documents – Documents
  - mongo.document.length – Document length (Length
  - mongo.document.zero – Zero (Reserved (Must be is
  - mongo.update.flags – Update Flags (Bit vector of up
  - mongo.update.flags.upsert – Upsert (If set, the datab
  - mongo.update.flags.multiupdate – Multi Update (If s
  - mongo.selector – Selector (The query to select the d
  - mongo.update – Update (Specification of the update

Relation

- is present
- ==
- !=
- >
- <
- >=
- <=



Backups

- Snapshot Backups with Journaling (`--journal`) Enabled
- Shutdown and Backup
- Write Lock, Fsync, and Backup
- Exports
- Slave Backup
- Community Stuff
- Presentations

Several strategies exist for backing up MongoDB databases. A word of warning: it's not safe to back up the mongod data files (by default in /data/db/) while the database is running and writes are occurring; such a backup may turn out to be corrupt unless you follow the specific directions below.

Snapshot Backups with Journaling (`--journal`) Enabled

It is safe to take an lvm/ebs snapshot of the entire dbpath directory of a mongod running with `--journal`. All files and directories (start from the dbpath directory) must be included (especially the journal subdirectory).

- As long as all files are snapshotted at the same point in time, you don't need to fsync-lock the database.
- It is **not** safe to simply copy the files without locking or snapshotting, even with `--journal`, since the journal and the datafiles might not be consistent with each other.

Shutdown and Backup

A simple approach is just to stop the database, back up the data files, and resume. This is safe but of course requires downtime.

Write Lock, Fsync, and Backup

MongoDB v1.3.1 and higher supports an fsync and lock command with which we can lock the database to prevent writing, flush writes, and then backup the datafiles.

While in this locked mode, all writes will block. If this is a problem consider one of the other methods below.

Note: a write attempt will request a lock and may block new readers. This will be fixed in a future release. Thus currently, fsync and lock works

best with storage systems that do quick snapshots.

For example, you could use LVM2 to create a snapshot after the fsync+lock, and then use that snapshot to do an offsite backup in the background. This means that the server will only be locked while the snapshot is taken. Don't forget to unlock after the backup/snapshot is taken.

Exports

The mongodump utility may be used to dump an entire server/database/collection (or part of a collection with a query), even when the database is running and active. The dump can then be restored later if needed.

Slave Backup

Another good technique for backups is replication to a slave database. The slave polls master continuously and thus always has a nearly-up-to-date copy of master.

We then have several options for backing up the slave:

1. Fsync, write lock, and backup the slave.
2. Shut it down, backup, and restart.
3. Export from the slave.

For methods 1 and 2, after the backup the slave will resume replication, applying any changes made to master in the meantime.

Using a slave is advantageous because we then always have backup database machine ready in case master fails (failover). But a slave also gives us the chance to back up the full data set without affecting the performance of the master database.

Community Stuff

- http://github.com/micahwedemeyer/automongobackup

Presentations

- Backing up your MongoDB Cluster - MongoSF (May 2011)

EC2 Backup & Restore

Overview

This article describes how to backup, verify & restore a MongoDB running on EC2 using EBS Snapshots.

Backup

How you backup MongoDB will depend on whether you are using the --journal option in 1.8 (or above) or not.

Backup with --journal

The journal file allows for roll forward recovery. The journal files are located in the dbpath directory so will be snapshotted at the same time as the database files.

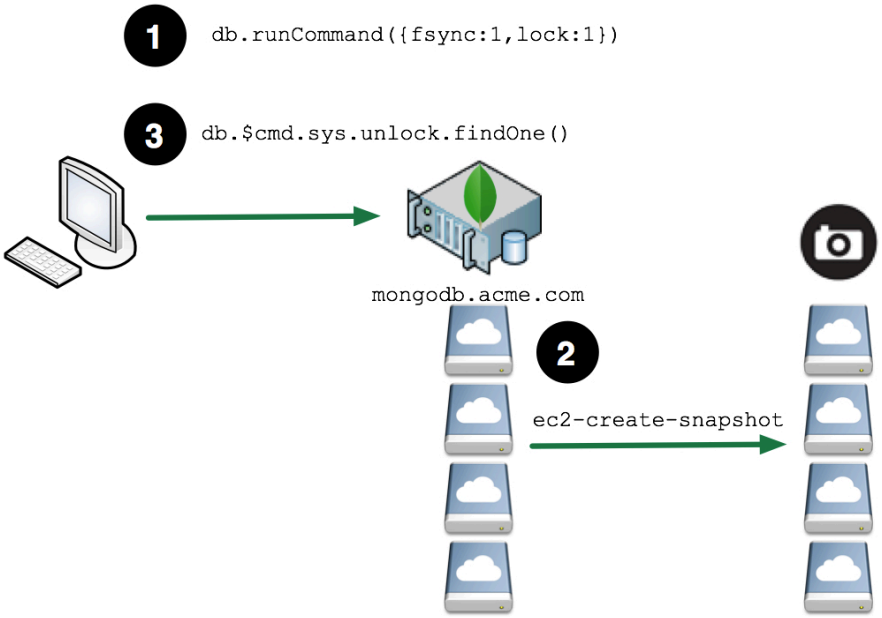
If the dbpath is mapped to a single EBS volume then proceed to the Backup the Database Files section.

If you dbpath is mapped to multiple EBS volumes, in order to guarantee the stability of the file-system then you will need to Flush and Lock the Database section.

Backup without --journal

In order to correctly backup a MongoDB, you need to ensure that writes are suspended to the file-system before you backup the file-system. If writes are not suspended then the backup may contain partially written or data which may fail to restore correctly.

Backing up MongoDB is simple to achieve using the fsync + lock command. If the file-system is being used only by the database, then you can then use the snapshot facility of EBS volumes to create a backup. If you are using the volume for any other application then you will need to ensure that the file-system is frozen as well (e.g. on XFS file-system use xfs_freeze) before you initiate the EBS snapshot. The overall process looks like:



Flush and Lock the database

Writes have to be suspended to the file-system in order to make a stable copy of the database files. This can be achieved through the MongoDB shell using the fsync + lock command.

```
mongo shell> use admin
mongo shell> db.runCommand({fsync:1,lock:1});
{
 "info" : "now locked against writes, use db.$cmd.sys.unlock.findOne() to unlock",
 "ok" : 1
}
```

During the time the database is locked, any write requests that this database receives will be rejected. Any application code will need to deal with these errors appropriately.

Backup the database files

There are several ways to create a EBS Snapshot, for example with Elastic Fox or the AWS Command line. The following examples use the AWS command line tool.

Find the EBS volumes associated with the MongoDB

If the mapping of EBS Block devices to the MongoDB data volumes is already known, then this step can be skipped. The example below shows how to determine the mapping for an LVM volume, please confirm with your System Administrator how the original system was setup if you are unclear.

Find the EBS block devices associated with the running instance

```
shell> ec2-describe-instances
RESERVATION r-eb09aa81 289727918005 tokyo,default
INSTANCE i-78803e15 ami-4b4ba522 ec2-50-16-30-250.compute-1.amazonaws.com
ip-10-204-215-62.ec2.internal running scaleout 0  m1.large 2010-11-04T02:15:34+0000 us-east-1a
aki-0b4aa462   monitoring-disabled 50.16.30.250 10.204.215.62   ebs paravirtual
BLOCKDEVICE /dev/sda1 vol-6ce9f105 2010-11-04T02:15:43.000Z
BLOCKDEVICE /dev/sdf vol-96e8f0ff 2010-11-04T02:15:43.000Z
BLOCKDEVICE /dev/sdh vol-90e8f0f9 2010-11-04T02:15:43.000Z
BLOCKDEVICE /dev/sdg vol-68e9f101 2010-11-04T02:15:43.000Z
BLOCKDEVICE /dev/sdi vol-94e8f0fd 2010-11-04T02:15:43.000Z
```

As can be seen in this example, there are a number of block devices associated with this instance. We have to determine which volumes make up the file-system we need to snapshot.

Determining how the dbpath is mapped to the file-system

Log onto the running MongoDB instance in EC2. To determine where the database file are located, either look at the startup parameters for the mongod process or if mongod is running, then you can examine the running process.

```
root> ps -ef | grep mongo
ubuntu   10542     1  0 02:17 ?        00:00:00 /var/opt/mongodb/current/bin/mongod --port 27000
--shardsvr --dbpath /var/lib/mongodb/tokyo0 --fork --logpath /var/opt/mongodb/log/server.log
--logappend --rest
```

dbpath is set to /var/lib/mongodb/tokyo0 in this example.

Mapping the dbpath to the physical devices

Using the df command, determine what the --dbpath directory is mapped to

```
root> df /var/lib/mongodb/tokyo0
Filesystem           1K-blocks      Used Available Use% Mounted on
/dev/mapper/data_vg-data_vol
                     104802308      4320 104797988   1% /var/lib/mongodb
```

Next determine the logical volume associated with this device, in the example above /dev/mapper/data_vg-data_vol

```
root> lvdisplay /dev/mapper/data_vg-data_vol
  --- Logical volume ---
  LV Name                /dev/data_vg/data_vol
  VG Name                data_vg
  LV UUID                fixOyX-6Aiw-PnBA-i2bp-ovUc-u9uu-TGvjxl
  LV Write Access        read/write
  LV Status              available
  # open                 1
  LV Size                100.00 GiB
...
```

This output indicates the volume group associated with this logical volume, in this example data_vg. Next determine how this maps to the physical volume.

```
root> pvscan
  PV /dev/md0   VG data_vg   lvm2 [100.00 GiB / 0    free]
  Total: 1 [100.00 GiB] / in use: 1 [100.00 GiB] / in no VG: 0 [0   ]
```

From the physical volume, determine the associated physical devices, in this example /dev/md0.

```
root> mdadm --detail /dev/md0
/dev/md0:
        Version : 00.90
  Creation Time : Thu Nov  4 02:17:11 2010
     Raid Level : raid10
     Array Size : 104857472 (100.00 GiB 107.37 GB)
  Used Dev Size : 52428736 (50.00 GiB 53.69 GB)
   Raid Devices : 4
...
           UUID : 07552c4d:6c11c875:e5a1de64:a9c2f2fc (local to host ip-10-204-215-62)
         Events : 0.19

    Number   Major   Minor   RaidDevice State
       0       8       80        0      active sync   /dev/sdf
       1       8       96        1      active sync   /dev/sdg
       2       8      112        2      active sync   /dev/sdh
       3       8      128        3      active sync   /dev/sdi
```

We can see that block devices /dev/sdf through /dev/sdi make up this physical devices. Each of these volumes will need to be snapped in order to complete the backup of the file-system.

Create the EBS Snapshot

Create the snapshot for each devices. Using the ec2-create-snapshot command, use the Volume Id for the device listed by the ec2-describe-instances command.

```
shell> ec2-create-snapshot -d backup-20101103 vol-96e8f0ff
SNAPSHOT snap-417af82b vol-96e8f0ff pending 2010-11-04T05:57:29+0000  289727918005 50 backup-20101103
shell> ec2-create-snapshot -d backup-20101103 vol-90e8f0f9
SNAPSHOT snap-5b7af831 vol-90e8f0f9 pending 2010-11-04T05:57:35+0000  289727918005 50 backup-20101103
shell> ec2-create-snapshot -d backup-20101103 vol-68e9f101
SNAPSHOT snap-577af83d vol-68e9f101 pending 2010-11-04T05:57:42+0000  289727918005 50 backup-20101103
shell> ec2-create-snapshot -d backup-20101103 vol-94e8f0fd
SNAPSHOT snap-2d7af847 vol-94e8f0fd pending 2010-11-04T05:57:49+0000  289727918005 50 backup-20101103
```

Unlock the database

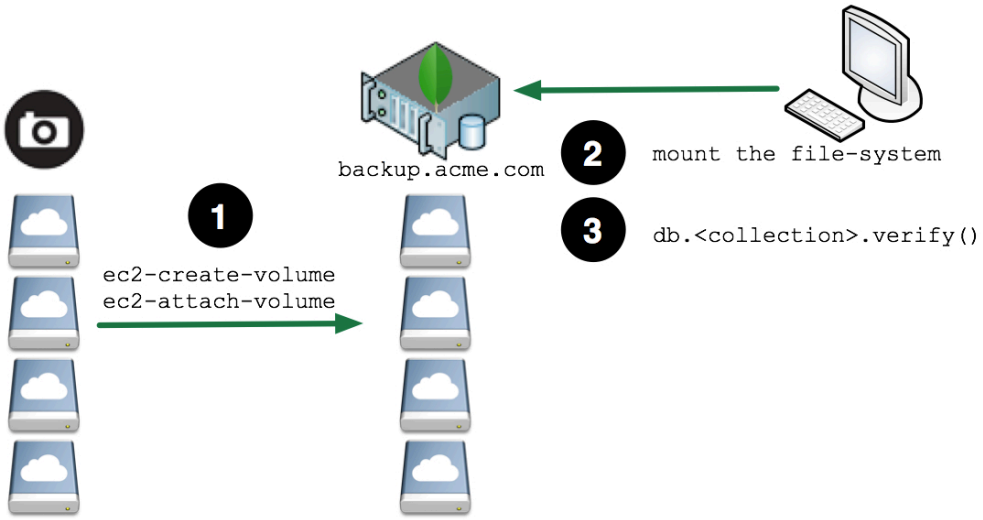
After the snapshots have been created, the database can be unlocked. After this command has been executed the database will be available to process write requests.

```
mongo shell> db.$cmd.sys.unlock.findOne();
{ "ok" : 1, "info" : "unlock requested" }
```

Verifying a backup

In order to verify the backup, the following steps need to be completes

- Check the status of the snapshot to ensure that they are "completed"
- Create new volumes based on the snapshots and mount the new volumes
- Run mongod and verify the collections



Typically, the verification will be performed on another machine so that you do not burden your production systems with the additional CPU and I/O load of the verification processing.

Describe the snapshots

Using the ec2-describe-snapshots command, find the snapshots that make up the backup. Using a filter on the *description* field, snapshots associated with the given backup are easily found. The search text used should match the text used in the *-d* flag passed to ec2-create-snapshot command when the backup was made.

```
backup shell> ec2-describe-snapshots --filter "description=backup-20101103"
SNAPSHOT snap-2d7af847 vol-94e8f0fd completed 2010-11-04T05:57:49+0000 100% 289727918005 50
backup-20101103
SNAPSHOT snap-417af82b vol-96e8f0ff completed 2010-11-04T05:57:29+0000 100% 289727918005 50
backup-20101103
SNAPSHOT snap-577af83d vol-68e9f101 completed 2010-11-04T05:57:42+0000 100% 289727918005 50
backup-20101103
SNAPSHOT snap-5b7af831 vol-90e8f0f9 completed 2010-11-04T05:57:35+0000 100% 289727918005 50
backup-20101103
```

Create new volumes based on the snapshots

Using the ec2-create-volume command, create a new volumes based on each of the snapshots that make up the backup.

```
backup shell> ec2-create-volume --availability-zone us-east-1a --snapshot snap-2d7af847
VOLUME vol-06aab26f 50 snap-2d7af847 us-east-1a creating 2010-11-04T06:44:27+0000
backup shell> ec2-create-volume --availability-zone us-east-1a --snapshot snap-417af82b
VOLUME vol-1caab275 50 snap-417af82b us-east-1a creating 2010-11-04T06:44:38+0000
backup shell> ec2-create-volume --availability-zone us-east-1a --snapshot snap-577af83d
VOLUME vol-12aab27b 50 snap-577af83d us-east-1a creating 2010-11-04T06:44:52+0000
backup shell> ec2-create-volume --availability-zone us-east-1a --snapshot snap-5b7af831
VOLUME vol-caaab2a3 50 snap-5b7af831 us-east-1a creating 2010-11-04T06:45:18+0000
```

Attach the new volumes to the instance

Using the ec2-attach-volume command, attach each volume to the instance where the backup will be verified.

```
backup shell> ec2-attach-volume --instance i-cad26ba7 --device /dev/sdp vol-06aab26f
ATTACHMENT vol-06aab26f i-cad26ba7 /dev/sdp attaching 2010-11-04T06:49:32+0000
backup shell> ec2-attach-volume --instance i-cad26ba7 --device /dev/sdq vol-1caab275
ATTACHMENT vol-1caab275 i-cad26ba7 /dev/sdq attaching 2010-11-04T06:49:58+0000
backup shell> ec2-attach-volume --instance i-cad26ba7 --device /dev/sdr vol-12aab27b
ATTACHMENT vol-12aab27b i-cad26ba7 /dev/sdr attaching 2010-11-04T06:50:13+0000
backup shell> ec2-attach-volume --instance i-cad26ba7 --device /dev/sds vol-caaab2a3
ATTACHMENT vol-caaab2a3 i-cad26ba7 /dev/sds attaching 2010-11-04T06:50:25+0000
```

Mount the volumes groups etc.

Make the file-system visible on the host O/S. This will vary by the Logical Volume Manager, file-system etc. that you are using. The example below shows how to perform this for LVM, please confirm with your System Administrator on how the original system system was setup if you are unclear.

Assemble the device from the physical devices. The UUID for the device will be the same as the original UUID that the backup was made from, and can be obtained using the *mdadm* command.

```
backup shell> mdadm --assemble --auto-update-homehost -u 07552c4d:6c11c875:e5a1de64:a9c2f2fc
--no-degraded /dev/md0
mdadm: /dev/md0 has been started with 4 drives.
```

You can confirm that the physical volumes and volume groups appear correctly to the O/S by executing the following:

```
backup shell> pvscan
  PV /dev/md0   VG data_vg   lvm2 [100.00 GiB / 0    free]
  Total: 1 [100.00 GiB] / in use: 1 [100.00 GiB] / in no VG: 0 [0   ]

backup shell> vgscan
  Reading all physical volumes.  This may take a while...
  Found volume group "data_vg" using metadata type lvm2
```

Create the mount point and mount the file-system:

```
backup shell> mkdir -p /var/lib/mongodb

backup shell> cat >> /etc/fstab << EOF
/dev/mapper/data_vg-data_vol /var/lib/mongodb xfs noatime,noexec,nodiratime 0 0
EOF

backup shell> mount /var/lib/mongodb
```

Startup the database

After the file-system has been mounted, MongoDB can be started. Ensure that the owner of the files is set to the correct user & group. Since the backup was made with the database running, the lock file will need to be removed in order to start the database.

```
backup shell> chown -R mongodb /var/lib/mongodb/toyko0
backup shell> rm /var/lib/mongodb/tokyo0/mongod.lock
backup shell> mongod --dbpath /var/lib/mongodb/tokyo0
```

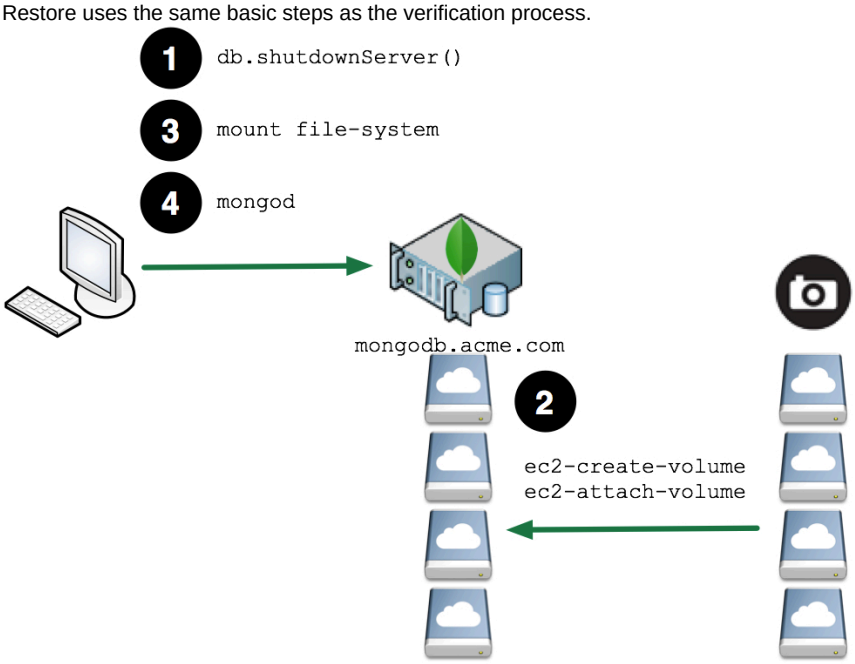
Verify the collections

Each collection can be verified in order to ensure that it valid and does not contain any invalid BSON objects.

```
mongo shell> db.blogs.verify()
```

Restore

Restore uses the same basic steps as the verification process.



After the file-system is mounted you can decide to

- Copy the database files from the backup into the current database directory
- Startup mongod from the new mount point, specifying the new mount point in the --dbpath argument

After the database is started, it will be ready to transact. It will be at the specific point in time from the backup, so if it is part of a master/slave or replica set relationship, then the instance will need to synchronize itself to get itself back up to date.

How to do Snapshotted Queries in the Mongo Database

This document refers to query snapshots. For backup snapshots of the database's datafiles, see the fsync lock page.

MongoDB does not support full point-in-time snapshotting. However, some functionality is available which is detailed below.

Cursors

A MongoDB query returns data as well as a cursor ID for additional lookups, should more data exist. Drivers lazily perform a "getMore" operation as needed on the cursor to get more data. Cursors may have latent getMore accesses that occurs after an intervening write operation on the database collection (i.e., an insert, update, or delete).

Conceptually, a cursor has a current position. If you delete the item at the current position, the cursor automatically skips its current position forward to the next item.

Mongo DB cursors do not provide a snapshot: if other write operations occur during the life of your cursor, it is unspecified if your application will see the results of those operations. In fact, it is even possible (although unlikely) to see the same object returned twice if the object were updated and grew in size (and thus moved in the datafile). To assure no update duplications, use snapshot() mode (see below).

Snapshot Mode

snapshot() mode assures that objects which update during the lifetime of a query are returned once and only once. This is most important when doing a find-and-update loop that changes the size of documents that are returned ($inc does not change size).

```
> // mongo shell example
> var cursor = db.myCollection.find({country:'uk'}).snapshot();
```

Even with snapshot mode, items inserted or deleted during the query may or may not be returned; that is, this mode is not a true point-in-time snapshot.

Because snapshot mode traverses the _id index, it may not be used with sorting or explicit hints. It also cannot use any other index for the query.

You can get the same effect as snapshot by using any unique index on a field(s) that will not be modified (probably best to use explicit hint() too). If you want to use a non-unique index (such as creation time), you can make it unique by appending _id to the index at creation time.

Import Export Tools

- Data Import and Export
  - mongoimport
    - Example: Importing with `upsert`
    - Example: Importing Interesting Types
  - mongoexport
- mongodump and mongorestore
  - mongodump
    - Example: Dumping Everything
    - Example: Dumping a Single Collection
    - Example: Dumping a Single Collection to Stdout
    - Example: Dumping a Single Collection with a query
    - Performance Tips
  - mongorestore
- bsondump
- See Also

If you just want to copy a database from one mongod server to another, use the copydb Command instead of these tools.

These tools work with the raw data (the BSON documents in the collections, both user and system); they do not save, or load certain metadata such as (capped) collection properties. You will need to (re)create those yourself in a separate step, before loading that data. Vote for SERVER-808 to change this. (Consider using the copydb command which does preserve these properties.)

Data Import and Export

mongoimport

This utility takes a single file that contains 1 JSON/CSV/TSV string per line and inserts it. You have to specify a database and a collection.

```
options:
  --help                  produce help message
  -v [ --verbose ]        be more verbose (include multiple times for more
                          verbosity e.g. -vvvvv)
  -h [ --host ] arg       mongo host to connect to ("left,right" for pairs)
  --port arg              server port. (Can also use --host hostname:port)
  --ipv6                  enable IPv6 support (disabled by default)
  -d [ --db ] arg         database to use
  -c [ --collection ] arg collection to use (some commands)
  -u [ --username ] arg   username
  -p [ --password ] arg   password
  --dbpath arg            directly access mongod data files in the given path,
                          instead of connecting to a mongod instance - needs to
                          lock the data directory, so cannot be used if a
                          mongod is currently accessing the same path
  --directoryperdb        if dbpath specified, each db is in a separate
                          directory
  -f [ --fields ] arg     comma seperated list of field names e.g. -f name,age
  --fieldFile arg         file with fields names - 1 per line
  --ignoreBlanks          if given, empty fields in csv and tsv will be ignored
  --type arg              type of file to import.  default: json (json,csv,tsv)
  --file arg              file to import from; if not specified stdin is used
  --drop                  drop collection first
  --headerline            CSV,TSV only - use first line as headers
  --upsert                insert or update objects that already exist
  --upsertFields arg      comma-separated fields for the query part of the
                          upsert. You should make sure this is indexed.
  --stopOnError           stop importing at the first error rather
                          than continuing
  --jsonArray             load a json array, not one item per line.
                          Currently limited to 4MB.
```

Note that the following options are only available in 1.5.3+: `upsert`, `upsertFields`, `stopOnError`, `jsonArray`

Example: Importing with `upsert`

The following command will import data from `temp.csv` into database `foo`, collection `bar` on localhost. Additionally it will perform an `upsert` of the data. By default the `upsert` will use the field marked as `_id` as the key for updates.

```
mongoimport --host localhost --db foo --collection bar --type csv --file temp.csv --headerline
--upsert
```

If the file does not have an `_id` field, you can update on alternate fields by using `upsertFields`. Note that when using this with **sharding**, the `upsertField` **must** be the shardkey.

Example: Importing Interesting Types

MongoDB supports more types that JSON does, so it has a special format for representing some of these types as valid JSON. For example, JSON has no date type. Thus, to import data containing dates, you structure your JSON like:

```
{"somefield" : 123456, "created_at" : {"$date" : 1285679232000}}
```

Then `mongoimport` will turn the `created_at` value into a Date.

Note: the $-prefixed types must be enclosed in double quotes to be parsed correctly.

mongoexport

mongoexport takes a collection and exports to either JSON or CSV. You can specify a filter for the query, or a list of fields to output.

See the mongoexport page for more information.

mongodump and mongorestore

The are one way to do backups and restores. (Some other backup strategies exist too.)

mongodump

This takes a database and outputs it in a binary representation. This is used for doing (hot) backups of a database.

> ⚠ If you're using sharding and try to migrate data this way, this will dump shard configuration information and overwrite configurations upon restore.

```
options:
  --help                  produce help message
  -v [ --verbose ]        be more verbose (include multiple times for more
                          verbosity e.g. -vvvvv)
  -h [ --host ] arg       mongo host to connect to ("left,right" for pairs)
  -d [ --db ] arg         database to use
  -c [ --collection ] arg collection to use (some commands)
  -u [ --username ] arg   username
  -p [ --password ] arg   password
  --dbpath arg            directly access mongod data files in the given path,
                          instead of connecting to a mongod instance - needs
                          to lock the data directory, so cannot be used if a
                          mongod is currently accessing the same path
  --directoryperdb        if dbpath specified, each db is in a separate
                          directory
  -o [ --out ] arg (=dump) output directory
  -q [ --query ] arg      json query
  --oplog                 point in time backup (requires an oplog)
  --repair                repairs documents as it dumps from a corrupt db (requires --dbpath and
-d/--db)
```

Example: Dumping Everything

To dump all of the collections in all of the databases, run `mongodump` with just the `--host`:

```
$ ./mongodump --host prod.example.com
connected to: prod.example.com
all dbs
DATABASE: log    to   dump/log
        log.errors to dump/log/errors.bson
                713 objects
        log.analytics to dump/log/analytics.bson
                234810 objects
DATABASE: blog    to    dump/blog
        blog.posts to dump/log/blog.posts.bson
                59 objects
DATABASE: admin    to    dump/admin
```

You'll then have a folder called "dump" in your current directory.

If you're running `mongod` locally on the default port, you can just do:

```
$ ./mongodump
```

Example: Dumping a Single Collection

If we just want to dump a single collection, we can specify it and get a single .bson file.

```
$ ./mongodump --db blog --collection posts
connected to: 127.0.0.1
DATABASE: blog        to     dump/blog
        blog.posts to dump/blog/posts.bson
                 59 objects
```

> Currently indexes for a single collection will not be backed up. Please follow SERVER-808

Example: Dumping a Single Collection to Stdout

In version 1.7.0+, you can use stdout instead of a file by specifying `--out stdout`:

```
$ ./mongodump --db blog --collection posts --out - > blogposts.bson
```

mongodump creates a file for each database collection, so we can only dump one collection at a time to stdout.

Example: Dumping a Single Collection with a query

Using the -q argument, you can specify a JSON query to be passed. The example below dumps out documents where the "created_at" is between 2010-12-01 and 2010-12-31.

```
$ ./mongodump --db blog --collection posts
    -q '{"created_at" : { "$gte" : {"$date" : 1293868800000},
                          "$lt"  : {"$date" : 1296460800000}
                        }
        }'
```

Performance Tips

The default dump mode is to do a "snapshot" query. This results in the dump query walking through the `_id` index and returning results in that order. **If you use a custom `_id` value, not the default `ObjectId` type, then this could cause much more disk activity to do a dump; it could (dramatically) slow down things.**

In 1.9+ you can force a walk of the data without using an index:

```
$ ./mongodump --tableScan ...
```

In earlier versions you can cause this to behavior with a special query (one that cannot use the index):

```
$ ./mongodump -q "{xxxx : { $ne : 0 } }" ...
```

Note: In some shells (like bash) you must escape the "$" in this command like so "\$".

mongorestore

mongorestore takes the output from mongodump and restores it. Indexes will be created on a restore. mongorestore inserts the data to restore. This can be done with an existing database, or mongorestore will create a new one if the database does not exist.

```
usage: ./mongorestore [options] [directory or filename to restore from]
options:
  --help                  produce help message
  -v [ --verbose ]        be more verbose (include multiple times for more
                          verbosity e.g. -vvvvv)
  -h [ --host ] arg       mongo host to connect to ("left,right" for pairs)
  -d [ --db ] arg         database to use
  -c [ --collection ] arg collection to use (some commands)
  -u [ --username ] arg   username
  -p [ --password ] arg   password
  --dbpath arg            directly access mongod data files in the given path,
                          instead of connecting to a mongod instance - needs to
                          lock the data directory, so cannot be used if a
                          mongod is currently accessing the same path
  --directoryperdb        if dbpath specified, each db is in a separate
                          directory
  --drop                  drop each collection before import
  --objcheck              validate object before inserting
  --filter arg            filter to apply before inserting
  --indexesLast           wait to add indexes (faster if data isn't inserted in
                          index order)
  --oplogReplay           Restores the dump and replays the backed up portion of the oplog.
```

If you do not wish to create indexes you can removed the system.indexes.bson file from your database(s) dump directory before restoring. (The default _id indexes will always be created.)

bsondump

v1.6+

This takes a bson file (typically from mongodump) and converts it to json/debug output.

```
usage: ./bsondump [options] [filename]
options:
  --help                  produce help message
  --type arg (=json)      type of output: json,debug
```

See Also

- Components
- mongofiles (GridFS tools)
- Backups

mongoexport

The mongoexport utility takes a collection and exports to either JSON or CSV. You can specify a filter for the query, or a list of fields to output.

Neither JSON nor TSV/CSV can represent all data types. Please be careful not to lose or change data (types) when using this. For full fidelity please use mongodump.

If you want to output CSV, you have to specify the fields in the order you want them output.

Command Line

```
options:
  --help                  produce help message
  -v [ --verbose ]        be more verbose (include multiple times for more
                          verbosity e.g. -vvvvv)
  -h [ --host ] arg       mongo host to connect to ("left,right" for pairs)
  -d [ --db ] arg         database to use
  -c [ --collection ] arg where 'arg' is the collection to use
  -u [ --username ] arg   username
  -p [ --password ] arg   password
  --dbpath arg            directly access mongod data files in the given path,
                          instead of connecting to a mongod instance - needs to
                          lock the data directory, so cannot be used if a
                          mongod is currently accessing the same path
  --directoryperdb        if dbpath specified, each db is in a separate
                          directory
  -q [ --query ] arg      query filter, as a JSON string
  -f [ --fields ] arg     comma seperated list of field names e.g. -f name,age
  --csv                   export to csv instead of json
  -o [ --out ] arg        output file; if not specified, stdout is used
```

Dates

To pass a date in a query on the command line, use the syntax:

```
Date(<millis_since_epoch>)
```

You can get the numeric value for a date in the mongo shell:

```
$ mongo --nodb
> ISODate("2011-01-12T12:00:00Z").valueOf()
1294833600000
```

and then use that value in your mongoexport -q parameter:

```
mongoexport -q "{when:Date(1294833600000)}" ...
```

Durability and Repair

- Journaling and Recovery
- Repair Command
- Validate Command
- `--syncdelay` Command Line Option
- See Also

Journaling and Recovery

v1.7.5+ of MongoDB supports durability with recovery (via write ahead log – a journal) in the storage engine as an option. See the Journaling page. When enabled, repairs are not required on a hard crash.

> ⚠ The ~~-dur option was used before 1.8; now the option is~~ -journal

Repair Command

When not using `--journal`, after a machine crash or or `kill -9` termination, run the *repairDatabase* command. This command will check all data for corruption, remove any corruption found, and compact data files a bit.

Repair is analogous to running *fsck* for a file system. If a (non --journal) slave crashes, another option is just to restart the slave from scratch.

When journaling is enabled, it should not necessary to run repair. However one could still use the repair command to compact a database.

From the command line:

```
mongod --repair
```

From the shell (you have to do for all dbs including local if you go this route):

```
> db.repairDatabase();
```

During a repair operation, *mongod* must store temporary files to disk. By default, *mongod* creates temporary directories under the dbpath for this purpose. Alternatively, the `--repairpath` command line option can be used to specify a base directory for temporary repair files.

Note that repair is a slow operation which inspects the entire database.

If the databases exited uncleanly and you attempt to restart the database, *mongod* will print:

```
**************
old lock file: /data/db/mongod.lock.  probably means unclean shutdown
recommend removing file and running --repair
see: http://dochub.mongodb.org/core/repair for more information
*************
```

Then it will exit. After running with `--repair`, *mongod* will start up normally.

> When running the repair on a slave server (replica set), you will get an error stating that the server is not master. In order to run the repair, restart the slave without the `--replSet` option so that the server is in single db mode, and run the repair. When you restart, make sure to do it on a different port, so as not to confused the other members. Then restart one more time with the `--replSet` option on. This may put the slave back in a consistent state, but it is highly recommended to check the data validity by comparing a dump of the master and slave. If there is a suspicion of data being corrupted, it is safer to rebuild the slave from scratch.

Validate Command

Alternatively one could restart and run the *validate* command on select collections. The *validate* command checks if the contents of a collection are valid.

For example, here we validate the `users` collection:

```
> db.users.validate();
{
 "ns" : "test.users",
 "result" : " validate
  details: 0x1243dbbdc ofs:740bdc
  firstExtent:0:178b00 ns:test.users
  lastExtent:0:178b00 ns:test.users
  # extents:1
  datasize?:44 nrecords?:1 lastExtentSize:8192
  padding:1
  first extent:
    loc:0:178b00 xnext:null xprev:null
    nsdiag:test.users
    size:8192 firstRecord:0:178bb0 lastRecord:0:178bb0
  1 objects found, nobj:1
  60 bytes data w/headers
  44 bytes data wout/headers
  deletedList: 0000000010000000000
  deleted: n: 1 size: 7956
  nIndexes:2
    test.users.$_id_ keys:1
    test.users.$username_1 keys:1 ",
 "ok" : 1,
 "valid" : true,
 "lastExtentSize" : 8192
}
```

`--syncdelay` Command Line Option

Since 1.1.4, the `--syncdelay` option controls how often changes are flushed to disk (the default is 60 seconds). If replication is not being used, it may be desirable to reduce this default.

See Also

- What About Durability? (MongoDB Blog)
- *fsync* Command
- MongoDB (Single-Server) Data Durability Guide

Security and Authentication

MongoDB includes a basic authentication scheme that works with single server deployments and replica sets.

> ⚠ Authentication is not available with sharding before version 1.9.1, so for older sharded environments you will need to run the database in a trusted environment.

If you're interested in securing a replica set, see the replica set authentication docs.

- Running Without Security (Trusted Environment)
- Mongo Security
- Configuring Authentication and Security
  - Viewing Users
  - Changing Passwords
  - Deleting Users
- Replica Set and Sharding Authentication
  - Enabling/disabling authentication on an existing cluster
  - About the Key File
    - Key file permissions
  - Ports
  - IP Address Binding
- Report a Security Issue
- FAQ

Running Without Security (Trusted Environment)

Trusted environment is the default option and is recommended. One valid way to run the Mongo database is in a trusted environment, with no security and authentication (much like how one would use, say, memcached). Of course, in such a configuration, one must be sure only trusted machines can access database TCP ports.

Mongo Security

The current version of Mongo supports only basic security. You authenticates a username and password in the context of a particular database. Once authenticated, a normal user has full read and write access to the database. You can also create read-only users that only have read access.

The `admin` database is special. Several administrative commands can only run on the `admin` database (so can only be run by an admin user). Also, authentication on `admin` gives a user read and write access to all databases on the server.

Logging in using an admin account

Although admin user accounts can access any database, you must log into the admin database. For example, if someAdminUser has an admin account, this login will fail:

```
> use test
> db.auth("someAdminUser", password)
```

This one will succeed:

```
> use admin
> db.auth("someAdminUser", password)
```

To enable security, run the database (`mongod` process) with the `--auth` option (or `--keyFile` for replica sets and sharding). You **must** either have added a user to the `admin` db before starting the server with authentication, or add the first user from the localhost interface.

Configuring Authentication and Security

We should first create an administrator user for the entire db server process. This user is stored under the special `admin` database.

If there are no admin users, one may access the database from the localhost interface without authenticating. Thus, from the server running the database (and thus on localhost), run the database shell and configure an administrative user:

```
$ ./mongo
> use admin
> db.addUser("theadmin", "anadminpassword")
```

We now have a user created for database `admin`. Note that if we have not previously authenticated, we now must if we wish to perform further operations, as there is now an admin user.

```
> db.auth("theadmin", "anadminpassword")
```

Now, let's configure a "regular" user for another database.

```
> use projectx
> db.addUser("joe", "passwordForJoe")
```

Finally, let's add a readonly user. (only supported in 1.3.2+)

```
> use projectx
> db.addUser("guest", "passwordForGuest", true)
```

Viewing Users

User information is stored in each database's `system.users` collection. For example, on a database *projectx*, `projectx.system.users` will contain user information.

We can view existing users for the current database with the query:

```
> db.system.users.find()
```

Changing Passwords

The shell `addUser` command may also be used to update a password: if the user already exists, the password simply updates.

Some Mongo drivers provide a helper function equivalent to the db shell's `addUser` method.

Deleting Users

To delete a user:

```
db.removeUser( username )
```

or

```
db.system.users.remove( { user: username } )
```

Replica Set and Sharding Authentication

Replica sets and sharding can use authentication in 1.9.1+. From the client's perspective, it is identical to using single-server authentication: connect to your *mongos*, create users, authenticate when you make connections.

The only difference is that the servers use a *key file* to authenticate internal communication. A key file is basically a plaintext file which is hashed and used as an internal password.

To set up replica sets and/or sharding with authentication:

1. Create a key file that can be copied to each server in the set. A key file is composed of characters in the Base64 set, plus whitespace and newlines (see About the Key File for details).
2. Modify this file's permissions to be only readable by the current user.
3. Start each server in the cluster (including all replica set members, all config servers, and all *mongos* processes) with the *--keyFile /path/to/file* option.
4. Each client connection to the database must be authenticated before it can be used, as with single-server authentication.

You do not need to use the *--auth* option, too (although there's no harm in doing so), *--keyFile* implies *--auth*.

Enabling/disabling authentication on an existing cluster

To enable authentication on an existing cluster, shut down all members and restart them with the *--keyFile* option. Remember that you must add users before you can access the data remotely.

You can disable authentication by restarting all members without the *--keyFile* option.

About the Key File

A key file must contain at least 6 Base64 characters and be no larger than 1KB (whitespace included). Whitespace characters are stripped (mostly for cross-platform convenience), so the following keys are identical to the database:

```
$ echo -e "my secret key" > key1
$ echo -e "my secret key\n" > key2
$ echo -e "my    secret    key" > key3
$ echo -e "my\r\nsecret\r\nkey\r\n" > key4
```

If you run *mongod* with *-v*, the key will be printed in the log.

Key file permissions

On *NIX, group and everyone must have 0 permissions (up to 700 is allowed). If the permissions are too open on the key file, MongoDB will exit with an error to that effect.

At the moment, permissions are not checked by *mongod* on Windows.

Ports

Default TCP port numbers for MongoDB processes are as follows:

- Standalone *mongod* : 27017
- *mongos* : 27017
- shard server (`mongod --shardsvr`) : 27018
- config server (`mongod --configsvr`) : 27019
- web stats page for *mongod* : add 1000 to port number (28017, by default). Most stats pages in the HTTP UI are unavailable unless the --rest option is specified. To disable the "home" stats page use --nohttpinterface. (This port should be secured, if used, however, the information on the stats home page is read only regardless.)

You can change the port number using the 'port' option when starting mongod.

> Do not rely on a non-standard port as a way to secure a Mongo server. Vulnerability scanners will scan across many port numbers looking for a response.

IP Address Binding

By default, a mongod server will listen on all available IP addresses on a machine. You can restrict this to a single IP address with the 'bind_ip' configuration option for mongod.

Typically, this would be set to 127.0.0.1, the loopback interface, to require that mongod only listen to requests from the same machine (localhost).

To enable listening on all interfaces, remove the bind_ip option from your server configuration file.

> To accept requests on external interfaces you may also have to modify your computer's firewall configuration to allow access to the ports used by mongo (see above).

Report a Security Issue

If you have discovered any potential security issues in MongoDB, please email security@10gen.com with any and all relevant information.

FAQ

- Are passwords sent over the wire encrypted?
  - Yes. (Actually a nonce-based digest is passed.)
- Is database operations, after authenticating, passed over the wire encrypted?
  - No.

Admin UIs

Several administrative user interfaces, or GUIs, are available for MongoDB. Tim Gourley's blog has a good summary of the tools.

- Tools
  - Fang of Mongo
  - JMongoBrowser
  - MongoExplorer
  - MongoHub
  - MongoVision
  - MongoVUE
  - Opricot
  - PHPMoAdmin
  - RockMongo
  - Meclipse
- Commercial
  - Database Master
- Data Viewers

- mongs

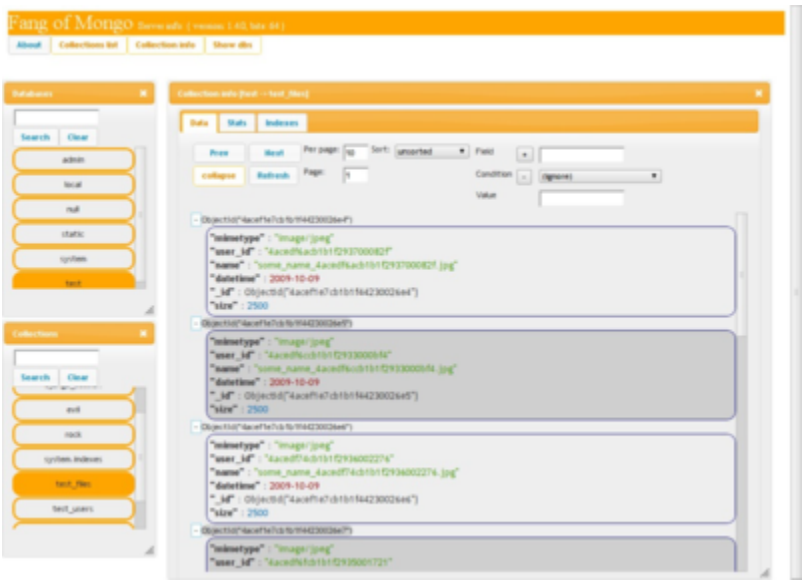
See also The built-in replica set admin UI page.

Tools

Fang of Mongo

- http://blueone.pl:8001/fangofmongo/
- http://github.com/Fiedzia/Fang-of-Mongo

A web-based user interface for MongoDB build with django and jquery.



It will allow you to explore content of mongodb with simple but (hopefully) pleasant user interface.

Features:

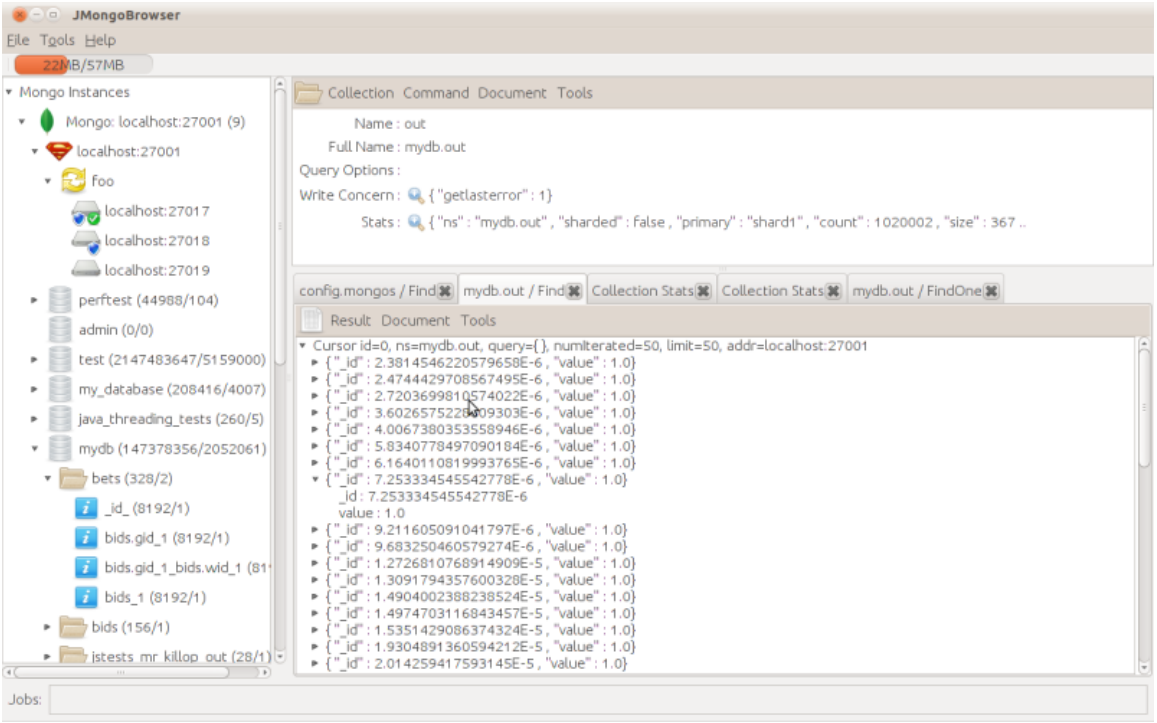
- field name autocompletion in query builder
- data loading indicator
- human friendly collection stats
- disabling collection windows when there is no collection selected
- twitter stream plugin
- many more minor usability fixes
- works well on recent chrome and firefox

To track progress on twitter: @fangofmongo

JMongoBrowser

- http://girbal.net/jmongobrowser/

JMongoBrowser is a GUI app that can browse and administer a MongoDB cluster. It is available for Linux, Windows and Mac OSX.



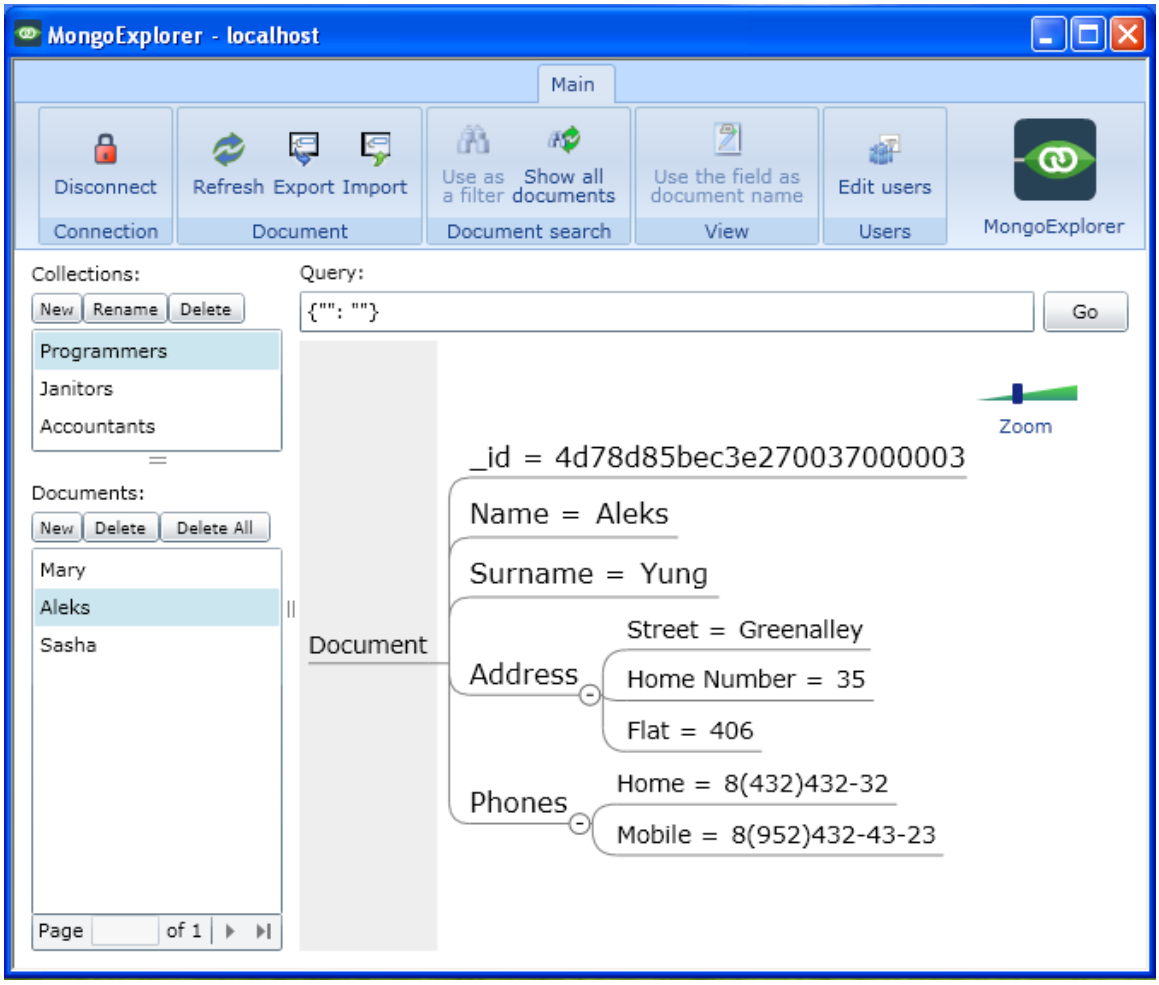
MongoExplorer

- http://mongoexplorer.com/

MongoExplorer is a MongoDB management tool, written in Silverlight (.net – works in windows/osx/?linux?).

Features:

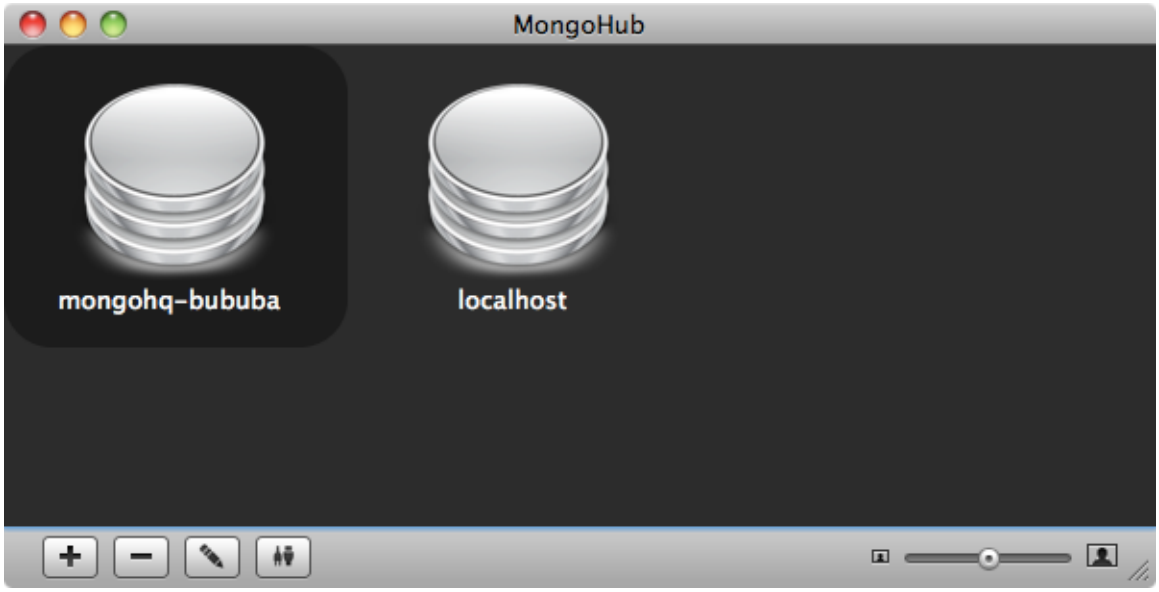
- Easy to use
- Shows all the collections and documents of the database
- Uses a convenient tree view for documents
- Drag'n'drop is fully supported
- Document in-place editing



MongoHub

- http://mongohub.todayclose.com/

MongoHub is a native OS X GUI.



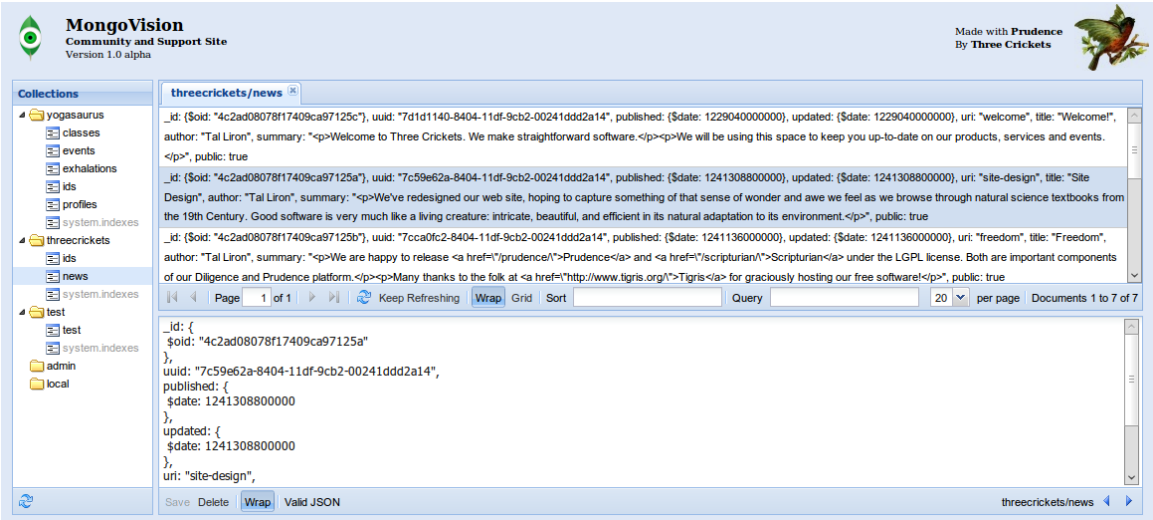
MongoVision

- http://code.google.com/p/mongo-vision/

MongoVision is a MongoDB management tool, written for Prudence.

Features:

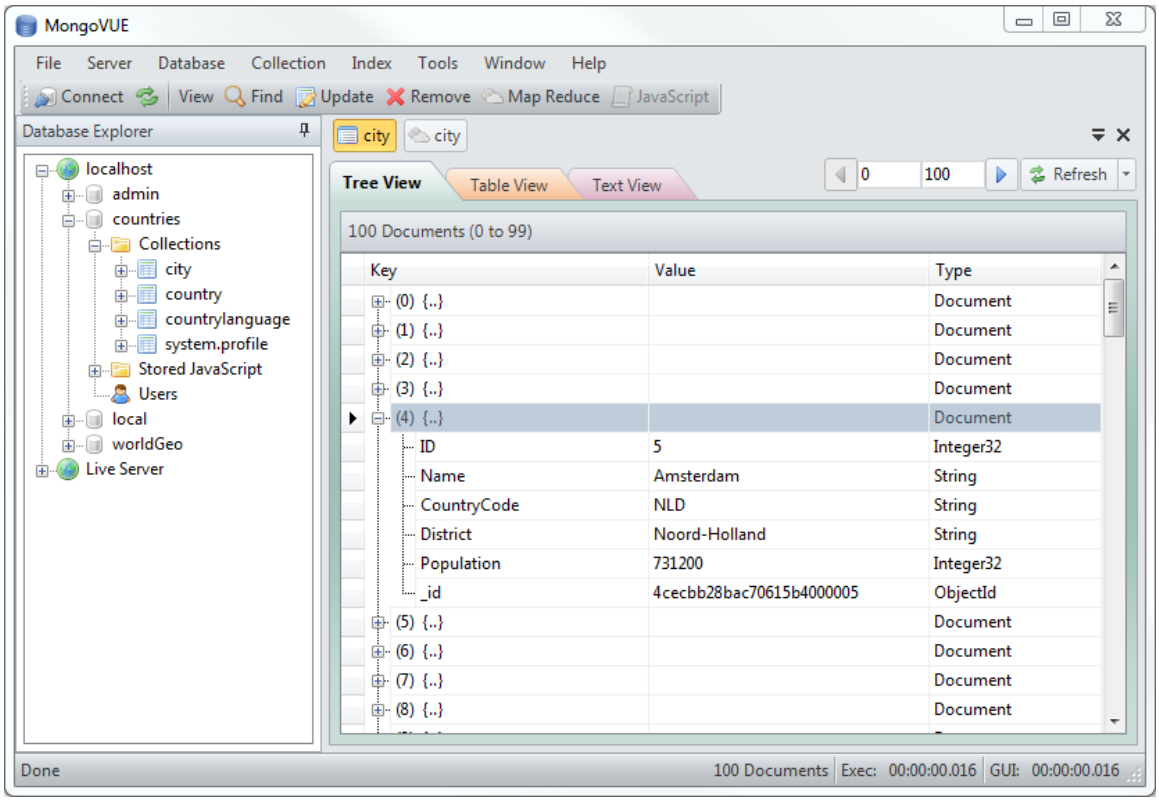
- Extended JSON support
- Tabular view
- Click to sort
- Filter boxes to alter query
- Auto-refresh



MongoVUE

- http://blog.mongovue.com

MongoVUE is a .NET GUI for MongoDB.



Opricot

- http://www.icmfinland.fi/oss/opricot/

Opricot is a hybrid GUI/CLI/Scripting web frontend implemented in PHP to manage your MongoDB servers and databases. Use as a point-and-click adventure for basic tasks, utilize scripting for automated processing or repetitive things.

Opricot combines the following components to create a fully featured administration tool:

- An interactive console that allows you to either work with the database through the UI, or by using custom Javascript.
- A set of simple commands that wrap the Javascript driver, and provide an easy way to complete the most common tasks.
- Javascript driver for Mongo that works on the browser and talks with the AJAX interface.
- Simple server-side AJAX interface for communicating with the MongoDB server (currently available for PHP).

PHPMoAdmin

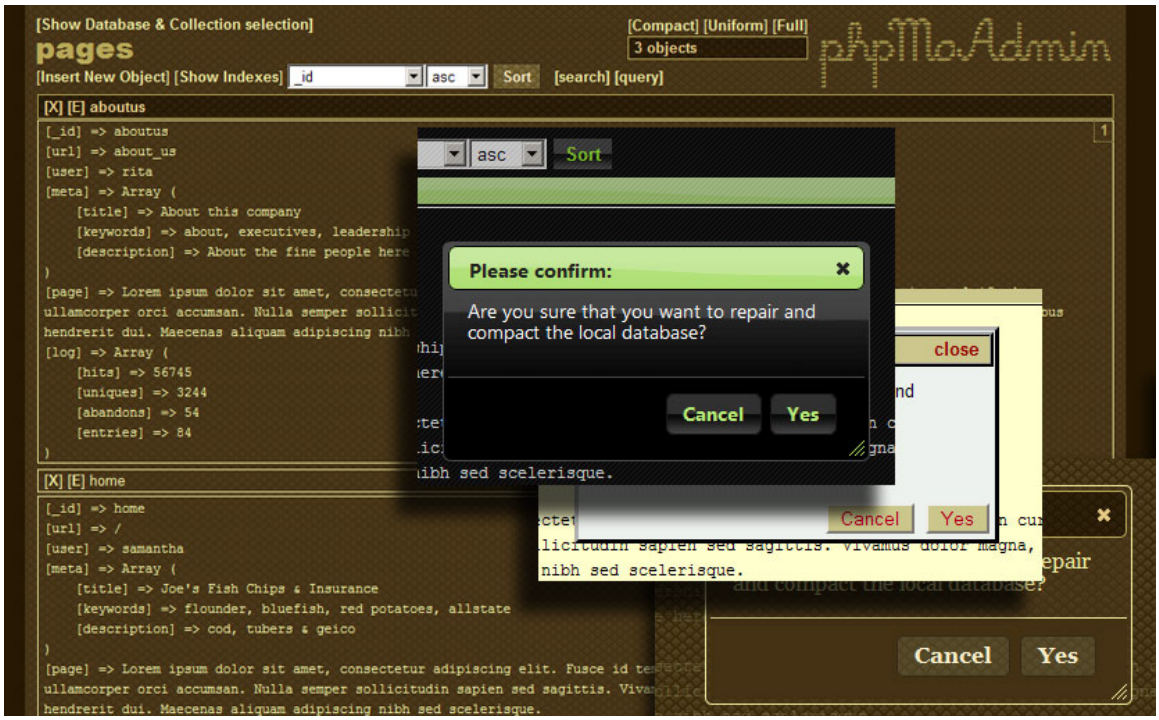
- http://www.phpmoadmin.com/

PHPMoAdmin is a MongoDB administration tool for PHP built on a stripped-down version of the Vork high-performance framework.

- Nothing to configure - place the moadmin.php file anywhere on your web site and it just works!
- Fast AJAX-based XHTML 1.1 interface operates consistently in every browser!
- Self-contained in a single 95kb file!
- Works on any version of PHP5 with the MongoDB NoSQL database installed & running.
- Super flexible - search for exact-text, text with * wildcards, regex or JSON (with Mongo-operators enabled)
- Option to enable password-protection for one or more users; to activate protection, just add the username-password(s) to the array at the top of the file.
- E_STRICT PHP code is formatted to the Zend Framework coding standards + fully-documented in the phpDocumentor DocBlock standard.
- Textareas can be resized by dragging/stretching the lower-right corner.
- Free & open-source! Release under the GPLv3 FOSS license!
- Option to query MongoDB using JSON or PHP-array syntax
- Multiple design themes to choose from
- Instructional error messages - phpMoAdmin can be used as a PHP-Mongo connection debugging tool

PHPMoAdmin can help you discover the source of connection issues between PHP and Mongo. Download phpMoAdmin, place the moadmin.php file in your web site document directory and navigate to it in a browser. One of two things will happen:

- You will see an error message explaining why PHP and Mongo cannot connect and what you need to do to fix it
- You will see a bunch of Mongo-related options, including a selection of databases (by default, the "admin" and "local" databases always exist) - if this is the case your installation was successful and your problem is within the PHP code that you are using to access MongoDB, troubleshoot that from the Mongo docs on php.net



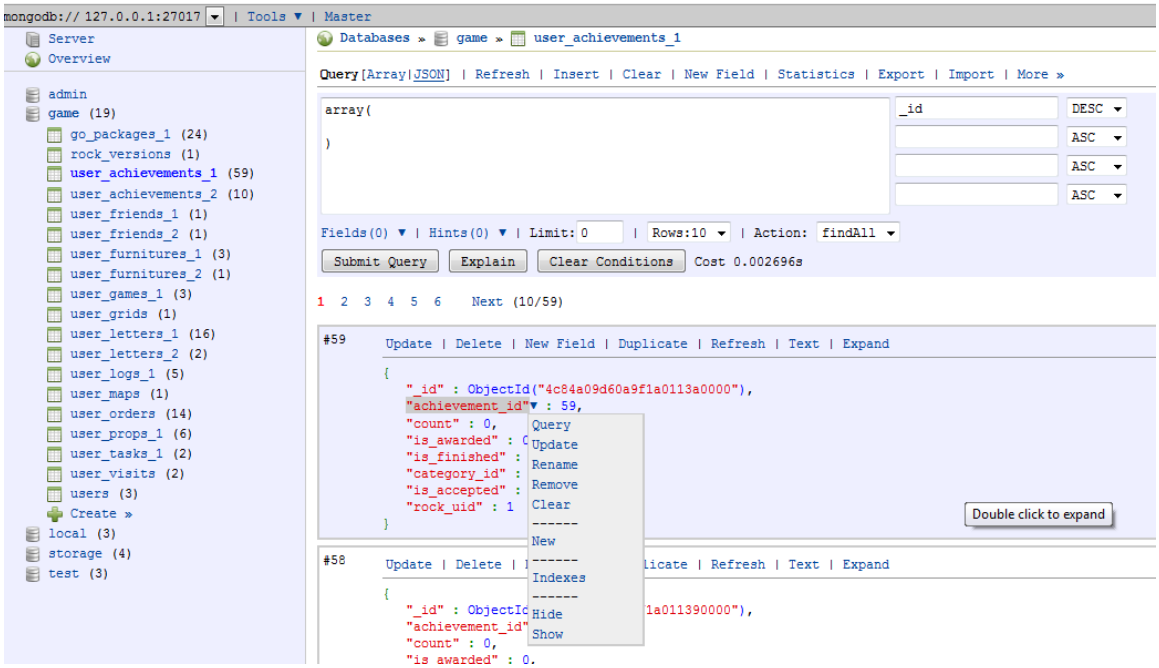
RockMongo

- http://code.google.com/p/rock-php/wiki/rock_mongo

RockMongo is a MongoDB management tool, written in PHP 5.

Main features:

- easy to install, and open source
- multiple hosts, and multiple administrators for one host
- password protection
- query dbs
- advanced collection query tool
- read, insert, update, duplicate and remove single row
- query, create and drop indexes
- clear collection
- remove and change (only work in higher php_mongo version) criteria matched rows
- view collection statistics



Meclipse

Eclipse plugin for mongodb: http://update.exoanalytic.com/org.mongodb.meclipse/

Commercial

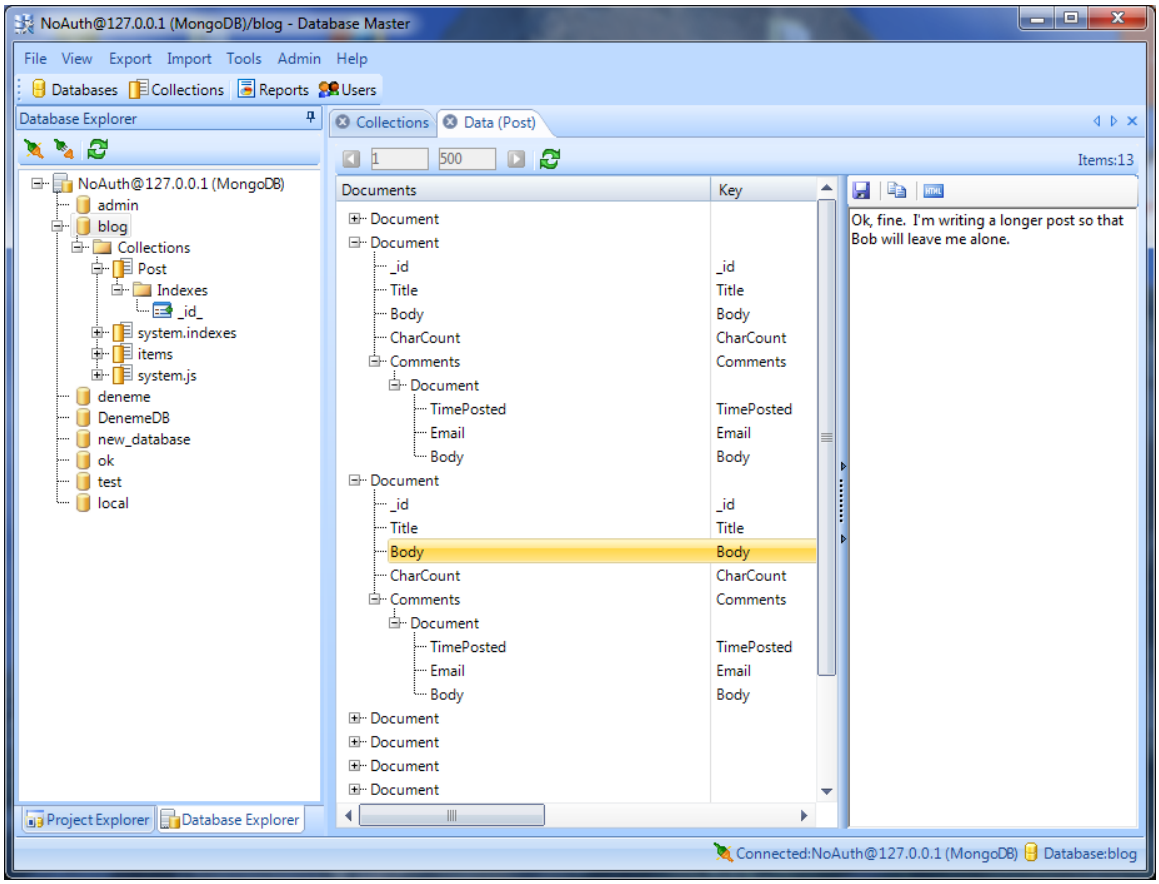
Database Master

Database Master from Nucleon Software.

Seems to be written in .net for windows (windows installer).

Features:

- Tree view for dbs and collections
- Create/Drop indexes
- Server/DB stats
- Support RDMBS (MySQL, postgres, ...)



Data Viewers

mongs

- http://www.whit537.org/mongs/

Starting and Stopping Mongo

- Starting mongod
  - Default Data Directory, Default Port
  - Alternate Data Directory, Default Port
  - Alternate Port
  - Running as a Daemon
- Stopping mongod
  - Control-C
  - Sending shutdownServer() message from the mongo shell
  - Sending a Unix INT or TERM signal
- Memory Usage

MongoDB is run as a standard program from the command line. Please see Command Line Parameters for more information on those options.

The following examples assume that you are in the directory where the `mongod` executable resides. `mongod` is the primary database process that runs on an individual server. `mongos` is the sharding process. `mongo` is the administrative shell. This page discusses `mongod`.

Starting mongod

Default Data Directory, Default Port

To start Mongo in default mode, where data will be stored in the `/data/db` directory (or `c:\data\db` on Windows), and listening on port 27017, just type

```
$ ./mongod
```

Alternate Data Directory, Default Port

To specify a directory for Mongo to store files, use the `--dbpath` option:

```
$ ./mongod --dbpath /var/lib/mongodb/
```

Note that you must create the directory and set its permissions appropriately ahead of time -- Mongo will not create the directory if it doesn't exist.

Alternate Port

You can specify a different port for Mongo to listen on for connections from clients using the `--port` option

```
$ ./mongod --port 12345
```

This is useful if you want to run more than one instance of Mongo on a machine (e.g., for running a master-slave pair).

Running as a Daemon

Note: these options are only available in MongoDB version 1.1 and later.

This will fork the Mongo server and redirect its output to a logfile. As with `--dbpath`, you must create the log path yourself, Mongo will not create parent directories for you.

```
$ ./mongod --fork --logpath /var/log/mongodb.log --logappend
```

Stopping mongod

Control-C

If you have Mongo running in the foreground in a terminal, you can simply "Ctrl-C" the process. This will cause Mongo to do a clean exit, flushing and closing it's data files. Note that it will wait until all ongoing operations are complete.

Sending shutdownServer() message from the mongo shell

The shell can request that the server terminate.

```
$ ./mongo
> use admin
> db.shutdownServer()
```

This command only works from localhost or if one is authenticated.

From a driver (where the helper function may not exist), one can run the command

```
{ "shutdown" : 1 }
```

If this server is the primary in a replica set, it will go through the following process (version 1.9.1+):

1. Check how up-to-date the secondaries are.
2. If no secondary within 10 seconds of the primary, return that we won't shut down (optionally pass the `timeoutSecs` option to wait for a secondary to catch up.
3. If there is a secondary within 10 seconds of the primary, the primary will step down and wait for the secondary to catch up.
4. After 60 seconds or once the secondary has caught up, the primary will shut down.

If there is no up-to-date secondary and you want the primary to shut down anyway, you can use `force : true`:

```
> db.adminCommand({shutdown : 1, force : true})
> // or
> db.shutdownServer({force : true})
```

You can also specify `timeoutSecs : N`, which will keep checking the secondaries for N seconds if none are immediately up-to-date. If any of the secondaries catch up within N seconds, the primary will shut down. If no secondaries catch up, it will not shut down.

```
> db.adminCommand({shutdown : 1, timeoutSecs : 5})
> // or
> db.shutdownServer({timeoutSecs : 5})
> // sample output:
{
        "closest" : NumberLong(1307651781),
        "difference" : NumberLong(1307651808),
        "errmsg" : "no secondaries within 10 seconds of my optime",
        "ok" : 0
}
```

Sending a Unix INT or TERM signal

You can cleanly stop `mongod` using a SIGINT or SIGTERM signal on Unix-like systems. Either ^C, "`kill -2 PID`," or `kill -15 PID` will work.

> Sending a KILL signal `kill -9` will probably cause damage if `mongod` is not running with the `--journal` option. (In such a scenario, run repairDatabase command.)

After a hard crash, when not using `--journal`, MongoDB will say it was not shutdown cleanly, and ask you to do a repair of the database.

Memory Usage

Mongo uses memory mapped files to access data, which results in large numbers being displayed in tools like top for the mongod process. This is not a concern, and is normal when using memory-mapped files. Basically, the size of mapped data is shown in the virtual size parameter, and resident bytes shows how much data is being cached in RAM.

You can get a feel for the "inherent" memory footprint of Mongo by starting it fresh, with no connections, with an empty /data/db directory and looking at the resident bytes.

Logging

- Command Line Options
- Rotating the log files
  - From the mongo shell
  - From the unix shell
- Accessing Logs via Shell (Since 1.9.1)
  - Get a list of available loggers
  - Get a log

MongoDB outputs some important information to stdout while its running. There are a number of things you can do to control this

Command Line Options

- `--quiet` - less verbose output (more details)
- `-v` - more verbose output. use more v's (such as `-vvvvvv`) for higher levels of verbosity
- `--logpath <file>` - output to file instead of stdout
  - If you use `logpath`, you can rotate the logs by either running the `logRotate` command (1.3.4+) or sending SIGUSR1
  - You should always use `--logappend` with `--logpath` to append to the existing log file, instead of overwriting it

Rotating the log files

From the mongo shell

```
> db.runCommand("logRotate");
```

From the unix shell

Note: There is currently no way to rotate logs in Windows from the DOS prompt (or equivalent)

Rotate logs for a single process

```
shell> kill -SIGUSR1 <mongod process id>
```

Rotate logs for all mongo processes on a machine

```
shell> killall -SIGUSR1 mongod
```

Accessing Logs via Shell (Since 1.9.1)

Get a list of available loggers

```
> show logs
> db.runCommand( { getLog : "*" } )
```

Get a log

```
> show log global
> db.runCommand( { getLog : "global" } )
```

Command Line Parameters

MongoDB can be configured via command line parameters in addition to File Based Configuration. You can see the currently supported set of command line options by running the database with `-h [ --help ]` as a single parameter:

```
$ ./mongod --help
```

Information on usage of these parameters can be found in Starting and Stopping Mongo.

The following list of options is not complete; for the complete list see the usage information as described above.

Basic Options

`-h | --help`	Shows all options
`-f | --config <file>`	Specify a configuration file to use
`--port <portno>`	Specifies the port number on which Mongo will listen for client connections. Default is 27017
`--dbpath <path>`	Specifies the directory for datafiles. Default is `/data/db` or `c:\data\db`
`--fork`	Fork the server process
`--bind_ip <ip>`	Specifies a single IP that the database server will listen for
`--directoryperdb`	Specify use of an alternative directory structure, in which files for each database are kept in a unique directory. (more details) (*since 1.3.2*)
`--quiet`	Reduces amount of log output (more details)
`--nohttpinterface`	Disable the HTTP interface (localhost:28017)
`--rest`	Allow extended operations at the Http Interface
`--logpath <file>`	File to write logs to (instead of stdout). You can rotate the logs by sending SIGUSR1 to the server.
`--logappend`	Append to existing log file, instead of overwritting
`--repairpath <path>`	Root path for temporary files created during database repair. Default is `dbpath` value.
`--cpu`	Enables periodic logging of CPU utilization and I/O wait

`--noauth`	Turns off security. This is currently the default
`--auth`	Turn on security
`-v[v[v[v[v]]]] | --verbose`	Verbose logging output (`-vvvvv` is most verbose, `-v == --verbose`)
`--objcheck`	Inspect all client data for validity on receipt (useful for developing drivers)
`--quota`	Enable db quota management. This limits (by default) to 8 files per DB. This can be changed through the --quotaFiles parameter
`--quotaFiles`	Maximum number of files that will be opened per Database. See --quota
`--syncdelay arg (=60)`	seconds between disk syncs (0=never, but not recommended)
`--diaglog <n>`	Set oplogging level where n is 0=off (default) 1=W 2=R 3=both 7=W+some reads
`--nocursors`	Diagnostic/debugging option
`--nohints`	Ignore query hints
`--noscripting`	Turns off server-side scripting. This will result in greatly limited functionality
`--notablescan`	Turns off table scans. Any query that would do a table scan fails
`--noprealloc`	Disable data file preallocation
`--smallfiles`	Use a smaller default file size
`--nssize <MB>`	Specifies .ns file size for new databases
`--sysinfo`	Print system info as detected by Mongo and exit
`--nounixsocket`	disable listening on unix sockets (will not create socket files at /tmp/mongodb-<port>.sock)
`--upgrade`	Upgrade database files to new format if necessary (required when upgrading from <= 1.0 to 1.1+)

Master/Slave Replication Options

`--master`	Designate this server as a master in a master-slave setup
`--slave`	Designate this server as a slave in a master-slave setup
`--source <server:port>`	Specify the source (master) for a slave instance
`--only <db>`	Slave only: specify a single database to replicate
`--arbiter <server:port>`	Address of arbiter server
`--autoresync`	Automatically resync if slave data is stale
`--oplogSize <MB>`	Custom size for replication operation log

Replica Set Options

`--replSet <setname>[/<seedlist>]`	Use replica sets with the specified logical set name. Typically the optional seed host list need not be specified.
`--oplogSize <MB>`	Custom size for replication operation log
`--fastsync`	If the node is started with a recent copy of data from another node in the set (including the oplog) it won't need a full resync. You can let it know to skip the resync by running the mongod with --fastsync.

Command Line --quiet

When the `mongod` process is run with `--quiet`, certain messages are suppressed from the logs.

The following log messages are suppressed:

1. Connection accepted & connection closed

2. Commands: `drop`, `dropIndex`, `diaglogging`, `validate`, `clean`
3. Master-slave syncing activity: sleeping, "repl: from... host"

> we are not suppressing the actual commands, just suppressing the logging of the execution of those commands

The setting of `quiet` does not influence the setting of `verbose`. A server can be both quiet and verbose.

Example log entries suppressed

```
#1: Connection accepted & closed
[initandlisten] connection accepted from 127.0.0.1:52798 #3
[conn3] end connection 127.0.0.1:52798

#2: Commands
[conn10] CMD: drop test.foo
[conn10] CMD: dropIndexes test.foo

#3: Master-slave syncing activity
[replslave] repl: sleep 1sec before next pass
[replslave] repl: from host:127.0.0.1:6900
```

Directory Per DB

Overview

MongoDB supports a "directory per DB" option.

By default data files for MongoDB are all created in a single directory. This directory is defined by the `--dbpath` variable.

The "directory per DB" option (`--directoryperdb`) allows for a separate directory for the files of each database.

Uses

The most common use for this option is to enable data to be stored on different physical disks. This is generally accomplished by creating a symbolic link to the appropriate underlying hardware.

Example

The following sample demonstrates the difference in directory structures. The `db/` directory is run without "directory per DB", the `db2/` directory is run *with* "directory per DB".

```
db:
total 417M
-rw------- 1 mongo mongo  64M 2011-04-05 12:50 foo.0
-rw------- 1 mongo mongo 128M 2011-04-05 12:50 foo.1
-rw------- 1 mongo mongo  16M 2011-04-05 12:50 foo.ns
-rw------- 1 mongo mongo  64M 2011-04-05 12:48 test.0
-rw------- 1 mongo mongo 128M 2011-04-05 12:48 test.1
-rw------- 1 mongo mongo  16M 2011-04-05 12:48 test.ns
-rwxr-xr-x 1 mongo mongo    5 2011-04-05 12:47 mongod.lock

db2:
total 16K
drwxr-xr-x 2 mongo mongo 4.0K 2011-04-05 12:50 foo
-rwxr-xr-x 1 mongo mongo    5 2011-04-05 12:47 mongod.lock
drwxr-xr-x 2 mongo mongo 4.0K 2011-04-05 12:48 test

db2/foo:
total 209M
-rw------- 1 mongo mongo  64M 2011-04-05 12:50 foo.0
-rw------- 1 mongo mongo 128M 2011-04-05 12:50 foo.1
-rw------- 1 mongo mongo  16M 2011-04-05 12:50 foo.ns

db2/test:
total 209M
-rw------- 1 mongo mongo  64M 2011-04-05 12:48 test.0
-rw------- 1 mongo mongo 128M 2011-04-05 12:48 test.1
-rw------- 1 mongo mongo  16M 2011-04-05 12:48 test.ns
```

File Based Configuration

In addition to accepting Command Line Parameters, MongoDB can also be configured using a configuration file. A configuration file to use can be specified using the `-f` or `--config` command line options. On some packaged installs of MongoDB (for example Ubuntu & Debian) the default file can be found in /etc/mongodb.conf which is automatically used when starting and stopping MongoDB from the service.

The following example configuration file demonstrates the syntax to use:

```
# This is an example config file for MongoDB.
dbpath = /var/lib/mongodb
bind_ip = 127.0.0.1
noauth = true # use 'true' for options that don't take an argument
verbose = true # to disable, comment out.
```

> Unfortunately flag parameters like "quiet" will register as true no matter what value you put after them. So don't write this: "quiet=false", just comment it out, or remove the line.

Parameters

Basic database configuration

Parameter	Meaning	Example
dbpath	Location of the database files	dbpath=/var/lib/mongodb
port	Port the mongod will listen on	port=27017
bind_ip	Specific IP address that mongod will listen on	bind_ip=127.0.0.1
logpath	Full filename path to where log messages will be written	logpath=/var/log/mongodb/mongodb.log
logappend	Whether the log file will be appended (TRUE) or over-written (FALSE)	logappend=true

Logging

Parameter	Meaning	Example
cpu	Enable periodic logging (TRUE) of CPU utilization and I/O wait	cpu = true
verbose	Verbose logging output	verbose=true

Security

Parameter	Meaning	Example
noauth	Turn authorization on/off. Off is currently the default	noauth = true
auth	Turn authorization on/off. Off is currently the default	auth=false

Administration & Monitoring

Parameter	Meaning	Example
nohttpinterface	Disable the HTTP interface. The default port is 1000 more than the dbport	nohttpinterface = true
rest	Turn on simple rest API	rest = true
noscripting	Turns off server-side scripting. This will result in greatly limited functionality	noscripting = true
notablescan	Turns off table scans. Any query that would do a table scan fails.	notablescan = true
noprealloc	Disable data file preallocation.	noprealloc = true
nssize	Specify .ns file size for new databases in MB	nssize = 16
mms-token	Account token for Mongo monitoring server.	mms-token=mytoken
mms-name	Server name for Mongo monitoring server.	mms-name=monitor.example.com
mms-interval	Ping interval for Mongo monitoring server in seconds.	mms-interval=15
quota	Enable quota management	quota = true
quotaFiles	Determines the number of files per Database (default is 8)	quotaFiles=16

Replication

Parameter	Meaning	Example
autoresync	Automatically resync if slave data is stale	autoresync
opIdMem	Size limit for in-memory storage of op ids in bytes	opIdMem=1000
fastsync	Indicate that this instance is starting from a dbpath snapshot of the repl peer	
oplogSize	Custom size for replication operation log in MB.	oplogSize=100

Master-slave Replication

Parameter	Meaning	Example
master	In replicated mongo databases, specify here whether this is a slave or master	master = true
slave	In replicated mongo databases, specify here whether this is a slave or master	slave = true
source	Specify the	source = master.example.com
only	Slave only: specify a single database to replicate	only = master.example.com

Replica Sets

Parameter	Meaning	Example
replSet	Use replica sets with the specified logical set name. Typically the optional seed host list need not be specified.	replSet=<setname>[/<seedlist>]
keyFile	Private key for cluster authentication.	keyFile=/var/lib/mongodb/key

Sharding

Parameter	Meaning	Example
shardsvr	Indicates that this mongod will participate in sharding *Optional and just changes the default port	shardsvr=true

Journaling

Parameter	Meaning	Example
journal	Whether writes will be journaled or not. This feature enables fast recovery from crashes	journal = true

Notes

- Lines starting with octothorpes (#) are comments
- Options are case sensitive
- The syntax is assignment of a value to an option name
- All command line options are accepted, for example "vvvv=true"

GridFS Tools

File Tools

`mongofiles` is a tool for manipulating GridFS from the command line.

Example:

```
$ ./mongofiles list
connected to: 127.0.0.1

$ ./mongofiles put libmongoclient.a
connected to: 127.0.0.1
done!

$ ./mongofiles list
connected to: 127.0.0.1
libmongoclient.a 12000964

$ cd /tmp/

$ ~/work/mon/mongofiles get libmongoclient.a

$ ~/work/mongo/mongofiles get libmongoclient.a
connected to: 127.0.0.1
done write to: libmongoclient.a

$ md5 libmongoclient.a
MD5 (libmongoclient.a) = 23a52d361cfa7bad98099c5bad50dc41

$ md5 ~/work/mongo/libmongoclient.a
MD5 (/Users/erh/work/mongo/libmongoclient.a) = 23a52d361cfa7bad98099c5bad50dc41
```

DBA Operations from the Shell

This page lists common DBA-class operations that one might perform from the MongoDB shell.

Note one may also create .js scripts to run in the shell for administrative purposes.

```
help                          show help
show dbs                      show database names
show collections              show collections in current database
show users                    show users in current database
show profile                  show most recent system.profile entries with time >= 1ms
use <db name>                 set curent database to <db name>

db.addUser (username, password)
db.removeUser(username)

db.cloneDatabase(fromhost)
db.copyDatabase(fromdb, todb, fromhost)
db.createCollection(name, { size : ..., capped : ..., max : ... } )

db.getName()
db.dropDatabase()

// runs the collstats] command on each collection in the database
db.printCollectionStats()

db.currentOp() displays the current operation in the db
db.killOp() kills the current operation in the db

db.getProfilingLevel()
db.setProfilingLevel(level) 0=off 1=slow 2=all

db.getReplicationInfo()
db.printReplicationInfo()
db.printSlaveReplicationInfo()
db.repairDatabase()

db.version() current version of the server

db.shutdownServer()
```

Commands for manipulating and inspecting a collection:

```
db.foo.drop() drop the collection
db.foo.dropIndex(name)
db.foo.dropIndexes()
db.foo.getIndexes()
db.foo.ensureIndex(keypattern,options) - options object has these possible
                                         fields: name, unique, dropDups

db.foo.find( [query] , [fields])       - first parameter is an optional
                                         query filter. second parameter
                                         is optional
                                         set of fields to return.
                                   e.g. db.foo.find(
                                                  { x : 77 } ,
                                                  { name : 1 , x : 1 } )
db.foo.find(...).count()
db.foo.find(...).limit(n)
db.foo.find(...).skip(n)
db.foo.find(...).sort(...)
db.foo.findOne([query])

db.foo.getDB() get DB object associated with collection

db.foo.count()
db.foo.group( { key : ..., initial: ..., reduce : ...[, cond: ...] } )

db.foo.renameCollection( newName ) renames the collection

db.foo.stats()
db.foo.dataSize()
db.foo.storageSize() - includes free space allocated to this collection
db.foo.totalIndexSize() - size in bytes of all the indexes
db.foo.totalSize() - storage allocated for all data and indexes
db.foo.validate() (slow)

db.foo.insert(obj)
db.foo.update(query, object[, upsert_bool])
db.foo.save(obj)
db.foo.remove(query)                   - remove objects matching query
                                         remove({}) will remove all
```

See Also

- collStats (stats) command
- Commands

Architecture and Components

MongoDB has two primary components to the database server. The first is the mongod process which is the core database server. In many cases, mongod may be used as a self-contained system similar to how one would use mysqld on a server. Separate mongod instances on different machines (and data centers) can replicate from one to another.

Another MongoDB process, mongos, facilitates auto-sharding. mongos can be thought of as a "database router" to make a cluster of mongod processes appear as a single database. See the sharding documentation for more information.

Database Caching

With relational databases, object caching is usually a separate facility (such as memcached), which makes sense as even a RAM page cache hit is a fairly expensive operation with a relational database (joins may be required, and the data must be transformed into an object representation). Further, memcached type solutions are more scaleable than a relational database.

Mongo eliminates the need (in some cases) for a separate object caching layer. Queries that result in file system RAM cache hits are very fast as the object's representation in the database is very close to its representation in application memory. Also, the MongoDB can scale to any level and provides an object cache and database integrated together, which is very helpful as there is no risk of retrieving stale data from the cache. In addition, the complex queries a full DBMS provides are also possible.

Windows

Windows Quick Links and Reference Center

Running MongoDB on Windows

See the Quickstart page for info on how to install and run the database for the first time.

Running as a Service

See the Windows Service page.

The MongoDB Server

Get pre-built binaries on the Downloads page. Binaries are available for both 32 bit and 64 bit Windows. MongoDB uses memory-mapped files for data storage, so for servers managing more than 2GB of data you will definitely need the 64 bit version (and a 64 bit version of Windows).

Writing Apps

You can write apps in almost any programming language – see the Drivers page. In particular C#, .NET, PHP, C and C++ work just fine.

- CSharp Language Center
- CSharp Community Projects

Building

We recommend using the pre-built binaries, but Mongo builds fine with Visual Studio 2008 and 2010. See the Building for Windows page.

Versions of Windows

We have successfully ran MongoDB (mongod etc.) on:

- Windows Server 2008 R2 64 bit
- Windows 7 (32 bit and 64 bit)
- Windows XP
- Vista

Azure

Instructions for running MongoDB on Azure (alpha)

MongoDB on Azure

> ⚠ The Mongo Azure wrapper is currently an alpha release. Please provide feedback, IRC and mongodb-dev are good places!

- Standalone instance
  - Getting the sources
  - Details
    - Blob setting information
  - Components
  - Building
    - Prerequisites
    - Build
  - FAQ/Troubleshooting
  - Known issues
- Futures
- Presentations

- Azure Configuration
- Azure Deployment

Standalone instance

This is the current solution for running the MongoDB database on Windows Azure. It allows running a single MongoDB process (mongod) on an Azure worker role with journaling. It also optionally allows for having a second worker role instance as a warm standby for the case where the

current instance either crashes or is being recycled for a normal upgrade.
MongoDB data and log files are stored in an Azure Blob mounted as a cloud drive.
MongoDB on Azure is delivered as a Visual Studio 2010 solution with associated source files. Details on deployment are described below.

Getting the sources

The MongoDB Azure package source may be downloaded from github.com.

To clone the repository run the following commands from a git bash shell:

```
$ cd <parentdirectory>
$ git config --global core.autocrlf true
$ git clone git://github.com/sridharn/Mongo-Azure.git
$ cd Mongo-Azure
$ git config core.autocrlf true
```

You must set the global setting for core.autocrlf to true before cloning the repository. After you clone the repository, we recommend you set the local setting for core.autocrlf to true (as shown above) so that future changes to the global setting for core.autocrlf do not affect this repository. If you then want to change your global setting for core.autocrlf to false run:

```
$ git config --global core.autocrlf false
```

You can download a zip file of the source files (without cloning the repository) by clicking on the Downloads button at:
https://github.com/sridharn/Mongo-Azure

Details

The azure package wraps and runs mongod.exe with the following mongod command line options:

```
--dbpath --port --logpath --journal --nohttpinterface --logappend
```

MongoDB 1.8.1 is currently used in this package.

One can use any MongoDB driver to connect to the MongoDB server instance; the most common driver used would be the official C# driver 1.1 that is included as part of the package

The azure worker role trace log is written to both configured trace file in local storage and to Azure diagnostics stored in a permanent blob.

Blob setting information

- Mongo Data Blob Container Name - mongoddatadrive
- Mongo Data Blob Name - mongoddblob.vhd
- Mongo Log Blob Container Name - mongodlogdrive
- Mongo Log Blob Name - mongodlblob.vhd

Components

- MongoAzure - DLL containing helper methods to access MongoDB in an Azure environment. Currently it contains methods to return the default connect string or IPEndPoint on which mongod is running.
- MongoWorkerRole - An Azure worker role that launches mongod
- MvcMovie - An Azure web role that is a sample app that demonstrates connecting and working with Mongo on Azure. In an actual user scenario this web role is replaced with the user's actual app.

Building

Prerequisites

- .Net 4.0.
- Windows Azure SDK 1.4
- Visual Studio 2010
- ASP.Net MVC3 (only needed for the sample app)

Build

- Open MongoAzure.sln from Visual Studio 2010 and build

FAQ/Troubleshooting

- Can I run mongo.exe to connect?
  - Yes if you set up remote desktop. Then you can connect to the machine. mongo.exe is at e:\approot\MongoExe\.
- MongoWorkerRole does not start on local instance?
  - Look at the mongo log file at location specified above. See if it asks to repair. If so delete the mongod.lock from the local data directory from above. Then run a repair from a local mongod with --dbpath as the local data directory from above
- Role instances do not start on deploy
  - Check if the storage URLs have been specified as above.

Known issues

Edit link on the sample app does not work. It is creating a new entry.

Futures

Support for replica sets and sharding is still pending.

Presentations

- MognoDB on Windows Azure - Presentation at MongoSF (May 2011)
- MongoDB on Windows Azure - Presentation at MongoSV (December 2010)

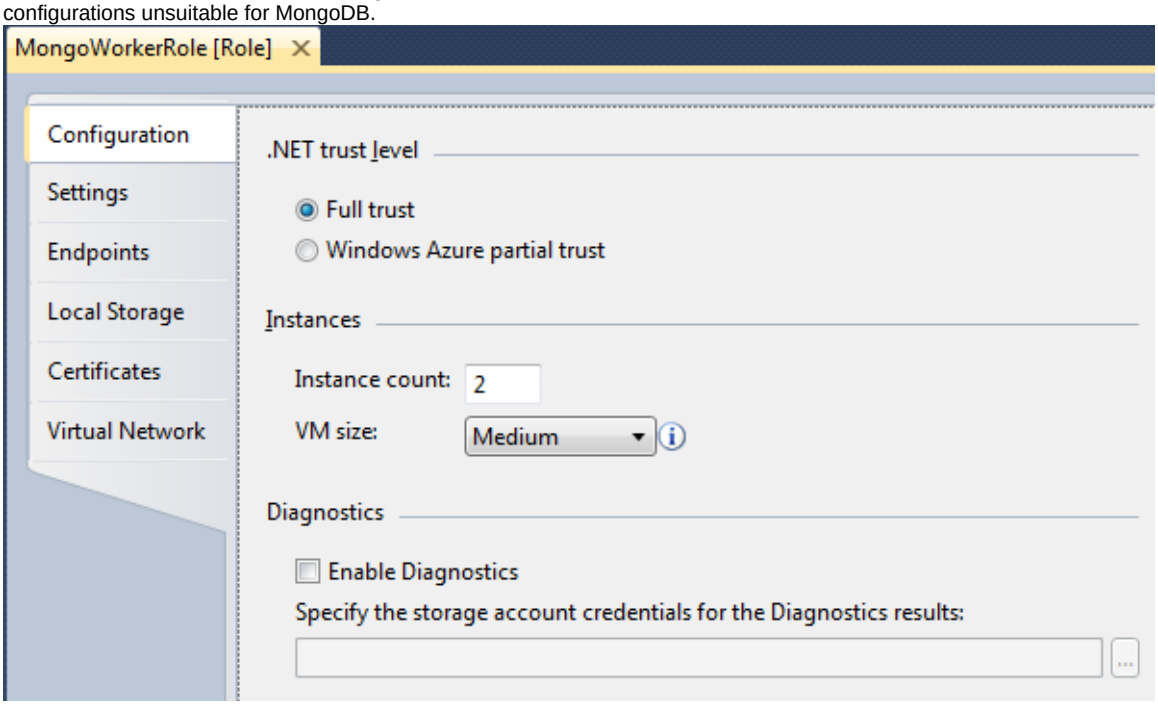
Azure Configuration

- MongoWorkerRole configuration
- MongoWorkerRole.cs

The following are the configuration operations available as part of the MongoDB Azure package.

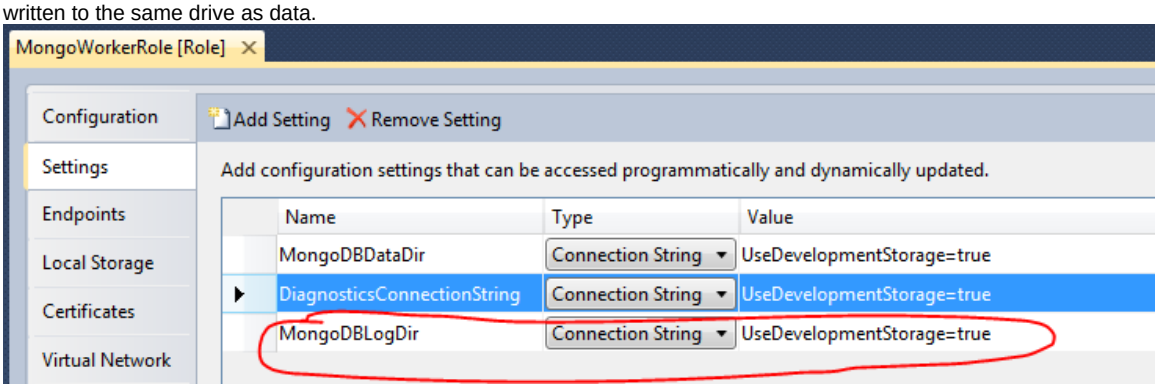
MongoWorkerRole configuration

- Configuration
  - **Instance count** - Choose 2 if a warm standby instance is needed else 1
  - **VM Size** - Choose size of Medium or higher. **note** The I/O characteristics of small or extra small instance make these configurations unsuitable for MongoDB.



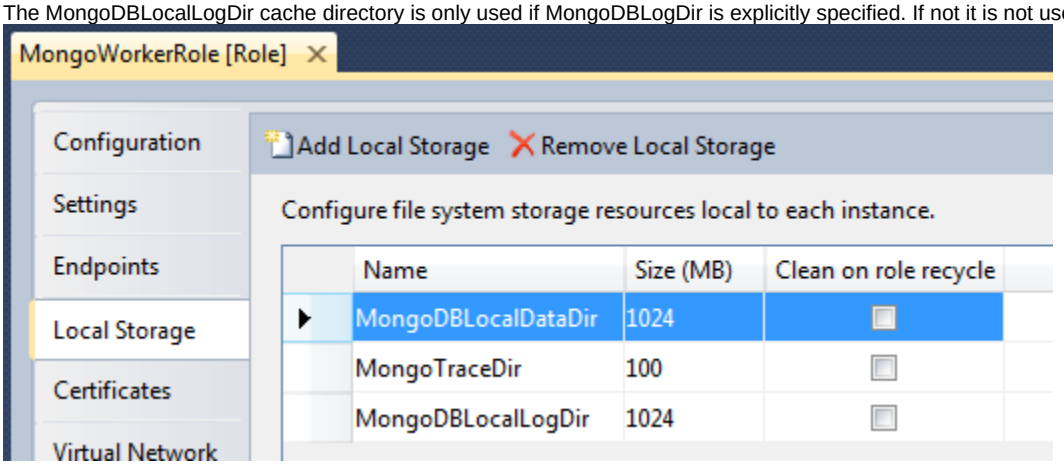
- Settings
  - **MongoDBDataDir** - Storage for mongo data files --dbpath. Configure for development or deployment. Data files are in a subdirectory called `data`.
  - **DiagnosticsConnectionString** - Storage for diagnostics information
  - **MongoDBLogDir** (optional) - Storage for mongo log file --logpath. Configure for development or deployment. Log file is in a subdirectory called `log`. If MongoDBLogDir is not specified DiagnosticsConnectionString is used else MongoDBDataDir is used.

The following image shows the settings required in a local context. MongoDBLogDir is optional. If not specified (the default) the mongodb log is written to the same drive as data.



- Local storage
  - **MongoDBLocalDataDir** - Cache size for mongo data cloud drive. Default is 1GB
  - **MongoDBLocalLogDir** - Cache size for mongo log cloud drive. Default is 1GB
  - **MongoTraceDir** - Local storage for azure wrapper trace file. Default is 100MB

The MongoDBLocalLogDir cache directory is only used if MongoDBLogDir is explicitly specified. If not it is not used.



MongoWorkerRole.cs

- **MaxDBDriveSize** - Maximum size in MB of the mongo data drive created in cloud storage. Default is 5GB.
- **MaxLogDriveSize** - Maximum size in MB of the mongo log drive created in cloud storage. Default is 1GB.
- **MountSleep** - This setting is only used in the case of a standby instance. If specified it dictates how long the standby instance waits before trying to (re) mount the blob drive.
- **DiagnosticTransferInterval** - Determines how often the Azure worker trace log is transferred to the persistent Blob defined by DiagnosticsConnectionString.
- **PerfCounterTransferInterval** - Determines how often the sampled windows performance counters are transferred to the persistent Blob defined by DiagnosticsConnectionString.

```
// The following settings are configurable
private const int MaxDBDriveSize = 5 * 1024; // in MB
private const int MaxLogDriveSize = 1024; // in MB
private const int MountSleep = 30 * 1000; // 30 seconds;

private readonly TimeSpan DiagnosticTransferInterval = TimeSpan.FromMinutes(30);
private readonly TimeSpan PerfCounterTransferInterval = TimeSpan.FromMinutes(15);
// end of configurable section
```

Azure Deployment

- In a development environment
- In the Azure environment
  - Azure setup (first time only per deployment)
  - Project configuration

In a development environment

The solution should be built and run in a development environment as is if using Visual Studio 2010 Ultimate Edition, if adequate disk space is available.

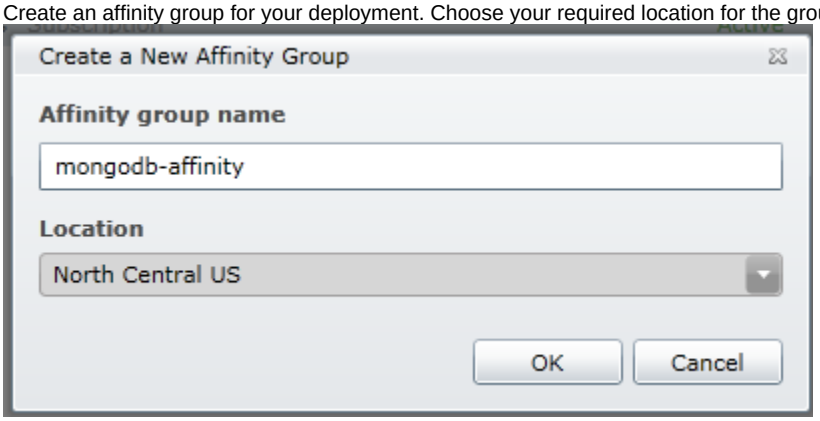
- Since this prototype uses Cloud Drive you cannot run from a development environment against Azure storage
- When running in the dev environment a trace file is written to C:\Users\<user>\AppData\Local\dftmp\s0\deployment(<deployment number>)\res\deployment(<deployment number>).MongoWorker.MongoWorkerRole.0\directory\MongoTraceDir
- The actual mongod log file is at C:\Users\<user>\AppData\Local\dftmp\wadd\devstoreaccount1\mongodlogdrive\mongodlblob.vhd\log. Note - On a development environment the port is not honored and hence you need to look at the long file to know which port mongo is listening on. This drive is also mounted and can be accessed from Windows explorer while the app is running.
- The actual mongod data files are at C:\Users\<user>\AppData\Local\dftmp\wadd\devstoreaccount1\mongoddatadrive\mongoddblob.vhd\data. This drive is also mounted and can be accessed from windows explorer while the app is running.
  Note - Additionally when the app is running you should be able to access the drives on mounting as you would access any mounted drive.

In the Azure environment

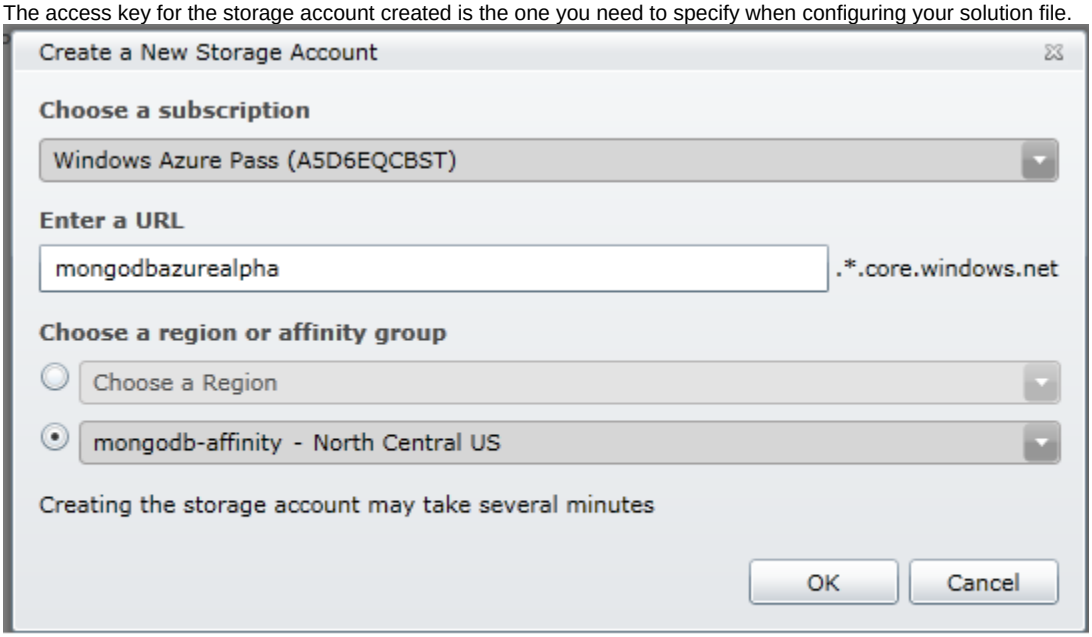
Login to the [Azure management portal] using your credentials

Azure setup (first time only per deployment)

- Create an affinity group for your deployment. Choose your required location for the group.

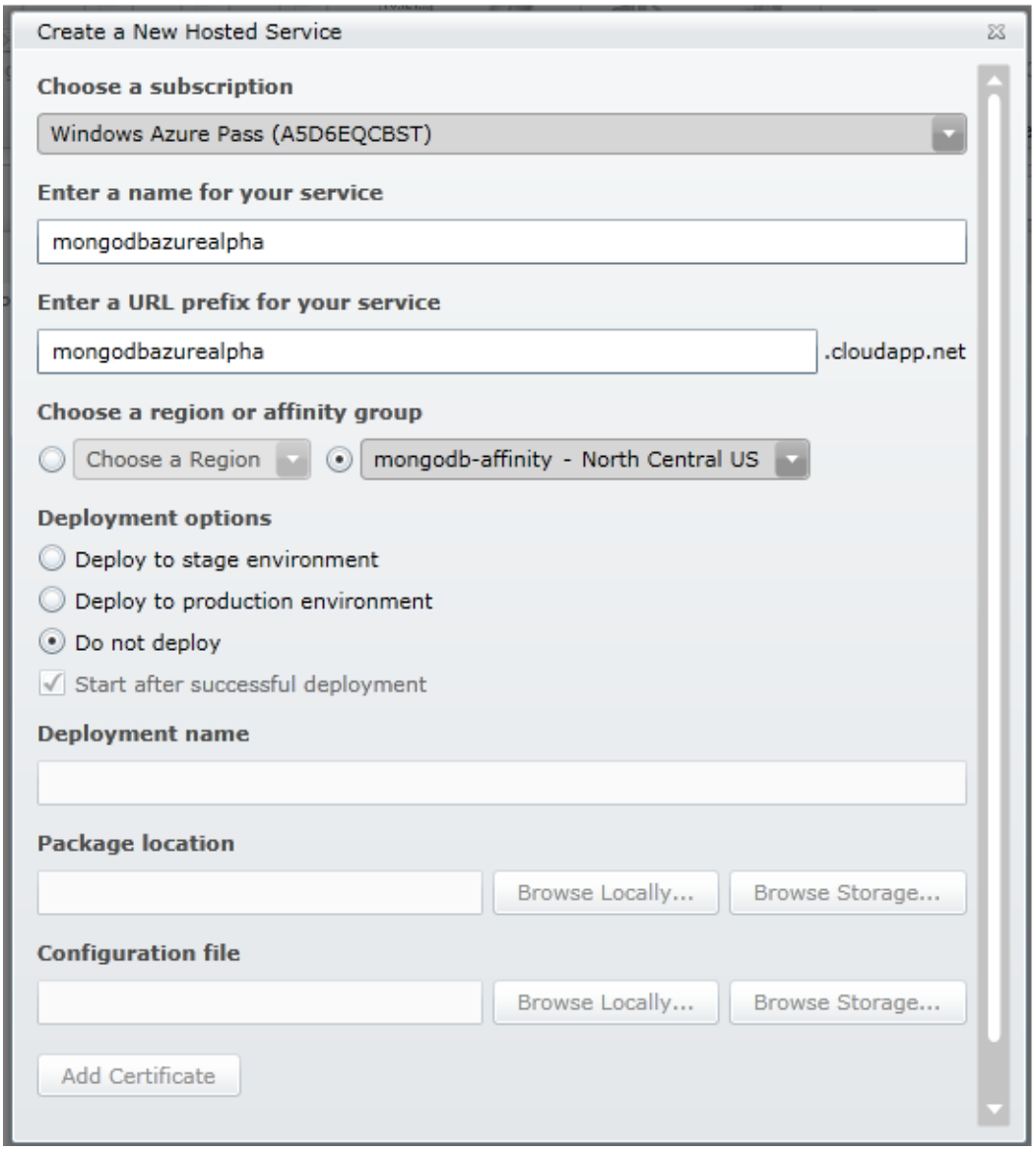


- Create the required number of storage account(s) to store the blobs. For region/affinity choose the affinity group you created earlier
  - The access key for the storage account created is the one you need to specify when configuring your solution file.



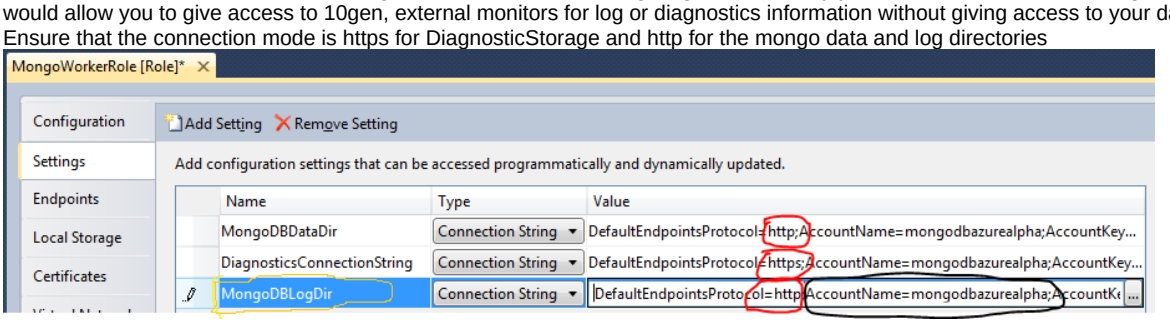
- Create a new hosted service to host your Mongo package

- For region/affinity group use the same affinity group as your storage accunt. **Note** for cloud drives the compute and storage instances should be in the same azure domain.
- Choose do not deploy



Project configuration

- If you want to use a separate account for log directory add a new setting **MongoDBLogDir** on MongoWorkerRole
- Change connection setting from UseDevelopment storage to actual storage account credentials.
- It is recommended to use different storage accounts for data and log/diagnostics. Ideally you would use 3 different storage accounts. This would allow you to give access to 10gen, external monitors for log or diagnostics information without giving access to your data.
- Ensure that the connection mode is https for DiagnosticStorage and http for the mongo data and log directories



- Ensure instance size for MongoWorkerRole is at least Medium
- Set the number of MongoWorkerRole instances to 2 if Warm standby is needed
- Enable remote desktop on the role intances http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/gg443832.aspx
- Ensure that the connection mode is https for the Microsoft.WindowsAzure.Plugins.Diagnostics.ConnectionString of the MvcMovie test web role if using the sample app.
- Create the Azure packaging by right clicking on the cloud project and choosing Publish.
- Deploy the created package from the Azure management portal. More details on deploying can be found at http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/magazine/ee336122.aspx
  Note - If deploying multiple Azure instances make sure you use different storage accounts for each of the deployments.

When deploying to the Azure cloud make sure to check deployment warnings/errors to see for any breaking issues. Some common errors are

- Remote desktop is enabled but the remote desktop certificate has not been uploaded to the portal
- https is not chosen for diagnostics connection string

Troubleshooting

- Excessive Disk Space
- Out of Memory OOM Killer
- Too Many Open Files

- mongod process "disappeared"
- See Also

mongod process "disappeared"

Scenario here is the log ending suddenly with no error or shutdown messages logged.

On Unix, check /var/log/messages:

```
$ sudo grep mongod /var/log/messages
$ sudo grep score /var/log/messages
```

See Also

- Diagnostic Tools

Excessive Disk Space

- Understanding Disk Usage
  - local.* files and replication
  - Datafile Preallocation
  - Deleted Space
  - Checking Size of a Collection
  - Helpful scripts

Understanding Disk Usage

You may notice that for a given set of data the MongoDB datafiles in `/data/db` are larger than the data set inserted into the database. There are several reasons for this.

local. files and replication*

The replication oplog is preallocated as a capped collection in the local database.

The default allocation is approximately 5% of disk space (*64 bit installations*).

If you would like a smaller oplog size use the `--oplogSize` command line parameter.

Datafile Preallocation

Each datafile is preallocated to a given size. (This is done to prevent file system fragmentation, among other reasons.) The first file for a database is <dbname>.0, then <dbname>.1, etc. <dbname>.0 will be 64MB, <dbname>.1 128MB, etc., up to 2GB. Once the files reach 2GB in size, each successive file is also 2GB.

Thus if the last datafile present is say, 1GB, that file might be 90% empty if it was recently reached.

Additionally, on Unix, mongod will preallocate an additional datafile in the background and do background initialization of this file. These files are prefilled with zero bytes. This inititialization can take up to a minute (less on a fast disk subsystem) for larger datafiles; without prefilling in the background this could result in significant delays when a new file must be prepopulated.

You can disable preallocation with the `--noprealloc` command line parameter. This flag is nice for tests with small datasets where you drop the db after each test. It shouldn't be used on production servers.

For large databases (hundreds of GB or more) this is of no signficant consequence as the unallocated space is small.

Deleted Space

MongoDB maintains deleted lists of space within the datafiles when objects or collections are deleted. This space is reused but never freed to the operating system.

To compact this space, run `db.repairDatabase()` from the mongo shell

> this operation will block and is slow.

When testing and investigating the size of datafiles, if your data is just test data, use `db.dropDatabase()` to clear all datafiles and start fresh.

Checking Size of a Collection

Use the validate command to check the size of a collection -- that is from the shell run:

```
> db.<collectionname>.validate();

> // these are faster:
> db.<collectionname>.dataSize(); // just data size for collection
> db.<collectionname>.storageSize(); // allocation size including unused space
> db.<collectionname>.totalSize(); // data + index
> db.<collectionname>.totalIndexSize(); // index data size
```

This command returns info on the collection data but note there is also data allocated for associated indexes. These can be checked with validate too, if one looks up the index's namespace name in the system.namespaces collection. For example:

```
> db.system.namespaces.find()
{"name" : "test.foo"}
{"name" : "test.system.indexes"}
{"name" : "test.foo.$_id_"}
> > db.foo.$_id_.validate()
{"ns" : "test.foo.$_id_" , "result" : "
validate
  details: 0xb3590b68 ofs:83fb68
  firstExtent:0:8100 ns:test.foo.$_id_
  lastExtent:0:8100 ns:test.foo.$_id_
  # extents:1
  datasize?:8192 nrecords?:1 lastExtentSize:131072
  padding:1
  first extent:
    loc:0:8100 xnext:null xprev:null
    ns:test.foo.$_id_
    size:131072 firstRecord:0:81b0 lastRecord:0:81b0
  1 objects found, nobj:1
  8208 bytes data w/headers
  8192 bytes data wout/headers
  deletedList: 0000000000001000000
  deleted: n: 1 size: 122688
  nIndexes:0
" , "ok" : 1 , "valid" : true , "lastExtentSize" : 131072}
```

Helpful scripts

These one-line scripts will print the stats for each db/collection:

```
db._adminCommand("listDatabases").databases.forEach(function (d) {mdb = db.getSiblingDB(d.name);
printjson(mdb.stats())})

db._adminCommand("listDatabases").databases.forEach(function (d) {mdb = db.getSiblingDB(d.name);
mdb.getCollectionNames().forEach(function(c) {s = mdb[c].stats(); printjson(s)})})
```

Out of Memory OOM Killer

The Linux out of memory killer kills processes using too much memory. On a kill event you will see a line such as the following in the system log file:

```
Feb 13 04:33:23 hostm1 kernel: [279318.262555] mongod invoked oom-killer: gfp_mask=0x1201d2, order=0,
oomkilladj=0
```

On such an event, check in future runs that memory is not leaking. This can be checked by verifying that virtualbytes - mappedbytes for mongod is bounded. Check this in serverStatus and/or mongostat.

```
> db.serverStatus()
```

ulimit

`ulimit -m` with `mongod` may cause kills that are false positives. This setting is not recommended. MongoDB uses memory mapped files. The entire data is mapped. Over time, if there is no memory pressure, the `mongod` resident bytes may approach total memory, as the resident bytes includes file system cache bytes for the file pages open and touched by `mongod`.

Too Many Open Files

If you receive the error "too many open files" or "too many open connections" in the mongod log, there are a couple of possible reasons for this.

First, to check what file descriptors are in use, run lsof (some variations shown below):

```
lsof | grep mongod
lsof | grep mongod | grep TCP
lsof | grep mongod | grep data | wc
```

If most lines include "TCP", there are many open connections from client sockets. If most lines include the name of your data directory, the open files are mostly datafiles.

ulimit

If the numbers from lsof look reasonable, check your ulimit settings. The default for file handles (often 1024) might be too low for production usage. Run ulimit -a (or limit -a depending on shell) to check.

Use ulimit -n X to change the max number of file handles to X. If your OS is configured to not allow modifications to that setting you might need to reconfigure first. On ubuntu you'll need to edit /etc/security/limits.conf and add a line something like the following (where user is the username and X is the desired limit):

```
user hard nofile X
```

Upstart uses a different mechanism for setting file descriptor limits - add something like this to your job file:

```
limit nofile X
```

High TCP Connection Count

If lsof shows a large number of open TCP sockets, it could be that one or more clients is opening too many connections to the database. Check that your client apps are using connection pooling.

Contributors

- JS Benchmarking Harness
- MongoDB kernel code development rules
- Project Ideas
- Roadmap
- UI
- Source Code
- Building
- Database Internals
- Contributing to the Documentation

- 10gen Contributor Agreement

JS Benchmarking Harness

CODE:

```
db.foo.drop();
db.foo.insert( { _id : 1 } )

ops = [
    { op : "findOne" , ns : "test.foo" , query : { _id : 1 } } ,
    { op : "update" , ns : "test.foo" , query : { _id : 1 } , update : { $inc : { x : 1 } } }

]

for ( x = 1; x<=128; x*=2){
    res = benchRun( { parallel : x ,
                      seconds : 5 ,
                      ops : ops
                    } )
    print( "threads: " + x + "\t queries/sec: " + res.query )
}
```

Dynamic values

```
res = benchRun( { ops : [ { ns : t.getFullName() ,
                            op : "update" ,
                            query : { _id : { "#RAND_INT" : [ 0 , 100 ] } } ,
                            update : { $inc : { x : 1 } } } ] ,
                  parallel : 2 ,
                  seconds : 1 ,
                  totals : true } )
```

More info:

http://github.com/mongodb/mongo/commit/3db3cb13dc1c522db8b59745d6c74b0967f1611c

MongoDB kernel code development rules

Coding conventions for the MongoDB C++ code...

- Git Commit Rules
- Kernel class rules
- Kernel code style
- Kernel concurrency rules
- Kernel exception architecture
- Kernel logging
- Kernel string manipulation

- Memory management
- Writing tests

For anything not mentioned here, default to google c++ style guide

User Facing Conventions

> These are very important as we can't change them easily – Much more than code conventions!

Anything users see – command line options, command names, command output, we need to think hard and carefully about the name to be used, and the exact format and consistency of the items output. For example, serverStatus output is a bit of a mismash of lowercase and camelCase. Let's fix that over time, starting with new things.

Use camelCase for about everything

- `--commandLineOptions`
- { commandNames : 1, commandOption : "abc" }
- Names of fields in objects we generate - such as command responses, profiler fields.

Include units in fields

In things like serverStatus, include the units in the stat name if there is any chance of ambiguity. For example:

- writtenMB
- timeMs

We should have standards for these – i.e. megabytes should always be "MB" and not "Mb" and "Megabytes" in different places. So the standards are:

- for bytes : use "MB" and show in megabytes unless you know it will be tiny. Note you can use a float so 0.1MB is fine to show.
- for time: use millis ("Ms") for time by default. you can also use Secs and a float for times you know will be very long.
- for microseconds, use "Micros" as the suffix, e.g., `timeMicros`.

Git Commit Rules

- commit messages should have the case in the message SERVER-XXX
- commit messages should be descriptive enough that a glance can tell the basics
- commits should only include 1 thought.

Kernel class rules

Design guidelines

- A class has to have a ***purpose in life*** that's described in a comment in the header of the class. If it takes many lines of heavy comments to state what the class is for, it probably doesn't have a very clear goal. If the comment is just one line but doesn't say anything much clearly than what the name of the class already does, ditto.

- Only add ***members and methods to a class if they make sense*** w.r.t the bullet above. If you find yourself unsure to where to hook a piece of logic, rethink the class and surrounding classes purposes.

- Class ***names and methods names are to be descriptive*** of what they do. Refrain from obvious, overloaded names (e.g., write, add, shard, clone, ...).

- A ***method's signature must be coherent with its purpose***. If the call is beyond trivial (ie, not an accessor), its side effects in the class private members should be documented. If documenting the call's goal takes many lines of heavy comments, that method likely has very poor coherence and should be refactored.

- The header of a class, or group there of, is the interface to the class. ***No detail that the caller of the class does not need to know should be in the header***. Conversely, no detail that the caller must know should be omitted.

- Assume that ***any class can throw a DBException***. If a class should never throw (e.g can be called in a destructor), that should be clear. Any other exception should be clearly documented.

- A class, or closely related group thereof, ***is supposed to have a unitest***. That's only one of the reasons why you should design artifacts that are independent from one another. If you can't effectively test your class at that level, consider whether your class is not carrying too many external dependencies

- ***Do not create early hierarchies***. An early hierarchy is a one where there is only one type of derived class. If you need to separate

functionality, use delegation instead. In that case, make sure to test separately.

- ***Never use multiple inheritance***. If you need the service of several classes, use delegation. The only possible but highly unlikely exception to this is if your class inherits from other pure abstract classes.
- Do not use friend classes. efactor instead.
- Unless necessary make classes ***non-assignable and non-copyable***

Layout guidelines

- Put the public section first, followed by the protected, followed by the private section.
- At each section use the order typedefs, constructors, destructors, methods, members
- For classes where layout matters (anything with #pragma pack), put data members together at the top of the class. You must also have a BOOST_STATIC_ASSERT(sizeof(ClassName) == EXPECTED_SIZE) either directly under the class or in the associated .cpp file
- Except when the compiler insists otherwise

Kernel code style

- case
- comments
- inlines
- strings
- brackets
- class members
- functions
- templates
- namespaces
- start of file
- assertions
- return early
- numeric constants

case

Use camelCase for most `varNames`

See important notes on case on the parent page for user facing names!

comments

We follow http://google-styleguide.googlecode.com/svn/trunk/cppguide.xml#Comments for placement of comments

As for style, we use javadoc's in classes and methods (public or private) and simple comments for variables and inside code

```
/**
 * My class has X as a goal in life
 * Note: my class is fully synchronized
 */
class DoesX {

...
  /**
   * This methods prints something and turns of the lights.
   * @param y the something to be printed
   */
   void printAndGo(const string& y) const;

...
 private:
    // a map from a namespace into the min key of a chunk
// one entry per chunk that lives in this server
map< string , BSONObj > _chunkMap;

    /**
     * Helper that finds the light switch
     */
    Pos _findSwitch() const;

    /** @return the light switch state. */
    State _getSwitchState() const;
};
```

```
 void DoX( bool y) {
    // if y is false, we do not need to do a certain action and explining
// why that is takes multiple lines.
if (! y ) {
}
```

Don't forget – even if a class, what it does, is obvious, you can put a comment on it as to why it exists!

inlines

- Put long inline functions in a `-inl.h` file. *
- If your inline function is a single line long, put it and its decl on the same line e.g.:

```
    int length() const { return _length; }
```

- If a function is not performance sensitive, and it isn't one (or 2) lines long, put it in the cpp file.

strings

See

- utils/mongoutils/str.h
- bson/stringdata.h

Use `str::startsWith()`, `str::endsWith()`, not `strstr()`.

Use `<< 'c'` not `<< "c"`.

Use `str[0] == '\0'` not `strlen(str) == 0`.

See Kernel string manipulation.

brackets

```
if ( 0 ) {
}
else if ( 0 ) {
}
else {
}
```

class members

```
class Foo {
   int _bar;
};
```

functions

```
void foo() {
}
```

templates

```
set<int> s;
```

namespaces

```
namespace foo {
   int foo;
   namespace bar {
      int bar;
   }
}
```

start of file

```
// @file <filename>
license
```

assertions

See Kernel exception architecture.

return early

BAD

```


int foo(){
   if ( x ){
     ...
   }
}
```

GOOD

```
int foo(){
   if ( ! x )
     return;

   ...
}
```

Keeps indentation levels down and makes more readable.

numeric constants

Large, round numeric constants should be written in multiplied form so that you never need to count digits.

```
const int tenMillion = 10*1000*1000;
const int megabyte = 1024*1024;
```

Kernel concurrency rules

All concurrency code must be placed under `utils/concurrency`. You will find several helper libraries there.

Several rules are listed below. Don't break them. If you think there is a real need let's have the group weigh in and get a concensus on the exception.

- Do not use/add recursive locks.
- Do not use rwlocks.
- Always acquire locks in a consistent order. In fact, the MutexDebugger can assist with verification of this. MutexDebugger is on for _DEBUG builds and will alert if locks are taken in opposing orders during the run.

Kernel exception architecture

There are several different types of assertions used in the MongoDB code. In brief:

- `verify` should be used for internal assertions. However, massert is preferred.
- DEPRECATED `assert` should be used for internal assertions. However, massert is preferred.
- `massert` is an internal assertion with a message.
- `uassert` is used for a user error
- `wassert` warn (log) and continue

Both `massert` and `uassert` take error codes, so that all errors have codes associated with them. These error codes are assigned randomly, so there aren't segments that have meaning. scons checks for duplicates, but if you want the next available code you can run:

```
python buildscripts/errorcodes.py
```

A failed assertion throws an `AssertionException` or a child of that. The inheritance hierarchy is something like:

- std::exception
  - mongo::DBException
    - mongo::AssertionException
      - mongo::UserAssertionException
      - mongo::MsgAssertionException

See `util/assert_util.h`.

Generally, code in the server should be prepared to catch a DBException. UserAssertionException's are particularly common as errors and should be expected. We use resource acquisition is initialization heavily.

Kernel logging

- Basic Rules
  - cout/cerr should never be used
- Normal Logging

- debugging with levels of verbosity
    - `log( int x )`
- informational
    - `log()`
- warnings
    - recoverable
    - e.g. replica set node down
        - `warning()`
- errors
    - unexpected system state (disk full)
    - internal code errors
        - `error()`

- Debugging Helpers
    - PRINT(x) = prints expression text and value (can also do PRINT(x.method()))
    - PRINTFL = prints file and line (good for tracing execution)
    - printStackTrace() = shows a stack trace. Alternative to using a debugger.
    - GEODEBUG, etc... = used for incredibly verbose logging for a section of code that has to be turned on at compile time

Kernel string manipulation

For string manipulation, use the `util/mongoutils/str.h` library.

`mongoutils`

MongoUtils has its own namespace. Its code has these basic properties:

1. are not database specific, rather, true utilities
2. are cross platform
3. may require boost headers, but not libs (header-only works with mongoutils)
4. are clean and easy to use in any c++ project without pulling in lots of other stuff
5. apache license

`str.h`

`mongoutils/str.h` provides string helper fucntions for each manipulation. Add new functions here rather than lines and lines of code to your app that are not generic.

Typically these fucntions return a string and take two as paramters : string f(string,string). Thus we wrap them all in a namespace called `str`.

`StringData`

See also `bson/stringdata.h`.

Memory management

Overall guidelines

- avoid using bare pointers for dynamically allocated objects. Prefer scoped_ptr, shared_ptr, or another RAII class such as BSONObj.
- do not use auto_ptr's and refactor legacy ones out whenever possible
- If you assign the output of new/malloc() directly to a bare pointer you should document where it gets deleted/freed, who owns it along the way, and how exception safety is ensured. If you cannot answer all three questions then you probably have a leak.

Writing tests

We have three general flavors of tests currently.

dbtests

Tests can be written in C++. These are in the dbtests/ subfolder. See the code therein. To run:

```
scons test
./test --help
```

jstests

Many tests are written as .js scripts that are executed via the `mongo` shell. See the Smoke Tests link at the bottom for how to run comprehensive sets of tests. To run a particular test:

```
# start mongod first then run a few simple tests:
mongo jstests/basic*.js
```

Note there are several subdirectories for different test suites. slowNightly is ran by the buildbots only once a night; slowWeekly only once a week. Most other tests are ran every CI cycle (all the time).

Lightweight startup test.

You can inherit from class `mongo::UnitTest` and make a test that runs at program startup. These tests run EVERY TIME the program starts. Thus, they should be minimal: the test should ideally take 1ms or less to run. Why run the tests in the general program? This gives some validation at program run time that the build is reasonable. For example, we test that pcre supports UTF8 regex in one of these tests at startup. If someone had built the server with other settings, this would be flagged upon execution, even if the test suite has not been invoked. Most tests are not of this sort.

See Also

- Smoke Tests
- http://buildbot.mongodb.org/

Project Ideas

If you're interested in getting involved in the MongoDB community (or the open source community in general) a great way to do so is by starting or contributing to a MongoDB related project. Here we've listed some project ideas for you to get started on. For some of these ideas projects are already underway, and for others nothing (that we know of) has been started yet.

A GUI

One feature that is often requested for MongoDB is a GUI, much like CouchDB's futon or phpMyAdmin. There are a couple of projects working on this sort of thing that are worth checking out:

http://github.com/sbellity/futon4mongo
http://www.mongodb.org/display/DOCS/Http+Interface
http://www.mongohq.com

We've also started to spec out the features that a tool like this should provide.

Try Mongo!

It would be neat to have a web version of the MongoDB Shell that allowed users to interact with a real MongoDB instance (for doing the tutorial, etc). A project that does something similar (using a basic MongoDB emulator) is here:

http://github.com/banker/mongulator

Real-time Full Text Search Integration

It would be interesting to try to nicely integrate a search backend like Xapian, Lucene or Sphinx with MongoDB. One idea would be to use MongoDB's oplog (which is used for master-slave replication) to keep the search engine up to date.

GridFS FUSE

There is a project working towards creating a FUSE filesystem on top of GridFS - something like this would create a bunch of interesting potential uses for MongoDB and GridFS:

http://github.com/mikejs/gridfs-fuse

GridFS Web Server Modules

There are a couple of modules for different web servers designed to allow serving content directly from GridFS:

Nginx: http://github.com/mdirolf/nginx-gridfs
Lighttpd: http://bitbucket.org/bwmcadams/lighttpd-gridfs

Framework Adaptors

Working towards adding MongoDB support to major web frameworks is a great project, and work has been started on this for a variety of different frameworks (please use google to find out if work has already been started for your favorite framework).

Logging and Session Adaptors

MongoDB works great for storing logs and session information. There are a couple of projects working on supporting this use case directly.

Logging:
Zend: http://raphaelstolt.blogspot.com/2009/09/logging-to-mongodb-and-accessing-log.html
Python: http://github.com/andreisavu/mongodb-log
Rails: http://github.com/peburrows/mongo_db_logger

Sessions:
web.py: http://github.com/whilefalse/webpy-mongodb-sessions
Beaker: http://pypi.python.org/pypi/mongodb_beaker

Package Managers

Add support for installing MongoDB with your favorite package manager and let us know!

Locale-aware collation / sorting

MongoDB doesn't yet know how to sort query results in a locale-sensitive way. If you can think up a good way to do it and implement it, we'd like to know!

Drivers

If you use an esoteric/new/awesome programming language write a driver to support MongoDB! Again, check google to see what people have started for various languages.

Some that might be nice:

- Scheme (probably starting with PLT)
- GNU R
- Visual Basic
- Lisp (e.g, Common Lisp)
- Delphi
- Falcon

Write a killer app that uses MongoDB as the persistance layer!

Roadmap

Please see jira.

UI

Spec/requirements for a future MongoDB admin UI.

- list databases
    - repair, drop, clone?
- collections
    - validate(), datasize, indexsize, clone/copy

- indexes
- queries - explain() output
- security: view users, adjust
- see replication status of slave and master
- sharding
- system.profile viewer ; enable disable profiling
- curop / killop support

Source Code

Source for MongoDB and mongodb.org supported drivers is open source and hosted at Github .

- Mongo Database (includes C++ driver)
- Python Driver
- PHP Driver
- Ruby Driver
- Java Driver
- Perl Driver
- C# Driver
- Scala Driver
- Erlang Driver
- Haskell Driver

(Additionally, community drivers and tools also exist and will be found in other places.)

See Also

- Building
- License

Building

This section provides instructions on setting up your environment to write Mongo drivers or other infrastructure code. For specific instructions, go to the document that corresponds to your setup.

Note: see the Downloads page for prebuilt binaries!

Sub-sections of this section:

- Building Boost
- Building for FreeBSD
- Building for Linux
- Building for OS X
- Building for Solaris
- Building for Windows
- Building Spider Monkey
- scons

See Also

- The main Database Internals page
- Building with V8

Building Boost

- Windows

MongoDB uses the [www.boost.org] C++ libraries.

Windows

See also the prebuilt libraries page.

By default c:\boost\ is checked for the boost files. Include files should be under \boost\boost, and libraries in \boost\lib.

First download the boost source. Then use the 7 Zip utility to extra the files. Place the extracted files in C:\boost.

Then we will compile the required libraries.

See buildscripts/buildboost.bat and buildscripts/buildboost64.bat for some helpers.

```
> rem set PATH for compiler:
> "C:\Program Files (x86)\Microsoft Visual Studio 10.0\VC\vcvarsall.bat"
>
> rem build the bjam make tool:
> cd \boost\tools\jam\src\
> build.bat
>
> cd \boost
> tools\jam\src\bin.ntx86\bjam --help
> rem see also mongo/buildscripts/buildboost*.bat
> rem build DEBUG libraries:
> tools\jam\src\bin.ntx86\bjam variant=debug threading=multi --with-program_options --with-filesystem
--with-date_time --with-thread
> mkdir lib
> move stage\lib\* lib\
```

Building for FreeBSD

On FreeBSD 8.0 and later, there is a mongodb port you can use.

For FreeBSD <= 7.2:

1. Get the database source: http://www.github.com/mongodb/mongo.
2. Update your ports tree:

   ```
   $ sudo portsnap fetch && portsnap extract
   ```

   The packages that come by default on 7.2 and older are too old, you'll get weird errors when you try to run the database)
3. Install SpiderMonkey:

   ```
   $ cd /usr/ports/lang/spidermonkey && make && make install
   ```

4. Install scons:

   ```
   $ cd /usr/ports/devel/scons && make && make install
   ```

5. Install boost: (it will pop up an X "GUI", select `PYTHON`)

   ```
   $ cd /usr/ports/devel/boost-all && make && make install
   ```

6. Install libexecinfo:

   ```
   $ cd /usr/ports/devel/libexecinfo && make && make install
   ```

7. Change to the database source directory
8. `scons .`

See Also

- Building for Linux - many of the details there including how to clone from git apply here too.

Building for Linux

Note: There are binaries for many platforms. Most users won't need to compile mongo themselves. See the Downloads page for these prebuilt binaries!

- SpiderMonkey, UTF-8, and/or Ubuntu
- Prerequisites
  - Fedora
  - Ubuntu

    - Ubuntu 8.04
    - Ubuntu 9.04 and 9.10
    - Ubuntu 10.04+
- Building

SpiderMonkey, UTF-8, and/or Ubuntu

Most pre-built Javascript SpiderMonkey binaries do not have UTF-8 compiled in. Additionally, Ubuntu has a weird version of SpiderMonkey that doesn't support everything we use. If you get any warnings during compile time or runtime, we highly recommend building SpiderMonkey from source. See Building SpiderMonkey for more information.

We currently support SpiderMonkey 1.6 and 1.7, although there is some degradation with 1.6, so we recommend using 1.7. We have not yet tested 1.8, but will once it is officially released.

Prerequisites

Fedora

The following steps have been reported to work for Fedora versions from 8 to 13. (If they don't work on newer versions, please report this to mongodb-user@googlegroups.com.)

```
sudo yum -y install git tcsh scons gcc-c++ glibc-devel
sudo yum -y install boost-devel pcre-devel js-devel readline-devel
#for release builds:
sudo yum -y install boost-devel-static readline-static ncurses-static
```

Ubuntu

Note: See SpiderMonkey note above.

Use cat /etc/lsb-release to see your version.

Ubuntu 8.04

```
apt-get -y install tcsh git-core scons g++
apt-get -y install libpcre++-dev libboost-dev libreadline-dev xulrunner-1.9-dev
apt-get -y install libboost-program-options-dev libboost-thread-dev libboost-filesystem-dev
libboost-date-time-dev
```

Ubuntu 9.04 and 9.10

```
apt-get -y install tcsh git-core scons g++
apt-get -y install libpcre++-dev libboost-dev libreadline-dev xulrunner-1.9.1-dev
apt-get -y install libboost-program-options-dev libboost-thread-dev libboost-filesystem-dev
libboost-date-time-dev
```

Ubuntu 10.04+

```
apt-get -y install tcsh git-core scons g++
apt-get -y install libpcre++-dev libboost-dev libreadline-dev xulrunner-1.9.2-dev
apt-get -y install libboost-program-options-dev libboost-thread-dev libboost-filesystem-dev
libboost-date-time-dev
```

Building

1. Install Dependencies - see platform specific below
2. get source

```
git clone git://github.com/mongodb/mongo.git
# pick a stable version unless doing true dev
git tag -l
# Switch to a stable branch (unless doing development) --
# an even second number indicates "stable". (Although with
# sharding you will want the latest if the latest is less
# than 1.6.0.) For example:
git checkout r1.4.1
```

3. build

```
scons all
```

4. install

```
scons --prefix=/opt/mongo install
```

Building for OS X

- Upgrading to Snow Leopard
- Setup
  - Sources
  - Prerequisites
  - Package Manager Setup
  - Manual Setup
    - Install Apple developer tools
    - Install libraries (32-bit option)
    - Install libraries (64-bit option)
- Compiling
- Troubleshooting

To set up your OS X computer for MongoDB development:

Upgrading to Snow Leopard

If you have installed Snow Leopard, the builds will be 64-bit -- so if moving from a previous OS release, a bit more setup may be required than one might first expect.

Setup

Sources

The mongodb source is on github. To get sources first download the git client and install it.

- Then git clone git://github.com/mongodb/mongo.git (more info)
  Note If you do not wish to install git you can instead get the source code from the Downloads page.

Prerequisites

- Install gcc. Install XCode tools for Snow Leopard. gcc version 4.0.1 (from older XCode Tools install) works, but you will receive compiler warnings. The easiest way to upgrade gcc is to install the iPhone SDK.

Package Manager Setup

1. Install MacPorts (snow leopard version). If you have MacPorts installed previously, we've had the most success by running

   ```
   sudo rm \-rf /opt/local
   ```

   first.

2. Update/install packages:

```
sudo port install boost pcre++ scons
```

3. Update/install SpiderMonkey with

```
sudo port install spidermonkey
```

. (If this fails, see the note on #2 above.)

Manual Setup

Install Apple developer tools

Install libraries (32-bit option)

1. Download boost {{boost 1.37.0 http://downloads.sourceforge.net/boost/boost_1_37_0.tar.gz}}Apply the following patch:

```
diff -u -r a/configure b/configure
--- a/configure 2009-01-26 14:10:42.000000000 -0500
+++ b/configure 2009-01-26 10:21:29.000000000 -0500
@@ -9,9 +9,9 @@

 BJAM=""
 TOOLSET=""
-BJAM_CONFIG=""
+BJAM_CONFIG="--layout=system"
 BUILD=""
 PREFIX=/usr/local
 EPREFIX=
diff -u -r a/tools/build/v2/tools/darwin.jam b/tools/build/v2/tools/darwin.jam
--- a/tools/build/v2/tools/darwin.jam   2009-01-26 14:22:08.000000000 -0500
+++ b/tools/build/v2/tools/darwin.jam   2009-01-26 10:22:08.000000000 -0500
@@ -367,5 +367,5 @@

 actions link.dll bind LIBRARIES
 {
-    "$(CONFIG_COMMAND)" -dynamiclib -Wl,-single_module -install_name "$(<:B)$(<:S)" -L
"$(LINKPATH)" -o "$(<)" "$(>)" "$(LIBRARIES)" -l$(FINDLIBS-SA) -l$(FINDLIBS-ST)
$(FRAMEWORK_PATH) -framework$(_)$(FRAMEWORK:D=:S=) $(OPTIONS) $(USER_OPTIONS)
+    "$(CONFIG_COMMAND)" -dynamiclib -Wl,-single_module -install_name
"/usr/local/lib/$(<:B)$(<:S)" -L"$(LINKPATH)" -o "$(<)" "$(>)" "$(LIBRARIES)" -l$(FINDLIBS-SA)
-l$(FINDLIBS-ST) $(FRAMEWORK_PATH) -framework$(_)$(FRAMEWORK:D=:S=) $(OPTIONS) $(USER_OPTIONS)
 }
```

then,

```
./configure; make; sudo make install
```

2. Install `pcre` `http://www.pcre.org/` (must enable UTF8)

```
./configure --enable-utf8 --enable-unicode-properties  --with-match-limit=200000
--with-match-limit-recursion=4000; make; sudo make install
```

3. Install c++ unit test framework `http://unittest.red-bean.com/` (optional)

```
./configure; make; sudo make install
```

Install libraries (64-bit option)

(The 64-bit libraries will be installed in /usr/64/{include,lib}.)

1. Download SpiderMonkey: ftp://ftp.mozilla.org/pub/mozilla.org/js/js-1.7.0.tar.gz

Apply the following patch:

```
diff -u  -r js/src/config/Darwin.mk js-1.7.0/src/config/Darwin.mk
--- js/src/config/Darwin.mk 2007-02-05 11:24:49.000000000 -0500
+++ js-1.7.0/src/config/Darwin.mk 2009-05-11 10:18:37.000000000 -0400
@@ -43,7 +43,7 @@
 # Just ripped from Linux config
 #

-CC = cc
+CC = cc -m64
 CCC = g++
 CFLAGS +=  -Wall -Wno-format
 OS_CFLAGS = -DXP_UNIX -DSVR4 -DSYSV -D_BSD_SOURCE -DPOSIX_SOURCE -DDARWIN
@@ -56,9 +56,9 @@
 #.c.o:
 #      $(CC) -c -MD $*.d $(CFLAGS) $<

-CPU_ARCH = $(shell uname -m)
+CPU_ARCH = "X86_64"
 ifeq (86,$(findstring 86,$(CPU_ARCH)))
-CPU_ARCH = x86
+CPU_ARCH = x86_64
 OS_CFLAGS+= -DX86_LINUX
 endif
 GFX_ARCH = x
@@ -81,3 +81,14 @@
 # Don't allow Makefile.ref to use libmath
 NO_LIBM = 1

+ifeq ($(CPU_ARCH),x86_64)
+# Use VA_COPY() standard macro on x86-64
+# FIXME: better use it everywhere
+OS_CFLAGS += -DHAVE_VA_COPY -DVA_COPY=va_copy
+endif
+
+ifeq ($(CPU_ARCH),x86_64)
+# We need PIC code for shared libraries
+# FIXME: better patch rules.mk & fdlibm/Makefile*
+OS_CFLAGS += -DPIC -fPIC
+endif
```

compile and install

```
cd src
make -f Makefile.ref
sudo JS_DIST=/usr/64 make -f Makefile.ref export
```

remove the dynamic library

```
sudo rm /usr/64/lib64/libjs.dylib
```

Download boost {{boost 1.37.0 http://downloads.sourceforge.net/boost/boost_1_37_0.tar.gz}}Apply the following patch:

```
diff -u -r a/configure b/configure
--- a/configure 2009-01-26 14:10:42.000000000 -0500
+++ b/configure 2009-01-26 10:21:29.000000000 -0500
@@ -9,9 +9,9 @@

 BJAM=""
 TOOLSET=""
-BJAM_CONFIG=""
+BJAM_CONFIG="architecture=x86 address-model=64 --layout=system"
 BUILD=""
-PREFIX=/usr/local
+PREFIX=/usr/64
 EPREFIX=
 LIBDIR=
 INCLUDEDIR=
diff -u -r a/tools/build/v2/tools/darwin.jam b/tools/build/v2/tools/darwin.jam
--- a/tools/build/v2/tools/darwin.jam   2009-01-26 14:22:08.000000000 -0500
+++ b/tools/build/v2/tools/darwin.jam   2009-01-26 10:22:08.000000000 -0500
@@ -367,5 +367,5 @@

 actions link.dll bind LIBRARIES
 {
-    "$(CONFIG_COMMAND)" -dynamiclib -Wl,-single_module -install_name "$(<:B)$(<:S)" -L"$(LINKPATH)"
-o "$(<)" "$(>)" "$(LIBRARIES)" -l$(FINDLIBS-SA) -l$(FINDLIBS-ST) $(FRAMEWORK_PATH)
-framework$(_)$(FRAMEWORK:D=:S=) $(OPTIONS) $(USER_OPTIONS)
+    "$(CONFIG_COMMAND)" -dynamiclib -Wl,-single_module -install_name "/usr/64/lib/$(<:B)$(<:S)" -L
"$(LINKPATH)" -o "$(<)" "$(>)" "$(LIBRARIES)" -l$(FINDLIBS-SA) -l$(FINDLIBS-ST) $(FRAMEWORK_PATH)
-framework$(_)$(FRAMEWORK:D=:S=) $(OPTIONS) $(USER_OPTIONS)
 }
```

then,

```
./configure; make; sudo make install
```

Install `pcre` http://www.pcre.org/ (must enable UTF8)

```
CFLAGS="-m64" CXXFLAGS="-m64" LDFLAGS="-m64" ./configure --enable-utf8 --with-match-limit=200000
--with-match-limit-recursion=4000 --enable-unicode-properties --prefix /usr/64; make; sudo make
install
```

Install unit test framework http://unittest.red-bean.com/ (optional)

```
CFLAGS="-m64" CXXFLAGS="-m64" LDFLAGS="-m64" ./configure --prefix /usr/64; make; sudo make install
```

Compiling

To compile 32-bit, just run:

```
scons
```

To compile 64-bit on 10.5 (64 is default on 10.6), run:

```
scons  --64
```

See the, MongoDB scons page for more details/compile options.

Troubleshooting

- Undefined symbols: "_PR_NewLock", referenced from: _JS_Init in libjs.a.
    - Try not using the scons `--release` option (if you are using it). That option attempts to use static libraries.

Building for Solaris

MongoDB server currently supports little endian Solaris operation. (Although most drivers – not the database server – work on both.)

Community: Help us make this rough page better please! (And help us add support for big endian please...)

Prerequisites:

- g++ 4.x (SUNWgcc)
- scons (need to install from source)
- spider monkey Building Spider Monkey
- pcre (SUNWpcre)
- boost (need to install from source)

See Also

- Joyent
- Building for Linux - many of the details there including how to clone from git apply here too

Building for Windows

MongoDB can be compiled for Windows (32 and 64 bit); You will need to have the platform sdk installed. The platform sdk can be installed manually, and it comes with Visual (Studio) C++ as well. SCons is the make mechanism, although a .vcxproj/.sln is also included in the project for convenience when using the Visual Studio 2010 IDE.

There are several dependencies exist which are listed below; you may find it easier to simply download a pre-built binary.

- Building with Visual Studio 2008
- Building with Visual Studio 2010
- Building the Shell

See Also

- Prebuilt Boost Libraries
- Prebuilt SpiderMonkey for VS2010
- Building Boost
- Building SpiderMonkey
- Windows Quick Links
- scons

Boost 1.41.0 Visual Studio 2010 Binary

> ⚠ This is OLD and was for the VS2010 BETA. See the new Boost and Windows page instead.

The following is a prebuilt boost binary (libraries) for Visual Studio 2010 beta 2.

The MongoDB vcxproj files assume this package is unzipped under c:\Program Files\boost\boost_1_41_0\.

- http://downloads.mongodb.org/misc/boost_1_41_0_binary_vs10beta2.zipx

Note: we're not boost build gurus please let us know if there are things wrong with the build.

See also the prebuilt boost binaries at http://www.boostpro.com/download.

Boost and Windows

- Visual Studio 2010
  - Prebuilt from mongodb.org
  - Building Yourself
- Visual Studio 2008
  - Prebuilt from mongodb.org
  - Prebuilt from boostpro.com
  - Building Yourself
- Additional Notes

Visual Studio 2010

Prebuilt from mongodb.org

Click here for a prebuilt boost library for Visual Studio 2010. 7zip format.

Building Yourself

- Download the boost source from boost.org. Move it to C:\boost\.
  - We have successfully compiled version **1.42** – you might want to try that version or higher, but not 1.45 or later. 1.45 changed the interface to the boost::filesystem library and we've yet to catch up. See additional notes section at end of this page too.
- Run `C:\Program Files (x86)\Microsoft Visual Studio 10.0\vc\vcvarsall.bat`.
- From the MongoDB source project, run buildscripts\buildboost.bat. Or, buildboost64.bat for the 64 bit version.

Visual Studio 2008

Prebuilt from mongodb.org

Click here for a prebuilt boost library for Visual Studio 2008. 7zip format. This file has what you need to build MongoDB, but not some other boost libs, so it's partial.

Prebuilt from boostpro.com

Or, you can download a complete prebuilt boost library for 32 bit VS2008 at http://www.boostpro.com/products/free. Install the prebuilt libraries for Boost version 1.35.0 (or higher - generally newer is better). During installation, for release builds choose `static multithread libraries for installation`. The Debug version of the project uses the DLL libraries; choose all multithread libraries if you plan to do development. From the BoostPro installer, be sure to select all relevant libraries that mongodb uses -- for example, you need Filesystem, Regex, Threads, and ProgramOptions (and perhaps others).

Building Yourself

- Download the boost source from boost.org. Move it to C:\boost\.
- From the Visual Studio 2008 IDE, choose Tools.Visual Studio Command Prompt to get a command prompt with all PATH variables set nicely for the C++ compiler.
- From the MongoDB source project, run buildscripts\buildboost.bat. Or, buildboost64.bat for the 64 bit version.

Additional Notes

When using bjam, MongoDB expects

- `variant=debug` for debug builds, and `variant=release` for release builds
- `threading=multi`
- `link=static runtime-link=static` for release builds
- `address-model=64` for 64 bit

Building the Mongo Shell on Windows

You can build the mongo shell with either scons or a Visual Studio 2010 project file.

Scons

```
scons mongo
```

Visual Studio 2010 Project File

A VS2010 vcxproj file is availabe for building the shell. From the mongo directory open shell/msvc/mongo.vcxproj.

The project file assumes that GNU readline is installed in ../readline/ relative to the mongo project. If you would prefer to build without having to install readline, remove the definition of USE_READLINE in the preprocessor definitions section of the project file, and exclude readline.lib from the project.

The project file currently only supports 32 bit builds of the shell (scons can do 32 and 64 bit). However this seems sufficient given there is no real need for a 64 bit version of the shell.

Readline Library

The shell uses the GNU readline library to facilitate command line editing and history. You can build the shell without readline but would then lose that functionality. USE_READLINE is defined when building with readline. SCons will look for readline and if not found build without it.

See Also

- Prebuilt readline for Windows 32 bit at SourceForge (DLL version)

Building with Visual Studio 2008

- Get the MongoDB Source Code
- Get Boost Libraries
- Get SpiderMonkey
- Install SCons
- Building MongoDB with SCons
- Troubleshooting

MongoDB can be compiled for Windows (32 and 64 bit) using Visual C++. SCons is the make mechanism we use with VS2008. (Although it is possible to build from a sln file with vs2010.)

There are several dependencies exist which are listed below; you may find it easier to simply download a pre-built binary.

Get the MongoDB Source Code

Download the source code from Downloads.

Or install Git. Then:

- `git clone git://github.com/mongodb/mongo.git` (more info)
- `git tag -l` to see tagged version numbers
- Switch to a stable branch (unless doing development) -- an even second number indicates "stable". (Although with sharding you will want the latest if the latest is less than 1.6.0.) For example:
  - `git checkout r1.4.1`

Get Boost Libraries

- Click here for a prebuilt boost library for Visual Studio. 7zip format. This file has what you need to build MongoDB, but not some other boost libs, so it's partial.
- See the Boost and Windows page for other options.

The Visual Studio project files are setup to look for boost in the following locations:

- c:\program files\boost\latest
- c:\boost
- \boost

You can unzip boost to c:\boost, or use an NTFS junction point to create a junction point to one of the above locations. Some versions of windows come with linkd.exe, but others require you to download Sysinternal's junction.exe to accomplish this task. For example, if you installed boost 1.42 via the installer to the default location of **c:\Program Files\boost\boost_1_42**, You can create a junction point with the following command:

```
junction "c:\Program Files\boost\latest" "c:\Program Files\boost\boost_1_42"
```

This should return the following output:

```
Junction v1.05 - Windows junction creator and reparse point viewer
Copyright (C) 2000-2007 Mark Russinovich
Systems Internals - http://www.sysinternals.com

Created: c:\Program Files\boost\latest
Targetted at: c:\Program Files\boost\boost_1_42
```

Get SpiderMonkey

Build a SpiderMonkey js engine library (js.lib) – details here.

Install SCons

If building with scons, install SCons:

- First install Python: http://www.python.org/download/releases/2.6.4/.
- Then SCons itself: http://sourceforge.net/projects/scons/files/scons/1.2.0/scons-1.2.0.win32.exe/download.
- Add the python scripts directory (e.g., C:\Python26\Scripts) to your PATH.

Building MongoDB with SCons

The SConstruct file from the MongoDB project is the preferred way to perform production builds. Run scons in the mongo project directory to build.

If scons does not automatically find Visual Studio, preset your path for it by running the VS2010 vcvars*.bat file.

To build:

```
scons                   // build mongod
scons mongoclient.lib   // build C++ client driver library
scons all               // build all end user components
scons .                 // build all including unit test
```

Troubleshooting

If you are using `scons`, check the file `config.log` which is generated.

- **Can't find jstypes.h when compiling.** This file is generated when building SpiderMonkey. See the Building SpiderMonkey page for more info.
- **Can't find / run cl.exe when building with scons.** See troubleshooting note on the Building SpiderMonkey page.
- **Error building program database.** (VS2008.) Try installing the Visual Studio 2008 Service Pack 1.

Building with Visual Studio 2010

- Get the MongoDB Source Code
- Get Boost Libraries
- Get SpiderMonkey
- Building MongoDB from the IDE
- Install SCons
- Building MongoDB with SCons
- Troubleshooting

MongoDB can be compiled for Windows (32 and 64 bit) using Visual C++. SCons is the make mechanism, although a solution file is also included in the project for convenience when using the Visual Studio IDE. (These instructions don't work using Visual Studio Express, which must be uninstalled to get Visual Studio Professional/Ultimate to work properly; VSE can only do 32 bit builds.)

There are several dependencies exist which are listed below; you may find it easier to simply download a pre-built binary.

Get the MongoDB Source Code

Download the source code from Downloads.

Or install Git. Then:

- `git clone git://github.com/mongodb/mongo.git` (more info)
- `git tag -l` to see tagged version numbers
- Switch to a stable branch (unless doing development) -- an even second number indicates "stable". (Although with sharding you will want the latest if the latest is less than 1.6.0.) For example:
  - `git checkout r1.4.1`

Get Boost Libraries

- Click here for a prebuilt boost library for Visual Studio. 7zip format. This file has what you need to build MongoDB, but not some other boost libs, so it's partial. Uncompress this to the c:\boost directory. Your actual files are in c:\boost\boost
- See the Boost and Windows page for other options. Use v1.42 or higher with VS2010.

Get SpiderMonkey

- Download prebuilt libraries and headers here for VS2010. Place these files in ../js/ relative to your mongo project directory.
- Or (more work) build SpiderMonkey js.lib yourself – details here.

Building MongoDB from the IDE

Open the db/db_10.sln solution file.

Note: a separate project file exists for the `mongo` shell. Currently the C++ client libraries must be built from scons (this obviously needs to be fixed...)

Install SCons

If building with scons, install SCons:

- First install Python: http://www.python.org/download/releases/2.6.4/.
  - **Note** Make sure to install the 32 bit version of python and not the 64 bit as the scons binaries below are 32 bit.
- Then SCons itself: http://sourceforge.net/projects/scons/files/scons/1.2.0/scons-1.2.0.win32.exe/download.
- Add the python scripts directory (e.g., C:\Python26\Scripts) to your PATH.

Building MongoDB with SCons

The SConstruct file from the MongoDB project is the preferred way to perform production builds. Run scons in the mongo project directory to build.

If scons does not automatically find Visual Studio, preset your path for it by running the VS2010 vcvars*.bat files. Location may vary with install but usually it is something like:

- C:\Program Files (x86)\Microsoft Visual Studio 10.0\Common7\Tools\vsvars32.bat
- C:\Program Files (x86)\Microsoft Visual Studio 10.0\VC\bin\amd64\vcvars64.bat

To build:

```
scons                   // build mongod
scons mongoclient.lib   // build C++ client driver library
scons all               // build all end user components
scons .                 // build all including unit test
scons --64              // build the 64 bit version
scons --dd              // build with debug symbols
```

Troubleshooting

> If you are using `scons`, check the file `config.log` which is generated.

- Can't find jstypes.h when compiling.
  - This file is generated when building SpiderMonkey. See the Building SpiderMonkey page for more info.
- Can't find / run cl.exe when building with scons.
  - See troubleshooting note on the Building SpiderMonkey page.
- LINK : fatal error LNK1104: cannot open file js64d.lib js64r.lib js32d.lib js32r.lib
  - Get the prebuilt spidermonkey libraries -- or copy your self-built js.lib to the above name.
  - You can also see this if you're using the wrong compiler; this is the result if you try to use Visual Studio Express instead of Visual Studio Professional/Ultimate, which is a different product

Building Spider Monkey

- Building js.lib - Unix
  - Remove any existing xulrunner
  - Download
  - Build
  - Install
- Building js.lib - Windows
  - Prebuilt
  - Download
  - Build
  - Troubleshooting scons
- See Also

MongoDB uses SpiderMonkey for server-side Javascript execution. The mongod project requires a file js.lib when linking. This page details how to build js.lib.

Note: V8 Javascript support is under development.

Building js.lib - Unix

Remove any existing xulrunner

First find out what has been installed

```
dpkg -l | grep xulrunner
```

e.g.

```
ubuntu910-server64:mongo$ sudo dpkg -l | grep xul
ii  xulrunner-1.9.1                  1.9.1.13+build1+nobinonly-0ubuntu0.9.10.1 XUL + XPCOM
application runner
ii  xulrunner-1.9.1-dev              1.9.1.13+build1+nobinonly-0ubuntu0.9.10.1 XUL + XPCOM
development files
```

Next remove the two installed packages

```
sudo apt-get remove xulrunner-1.9.1-dev xulrunner-1.9.1
```

Download

```
curl -O ftp://ftp.mozilla.org/pub/mozilla.org/js/js-1.7.0.tar.gz
tar zxvf js-1.7.0.tar.gz
```

Build

```
cd js/src
export CFLAGS="-DJS_C_STRINGS_ARE_UTF8"
make -f Makefile.ref
```

SpiderMonkey does not use UTF-8 by default, so we enable before building.

An experimental SConstruct build file is available here.

Install

```
JS_DIST=/usr make -f Makefile.ref export
```

By default, the mongo scons project expects spidermonkey to be located at ../js/.

Building js.lib - Windows

Prebuilt

- VS2008: a prebuilt SpiderMonkey library and headers for Win32 is attached to this document (this file may or may not work depending on your compile settings and compiler version).
- VS2010 prebuilt libraries (js64d.lib, etc.)

Alternatively, follow the steps below to build yourself.

Download

From an msysgit or cygwin shell, run:

```
curl -O ftp://ftp.mozilla.org/pub/mozilla.org/js/js-1.7.0.tar.gz
tar zxvf js-1.7.0.tar.gz
```

Build

cd js/src

```
export CFLAGS="-DJS_C_STRINGS_ARE_UTF8"
make -f Makefile.ref
```

If cl.exe is not found, launch Tools...Visual Studio Command Prompt from inside Visual Studio -- your path should then be correct for make.

If you do not have a suitable make utility installed, you may prefer to build using scons. An experimental SConstruct file to build the js.lib is available in the mongodb/snippets project. For example:

```
cd
git clone git://github.com/mongodb/mongo-snippets.git
cp mongo-snippets/jslib-sconstruct js/src/SConstruct
cd js/src
scons
```

Troubleshooting scons

Note that scons does not use your PATH to find Visual Studio. If you get an error running cl.exe, try changing the following line in the msvc.py scons source file from:

```
MVSdir = os.getenv('ProgramFiles') + r'\Microsoft Visual Studio 8'
```

to

```
MVSdir = os.getenv('ProgramFiles') + r'\Microsoft Visual Studio ' + version
```

See Also

- Building MongoDB

scons

Use scons to build MongoDB and related utilities and libraries. See the SConstruct file for details.

Run `scons --help` to see all options.

Targets

Run `scons <target>`.

- `scons .`
- `scons all`
- `scons mongod` build mongod
- `scons mongo` build the shell
- `scons shell` generate (just) the shell `.cpp` files (from .js files)
- `scons mongoclient` build just the client library (builds libmongoclient.a on unix)
- `scons test` build the unit test binary `test`

Options

- `--d` debug build
- `--dd` debug build with _DEBUG defined (extra asserts etc.)
- `--release`
- `--32` force 32 bit

- `--64` force 64 bit
- `--clean`

Troubleshooting

scons generates a `config.log` file. See this file when there are problems building.

See Also

Smoke Tests

Database Internals

This section provides information for developers who want to write drivers or tools for MongoDB, \ contribute code to the MongoDB codebase itself, and for those who are just curious how it works internally.

Sub-sections of this section:

- Caching
- Durability Internals
- Parsing Stack Traces
- Cursors
- Error Codes
- Internal Commands
- Replication Internals
- Smoke Tests
- Pairing Internals

Caching

Memory Mapped Storage Engine

This is the current storage engine for MongoDB, and it uses memory-mapped files for all disk I/O. Using this strategy, the operating system's virtual memory manager is in charge of caching. This has several implications:

- There is no redundancy between file system cache and database cache: they are one and the same.
- MongoDB can use all free memory on the server for cache space automatically without any configuration of a cache size.
- Virtual memory size and resident size will appear to be very large for the mongod process. This is benign: virtual memory space will be just larger than the size of the datafiles open and mapped; resident size will vary depending on the amount of memory not used by other processes on the machine.
- Caching behavior such as *Least Recently Used* (LRU) discarding of pages, and laziness of page writes is controlled by the operating system (the quality of the VMM implementation will vary by OS.)

To monitor or check memory usage see: Checking Server Memory Usage

Durability Internals

> ⚠ The main durability page (not the internals page) is the Journaling page.

- Files
- Running
- Declaring Write Intent
- Tests
- Administrative
- Diagrams

Files

The data file format is unchanged.

Journal files are placed in */data/db/journal/*.

Running

Run with `--journal` to enable journaling/durable storage. Both `mongod` and `test` support this option.

Declaring Write Intent

When writing `mongod` kernel code, one must now declare an intention to write. Declaration of the intent occurs before the actual write. See `db/dur.h`. The actual write must occur before releasing the write lock.

When you do your actual writing, use the pointer that dur::writing() returns, rather than the original pointer.

```
Foo *foo;
getDur().writing(thing)->bar = something;

int *x;
getDur().writingInt(x) += 3;

DiskLoc &loc;
loc.writing() = newLoc;

void *p;
unsigned len;
memcpy( getDur().writingPtr(p,len), src, len );
```

Try to declare intent on as small a region as possible. That way less information is journalled. For example

```
BigStruct *b;

dur::writing(b)->x = 3; // less efficient

*dur::writing(&b->x) = 3; // more efficient
```

However, there is some overhead for each intent declaration, so if many members of a struct will be written, it is likely better to just declare intent on the whole struct.

Tests

`jstests/dur/` contains tests for durability.

```
mongo --nodb jstests/dur/<testname>.js
```

Administrative

```
# dump journal entries during any recover, and then start normally
mongod --journal --durOptions 1

# recover and terminate
mongod --journal --durOptions 4

# dump journal entries (doing nothing else) and then terminate
mongod --journal --durOptions 7

# extra checks that everything is correct (slow but good for qa)
mongod --journal --durOptions 8
```

Diagrams

- diagram 1 - process steps
- diagram 2 - journal file structure

Parsing Stack Traces

addr2line

```
addr2line -e mongod -ifC <offset>
```

c++filt

You can use `c++filt` to demangle function names by pasting the whole stack trace to stdin.

Finding the right binary

To find the binary you need:

- Get the commit at the header of any of our logs.
- Use git to locate that commit and check for the surrounding "version bump" commit

Download and open the binary:

```
curl -O http:
//s3.amazonaws.com/downloads.mongodb.org/linux/mongodb-linux-x86_64-debugsymbols-1.x.x.tgz
```

You can also find debugsymbols for official builds by clicking "list" on the Downloads page.

Example 1

Then, the log has lines like this:

```
/home/abc/mongod(_ZN5mongo15printStackTraceERSo+0x27) [0x689280]
```

You want the address in between the brackets [0x689280]

Note you will get more than one stack frame for the address if the code is inlined.

Example 2

Actual example from a v1.8.1 64 bit linux build:

```
$ curl http://downloads.mongodb.org/linux/mongodb-linux-x86_64-debugsymbols-1.8.1.tgz > out.tgz
$ tar -xzf out.tgz
$ cd mongodb-linux-x86_64-debugsymbols-1.8.1/
$ cd bin
$ addr2line --help
$ addr2line -i -e mongod 0x6d6a74
/mnt/home/buildbot/slave/Linux_64bit_V1.8/mongo/db/repl/health.cpp:394
$ addr2line -i -e mongod 0x6d0694
/mnt/home/buildbot/slave/Linux_64bit_V1.8/mongo/db/repl/rs.h:385
/mnt/home/buildbot/slave/Linux_64bit_V1.8/mongo/db/repl/replset_commands.cpp:111
```

Cursors

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to Internals.

Error Codes

This list is HIGHLY incomplete. This page is a stub.

Error Code	Description	Comments
10003	objects in a capped ns cannot grow	
11000	duplicate key error	_id values must be unique in a collection
11001	duplicate key on update	
12000	idxNo fails	an internal error
12001	can't sort with $snapshot	the $snapshot feature does not support sorting yet
12010, 12011, 12012	can't $inc/$set an indexed field	
13440	bad offset accessing a datafile	Run a database --repair

Internal Commands

Most commands have helper functions and do not require the `$cmd.findOne()` syntax. These are primarily internal and administrative.

```
> db.$cmd.findOne({assertinfo:1})
{
    "dbasserted" : false , // boolean: db asserted
"asserted" : false , // boolean: db asserted or a user assert have happend
"assert" : "" ,  // regular assert
"assertw" : "" , // "warning" assert
"assertmsg" : "" , // assert with a message in the db log
"assertuser" : "" , // user assert - benign, generally a request that was not meaningful
"ok" : 1.0
}

> db.$cmd.findOne({serverStatus:1})
{
  "uptime" : 6 ,
  "globalLock" : {
                    "totalTime" : 6765166 ,
                    "lockTime" : 2131 ,
                    "ratio" : 0.00031499596610046226
                  } ,
   "mem" : {
                    "resident" : 3 ,
                    "virtual" : 111 ,
                    "mapped" : 32
   } ,
  "ok" : 1
}



> admindb.$cmd.findOne({replacepeer:1})
{
    "info" : "adjust local.sources hostname; db restart now required" ,
    "ok" : 1.0
}

// close all databases.  a subsequent request will reopen a db.
> admindb.$cmd.findOne({closeAllDatabases:1});
```

Replication Internals

On the *master* mongod instance, the `local` database will contain a collection, `oplog.$main`, which stores a high-level transaction log. The transaction log essentially describes all actions performed by the user, such as "insert this object into this collection." Note that the oplog is not a low-level redo log, so it does not record operations on the byte/disk level.

The *slave* mongod instance polls the `oplog.$main` collection from *master*. The actual query looks like this:

```
local.oplog.$main.find({ ts: { $gte: ''last_op_processed_time'' } }).sort({$natural:1});
```

where 'local' is the master instance's `local` database. `oplog.$main` collection is a capped collection, allowing the oldest data to be aged out automatically.

See the Replication section of the Mongo Developers' Guide for more information.

`OpTime`

An `OpTime` is a 64-bit timestamp that we use to timestamp operations. These are stored as Javascript `Date` datatypes but are *not* JavaScript Date objects. Implementation details can be found in the `OpTime` class in *repl.h*.

Applying OpTime Operations

Operations from the oplog are applied on the slave by reexecuting the operation. Naturally, the log includes write operations only.

Note that inserts are transformed into upserts to ensure consistency on repeated operations. For example, if the slave crashes, we won't know exactly which operations have been applied. So if we're left with operations 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5, and if we then apply 1, 2, 3, 2, 3, 4, 5, we should achieve the same results. This repeatability property is also used for the initial cloning of the replica.

Tailing

After applying operations, we want to wait a moment and then poll again for new data with our `$gte`operation. We want this operation to be fast, quickly skipping past old data we have already processed. However, we do not want to build an index on `ts`, as indexing can be somewhat expensive, and the oplog is write-heavy. Instead, we use a table scan in [natural] order, but use a tailable cursor to "remember" our position. Thus, we only scan once, and then when we poll again, we know where to begin.

Initiation

To create a new replica, we do the following:

```
t = now();
cloneDatabase();
end = now();
applyOperations(t..end);
```

`cloneDatabase`effectively exports/imports all the data in the database. Note the actual "image" we will get may or may not include data modifications in the time range (`t..end`). Thus, we apply all logged operations from that range when the cloning is complete. Because of our repeatability property, this is safe.

See class `Cloner` for more information.

Smoke Tests

- Running all the tests
- smoke.py
- Running a jstest manually
- Running the C++ unit tests
- See Also

Running all the tests

```
scons smoke smokeDisk smokeTool smokeAuth startMongod smokeClient smokeJs
scons startMongodSmallOplog smokeJs
scons startMongod smokeJsSlowNightly
scons smokeTool
scons smokeReplSets
scons smokeDur
scons mongosTest smokeSharding
scons smokeRepl smokeClone
scons startMongod smokeParallel
```

smoke.py

smoke.py lets you run a subsets of the tests in *jstests/*. When it is running tests, it starts up an instance of mongod, runs the tests, and then shuts it down again. You can run it while running other instances of MongoDB on the same machine: it uses ports in the 30000 range and its own data directories.

For the moment, *smoke.py* must be run from the top-level directory of a MongoDB source repository. This directory must contain at least the `mongo` and `mongod` binaries. To run certain tests, you'll also need to build the tools and `mongos`. It's a good idea to run `scons .` before running the tests.

To run *smoke.py* you'll need a recent version of PyMongo.

To see the possible options, run:

```
$ python buildscripts/smoke.py --help
Usage: smoke.py [OPTIONS] ARGS*

Options:
  -h, --help            show this help message and exit
  --mode=MODE           If "files", ARGS are filenames; if "suite", ARGS are
                        sets of tests (suite)
  --test-path=TEST_PATH
                        Path to the test executables to run, currently only
                        used for 'client' (none)
  --mongod=MONGOD_EXECUTABLE
                        Path to mongod to run (/Users/mike/10gen/mongo/mongod)
  --port=MONGOD_PORT    Port the mongod will bind to (32000)
  --mongo=SHELL_EXECUTABLE
                        Path to mongo, for .js test files
                        (/Users/mike/10gen/mongo/mongo)
  --continue-on-failure
                        If supplied, continue testing even after a test fails
  --from-file=FILE      Run tests/suites named in FILE, one test per line, '-'
                        means stdin
  --smoke-db-prefix=SMOKE_DB_PREFIX
                        Prefix to use for the mongods' dbpaths ('')
  --small-oplog         Run tests with master/slave replication & use a small
                        oplog
```

To run specific tests, use the *--mode=files* option:

```
python buildscripts/smoke.py --mode=files jstests/find1.js
```

You can specify as many files as you want.

You can also run a suite of tests. Suites are predefined and include:

- *test*
- *all*
- *perf*
- *js*
- *quota*
- *jsPerf*
- *disk*
- *jsSlowNightly*

- *jsSlowWeekly*
- *parallel*
- *clone*
- *repl* (master/slave replication tests)
- *replSets* (replica set tests)
- *auth*
- *sharding*
- *tool*
- *client*
- *mongosTest*

To run a suite, specify the suite's name:

```
python buildscripts/smoke.py js
```

Running a jstest manually

You can run a jstest directly from the shell, for example:

```
mongo --nodb jstests/replsets/replsetarb3.js
```

Running the C++ unit tests

The tests under jstests/ folder are written in mongo shell javascript. However there are a set of C++ unit tests also. To run them:

```
scons test
./test
```

See Also

- scons

Pairing Internals

Policy for reconciling divergent oplogs

> ⚠ pairing is deprecated

In a paired environment, a situation may arise in which each member of a pair has logged operations as master that have not been applied to the other server. In such a situation, the following procedure will be used to ensure consistency between the two servers:

1. The new master will scan through its own oplog from the point at which it last applied an operation from it's peer's oplog to the end. It will create a set C of object ids for which changes were made. It will create a set M of object ids for which only modifier changes were made. The values of C and M will be updated as client operations are applied to the new master.
2. The new master will iterate through its peer's oplog, applying only operations that will not affect an object having an id in C.
3. For any operation in the peer's oplog that may not be applied due to the constraint in the previous step, if the id of the of the object in question is in M, the value of the whole object on the new master is logged to the new master's oplog.
4. The new slave applies all operations from the new master's oplog.

Contributing to the Documentation

Qualified volunteers are welcome to assist in editing the wiki documentation. Contact us for more information.

Emacs tips for MongoDB work

You can edit confluence directly from emacs:

First, follow the basic instructions on http://code.google.com/p/confluence-el/

Change the confluence-url in their sample setup to http://mongodb.onconfluence.com/rpc/xmlrpc

Might also want to change the default space to DOCS or DOCS-ES or whatever space you edit the most.

etags setup (suggested by mstearn)

First, install "exuberant ctags", which has nicer features than GNU etags.

http://ctags.sourceforge.net/

Then, run something like this in the top-level mongo directory to make an emacs-style TAGS file:

```
ctags -e --extra=+qf --fields=+iasnfSKtm --c++-kinds=+p  --recurse .
```

Then you can use M-x visit-tags-table, M-., M-* as normal.

Mongo Documentation Style Guide

This page provides information for everyone adding to the Mongo documentation on Confluence. It covers:

- General Notes on Writing Style
- Guide to Confluence markup for specific situations
- Some general notes about doc production

General Notes on Writing Style

Voice

Active voice is almost always preferred to passive voice.

To make this work, however, you may find yourself anthropromorphizing components of the system - that is, treating the driver or the database as an agent that actually does something. ("The dbms writes the new record to the collection" is better than "the new record is written to the database", but some purists may argue that the dbms doesn't do anything - it's just code that directs the actions of the processor - but then someone else says "yes, but does the processor really do anything?" and so on and on.) It is simpler and more economical to write as if these components are actually doing things, although you as the infrastructure developers might have to stop and think about which component is actually performing the action you are describing.

Tense

Technical writers in general prefer to keep descriptions of processes in the present tense: "The dbms writes the new collection to disk" rather than "the dbms will write the new collection to disk." You save a few words that way.

MongoDB Terminology

It would be good to spell out precise definitions of technical words and phrases you are likely to use often, like the following:

- Mongo
- database (do you want "a Mongo database"? Or a Mongo database instance?)
- dbms (I have't seen this term often - is it correct to talk about "the Mongo DBMS"?)
- Document
- Record
- Transaction (I stopped myself from using this term because my understanding is the Mongo doesn't support "transactions" in the sense of operations that are logged and can be rolled back - is this right?)

These are just a few I noted while I was editing. More should be added. It would be good to define these terms clearly among yourselves, and then post the definitions for outsiders.

Markup for terms

It's important to be consistent in the way you treat words that refer to certain types of objects. The following table lists the types you will deal with most often, describes how they should look, and (to cut to the chase) gives you the Confluence markup that will achieve that appearance.

Type	Appearance	Markup
Object name (the type of "object" that "object-oriented programming" deals with)	monospace	{{ `term` }}
short code fragment inline	monospace	{{ `term` }}

file path/name, extension	italic	_term_
programming command, statement or expression	monospace	{{ `term` }}
variable or "replaceable item"	monospace italic	`_term_`
Placeholders in paths, directories, or other text that would be italic anyway	angle brackets around <item>	<item>
GUI element (menus menu items, buttons	bold	*term*
First instance of a technical term	italic	_term_
tag (in HTML or XML, for example)	monospace	{{ `term` }}
Extended code sample	code block	{code} program code {code}

In specifying these, I have relied on the O'Reilly Style Guide, which is at:

http://oreilly.com/oreilly/author/stylesheet.html

This guide is a good reference for situations not covered here.

I should mention that for the names of GUI objects I followed the specification in the Microsoft Guide to Technical Publications.

Other Confluence markup

If you are editing a page using Confluence's RTF editor, you don't have to worry about markup. Even if you are editing markup directly, Confluence displays a guide on the right that shows you most of the markup you will need.

References and Links

Confluence also provides you with a nice little utility that allows you to insert a link to another Confluence page by searching for the page by title or by text and choosing it from a list. Confluence handles the linking markup. You can even use it for external URLs.

The one thing this mechanism does NOT handle is links to specific locations within a wiki page. Here is what you have to know if you want to insert these kinds of links:

- Every heading you put in a Confluence page ("h2.Title", "h3.OtherTitle", etc.) becomes an accessible "anchor" for linking.
- You can also insert an anchor anywhere else in the page by inserting "{anchor\:*anchorname}" where _anchorname* is the unique name you will use in the link.
- To insert a link to one of these anchors, you must go into wiki markup and add the anchor name preceded by a "#". Example: if the page `MyPage` contains a heading or an ad-hoc anchor named `GoHere`, the link to that anchor from within the same page would look like `[#GoHere]`, and a link to that anchor from a different page would look like `[MyPage#GoHere]`. (See the sidebar for information about adding other text to the body of the link.)

Special Characters

- You will often need to insert code samples that contain curly braces. As Dwight has pointed out, Confluence gets confused by this unless you "escape" them by preceding them with a backslash, thusly:

  ```
  \{  \}
  ```

  You must do the same for "[", "]", "_" and some others.
  Within a {code} block you don't have to worry about this. If you are inserting code fragments inline using {{ and }}, however, you still need to escape these characters. Further notes about this:

  - If you are enclosing a complex code expression with {{ and }}, do NOT leave a space between the last character of the expression and the }}. This confuses Confluence.
  - Confluence also gets confused (at least sometimes) if you use {{ and }}, to enclose a code sample that includes escaped curly brackets.

About MongoDB's Confluence wiki

Confluence has this idea of "spaces". Each person has a private space, and there are also group spaces as well.

The MongoDB Confluence wiki has three group spaces defined currently:

- Mongo Documentation - The publicly accessible area for most Mongo documentation

- Contributor - Looks like, the publicly accessible space for information for "Contributors"
- Private - a space open to MongoDB developers, but not to the public at large.
  As I said in my email on Friday, all of the (relevant) info from the old wiki now lives in the "Mongo Documentation"

Standard elements of Wiki pages

You shouldn't have to spend a lot of time worrying about this kind of thing, but I do have just a few suggestions:

- Since these wiki pages are (or can be) arranged hierarchically, you may have "landing pages" that do little more than list their child pages. I think Confluence actually adds a list of children automatically, but it only goes down to the next hierarchical level. To insert a hierarchical list of a page's children, all you have to do is insert the following Confluence "macro":

  ```
  {children:all=true}
  ```

  See the Confluence documentation for more options and switches for this macro.

- For pages with actual text, I tried to follow these guidelines:
  - For top-level headings, I used "h2" not "h1"
  - I never began a page with a heading. I figured the title of the page served as one.
  - I always tried to include a "See Also" section that listed links to other Mongo docs.
  - I usually tried to include a link to the "Talk to us about Mongo" page.

Community

- Technical Support
- Bug/Feature Tracker (Jira)
- Blog
- Mailing List
- Events
- Job Board
- Twitter etc.
- Store
- Resources for Driver and Database Developers
  - Source
  - Developer List
  - Project Ideas
- Contribute!
  - Write a book
  - Write a driver, framework, and other tools
  - Help with Free Support
  - Work on the DB

Technical Support

See the Support page.

Bug/Feature Tracker (Jira)

File, track, and vote on bugs and feature requests. There is issue tracking for MongoDB and all supported drivers.

Blog

http://blog.mongodb.org/

Mailing List

http://groups.google.com/group/mongodb-announce - for release announcement and important bug fixes.

Events

The events page includes information about MongoDB conferences, webcasts, users groups, local meetups, and open office hours.

Job Board

- Click Here to access the Job Board. The Board is a community resource for all employers to post MongoDB-related jobs. Please feel free to post/investigate positions!
- See also the Indeed MongoDB jobs list

Twitter etc.

- @mongodb
- facebook
- linkedin

Store

- Visit the MongoDB store on Cafepress.

Resources for Driver and Database Developers

Source

The source code for the database and drivers is available at the http://github.com/mongodb.

Developer List

This mongodb-dev mailing list is for people developing drivers and tools, or who are contributing to the MongoDB codebase itself.

Project Ideas

Start or contribute to a MongoDB-related project.

Contribute!

Write a book

If interested contact info@10gen.com we'll try to get you in touch with publishers.

Write a driver, framework, and other tools

Writing Drivers and Tools

Help with Free Support

Jump in with answers on http://groups.google.com/group/mongodb-user and IRC.

Work on the DB

http://groups.google.com/group/mongodb-dev

Technical Support

- Free Support Forum - http://groups.google.com/group/mongodb-user
- IRC Chat and Support - irc://irc.freenode.net/#mongodb
- Commercial Support

MongoDB Commercial Services Providers

- Production Support
- Training
- Hosting and Cloud
- Consulting

Note: if you provide consultative or support services for MongoDB and wish to be listed here, just let us know.

Production Support

Company	Contact Information
10gen	10gen began the MongoDB project, and offers commercial MongoDB support services. If you are having a production issue and need support immediately, 10gen can usually on-board new clients within an hour. Please contact us or call (866) 237-8815 for more information.

See also the community Technical Support page for free support.

Training

10gen offers MongoDB training for Developers and Administrators. The 2011 training schedule includes sessions in New York, NY, Redwood Shores, CA, and London, UK.

Session	Location	Date	Register
MongoDB for Developers	Redwood City, CA	June 28-29, 2011	Register
MongoDB for Administrators	Redwood City, CA	June 28-29, 2011	Register
MongoDB for Developers	New York, NY	July 26-27	Register
MongoDB for Administrators	London, UK	September 5-6, 2011	Register
MongoDB for Developers	London, UK	September 8-9, 2011	Register
MongoDB for Developers	New York, NY	September 20-21, 2011	Register
MongoDB for Developers	Redwood City, CA	September 27-28, 2011	Register
MongoDB for Administrators	London,UK	October 3-4, 2011	Register
MongoDB for Developers	London,UK	October 6-7, 2011	Register
MongoDB for Administrators	Redwood City, CA	October 18-19, 2011	Register
MongoDB for Developers	New York, NY	October 25-26, 2011	Register
MongoDB for Administrators	New York, NY	October 8-9, 2011	Register
MongoDB for Developers	Redwood City, CA	November 15-16, 2011	Register

Hosting and Cloud

See the MongoDB Hosting Center.

Consulting

Company	Contact Information
10gen	10gen offers consulting services for MongoDB application design, development, and production operation. These services are typically advisory in nature with the goal of building higher in-house expertise on MongoDB for the client. • Lightning Consults - If you need only an hour or two of help, 10gen offers mini consultations for MongoDB projects during normal business hours • MongoDB Health Check - An experienced 10gen / MongoDB expert will work with your IT Team to assess the overall status of your MongoDB deployment • Custom Packages - Contact for quotes on custom packages

HASHROCKET EXPERTLY CRAFTED WEB	Hashrocket is a full-service design and development firm that builds successful web businesses. Hashrocket continually creates and follows best practices and surround themselves with passionate and talented craftsmen to ensure the best results for you and your business.
LightCube Solutions	LightCube Solutions provides PHP development and consulting services, as well as a lightweight PHP framework designed for MongoDB called 'photon'.
MijiX development consulting training everything is magic!	MijiX, a software development studio based on Indonesia, provides consulting for MongoDB in Asia-Pacific area.
squeejee	Squeejee builds web applications on top of MongoDB with multiple sites already in production.
TUOJIE	TuoJie, based in Beijing, China, provides high quality total solutions and software products for banks, other financial firms, the communications industry, and other multinational corporations. Clients include China Mobile, China Unicom, Microsoft, and Siemens. TuoJie's business scope covers consulting, software development, and technical services.
zopyx	ZOPYX Ltd is a German-based consulting and development company in the field of Python, Zope & Plone. Lately we added MongoDB to our consulting and development portofolio. As one of the first projects we were involved in the launch of the BRAINREPUBLIC social platform.

Visit the 10gen Offices

Bay Area

10gen's West Coast office is located on the Peninsula in Redwood Shores.

100 Marine Parkway, Suite 175
Redwood City, CA 94065

View Larger Map ***Directions:***

- **Take 101 to the Ralston Ave Exit.**
  - From the North, turn Left onto Ralston Ave.
  - From the South, turn Right onto Ralston Ave.
- **Continue onto Marine Parkway.**
- **Turn Right onto Lagoon Drive.**
- **Make a Right turn at the "B" marker (see map). Our building, 100 Marine Pkwy, will be on your right.**
- **Park and enter on the North side of the building. Our Suite, 175, will be the first set of double-doors on your right.**

- **Come on in!**

New York City

10gen's East Coast office is located in the Flatiron District of NYC.

134 5th Avenue
3rd Floor
New York, NY 10011

View Larger Map

User Feedback

"I just have to get my head around that mongodb is really _this_ good"
-muckster, #mongodb

"Guys at Redmond should get a long course from you about what is the software development and support "
-kunthar@gmail.com, mongodb-user list

"#mongoDB keep me up all night. I think I have found the 'perfect' storage for my app "
-elpargo, Twitter

"Maybe we can relax with couchdb but with mongodb we are completely in dreams"
-namlook, #mongodb

"Dude, you guys are legends!"
-Stii, mongodb-user list

"Times I've been wowed using MongoDB this week: 7."
-tpitale, Twitter

Community Blog Posts

B is for Billion
-Wordnik (July 9, 2010)

[Reflections on MongoDB]
-Brandon Keepers, Collective Idea (June 15, 2010)

Building a Better Submission Form
-New York Times Open Blog (May 25, 2010)

Notes from a Production MongoDB Deployment
-Boxed Ice (February 28, 2010)

NoSQL in the Real World
-CNET (February 10, 2010)

Why I Think Mongo is to Databases what Rails was to Frameworks
-John Nunemaker, Ordered List (December 18, 2009)

MongoDB a Light in the Darkness...
-EngineYard (September 24, 2009)

Introducing MongoDB
-Linux Magazine (September 21, 2009)

Choosing a non-relational database; why we migrated from MySQL to MongoDB
-Boxed Ice (July 7, 2010)

The Other Blog - The Holy Grail of the Funky Data Model
-Tom Smith (June 6, 2009)

GIS Solved - Populating a MongoDb with POIs
-Samuel

Community Presentations

Scalable Event Analytics with MongoDb and Ruby on Rails
Jared Rosoff at RubyConfChina (June 2010)

How Python, TurboGears, and MongoDB are Transforming SourceForge.net
Rick Copeland at PyCon 2010

MongoDB
Adrian Madrid at Mountain West Ruby Conference 2009, video

MongoDB - Ruby friendly document storage that doesn't rhyme with ouch
Wynn Netherland at Dallas.rb Ruby Group, slides

MongoDB
jnunemaker at Grand Rapids RUG, slides

Developing Joomla! 1.5 Extensions, Explained (slide 37)
Mitch Pirtle at Joomla!Day New England 2009, slides

Drop Acid (slide 31) (video)
Bob Ippolito at Pycon 2009

Python and Non-SQL Databases (in French, slide 21)
Benoit Chesneau at Pycon France 2009, slides

Massimiliano Dessì at the Spring Framework Italian User Group

- MongoDB (in Italian)
- MongoDB and Scala (in Italian)

Presentations and Screencasts at Learnivore
Frequently-updated set of presentations and screencasts on MongoDB.

Benchmarking

We keep track of user benchmarks on the Benchmarks page.

Job Board

Redirecting...

Redirection Notice
This page should redirect to http://jobs.mongodb.org/ in about 2 seconds.

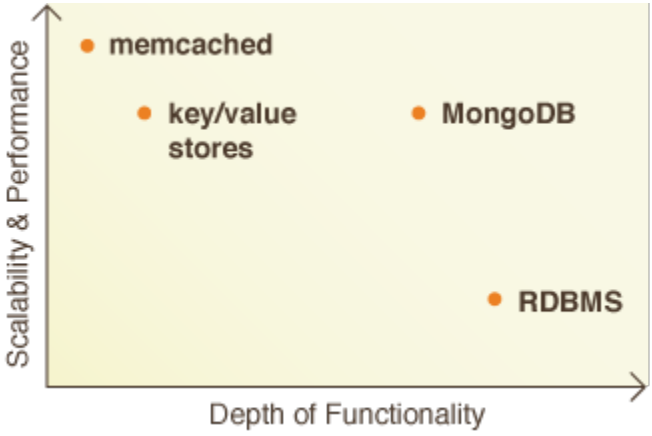
About

- Philosophy
- Use Cases
- Production Deployments
- Mongo-Based Applications
- Events
- Slide Gallery
- Articles
- Benchmarks
- FAQ
- Misc
- Licensing

Philosophy

Design Philosophy

- Databases are specializing - the "one size fits all" approach no longer applies.
- By reducing transactional semantics the db provides, one can still solve an interesting set of problems where performance is very important, and horizontal scaling then becomes easier.
- The document data model (JSON/BSON) is easy to code to, easy to manage (schemaless), and yields excellent performance by grouping relevant data together internally.
- A non-relational approach is the best path to database solutions which scale horizontally to many machines.
- While there is an opportunity to relax certain capabilities for better performance, there is also a need for deeper functionality than that provided by pure key/value stores.



- Database technology should run anywhere, being available both for running on your own servers or VMs, and also as a cloud pay-for-what-you-use service.

Use Cases

See also the Production Deployments page for a discussion of how companies like Craigslist, Shutterfly, foursquare, bit.ly, SourceForge, etc. use MongoDB.

Well Suited

- Operational data store of a web site. MongoDB is very good at real-time inserts, updates, and queries. Scalability and replication are provided which are necessary functions for large web sites' real-time data stores. Specific web use case examples:
    - content management
    - comment storage, management, voting
    - user registration, profile, session data
- Caching. With its potential for high performance, MongoDB works well as a caching tier in an information infrastructure. The persistent backing of Mongo's cache assures that on a system restart the downstream data tier is not overwhelmed with cache population activity.
- High volume problems. Problems where a traditional DBMS might be too expensive for the data in question. In many cases developers would traditionally write custom code to a filesystem instead using flat files or other methodologies.
- Storage of program objects and JSON data (and equivalent). Mongo's BSON data format makes it very easy to store and retrieve data in a document-style / "schemaless" format. Addition of new properties to existing objects is easy and does not require blocking "ALTER TABLE" style operations.
- Document and Content Management Systems - as a document-oriented (JSON) database, MongoDB's flexible schemas are a good fit for this.
- Electronic record keeping - similar to document management.
- Real-time stats/analytics
- Archiving and event logging

Less Well Suited

- Systems with a heavy emphasis on complex transactions such as banking systems and accounting. These systems typically require multi-object transactions, which MongoDB doesn't support. It's worth noting that, unlike many "NoSQL" solutions, MongoDB does support atomic operations on single documents. As documents can be rich entities; for many use cases, this is sufficient.
- Traditional Business Intelligence. Data warehouses are more suited to new, problem-specific BI databases. However note that MongoDB can work very well for several reporting and analytics problems where data is predistilled or aggregated in runtime -- but classic, nightly batch load business intelligence, while possible, is not necessarily a sweet spot.
- Problems requiring SQL.

Use Case Articles

> *Using MongoDB for Real-time Analytics*
> *Using MongoDB for Logging*
> *Full Text Search in Mongo*
> *MongoDB and E-Commerce*
> *Archiving*

Use Case Videos

> *Analytics*
> *Content Management*
> *Media*

Finance
Ecommerce
Government
Gaming

How MongoDB is Used in Media and Publishing

We see growing usage of MongoDB in both traditional and new media organizations. In these areas, the challenges for application developers include effectively managing rich content (including user-generated content) at scale, deriving insight into how content is consumed and shared in real-time, weaving personalization and social features into their applications and delivering content to a wide variety of browsers and devices.

From a data storage perspective, there is a need for databases that make it easy to rapidly develop and deploy interactive, content-rich web and mobile application, while cost-effectively meeting performance and scale requirements. Specifically, MongoDB is good fit for application across the media and publishing world for the following reasons:

- The document model is natural fit content-rich data
- Schema-free JSON-like data structures make it easy to import, store, query, and deliver structured and semi-structured content
- High-performance and horizontal scalability for both read and write intensive applications

MongoDB for Content management

MongoDB's document model makes it easy to model content and associated metadata in flexible ways. While the relational model encourages dividing up related data into multiple tables, the document model (with its support for data structures such as arrays and embedded documents) encourages grouping related pieces of data within a single document. This leads to a data representation that is both efficient and closely matches objects in your application
As an example, the following document represents how a blog post (including its tags and comments) can be modeled with MongoDB:

```
{
_id:
author: "Nosh"
title: "Why MongoDB is good for CMS"
date:11/29/2010
body: "MongoDB's document model makes it easy to model...."
tags: ["media", "CMS", "web", "use case"]
comments: [{author:bob, date:1/1/2011, comment:"I agree"},{..}, {..}]
}
```

Modeling content elements with these patterns also simplifies queries. For example, we can retrieve all blog posts by the author 'nosh' which have the tag mongodb with the query,

```
find({author:"nosh", tags:"mongodb")
```

Flexible document-based representation, efficient and simple queries and scalability makes MongoDB a well suited as a datastore for content management systems. The Business Insider has built their content management system from the ground up using MongoDB and PHP, which serves over 2 million visits/month. For sites based on Drupal, Drupal 7 now makes it easier to use MongoDB as a datastore. Examiner.com, ported their legacy CMS (based on ColdFusion and Microsoft SQLServer) to Drupal 7 and a hybrid of MySQL and MongoDB. You can read a case study about the how the examiner.com (a top 100 website, and one of most trafficked Drupal deployments) made the transition.

MongoDB can also be used to augment existing content management systems with new functionality. One area that we see MongoDB used increasingly is as a metadata store for rich media. MongoDB's document model makes it simple to represent the attributes for an asset (e.g. author, dates, categories, versions, etc) and a pointer to the asset (e.g. on a filesystem or on S3) as document and then efficiently search or query the metadata for display. Additionally, because MongoDB is schema-free, new metadata attributes can be added without having to touch existing records. IGN uses MongoDB as a the metadata store for all videos on IGN Videos and serves up millions of video views per month. Another similar use case for MongoDB is in storing user-submitted content. The New York Times, uses MongoDB as the backend for 'Stuffy', their tool for allowing users and editors to collaborate on features driven by user-submitted photos. A brief overview on the tool is here.

How-to Guides

Modeling content, comments, and tags with MongoDB (coming soon)
Modelling image and video metadata with MongoDB (coming soon)
Using MongoDB with Drupal 7 (coming soon)

Roadmap tip: Watch the full-text search ticket

MongoDB for Real-time analytics

The ability to track and change content based on up-to-minute statistics is becoming increasingly important. MongoDB's fast write performance

and features such as upsert and the $inc operator, make it well suited for capturing real time analytics on how content is being consumed. This blog post outlines some basic patterns you can use to capture real-time pageview statistics for your content.

A number of companies are using MongoDB, either internally to track their own content in real-time, or are building platforms based on MongoDB to help other companies get real time statistics on their content: Chartbeat provides analytics for publishers, with live dashboards and APIs showing how users are engaging with their content in real-time. BuzzFeed uses MongoDB to help understand how and when content will go viral, while ShareThis uses MongoDB to power its API that gives publishers insight into how content is shared across the web and social media

How-to guides

Real-time analytics with MongoDB (coming soon)

MongoDB for Social Graphs & Personalization

While systems such as graph databases excel at complex graph traversal problems, MongoDB's document structure is well suited for building certain types of social and personalization features. Most often, this involves building user profile documents that include a list of friends, either imported from external social networks or in site. For example,

```
{
_id:
user: nosh
email: nosh@10gen.com
friendIDs: [....., …..., …...]
}
```

In this case the friendIDs field is an array with a list of IDs corresponding to profiles of users that are my friends. This data can then be used to generate personalized feeds based on content that my friends have viewed or liked. IGN's social network, MY IGN, uses MongoDB to store profiles of users and generate personalized fields. Users have the ability to import their friends from facebook, 'follow' IGN authors, or follow specific game titles they are interested in. When they log in, they are presented with a personalized feed composed from this data.

How-to guides:

Storing user profiles with MongoDB (coming soon)
Importing social graphs into MongoDB (coming soon)
Generating personalized feeds with MongoDB (coming soon)

MongoDB for Mobile/Tablet Apps

Serving similar content across desktop browsers, mobile browsers, as well as mobile apps is driving developers to build standardized API layers that can be accessed by traditional web application servers, mobile client applications, as well as 3rd party applications. Typically these are RESTful APIs that serve JSON data. With MongoDB's JSON-like data format, building these APIs on top of MongoDB is simplified as minimal code is necessary to translate MongoDB documents and query to JSON representation. Additionally, features such as in-built two-dimensional geospatial indexing allow developers to easily incorporate location-based functionality into their applications.

MongoDB for Data-driven journalism

One of the strengths of MongoDB is dealing with semi-structured data. Data sources such as those produced by governments and other organizations are often denormalized and distributed in formats like CSV files. MongoDB, with its schema-free JSON-like documents is an ideal store for processing and storing these sparse datasets.

The Chicago Tribune uses MongoDB in its Illinois School Report Cards application, which is generated from a nearly 9,000 column denormalized database dump produced annually by the State Board of Education. The application allows readers to search by school name, city, county, or district and to view demographic, economic, and performance data for both schools and districts.

How-to guides:

Importing and Exporting data from MongoDB (coming soon)
Reporting and Visualization with MongoDB (coming soon)

Presentations

- How MTV Networks leverages MongoDB for CMS - MongoNYC Presentation (June 2011)
- Schema Design for Content Management: eHow on MongoDB - MongoSF Presentation (May 2011)
- More Presentations

Use Case - Session Objects

MongoDB is a good tool for storing HTTP session objects.

One implementation model is to have a sessions collection, and store the session object's _id value in a browser cookie.

With its update-in-place design and general optimization to make updates fast, the database is efficient at receiving an update to the session object on every single app server page view.

Aging Out Old Sessions

The best way to age out old sessions is to use the auto-LRU facility of capped collections. The one complication is that objects in capped collections may not grow beyond their initial allocation size. To handle this, we can "pre-pad" the objects to some maximum size on initial addition, and then on further updates we are fine if we do not go above the limit. The following mongo shell javascript example demonstrates padding.

(Note: a clean padding mechanism should be added to the db so the steps below are not necessary.)

```
> db.createCollection('sessions', { capped: true, size : 1000000 } )
{"ok" : 1}
> p = "";
> for( x = 0; x < 100; x++ ) p += 'x';
> s1 = { info: 'example', _padding : p };
{"info" : "example" , "_padding" :
"xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx"
}
> db.sessions.save(s1)
> s1
{"info" : "example" , "_padding" :
"xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx"
, "_id" :  ObjectId( "4aafb74a5761d147677233b0") }

> // when updating later
> s1 = db.sessions.find( { _id : ObjectId( "4aafb74a5761d147677233b0") } )
{"_id" :  ObjectId( "4aafb74a5761d147677233b0")  , "info" : "example" , "_padding" :
"xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx"
}
> delete s._padding;
true
>  s.x = 3; // add a new field
3
> db.sessions.save(s);
> s
{"_id" :  ObjectId( "4aafb5a25761d147677233af")  , "info" : "example" , "x" : 3}
```

Production Deployments

If you're using MongoDB in production, we'd love to list you here! Please complete this web form or email meghan@10gen.com and we will add you.

Company	Use Case
craigslist	Craigslist uses MongoDB to archive billions of r • Lessons Learned from Migrating 2+ Bil • MongoDB Live at Craigslist - MongoDE • MongoDB and Craigslist's Data Storag
foursquare™	Foursquare is a location based social network t MongoDB to store venues and user "check-ins' machines on Amazon EC2. • Practical Data Storage: MongoDB at fo • MongoDB @ foursquare - MongoSF (M • Scaling foursquare with MongoDB - Ne • MongoDB at foursquare presentation:

shutterfly	Shutterfly is an Internet-based social expressio various persistent data storage requirements w unrivaled service that enables deeper, more pe matter most in their lives. • MongoDB Profiling and Tuning - Mong • Q & A with Shutterfly Data Architect Ke • Sharing Life's Joy using MongoDB: A S MongoSV (December 2010) • *Implementing MongoDB at Shutterfly* fr
SPIKE GET MORE ACTION	MongoDB powers the recently re-launched spik Networks' next-generation CMS, which will eve MTV Networks' major websites. MTV Networks within the next year, most likely including game nick.com, and numerous international propertie
bit.ly	bit.ly allows users to shorten, share, and track l information: • bit.ly user history, auto-sharded preser
intuit	Intuit is one of the world's largest providers of s Intuit uses MongoDB to track user engagement small businesses. • Deriving deep customer insights using
LexisNexis	LexisNexis Risk Solutions serves the multi-billic professionals and organizations such as law er collection agencies, insurance and health care MongoDB is used by the DevOps group to stor and serves as the persistence engine for their a
sourceforge	MongoDB is used for back-end storage on the pages for all projects. • Scaling SourceForge with MongoDB - • MongoDB at SourceForge - QCon Lon • How Python, TurboGears, and Mongol 2010) • SourceForge.net releases Ming - Sour • TurboGears on Sourceforge - Compou
Etsy	Etsy is a website that allows users to buy and s series: • Part 1 - May 19, 2010 • Part 2 - July 3, 2010
The New York Times	The New York Times is using MongoDB in a fo dynamic schema gives producers the ability to information: • Building a Better Submission Form - N • A Behind the Scenes Look at the New (July 28, 2010)
CERN	CERN uses MongoDB for Large Hadron Collide • Holy Large Hadron Collider, Batman! -

examiner.com the insider source for local	Examiner.com is the fastest-growing local cont knowledgeable and passionate contributors in t Examiner.com now serves hundreds of markets Examiner.com migrated their site from Cold Fu the deployment are outlined in an Acquia case
Boxed Ice	Server Density is a server monitoring tool from and are now processing billions of documents e MongoDB monitoring and they have written extensively about Mongo Blog posts: • Why we migrated from mysql to mongo • Automating partitioning, sharding and f • Notes from a production MongoDB dep • Many more Presentations: • Humongous Data at Server Density - M • MongoDB in Production at Boxed Ice -
wordnik All the words.	Wordnik stores its entire text corpus in MongoD query the corpus was cut to 1/4 the time it took Wordnik: • Managing a MongoDB Deployment - P (February 2011) • Wordnik: 10 million API requests a day • 12 Months with MongoDB - Wordnik Bl • B is for Billion - Wordnik Blog (July 201 • MongoDB: Migration from Mysql at Wo • Tony Tam's Presentation at MongoSF • What has technology done for words la
ShareThis®	ShareThis makes it easy to share ideas and ge sharing network reaching over 400 million user web
BUSINESS INSIDER	Business Insider has been using MongoDB sin posts, comments, and even the images, are sto • An Inside Look At The Guts Of Our Te • How Business Insider Uses MongoDB • How This Web Site Uses MongoDB (N
secondmarket.	SecondMarket is the online marketplace for alte products & bankruptcy claims. SecondMarket u single collection utilizing the power of the scher news and activity in mongoDB.
github SOCIAL CODING	GitHub, the social coding site, is using MongoD
GILT GROUPE	Gilt Groupe is an invitation only luxury shoppin analytics. • Gilt CTO Mike Bryzek's presentation a • Hummingbird - a real-time web traffic v MongoDB
IGN	IGN Entertainment, a unit of News Corporation, on the videogame and entertainment enthusias unique users worldwide February 2010, accord Media Metrix. MongoDB powers IGN's real-time • Using MongoDB for IGN's Social Platfo (February 2011) • Confessions of a recovering relational (December 2010)

Catch	catch.com is the easiest way to capture what m capture & find your notable thoughts, ideas, ima • MongoDB and Pylons at Catch.com - F
bump TECHNOLOGIES	Recently named #8 free app of all-time by Appl simply by bumping them together! MongoDB is manage and store data from the 25+ million us
open sky	OpenSky is a free online platform that helps pe friends, family and followers; and earn money. PHPUnit 3.5, jQuery, node.js, Git (with gitflow) for just about everything (not just analytics). Alc MongoDB drivers for Mule and CAS. • Augmenting RDBMS with NoSQL for e (March 2011) • MongoDB & Ecommerce: A Perfect Co New York MongoDB User Group (Octo
CollegeHumor	CollegeHumor is a comedy website. MongoDB exchange application.
evite	Evite uses MongoDB for analytics and quick re • Tracking and visualizing mail logs with 2010)
DISQUS	Disqus is an innovative blog-commenting syste
mongoHQ fast & easy data management	MongoHQ provides a hosting platform for Mong service. Our hosting centers page provides mo hosting options.
Justin.tv	Justin.tv is the easy, fun, and fast way to share analytics tools for virality, user retention, and ge provide. Read more about Justin.tv's broadcast
chartbeat	Chartbeat is a revolutionary real-time analytics behaviour in real-time and exploit or mitigate it. • The Secret Weapons Behind Chartbea • Kushal Dave's Presentation at MongoN
Eventbrite Events Made Easy	Eventbrite gives you all the online tools you nee • Building a Social Graph with MongoDB MongoSV (December 2010) • Tech Corner: Auto recovery with Mong • Why you should track page views with

BLiNQ MEDIA Social Engagement Advertising SM	BLiNQ Media, an employee owned social medi companies globally with access to the Faceboo technology, BAM (BLiNQ Ad Manager) in Ruby media agencies and brands, helping them plac proprietary technology. The technology team is Technology Development Center (ATDC), one client services headquarters is in TechSpace in MongoDb as an operational data store to suppo data. The data stored in MongoDB is then usec key performance indicators. Since BAM went liv averaging in excess of 30,000 transactions a da • MongoDB Delivers Results for Facebo 2011)
Springer science+business media	Realtime.springer.com is a service that aggrega book chapters in real time and displays them in provide the scientific community with valuable i now". MongoDB is used to store the details of c Map reduce jobs generate collections for the la book titles.
Flowdock	Flowdock is a modern web-based team messer simply by chatting. Flowdock backend uses Mo • Why Flowdock migrated from Cassand
Chicago Tribune	The Chicago Tribune uses MongoDB in its Illinc from a nearly 9,000 column denormalized datal Education. The application allows readers to se demographic, economic, and performance data
SUGARCRM. THE CLOUD IS OPEN	Sugar CRM uses MongoDB to power the backe comments and whether they like or dislike porti Sugar.
BUDDYMEDIA Every brand needs a buddy™	The Buddy Media Platform gives brands the toc Facebook fans. The second iteration of the Pub MongoDB. • Social Analytics on MongoDB (Video a MongoDB User Group • The New Buddy Media Publisher: Wha 2010)
where® www.where.com	WHERE® is a local search and recommendatic mobile coupons in their area. Using WHERE, p restaurant reviews, to the closest coffee shop, c from local merchants. WHERE is available as a here, Inc. uses MongoDB to store geographic c a hyper-local ad network.
淘宝网 Taobao.com	Founded by Alibaba Group in May 2003, Taoba consumer-to-consumer retail by providing a pla online retail stores that cater to consumers in m Sellers are able to post new and used goods fo price or by auction. The overwhelming majority sold at a fixed price; auctions make up a very s the monitoring data.
PhoneTag™	PhoneTag is a service that automatically transc and SMS. PhoneTag stores the metadata and t

	Harmony is a powerful web-based platform for content editors work together with unprecedent templates, to pages, blogs, and comments, eve to MongoDB from MySQL drastically simplified we can deliver features. • Steve Smith's presentation about Harm
	PiCloud enables scientists, developers, and en power in public and private clouds for batch pro computing applications. PiCloud uses MongoD sets in a highly distributed and scalable environ
	Hashrocket is an expert web design and develo Medication Management application in Ruby or resolving drug-related problems for millions of p
	Yottaa offers Performance Analytics, a cloud se of millions of web sites, providing an open data matters" and "how fast is my site". Yottaa is usi analytics engine. • How Yottaa Uses MongoDB - Jared R • Scalable Event Analytics with MongoD RubyConfChina (June 2010)
	BuzzFeed is a trends aggregator that uses a w stories around the web. BuzzFeed moved an a from MySQL to MongoDB.
	The Mozilla open-source Ubiquity Herd project available on bitbucket.
	Sedue is the enterprise search/recommendatio currently uses MongoDB, to store the documen • MongoDB as search engine repository
	Yodle uses MongoDB to persist queues of item ideally suited for this update-heavy performanc
	Codaset is an open system where you can bro out what your friends are coding. • The awesomeness that is MongoDB a 2010) • Handling Dates in MongoDB - Codase
	Shopwiki uses Mongo as a data store for its sh generated, such as custom analytics. Mongo's MySQL would just not be practical. ShopWiki is data-mining efforts where MongoDB's docume • Avery's Talk at MongoNYC - ShopWiki

mypunchbowl	Punchbowl.com is a start to finish party plannin datamining. • Introducing MongoDB into your organi presentation at Mongo Boston (Septen • *Ryan Angilly on Replacing MySQL wit* • MongoDB for Dummies: How MyPunc Presentation at MongoNYC (May 201
Sunlight LABS	Sunlight Labs is a community of open source d government to make it more transparent, accou Data Catalog, and the Drumbone API, which is • Civic Hacking - Video from Luigi Mont • How We Use MongoDB at Sunlight bl
photostre.am	photostre.am streams image data from flickr an • MongoDB in Production at photostre.a
fotopedia.com The first collaborative photo encyclopedia	Fotopedia uses MongoDB as storage backend timelines, a feature that is currently under heav tiny html fragment in its varnish cache for proa • MongoDB: Our Swiss Army Datastore
Grooveshark	Grooveshark currently uses Mongo to manage
stickybits	Stickybits is a fun and social way to attach digit
EA	MongoDB is being used for the game feeds co gets served to ea.com, rupture.com and the E
struq	Struq develops technology that personalises th time.
Pitchfork	Pitchfork is using MongoDB for their year-end r
floxee	Floxee, a web toolkit for creating Twitter directo award-winning TweetCongress is powered by
Sailthru You Communicate, We Deliver	Sailthru is an innovative email service provider quantity. Moving to MongoDB from MySQL allo Passing in arbitrary JSON data is easy – our c And we've launched Sailthru Alerts, which allo realtime and summary alerts (price, tag match, schema-free data storage. Also, we can gather (tag-based interests, geolocale, time of day, et assembled mass emails that get higher click-th onsite recommendation widget (check it out at capabilities to rapidly A/B test different behavio • MongoDB in Production at Sailthru - P

silentale	Silentale keeps track of your contacts and conv and access them from anywhere. Silentale is u on millions of stored messages of different type TechCrunch article. • One Year with MongoDB presentation
teachstreet LEARN SOMETHING NEW	TeachStreet helps people find local and online manage their teaching businesses. MongoDB p teachers with insight into the performance and • Slides from Mongo Seattle - TeachStre
Visibiz KNOW YOUR NETWORK. SELL BETTER.	Visibiz is a socially and email infused relationsh productivity of business professionals.,Within m and organized profiles for everything in the use information needed to stay productive. Professi activities through simplified and streamlined CR Visibiz uses MongoDB for all of its data storage • How MongoDB Helps Visibiz Tackle S
DEFENSIO	Defensio is a comment-spam blocker that uses
TweetSaver	TweetSaver is a web service for backing up, se MongoDB for back-end storage.
BLOOM	Bloom Digital's AdGear platform is a next-gene storage for AdGear.
klatu networks	KLATU Networks designs, develops and marke manage risk, reduce operating costs and strear status, condition, and location of cold storage a MongoDB to store temperature, location, and o KLATU chose MongoDB over competitors for s
this or that	This or That! is a user-driven comparison site th on comparisons. Whether you're voting on the l user-generated comparisons, make your choice drive its leaderboards.
sk songkick	songkick lets you track your favorite artists so y • Speeding up your Rails app with Mong
crowdtap	Crowdtap uses MongoDB extensively as its pri engine. The targeting engine heavily uses Mon is core to our service.
Detexify²	Detexify is a cool application to find LaTeX sym out the blog post for more on why Detexfy is us
Sluggy Freelance	http://sluggy.com/ is built on MongoDB, mongo • From MySQL to MongoDB at Sluggy.c 2010)
EDITD	EDITD is using MongoDB to store opinions fror their sentiment analysis system, Zeitgeist.
	@trackmeet helps you take notes with twitter, a

eflyover	eFlyoverleverages the Google Earth Browser P over two thousand golf courses worldwide.
Shapado	Shapado is a multi-topic question and answer s Rails and uses MongoDB for back-end storage
Sifino	Sifino enables students to help each other with summaries, and old exams, and can also ask a
GAMECHANGER	GameChanger provides mobile apps that repla distribute real-time game updates for amateur s • Tornado, MongoDB, and the Realtime 2010) • GameChanger and MongoDB: a case (September 2010)
soliMAP	soliMAP is a map-based ad listings site that us
MyBankTracker	MyBankTracker iPhone App uses MongoDB fo
bill monitor	BillMonitor uses MongoDB to store all user data used by the live site and also by BillMonitor's in
Tubricator	Tubricator allows you to create easy to rememb Django.
mu.ly	Mu.ly uses MongoDB for user registration and a service. MongoDB is mu.ly's Main backend dat
AVINU	Avinu is a Content Management System (CMS) MongoDB.
edelight	edelight is a social shopping portal for product r • MongoDB: Wieso Edelight statt MySQ (September 2010)
TOPSY	Topsy is a search engine powered by Tweets t
Cold Hard Code	Cold Hard Code makes featureful, beautiful we • Codepeek is using MongoDB and Grid • Jarvis uses MongoDB to store asset in
Similaria	Similaria.pl is an online platform, created to cor • One Year with MongoDB - Presentatio

totutam	ToTuTam uses Mongo to store information abo information about users preferences. • One Year with MongoDB - Presentatio
themoviedb.org	themoviedb.org is a free, user driven movie dat
OCW Search	OCW Search is a search engine for OpenCours uses Sphinx to index these courses. • Full Text Search with Sphinx - Present
Mixero Reducing the noise	Mixero is the new generation Twitter client for p noise. Mixero uses Mongo to store users' prefe
Biggo система управления сайтами	Biggo is an advanced site constructor with e-co collection.
kabisa ICT agile solutions	Kabisa is a web development firm specializing i for many of its client projects, including a mobil
DOKDOK	DokDok makes it easy and automatic for users document - right from their inbox. DokDok migr Morency's presentation Migrating to MongoDB
enbil.nu	Enbil is a swedish website for finding, and com querying data about geographical locations anc
Websko	Websko is a content management system desi MongoDB's lack of schema gives unlimited pos architecture and is used for back-end storage f written in Rails, uses MongoMapper gem and i
markitfor.me	markitfor.me is a bookmarking service that mak don't have to remember tags or folders. You ca text of all of your bookmarked pages will be sea pages.
backpage pics	Backpage Pics is a website that displays backp MongoDB is used to store listing data. *Please r*
Joomla Ads	Joomla Ads uses MongoDB for its back-end re

	musweet keeps track of what artists and bands
	Eiwa System Management, Inc. is a software d projects since January 2010.
	Morango is an internet strategy consultancy ba several client projects. • Building a Content Management Syste 2010)
	PeerPong discovers everyone's expertise and c We index users across the entire web, looking available information to discover expertise and
	ibibo ("I build, I bond") is a social network using represented as a single document containing a million of these documents in MongoDB.
	MediaMath is the leader in the new and rapidly
	Zoofs is a new way to discover YouTube videos Twitter searching for tweets with YouTube vide
	Oodle is an online classifieds marketplace that company behind the popular Facebook Marketp our millions of users and has also open sourced
	Funadvice relaunched using the MongoDB and MongoDB User Forum from May 2010 for more
	Ya Sabe is using MongoDB for the backend sto search engine built for Hispanics in the US with more than 14 million businesses via the web or and in English.
	LoteriaFutbol.com is a Fantasy Soccer Portal re 2010. Mongo has been used entirely to store da uses the PHP driver with a Mongo module for K
	Kehalim switched over to MongoDB 1 year ago contextual affiliate network, Kehalim stores all c MongoDB. MongoDB has outed both MySQL a hadoop-like alternative with its own map-reduce

SQUARESPACE	Squarespace is an innovative web publishing p environment for creating and maintaining webs store large amounts of social data that is pulled widgets that are fully integrated with the platfor
turntable	The turntable.fm backend is written in Python a servers, and a dozen or so Python libraries as
GIVEMEBEATS.net	Givemebeats.net is an e-commerce music site produced by some of the best producers in the profile, beats information, and transaction statis
Cheméo High Quality Chemical Properties	Cheméo, a search engine for chemical properti explanation of the tools and software used and chemeo.com/doc/technology.
planetaki	Planetaki is place were you can read all your fa MySQL for the storage backend that does all th • Planetaki Powered by MongoDB - San
视觉中国 www.ChinaVisual.com	[ChinaVisual.com] is the leading and largest ve ChinaVisual.com moved from mysql to mongoD major production and service, like file storage,
ROW FEEDER	RowFeeder is an easy social media monitoring posts in a spreadsheet. RowFeeder uses Mong across multiple social networks as well as gene • MongoDB for Real Time Data Collectic (July 2010)
OPEN DINING NETWORK	Open Dining Network is a restaurant data and f web and mobile orders. MongoDB is used to m
urlist	URLi.st is a small web application to create anc (using the pylons framework) and uses MongoD
Pinterest	Pinterest is a community to share collections of MongoDB for its internal analytics tools and hu
LEARNBOOST	LearnBoost is a free and amazing gradebook w needs. LearnBoost is the creator of Mongoose, extensible and simple to use. • Mongoose - LearnBoost blog (May 201
www.kidiso.com KIDISO turning the web into a safe playground	Kidiso is a safe online playground for children u setup, we are using MongoDB for logging, anal performance (ie search results and allowed cor
	Carbon Calculated provides an open platform t everything in the world, from passenger transp of this platform, Carbon Calculated offers a suit intuitive.

	Vowch is a simple platform for telling the world you. It is a platform for making positive, public e account. • View a vowch for MongoDB: http://vow
	HolaDoctor.com is the most comprehensive he online Hispanic community. MongoDB is being to store article images. Session data is also bei save handler.
	Ros Spending is the first Russian public spendi 1,400,000 federal government and 210,000 reg more than 260,000 suppliers and 26,000 custo information, stats and pre-cached queries. The Development and launched publicly in July 201
	BlueSpark designs and develops iPhone and iP development, we have a passion for creating g
	[Aghora] is a time attendance application speci governmental requirements. Our whole applica information.
	Man of the House is the real man's magazine, a and at home, as a father and as a husband. Th
	PeerIndex is an algorithmic authority ranking w firehose of social media, as a distributed data s
	sahibinden.com is an online classifieds market over 1.5 billion pageviews a month. sahibinden caching.
	Shadelight is a unique fantasy roleplaying gam Set out on magical quests, battle mysterious cr
	Ylastic is using MongoDB extensively in produc capability.
	BRAINREPUBLIC is a social network for anyon like-minded people from anywhere at anytime.
	Friendmaps is a tool that allows users to view a
	The affiliate marketing platform Jounce has gor search data. As of August 2010, ~10 million off

VIRB	Virb Looking for a place to park your portfolio, y with Virb. You provide the content, we'll help wi
dealmachine	Deal Machine is a streamlined CRM that makes storage. It has helped us a lot to make the web
ArrivalGuides.com the worlds largest network of free travel guides	arrivalguides.com is the largest network of free launched a new site where they rewrote the wh using the NoRM Driver for C#. The website is p
THE HYPE MACHINE	The Hype Machine keeps track of emerging mu and retrieval of user preferences, and other cor performance in our workloads was what got ou
Scrabb.ly massively multiplayer online ~~scrabble~~ crossword	Scrabbly is a massively multiplayer online ~~scral~~ • Building a Scrabble MMO in 48 Hours
ChatPast	ChatPast synchronizes your chat history from n computers. Search them, slice them, and get ju about. Business users can push important IM c (Highrise, BaseCamp, etc) seamlessly.
stock øpedia	Stockopedia initially began using MongoDB for 20000+ stocks, sectors and investment topics. for building real time analytics, recommendatio and investors conducting and publishing invest
TravelPost	TravelPost is a community built by travel enthu reviews, photos and blogs. TravelPost uses Mo
soulgoal	SoulGoal stores or caches all user data and fa
TopTwitterTrends currently trending tweets	Top Twitter Trends is an experimental and on-g technologies such as node.js, nginx, and Mong
bongi .mobi Create your FREE mobi site	bongi.mobi is a place for you to build your own include: fast document orientated database (M on handset capabilities), mobile ad serving, ge tracking, click-2-call, SMS, email modules, 3rd

CoStore	CoStore is an online platform for data exchang importing, transforming and collaborating on all such as charts, graphs and network visualizatic wherever you need it. MongoDB is used as the which are MapReduce operations.
Vuzz	Vuzz answers questions like "What are everyor charts. At Vuzz, people can vote, talk about, cr that share the same interests as you. By addin wants to be your time machine that shows peo current. Vuzz has been listed on Killerstartups applicatin database.
bākōdo barcode intelligence	Bakodo is a barcode search engine with a soci while they are shopping. Users can scan barco information about the products they are looking importantly, what their friends think about it. Ba of products.
noClouds.org	noclouds.org is a online system, completely op and share information about files. MongoDB ha all systems.
guildwork	Guildwork is a guild host and social network for Warcraft. Guildwork stores nearly all data in Mc
cafeclimb.com	CafeClimb.com is a travel website for rock clim which lets people share their travel experiences traveling information that comes from the users from the user.
keekme	Keekme is free money management web servic Keekme you will easily track all your expenses MongoDB as a primary datastorage for all appli
vitals SM where doctors are examined	Vitals.com consolidates and standardizes docto to help users make informed health care choice of insurance companies, hospitals, and other h datasource for our Find A Doctor location-base MongoDB collection. Since then, searches are our dataservers permits us to serve more client functionality to MongoDB datasources.
P2P FINANCIAL	P2P Financial is Canada's first internet-based b DB for storing business and financial document
totsy	Totsy offers moms on-the-go and moms-to-be was re-built upon Li3 and MongoDB to correct prior relational-database platform. The transitio scaling issues. • MongoDB Ecommerce Case Study: To (September 2010)
PlumWillow shop.style.share.	PlumWillow is a Social Shopping Network wher selecting from thousands of top-brand items. Pl core-developers/contributors to PHP, jQuery ar and the Vork Enteprise PHP Framework to brin

qwerly	Qwerly is people search for the social web. Qw links to social networking sites. We offer an AP
phpMyEngine	phpMyEngine is a free, open source CMS licen is MongoDB.
vsChart.com	vsChart allows you to compare products to mak
	yap.TV is the ultimate companion to the TV wat guide fused with a tuned-for-TV Twitter client, a fans while watching the tube. We store some of MongoDB for analytics.
BusyConf	BusyConf makes great conferences even bette letting them collect and manage proposals, mar multiple web platforms. Conference attendees g all the details preloaded. MongoDB let's us repr complementary to it's logical structure and the a code is much simpler, and our application is fas • BusyConf presentation at Washington
Sentimnt	Sentimnt is a personal and social search engin networks and allows you to search your online not related to you. Sentimnt uses MongoDb to s instances serve around 2000 queries per secor from MS SQL to MongoDb and haven't looked
	Workbreeze is fast and minimalistic tool for the global project storage.
kompasiana sharing. connecting.	Kompasiana is the biggest citizen journalism In biggest site In Indonesia. MongoDB is used to s
Milaap BETA Beyond Just Credit	Milaap works with established, grassroots NGC community development.
agentstorm	Agent Storm is a complete Real Estate Contact and manage your Real Estate business. Import listings on your web site, syndicate out to over eFlyers all at the click of a button. When a API performs the search and returns the primary ke then looked up in MySQL using the primary key the results are served up and passed back to th updated either via the Web or external the exte property is stored in a Redis/Resque queue and changes. All this means that on average API qu • Now with 50-100 millisecond-search-re

Mashape	Mashape is a frustration-free online storefront f distribute an API of any kind of service, either a
The UK Jobsite	The UK Jobsite is an easy to use job board allo We use MongoDB for all aspects of the site - in searches to user information everything is kept of the reasons of why we chose Mongo and co http://www.theukjobsite.co.uk/tech.php.
tastebuds	Tastebuds music dating lets you meet like-minc connect with their last.fm username – or simply immediately shown single people who share th popular events service Songkick.com allowing MongoDB has dramatically increased the spee allows users to rapidly select their preferred art
skimlinks™	Skimlinks enables publishers to easily monetise equivalent affiliate links on the fly and via Skim products mentioned in the content. Bringing tog retailer programs in one place, Skimlinks make and ensures no money is left on the table. We impressions we get every month.
VANILLADESK	www.vanilladesk.com is ITIL based servicedesl as the main database engine to store all tickets MongoDB's document oriented approach and h what enables VanillaDesk to process records fa
SUMMIFY	Summify uses MongoDB as our primary databa (metadata and HTML content), as well as user only the most recent 1000-5000 news stories fo cache for URL redirects and Twitter user inform
dakwak The Web Speak Your Language	dakwak is the easiest and fastest way to transla visitors want. It is a next-generation website loc away from getting your website localized and tr
kapost BETA	Kapost's online newsroom technology enables produce content. We use MongoDB to store all analytics for the newsroom content.
ContactMe	ContactMe is a "light customer relationship mar many small businesses, enterprise CRM solutic ContactMe.com aims to fix this. Besides provid social media sites like Facebook, ContactMe co place, making for easy and efficient contact ma
MOONTOAST IMPULSE	Moontoast Impulse is a free Facebook applicati from a Facebook fan page. Moontoast is a soci Their tools power communities, stores, and priv fan-building and revenue-generating opportunit Moontoast Impulse: MongoDB, PHP 5.3, Zend and more. Moontoast uses MongoDB to store a
Shopperhive β	Shopperhive is a social price comparison shop reviews, video reviews and the cheapest prices data back-end storage.

tracknose	tracknose develops location-based applications reward you with discount vouchers when you e chosen for excellent scalability and capacity to georeferenced statistics.
TalkAboutHealth	TalkAboutHealth matches people with similar h like you, learn from experienced peers, and sha
Wusoup	Wusoup is a free online application for meeting handles all user and message data, along with
Fave getfave.com	Fave is a local search application designed to h businesses, and to help businesses expand the releasing next-generation mobile applications t services. Infrastructure/architecture containing performance/response time; attempting to leve call campaigns
Doodle	Doodle is the world's leading consensus-sched MongoDB as an addition to MySQL and plan to less data via MySQL.
Find The Best	FindTheBest is an objective, socially curated co your options and decide what's best for you. Ul informed decisions by allowing you to easily co products and services and read and write revie traffic monitoring and analysis as well as storag
MAGNETIC	MongoDB will be the central data store in our s distributed cluster behind our pixel servers, and forecasting. We're excited by the speed, replica query access, which will let us dramatically sim key-value store.
FUSEWARE information at the speed of thought	Fuseware provides realtime analysis into social and more. This analysis is structured for easy u makers. We use Mongo DB clusters to provide that we store. We have hundreds of gigabytes scalability and data access.
Wherevent upcoming events in your area	Wherevent is a search engine for geolocated e other cities. The entire database is based on a feature.
SKYLINE INNOVATIONS	Skyline Innovations develops and finances dist We deploy custom monitoring solutions to maxi MongoDB for data warehousing and fast, flexib

ATHENA CAPITAL RESEARCH	Athena Capital Research is a quantitative inves strategies.
memrise	Memrise combines the art and science of mem of our learning and web analytics, and any time about schema ossification.
dather	Dather is a content platform that assembles all can invite friends, family, fans, etc... to join you
moxie Software™	Moxie Software™ is an innovative software cor for employee and customer engagement throug media era and using MongoDB, Employee Spa People Work" . It enables employees to collabo knowledge and accelerate innovation.
FUNDASTIC.INFO	Fundastic.info is CrunchBase data + visualizati investors and financial organizations implemen dedicated pages for each investor and finanical understand the investment pattern of an invest to store all its investor and financial organizatio stored in MongoDB as JSON documents and ir
foofind	Foofind Labs is a universal search engine. In F and indexes every file. This way, we intend to c creation by Pablo Soto, P2P technology design MongoDB is used to store all the data on the si in order to allow text searches.
BEACONPUSH BY gsn	Beaconpush is a cloud service for push messa real-time data with a few lines of JavaScript. Su methods for older browsers. Beaconpush uses data is used for presenting reports, charts and low system impact and has proven very efficien
EASY BILL INSTANT	Easy Bill, India's first chain of one stop paymen to the life of the common man. Through its vast never-before convenience in various kinds of tr biggest problems faced by the common man is enterprises for bill payment services. In the last grown exponentially, though the support servic activity logging of our application since our mai
DeskMetrics	DeskMetrics is a real-time analytics service for how their users are using their applications. Ho application, where are the users from and help happened on the user's machine. We use MongoDB to store all data gathered fro have chosen MongoDB most because of its sim important for us since we collect and analyze a
G5 SEARCH | SOCIAL | MOBILE	G5 is the largest and fastest growing provider c mid-market companies get found online, genera customers, track marketing performance - inclu best return on investment. G5 migrated our ana demands of storing & processing analytical dat maintainable. Best of all, MongoDB is supporte

INTERSTATE	Interstate provides businesses and developers tasks using awesome roadmaps! All of our clier data, etc).
PROXLET	Proxlet helps you fight the noise on Twitter, by a Twitter API proxy, which allows it to work with way of browser extensions. Proxlet uses Mongo per-user setting documents, as well as growing designed to scale horizontally, MongoDB has p
fiesta.cc	fiesta.cc makes creating mailing lists dead-simp tool that everybody already uses and understar powering the website and the mail serving infra
METAMOKI	Metamoki builds social games like Mob Wars, C Cityzen onwards, MongoDB is used for all gam
UBERVU	uberVU is an intuitive social media managemer 20+ countries. uberVU uses mongo as their pri approach and reliability
Dayload Hassle-free AWS Usage Monitoring	Dayload provides a hassle-free Amazon Web S resource usage and CloudWatch monitoring log mail. Storing AWS resource usage and CloudW MapReduce function.
Goo.by	Avivo is creating modern Identities, Brand desig mobile, web and custom made solution for LOE Through design and branding processes we he interaction. Ultimately we are delivering engagi that build brand loyalty and helps them to innov is leading us to dive deeply into research and d best for our clients. We are multinational team t primary database for all of our generated links a
ABUSIX The Global Reporting Project	Abusix is the network and email abuse handling spamfeeds(www.spamfeed.me), consulting and technology providers. We know about the need today, while handling thousands of incoming co behavior in their network manually, but still not major need for a solution that handles all these increase customers security and satisfaction, in resources in abuse departments for real anti-ab MongoDB in environments where we need a fa almost suits all needs and it is fun to work with.

adyaX	Freerice is developped by World Food Porgram is a social quizz-like game where each good ar begining more than 85 billions of rice grains we facebook and groups, freerice tracks down eac row for each right answer, wich mean 8 billions totals are provided to the end user, which are a
idea2	Idea2 is a versatile, customizable data manage create and implement a hosted business mana projects, customer care and support, business browser-based, fully managed environment. Ide application and workflow engine. We moved to transition, we also created a better user experie
FamilyTies.com	FamilyTies is family networking - like social net families and friends of families easier. Profiles f children under 13, basic family trees, photo sha more to come. Mongo is used to store http sess various cache objects that speed up frequently relationship maps.
Pracanowo.pl	Pracanowo.pl is a job portal that helps people c formats and finds jobs based on experience list and in few month to store job postings and boa
REPUBLIKA.co.id	Republika Online is the biggest Islamic news p Republika", a national newspaper. We use sha
Grepler	Grepler.com is a distributed open system that n lists to enable single point of access and discus the user accounts which will be mapped in nea
thuisvergelijken	Thuisvergelijken.nl is one of the biggest Dutch wide range of products we serve a broad audie all our data storage: webshops, product data fe MongoDB's flexibility allows us to develop rapic
salsadb eta	salsadb.com uses MongoDB for importing and capabilities are used extensively to allow users
CHECK24	CHECK24 is one of Germany`s leading price c compare a wide range of products from the fiel travel and thus save hundreds of Euros per yea link-out the customer when they want to buy a contract. The comparison services for prices ar Furthermore, customers get free independent a
I'mOK	I'mOK is a mobile app that rewards your kids fc their location, taking pictures, tagging friends, a exchanged for things you've agreed to, like spe MongoDB is used to store user check-ins and

wheelhouse	Wheelhouse CMS is a Ruby on Rails Content M flexible to develop sites with, and pain-free for y is used for all data storage within Wheelhouse (
QWK.io	Qwk.io is the quickest, easiest way to conduct s backend.
Ameba by CyberAgent	CyberAgent,Inc. has strongly expanded its busi CyberAgent's major business categories are Int Investment Development. CyberAgent,Inc. is us American office: CyberAgent America. Social Game with node.js + MongoDB Presenta
HeiaHeia!	HeiaHeia.com provides web and mobile service friends, and cheer others – bringing a fun and s can choose from over 350 activities and the wo HeiaHeia.com's technology offers a cost-efficie provide engaging, customized online services f
newscurve	NewsCurve is an analytics tool providing effecti MongoDB as primary database storage to store
A-SaaS	Accounting SaaS Japan provides Accounting S accountants and small and mid-size businesses services include, but are not limited to, general necessary to meet the rapidly changing deman that is difficult to accomplish with the relational
THRILLIST	Thrillist is using mongo to accelerate our user-s Right now it's employed mostly as a cache, and click-track data. We're also moving to push our our continuous integration initiative.
FStructures.com online fabric structure community	Fabric Structures Community is a project to ens in the overall construction sector by providing m customers about the textile structures range an field. MongoDB is used for storing and indexing
eastghost.com higher paranormal	Brenden Digital uses MongoDB for everything e migrated. We appreciate MDB for its smaller siz repeatedly exhibits an elegance, a sublime aura comprehension.
attachments.me	Attachments.me is a search engine for your em surrounding attachments, messages, and users

thumbtack.com	Thumbtack is an online marketplace for local se analytics, due to its excellent performance, flex details can be found in our recent blog post: Bu
chirpat.me	ChirpAt.Me enables Twitter users to build their expertise with their friends and followers. Chirp sessions to messages and preferences.
大众点评 dianping.com	DianPing.com is a leading city life guide site an objective and rich local information, in the areas weddings and various other categories. Mongo on businesses, users, groups simple message
venmo	Venmo is a free and easy to use mobile app fri drinks, rent, groceries, tickets, and trips. Venmo activities published by users for their friends to
Intelie	Intelie is a software that receives data from sev and machine learning techniques, makes it pos centers in real time. We use MongoDB to store documents per minute for one company. Storin new rules, in addition to providing dashboards a
SIGNAL	First, we are using MongoDB's geospatial queri users can create a SMS marketing campaign to perform a lookup of known locations (stores) ba user. Second, we are using MongoDB to hold a statistics for our Email and SMS subscription lis queries in tables with excess of 10 million rows anywhere from 30 - 365 summary documents. queries. This use case is documented at http://johnpwood.net/2011/05/31/fast-queries-o
directdialogs	Directdialogs.com is a cloud-based direct mark capability and a flexible no-card loyalty program powerful cache with analytical capabilities. Seg purposes, OLAP reporting/analytics based on c MongoDB.
dc storm optimising digital marketing	DC Storm helps marketers increase sales, deliv better. The intuitive technology platform and firs across all digital channels; ensuring clients hav powers the Storm Platform's dashboard and ter redundancy.
Bouncely	Bouncely uses MongoDB to save details of eve everything and store thousands of records per information and run MapReduce in order to pre
PCLICKS	PClicks uses MongoDB for simple real-time ana then adapt to meet their needs and watch their

MAGNETIC™	Magnetic is the leader in search retargeting, en their most relevant audience online. Magnetic u month. Beyond performance and scalability, Mo leverage the rich data model and storage and a and unify a mix of high-performance, web appli Magnetic a competitive advantage.
okezone.com Indonesian News & Entertainment Online!	Okezone.com is using MongoDB for inline cont and commenting system in our video portal. (w
OpenChime	OpenChime uses MongoDB to help customers Thousands of people have found and booked e instructors in Mexico and hot air balloon rides ir
MONOLOOP REALTIME BEHAVIOURAL TARGETING	Monoloop is a behavioral targeting platform tha MongoDB is the core datastore that delivers the and deliver personalized content to the visitor.
Yeay.me	Yeay.me is a small startup that uses Grails and MongoDB is used for all it's stored data.
ACTIVESPHERE	Activesphere provides services using rails and as well.
SOCIALCITYDEALS Tracking all local daily deals in your city	SocialCityDeals uses MongoDB to store rapidly set of fields and new fields keep showing up fre architecture to store the data. With MongoDB's effort in half for the site development.

See also

- MongoDB Apps
- Use Cases
- User Feedback!thisorthat.jpg!

Mongo-Based Applications

Please list applications that leverage MongoDB here. If you're using MongoDB for your application, we'd love to list you here! Email meghan@10gen.com.

See Also

- Production Deployments - Companies and Sites using MongoDB
- Hosting Center

Applications Using MongoDB

c5t

Content-management using TurboGears and Mongo

ErrorApp

ErrorApp tracks errors from your apps. It reports them to you and gathers all information and make reports available to you.

Graylog2

Graylog2 is an open source syslog server implementation that stores logs in MongoDB and provides a Rails frontend.

HarmonyApp

Harmony is a powerful web-based platform for creating and managing websites. It helps connect developers with content editors, for unprecedented flexibility and simplicity. For more information, view Steve Smith's presentation on Harmony at MongoSF (April 2010).

Hummingbird

Hummingbird is a real-time web traffic visualization tool developed by Gilt Groupe

MongoPress

A flexible CMS that uses MongoDB and PHP.

Mongs

A simple, web-based data browser for MongoDB.

Mongeez

Mongeez is an opensource solution allowing you to manage your mongo document changes in a manner that is easy to synchronize with your code changes. Check out mongeez.org.

phpMyEngine

A free, open source CMS licensed under the GPL v.3. For storage, the default database is MongoDB.

Quantum GIS

Plugin for Quantum GIS that lets you plot geographical data stored in MongoDB

Websko

Websko is a content management system designed for individual Web developers and cooperative teams.

Events

- MongoDB User Groups (MUGs)
- MongoDB at Upcoming Community Meetups and Conferences
- Training
- Office Hours
- See Also

MongoDB User Groups (MUGs)

There are MongoDB User Groups (MUGs) all over the world. Please check out the full listing.

MongoDB at Upcoming Community Meetups and Conferences

Date	Event
July 7	Building your first MongoDB application Nosh Petigara, 10gen Free Webinar

July 12	Toronto MongoDB User Group Toronto, ON
July 12	The C# Driver for MongoDB Atlanta MongoDB User Group Robert Stam, Software Engineer, 10gen
July 12	MongoDB Use Cases LA NoSQL User Group Sridhar Nanjundeswaran, Software Engineer, 10gen
July 13	MongoDB and Analytics indy.rb - The Indianapolis Ruby Brigade Monthly Meetup John Nunemaker, Ordered List
July 14	MongoDB: An Introduction Dallas Big Data Meetup Chris Westin, Software Engineer, 10gen
July 14	Overview of C++ 0x New York C++ User Group New York, NY
July 19	Tracking and Analytics with MongoDB; MongoDB for Online Advertising at Magnetic New York MongoDB User Group Chris Carrier, Zuberance
July 19	Building a Reporting Engine with MongoDB at Zuberance San Francisco MongoDB User Group Matt Insler, Signpost
July 20	Washington D.C. MongoDB User Group Washington, D.C.
July 22	Just say no to sql Logicworks NYC Panel
July 22	Mongo Sao Paulo Full day MongoDB conference in Sao Paulo, Brazil
July 25 - 29	OSCON 7/25: Building Web Applications with MongoDB by Roger Bodamer 7/26: Databases for Agile Development by Dwight Merriman 7/26: Schema Design with MongoDB by Dwight Merriman 7/28: Not Only SQL: Exploring Alternative Data Stores by Roger Bodamer Portland, OR *Register with the discount code "10gen" for 20% off*
July 26	Paris NoSQL User Group Antoine Girbal, Software Engineer, 10gen Paris, France
July 28	Switzerland MongoDB User Group Zürich, Switzerland
July 29-31	The Haskell Hackathon Tony Hannan, Software Engineer, 10gen Philadelphia, PA
July 30	5 MongoDB in TokyoMongo Japan MongoDB User Group Tokyo, JP
August 2	San Francisco JavaScript User Group San Francisco, CA
August 3	Introduction to MongoDB and integrating it with Drupal 7 for Examiner.com Free Webinar
August 15	Finland MongoDB User Group Helsinki, Finland
August 15	Using MongoDB for the Art Genome Project; MongoDB Gotchas from Turntable.fm Daniel Doubrovkine, Art.sy New York MongoDB User Group New York, NY

August 23-25	NoSQL Now San Jose, CA
September 7-8	NoSQL Systems Talk at JavaZone 2011 Washington, D.C.
September 8	DC Ruby Users Group Oslo, Norway
September 12	A MongoDB case study by Jeff Yemin of MTV Networks Boston MySQL Meetup
September 14	An(other) Evening with mongoDB and Alvin Richards (10gen) NoSQL Netherlands Amsterdam, Netherlands
September 18-20	Strangeloop 2011 St. Louis, MO
September 18-19	MongoDB Track at PyGotham New York, NY
September 20	Real Time Web Analytics with MongoDB (and Node.js) Eric Lubow New York MongoDB User Group New York, NY
September 28	Paris MongoDB User Group Paris, France
October 8-9	Introduction to MongoDB Silicon Valley Code Camp Manish Pandit, IGN Los Altos, CA
October 11	Boston Ruby Group Boston, MA

If you're interested in having someone present MongoDB at your conference or meetup, or if you would like to list your MongoDB event on this page, contact meghan at 10gen dot com. Want some MongoDB stickers to give out at your talk? Complete the Swag Request Form.

Training

Session	Location	Date	Register
MongoDB for Developers	Redwood City, CA	June 28-29, 2011	Register
MongoDB for Administrators	Redwood City, CA	July 19-20, 2011	Register
MongoDB for Developers	New York, NY	July 26-27	Register
MongoDB for Administrators	London, UK	September 5-6, 2011	Register
MongoDB for Developers	London, UK	September 8-9, 2011	Register
MongoDB for Developers	New York, NY	September 20-21, 2011	Register
MongoDB for Developers	Redwood City, CA	September 27-28, 2011	Register
MongoDB for Administrators	London,UK	October 3-4, 2011	Register
MongoDB for Developers	London,UK	October 6-7, 2011	Register
MongoDB for Administrators	Redwood City, CA	October 18-19, 2011	Register
MongoDB for Developers	New York, NY	October 25-26, 2011	Register
MongoDB for Administrators	New York, NY	October 8-9, 2011	Register
MongoDB for Developers	Redwood City, CA	November 15-16, 2011	Register

Office Hours

City	Dates	Location	Look For
Atlanta, GA	Second Tuesday of the month, 4 to 6pm	Roam Atlanta, 5815 Windward Parkway, Suite 302 (on the second floor), Alpharetta, GA 30005	Drop by the nice facilities of Roam Atlanta on Windward Parkway and meet with Software Engineer Robert Stam. Look for a MongoDB logo (or ask for information at the front desk). Initially office hours will be once a month, but if demand is strong we will hold them more often.
Mountain View, CA	Every other Thursday, 4 to 6pm	Red Rock Coffee, 201 Castro Street, Mountain View, CA	Located in the South Bay? We have office hours for you too! Come join us at Red Rock Coffee to speak directly with a MongoDB engineer. Look for a laptop with a MongoDB sticker. **Click here for more info and signup.**
New York, NY	Wednesdays, 4-6:30pm	10gen Headquarters, 134 5th Avenue, 3rd Floor	10gen holds weekly open "office hours" with whiteboarding and hack sessions at 10gen headquarters.
Redwood Shores, CA	Wednesdays, 4 to 6pm	10gen CA office, 100 Marine Parkway Suite 175, Redwood City, CA	Have questions about MongoDB? Visit the 10gen office in Redwood Shores to speak directly with the MongoDB engineers.
San Francisco, CA	Every other Monday 5pm - 7pm PT	Epicenter Cafe, 764 Harrison St, Between 4th St & Lapu St, San Francisco, CA	Stop by the Epicenter Cafe in San Francisco to meet 10gen Software Engineers Aaron Staple and Sridhar Nanjundeswaran. Ask questions, hack, have some coffee. Look for a laptop with a "Powered by MongoDB" sticker. **Click here for more info and signup.**

See Also

- http://www.10gen.com/presentations
- Gallery of Slides from MongoDB Talks
- http://www.10gen.com/events

MongoDB User Groups (MUGs)

MongoDB User Groups (MUGs) are a great way for the community to learn from one another about MongoDB best practices, to network, and to have fun.

MongoDB User Groups

North America

- Atlanta, GA
- Chicago, IL
- Los Angeles, CA
- New York, NY
- San Francisco, CA
- Seattle, WA
- Toronto, Ontario
- Washington, DC

Europe

- Bristol, UK
- Helsinki, Finland
- Paris, France
- London, UK
- Munchen, Germany
- Stockholm, Sweden
- Zurich, Switzerland

Asia

- China
- Japan
- Thailand
- Turkey

Australia

- Melbourne

Video & Slides from Recent Events and Presentations

Table of Contents:

[MongoDB Conferences] [Ruby/Rails] [Python] [Alt.NET] [User Experiences] [More about MongoDB]

MongoDB Conferences

One-day conferences hosted by 10gen. 10gen develops and supports MongoDB.

MongoUK Video (June 2010)
MongoFR Video (June 2010)
MongoNYC (May 2010) and MongoSF (April 2010) Video
MongoSF (April 2010) Slides & Video

Ruby/Rails

Practical Ruby Projects with MongoDB
Alex Sharp, OptimisCorp
Ruby Midwest - June 2010

Scalable Event Analytics with MongoDB and Ruby
Jared Rosoff, Yottaa
RubyConfChina - June 26, 2010

The MongoDB Metamorphosis (Kyle Banker, 10gen)
Million Dollar Mongo (Obie Fernandez & Durran Jordan, Hashrocket)
Analyze This! (Blythe Dunham)
RailsConf
Baltimore, MD
June 7-10

MongoDB
Seth Edwards
London Ruby Users Group
London, UK
Wednesday April 14
Video & Slides

MongoDB: The Way and its Power
Kyle Banker, Software Engineer, 10gen
RubyNation
Friday April 9 & Saturday April 10
Reston, VA
Slides | Video

MongoDB Rules
Kyle Banker, Software Engineer, 10gen
Mountain West Ruby Conference
Salt Lake City, UT
Thursday March 11 & Friday March 12
Slides

MongoDB Isn't Water
Kyle Banker, Software Engineer, 10gen
Chicago Ruby
February 2, 2010
Video | Slides | Photos

Introduction to Mongo DB
Joon Yu, RubyHead
teachmetocode.com
Nov-Dec, 2009
Screencasts

Python

How Python, TurboGears, and MongoDB are Transforming SourceForge.net
Rick Copeland, SourceForge.net
PyCon - Atlanta, GA
February 21, 2010
Slides

Alt.NET

.NET and MongoDB - Building Applications with NoRM and MongoDB
Alex Hung
July 28, 2010

User Experiences

The Future of Content Technologies
Scaling Web Applications with NonSQL Databases: Business Insider Case Study
Ian White, Lead Developer, Business Insider
Gilbane Conference
San Francisco, CA
Thursday, May 20
Slides

Chartbeat and MongoDb - a perfect marriage
Kushal Dave, CTO, Chartbeat & Mike Dirolf, Software Engineer, 10gen
New York City Cloud Computing Meetup
New York, NY
May 18
Slides

Why MongoDB is Awesome
John Nunemaker, CTO, Ordered List
DevNation Chicago
May 15
Slides

Humongous Data at Server Density: Approaching 1 Billion Documents in MongoDB
David Mytton, Founder, Boxed Ice
Webinar
Wednesday May 5
Recording & Slides

Humongous Drupal
DrupalCon San Francisco
Karoly Negyesi, Examiner.com
Saturday April 17
Slides | Video

MongoDB: huMONGOus Data at SourceForge
Mark Ramm, Web Developer, SourceForge
QCon London
Thursday March 11
Slides

Migrating to MongoDB
Bruno Morency, DokDok
Confoo.ca
March 10 - 12
Slides

More about MongoDB

Recording of Michael Dirolf on MongoDB @ E-VAN 07 June 2010

NoSQL-Channeling the Data Explosion
Dwight Merriman, CEO, 10gen
Inside MongoDB: the Internals of an Open-Source
Mike Dirolf, Software Engineer, 10gen
Gluecon
Denver, CO
Wednesday May 26 & Thursday May 27

Schema Design with MongoDB
Kyle Banker, Software Engineer, 10gen
Webinar
Tuesday April 27
Recording and Slides

Dropping ACID with MongoDB
Kristina Chodorow, Software Engineer, 10gen

San Francisco MySQL Meetup
San Francisco, CA
Monday, April 12
Video

Introduction to MongoDB
Mike Dirolf, Software Engineer, 10gen
Emerging Technologies for the Enterprise Conference
Philadelphia, PA
Friday, April 9
Slides

Indexing with MongoDB
Aaron Staple, Software Engineer, 10gen
Webinar
Tuesday April 6, 2010
Video | Slides

TechZing Interview with Mike Dirolf, Software Engineer, 10gen
Monday, April 5
Podcast

Hot Potato and MongoDB
New York Tech Talks Meetup
Justin Shaffer and Lincoln Hochberg
New York, NY
Tuesday March 30
Video

MongoDB Day
Geek Austin Data Series
Austin, TX
Saturday March 27
Photo

Mongo Scale!
Kristina Chodorow, Software Engineer, 10gen
Webcast
Friday March 26
Webcast

NoSQL Live Boston
Boston, MA
Thursday March 11
Recap with slides and MP3

MongoDB: How it Works
Mike Dirolf, Software Engineer, 10gen
Monday March 8, 12:30 PM Eastern Time
Slides

Intro to MongoDB
Alex Sharp, Founder / Lead Software Architect, FrothLogic
LA WebDev Meetup
February 23, 2010
Slides

Introduction to MongoDB
Kristina Chodorow, Software Engineer, 10gen
FOSDEM - Brussels, Belgium
February 7, 2010
Video | Slides | Photos

If you're interested in having someone present MongoDB at your conference or meetup, or if you would like to list your MongoDB event on this page, contact meghan at 10gen dot com.

Slide Gallery

At present, the widgets below will not function in the Chrome browser. We apologize for the inconvenience.

Click here to visit our full listing of videos & slides from recent events and presentations.

Introduction to MongoDB	User Experience
slideshare | Get your SlideShare Playlist	slideshare | Get your SlideShare Playlist

Ruby/Rails	Python
slideshare | Get your SlideShare Playlist	slideshare | Get your SlideShare Playlist

Java	PHP
slideshare | Get your SlideShare Playlist	slideshare | Get your SlideShare Playlist

MongoDB & Cloud Services	More About MongoDB
slideshare | Get your SlideShare Playlist	slideshare | Get your SlideShare Playlist

Articles

See also the User Feedback page for community presentations, blog posts, and more.

Best of the MongoDB Blog

- What is the Right Data Model? - (for non-relational databases)
- Why Schemaless is Good
- The Importance of Predictability of Performance
- Capped Collections - one of MongoDB's coolest features
- Using MongoDB for Real-time Analytics
- Using MongoDB for Logging
- http://blog.mongodb.org/tagged/best+of

Articles / Key Doc Pages

- On Atomic Operations
- Reaching into Objects - how to do sophisticated query operations on nested JSON-style objects
- Schema Design
- Full Text Search in Mongo
- MongoDB Production Deployments

Presentations

- Presentations from MongoDB Conferences
- MongoDB for Rubyists (February 2010 Chicago Ruby Meetup)
- Introduction to MongoDB (FOSDEM February 2010)
- NY MySql Meetup - NoSQL, Scaling, MongoDB
- Teach Me To Code - Introduction to MongoDB
- DCVIE

Benchmarks

MongoDB does not publish any official benchmarks.

We recommend running application performance tests on **your** application's work-load to find bottleneck and for performance tuning.

For more information about benchmarks in general please see the internet oracle.

FAQ

This FAQ answers basic questions for new evaluators of MongoDB. See also:

- Developer FAQ
- Sharding FAQ

MongoDB Intro FAQ

- MongoDB Intro FAQ
  - What kind of database is the Mongo database?
  - What languages can I use to work with the Mongo database?
  - Does it support SQL?
  - Is caching handled by the database?
  - What language is MongoDB written in?
  - What are the 32-bit limitations?

What kind of database is the Mongo database?

MongoDB is an document-oriented DBMS. Think of it as MySQL but JSON (actually, BSON) as the data model, not relational. There are no joins. If you have used object-relational mapping layers before in your programs, you will find the Mongo interface similar to use, but faster, more powerful, and less work to set up.

What languages can I use to work with the Mongo database?

Lots! See the drivers page.

Does it support SQL?

No, but MongoDB does support ad hoc queries via a JSON-style query language. See the Tour and Advanced Queries pages for more information on how one performs operations.

Is caching handled by the database?

For simple queries (with an index) Mongo should be fast enough that you can query the database directly without needing the equivalent of memcached. The goal is for Mongo to be an alternative to an `ORM/memcached/mysql` stack. Some MongoDB users do like to mix it with memcached though.

What language is MongoDB written in?

The database is written in C++. Drivers are usually written in their respective languages, although some use C extensions for speed.

What are the 32-bit limitations?

MongoDB uses memory-mapped files. When running on a 32-bit operating system, the total storage size for the server (data, indexes, everything) is 2gb. If you are running on a 64-bit os, there is virtually no limit to storage size. See the blog post for more information.

Misc

Demo App in Python

From an Interop 2009 presentation

Code: http://github.com/mdirolf/simple-messaging-service/tree/master

MongoDB, CouchDB, MySQL Compare Grid

pending...

	CouchDB	**MongoDB**	**MySQL**
Data Model	Document-Oriented (JSON)	Document-Oriented (BSON)	Relational

Data Types	string,number,boolean,array,object	string, int, double, boolean, date, bytearray, object, array, others	link
Large Objects (Files)	Yes (attachments)	Yes (GridFS)	blobs?
Horizontal partitioning scheme	CouchDB Lounge	Auto-sharding (v1.6)	?
Replication	Master-master (with developer supplied conflict resolution)	Master-slave (and "replica sets")	Master-slave
Object(row) Storage	One large repository	Collection based	Table based
Query Method	Map/reduce of javascript functions to lazily build an index per query	Dynamic; object-based query language	Dynamic; SQL
Secondary Indexes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Atomicity	Single document	Single document	Yes - advanced
Interface	REST	Native drivers ; REST add-on	Native drivers
Server-side batch data manipulation	?	Map/Reduce, server-side javascript	Yes (SQL)
Written in	Erlang	C++	C++
Concurrency Control	MVCC	Update in Place	
Geospatial Indexes	GeoCouch	Yes.	?
Distributed Consistency Model	Eventually consistent (master-master replication with versioning and version reconciliation)	Strong consistency. Eventually consistent reads from secondaries are available.	Strong consistency. Eventually consistent reads from secondaries are available.

See Also

- Comparing Mongo DB and Couch DB

Comparing Mongo DB and Couch DB

We are getting a lot of questions "how are mongo db and couch different?" It's a good question: both are document-oriented databases with schemaless JSON-style object data storage. Both products have their place -- we are big believers that databases are specializing and "one size fits all" no longer applies.

We are not CouchDB gurus so please let us know in the forums if we have something wrong.

MVCC

One big difference is that CouchDB is MVCC based, and MongoDB is more of a traditional update-in-place store. MVCC is very good for certain classes of problems: problems which need intense versioning; problems with offline databases that resync later; problems where you want a large amount of master-master replication happening. Along with MVCC comes some work too: first, the database must be compacted periodically, if there are many updates. Second, when conflicts occur on transactions, they must be handled by the programmer manually (unless the db also does conventional locking -- although then master-master replication is likely lost).

MongoDB updates an object in-place when possible. Problems requiring high update rates of objects are a great fit; compaction is not necessary. Mongo's replication works great but, without the MVCC model, it is more oriented towards master/slave and auto failover configurations than to complex master-master setups. With MongoDB you should see high write performance, especially for updates.

Horizontal Scalability

One fundamental difference is that a number of Couch users use replication as a way to scale. With Mongo, we tend to think of replication as a way to gain reliability/failover rather than scalability. Mongo uses (auto) sharding as our path to scalabity (sharding is GA as of 1.6). In this sense MongoDB is more like Google BigTable. (We hear that Couch might one day add partitioning too.)

Query Expression

Couch uses a clever index building scheme to generate indexes which support particular queries. There is an elegance to the approach, although one must predeclare these structures for each query one wants to execute. One can think of them as materialized views.

Mongo uses traditional dynamic queries. As with, say, MySQL, we can do queries where an index does not exist, or where an index is helpful but only partially so. Mongo includes a query optimizer which makes these determinations. We find this is very nice for inspecting the data administratively, and this method is also good when we *don't* want an index: such as insert-intensive collections. When an index corresponds perfectly to the query, the Couch and Mongo approaches are then conceptually similar. We find expressing queries as JSON-style objects in MongoDB to be quick and painless though

Atomicity

Both MongoDB and CouchDB support concurrent modifications of single documents. Both forego complex transactions involving large numbers of objects.

Durability

CouchDB is a "crash-only" design where the db can terminate at any time and remain consistent.

Previous versions of MongoDB used a storage engine that would require a repairDatabase() operation when starting up after a hard crash (similar to MySQL's MyISAM). Version 1.7.5 and higher offer durability in the MongoDB storage engine via the `--journal` command line option.

Map Reduce

Both CouchDB and MongoDB support map/reduce operations. For CouchDB map/reduce is inherent to the building of all views. With MongoDB, map/reduce is only for data processing jobs but not for traditional queries.

Javascript

Both CouchDB and MongoDB make use of Javascript. CouchDB uses Javascript extensively including in the building of views .

MongoDB supports the use of Javascript but more as an adjunct. In MongoDB, query expressions are typically expressed as JSON-style query objects; however one may also specify a javascript expression as part of the query. MongoDB also supports running arbitrary javascript functions server-side and uses javascript for map/reduce operations.

REST

Couch uses REST as its interface to the database. With its focus on performance, MongoDB relies on language-specific database drivers for access to the database over a custom binary protocol. Of course, one could add a REST interface atop an existing MongoDB driver at any time -- that would be a very nice community project. Some early stage REST implementations exist for MongoDB.

Performance

Philosophically, Mongo is very oriented toward performance, at the expense of features that would impede performance. We see Mongo DB being useful for many problems where databases have not been used in the past because databases are too "heavy". Features that give MongoDB good performance are:

- client driver per language: native socket protocol for client/server interface (not REST)
- use of memory mapped files for data storage
- collection-oriented storage (objects from the same collection are stored contiguously)
- update-in-place (not MVCC)
- written in C++

Use Cases

It may be helpful to look at some particular problems and consider how we could solve them.

- if we were building Lotus Notes, we would use Couch as its programmer versioning reconciliation/MVCC model fits perfectly. Any problem where data is offline for hours then back online would fit this. In general, if we need several eventually consistent master-master replica databases, geographically distributed, often offline, we would use Couch.
- if we had very high performance requirements we would use Mongo. For example, web site user profile object storage and caching of data from other sources.
- for a problem with very high update rates, we would use Mongo as it is good at that. For example, updating real time analytics counters for a web sites (pages views, visits, etc.)

Generally, we find MongoDB to be a very good fit for building web infrastructure.

Licensing

If you are using a vanilla MongoDB server from either source or binary packages you have NO obligations. You can ignore the rest of this page.

- MongoDB Database
  - Free Software Foundation's GNU AGPL v3.0.
  - Commercial licenses are also available from 10gen.
- Drivers:
  - mongodb.org "Supported Drivers": Apache License v2.0.
  - Third parties have created drivers too; licenses will vary there.
- Documentation: Creative Commons.

From our blog post on the AGPL:

> *Our goal with using AGPL is to preserve the concept of copyleft with MongoDB. With traditional GPL, copyleft was associated with the concept of distribution of software. The problem is that nowadays, distribution of software is rare: things tend to run in the cloud. AGPL fixes this "loophole" in GPL by saying that if you use the software over a network, you are bound by the copyleft. Other than that, the license is virtually the same as GPL v3.*
>
> *Note however that it is **never** required that applications using mongo be published. The copyleft applies only to the mongod and mongos database programs. This is why Mongo DB drivers are all licensed under an Apache license. Your application, even though it talks to the database, is a separate program and "work".*

If you intend to modify the server and distribute or provide access to your modified version you are required to release the full source code for the modified MongoDB server. To reiterate, you **only** need to provide the source for the MongoDB server and not your application (assuming you use the provided interfaces rather than linking directly against the server).

A few example cases of when you'd be required to provide your changes to MongoDB to external users:

Case	Required
Hosting company providing access MongoDB servers	yes
Public-facing website using MongoDB for content	yes
Internal use website using MongoDB	no
Internal analysis of log files from a web site	no

Regardless of whether you are *required* to release your changes we request that you do. The preferred way to do this is via a github fork. Then we are likely to include your changes so everyone can benefit.

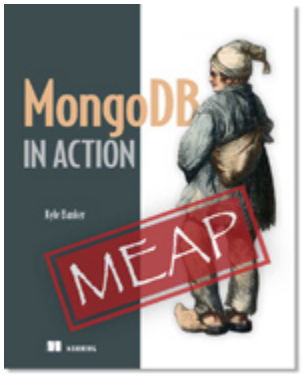
International Docs

Most documentation for MongoDB is currently written in English. We are looking for volunteers to contribute documentation in other languages. If you're interested in contributing to documentation in another language please email **roger at 10gen dot com**.

Language Homepages

- Deutsch
- Español
- Français
-
- Italiano
- [!hu.png! Magyar]
-
- Português
-
- Svenska
-
-

Books



You can download samples at 10gen.com/books.

MongoDB: The Definitive Guide
Kristina Chodorow and Mike Dirolf

The Definitive Guide to MongoDB: The NoSQL Database for Cloud and Desktop Computing
Peter Membrey

Scaling MongoDB
Kristina Chodorow

MongoDB in Action
Read the **Early Access Edition**
Kyle Banker

MongoDB for Web Development
Mitch Pirtle

MongoDB: Sag Ja zu NoSQL
Marc Boeker

The Little MongoDB Book
Karl Seguin
Free ebook

50 Tips and Tricks for MongoDB Developers
Kristina Chodorow

Slides and Video

Table of Contents:

- MongoDB Conferences
- Webinars
- Slideshare Galleries, by Topic

MongoDB Conferences

Each MongoDB conference consists a variety of talks, including introductions to MongoDB, features and internals talks, and presentations by production users. Browse through the links below to find slides and video from the 2010 conferences. (Check out the 2011 events here.)

- MongoSV
- MongoDC
- Mongo Chicago
- Mongo Berlin
- Mongo Boston
- Mongo Seattle
- MongoFR
- MongoUK
- MongoNYC
- MongoSF

Webinars

Webinars are another great way to learn more about MongoDB (or start to if you're a beginner). You can listen to pre-recorded sessions or register to listen to future webinars here.

Slideshare Galleries, by Topic

At present, the widgets below will not function in the Chrome browser. They can be viewed at the MongoDB Slideshare page. We apologize for the inconvenience.

Introduction to MongoDB	User Experience
slideshare | Get your SlideShare Playlist	slideshare | Get your SlideShare Playlist

Ruby/Rails	Python
slideshare | Get your SlideShare Playlist	slideshare | Get your SlideShare Playlist

Java	PHP
slideshare | Get your SlideShare Playlist	slideshare | Get your SlideShare Playlist

MongoDB & Cloud Services	More About MongoDB
slideshare | Get your SlideShare Playlist	slideshare | Get your SlideShare Playlist

Doc Index

Space Index

0-9 ... 6	A ... 15	B ... 20	C ... 45
F ... 8	G ... 11	H ... 10	I ... 17
L ... 7	M ... 36	N ... 2	O ... 12
R ... 36	S ... 33	T ... 12	U ... 13
X ... 0	Y ... 0	Z ... 0	!@#$ ... 0

0-9

1.0 Changelist
Wrote MongoDB. See documentation

1.1 Development Cycle

1.2.x Release Notes
New Features More indexes per collection Faster index creation Map/Reduce Stored JavaScript functions Configurable fsync time Several small features and fixes DB Upgrade Required There are some changes that will require doing an upgrade ...

1.4 Release Notes
We're pleased to announce the 1.4 release of MongoDB. 1.4 is a drop in replacement for 1.2. To upgrade you just need to shutdown mongod, then restart with the new binaries. (Users upgrading from release 1.0 should review the 1.2 release notes 1.2.x ...

1.6 Release Notes
MongoDB 1.6 is a dropin replacement for 1.4. To upgrade, simply shutdown {{mongod}} then restart with the new binaries. MongoDB v1.8 DOCS:1.8 Release Notes is now available. \ Please note that you should upgrade to the latest version of whichever driver you're ...

1.8 Release Notes
MongoDB 1.8 is a dropin replacement for 1.6, except: replica set nodes should be upgraded in a particular order Upgrading to 1.8. The options to the Map/Reduce command have changed in 1.8, causing incompatibility with previous releases. If you use MapReduce, please ...

A

A Sample Config
following exa
server. In ad

About

About the local c
mongod}} res
authenticatio
against the {{

Adding a New S
Adding a nev
copy of the d

Adding an Arbite
Arbiters are r
the primary n
has two mem

Admin UIs
Several admi
http://blog.tim
The builtin re

Admin Zone
Community A
http://blog.bo
http://blog.tim
http://tag1con

Advanced Queri
MongoDB, ju
Indexes page
of those featu

Aggregation
Mongo includ
advanced ag
{{count()}} re

Amazon EC2
MongoDB ru
Instance Typ

Architecture and
MongoDB ha
database ser
mysqld on a

Articles
See also the
MongoDB Bl
nonrelational

Atomic Operatio
MongoDB su
complex tran
slow.

Azure Configura
following are
Configuratior
higher. note

Azure Deployme
development
2010 Ultimat
development

B

Backing Up Sharded Cluster
Following is information on how to backup to full sharded environment. The most important concept is that the balancer must be turned off when doing a backup of the system. See also Backups DOCS:Backups and Import Export Tools DOCS:Import Export Tools ...

Backups
Several strategies exist for backing up MongoDB databases. A word of warning: it's not safe to back up the mongod data files (by default in /data/db/) while the database is running and writes are occurring; such a backup

C

C Language Cer
C Driver {}Th
strict for ultim
undergoing a

C Sharp Langua

C Tutorial
document is

may turn out to be corrupt unless ...

Benchmarks
MongoDB does not publish any official benchmarks. We recommend running application performance tests on your application's workload to find bottleneck and for performance tuning. For more information about benchmarks in general please see the internet oracle http://en.wikipedia.org ...

Books
bankercover.jpg! http://manning.com/banker !sagya.png! https://www.amazon.de/MongoDBSagJazuNoSQL/dp/3868020578/ref=sr13?ie=UTF8&qid=1291985616&sr=83 !mongodbcover.png! http://openmymind.net/2011/3/28/TheLittleMongoDBBook You can download samples at 10gen.com/books http://www.10gen.com/books. Kristina ...

Boost 1.41.0 Visual Studio 2010 Binary
OLD and was for the VS2010 BETA. See the new Boost and Windows page instead. The following is a prebuilt boost http://www.boost.org/ binary (libraries) for Visual Studio 2010 beta 2. The MongoDB vcxproj files assume this package is unzipped under c:\Program ...

Boost and Windows
Visual Studio 2010 Prebuilt from mongodb.org Click here http://www.mongodb.org/pages/viewpageattachments.action?pageId=12157032 for a prebuilt boost library for Visual Studio 2010. 7zip http://www.7zip.org/ format. Building Yourself Download the boost source ...

BSON
bsonspec.org http://www.bsonspec.org/ BSON is a bin-aryen-coded seri-al-iz-a-tion of JSONlike doc-u-ments. BSON designed to be lightweight, traversable, and efficient. BSON, like JSON, supports the embedding of objects and arrays within other objects ...

BSON Arrays in C++
examples using namespace mongo; using namespace bson; bo anobj; / transform a BSON array into a vector of BSONElements. we match array # positions with their vector position, and ignore any fields with nonnumeric field names. / vector<be> a = anobj"x".Array ...

Building
section provides instructions on setting up your environment to write Mongo drivers or other infrastructure code. For specific instructions, go to the document that corresponds to your setup. Note: see the Downloads DOCS:Downloads page for prebuilt binaries\! Subsections of this section ...

Building Boost
MongoDB uses the www.boost.org Boost C\ libraries. Windows See also the prebuilt libraries http://www.mongodb.org/pages/viewpageattachments.action?pageId=12157032 page. By default c:\boost\ is checked for the boost files. Include files should be under \boost\boost ...

Building for FreeBSD
FreeBSD 8.0 and later, there is a mongodb port you can use. For FreeBSD <= 7.2: # Get the database source: http://www.github.com/mongodb/mongo. # Update your ports tree: $ sudo portsnap fetch && portsnap extract The packages that come by default on 7.2 ...

Building for Linux
Note: There are binaries for many platforms. Most users won't need to compile mongo themselves. See the Downloads page for these prebuilt binaries\! SpiderMonkey, UTF8, and/or Ubuntu Most prebuilt Javascript SpiderMonkey binaries do not have UTF8 compiled in. Additionally, Ubuntu ...

Building for OS X
set up your OS X computer for MongoDB development: Upgrading to Snow Leopard If you have installed Snow Leopard, the builds will be 64bit \\ so if moving from a previous OS release, a bit more setup may be required than ...

Building for Solaris
MongoDB server currently supports little endian Solaris operation. (Although most drivers not the database server work on both.) Community: Help us make this rough page better please\! (And help us add support for big ...

Building for Windows
MongoDB can be compiled for Windows (32 and 64 bit); You will need to have the platform sdk installed. The platform sdk can be installed manually, and it comes with Visual (Studio) C as well. SCons http://www.scons.org/ is the make mechanism, although a .vcxproj ...

Building Spider Monkey
MongoDB uses SpiderMonkey http://www.mozilla.org/js/spidermonkey/ for serverside Javascript execution. The mongod project requires a file js.lib when linking. This page details how to build js.lib. Note: V8 http://code.google.com/p/v8/ Javascript support is under ...

Building SpiderMonkey

Building the Mongo Shell on Windows
You can build the mongo shell with either scons or a Visual Studio 2010 project file. Scons scons mongo Visual Studio 2010 Project File A VS2010 vcxproj file is availabe for building the shell. From the mongo directory open ...

Building with Visual Studio 2008
MongoDB can be compiled for Windows (32 and 64 bit) using Visual C. SCons http://www.scons.org/ is the make mechanism we use with VS2008. (Although it is possible to build from a sln file with vs2010 DOCS:Building with Visual Studio 2010 ...

v0.3. When b
...

C++ BSON Libra
MongoDB C
This library c
Include {{bso

C++ Driver Com
C\ driver is in
tarball (see D
of the driver s

C++ Driver Dow
Driver tarball
filenames, th
code ...

C++ getLastErro
string mongo
http://api.mon
Get error res
DBClientWith

C++ Language C
C\ driver is a
some core M
successfully

C++ Tutorial
document is
for details. N
language ind

Caching
Memory Map
disk I/O.&nbs
several impli

Capped Collectio
Capped colle
on insertion o
automatically

CentOS and Fed
10gen publis
mongo10gen
mongo10gen

Changing Config
Sections: The
maintenance
...

Checking Server
Commands T
> db.serverS
mongod proc

Choosing a Shar
Sections: Exa
shard key. It
logging exam

cloneCollection C
Copy a single
not use on a
copy of the n

Collections
MongoDB co
relational dat
usually have

collStats Comma
Statistics on
db.command
db.foo.stats f

Command Line -
When the {{n
messages ar
{{validate}}, {

Building with Visual Studio 2010

MongoDB can be compiled for Windows (32 and 64 bit) using Visual C. SCons http://www.scons.org/ is the make mechanism, although a solution file is also included in the project for convenience when using the Visual Studio IDE. (These instructions don't work ...

Command Line F
MongoDB ca
supported se
Information c

Commands
Introduction
database to
Commands A

Community
Technical Su
feature reque
http://blog.mo

Community Info

compact Comma
v1.9 The con
conceptually
all other oper

Comparing Mong
We are gettir
documentorie
data storage.

Components
list of the cor
Stopping Mo
(uses interac

Configuring Shar
Introduction
minimum, thr
testing ...

Connecting
C\ driver incl
our normal c
for connectin

Connecting Drive
Ideally a Mor
automatically
general steps

Connecting to R
Most drivers
support conn
list of host ...

Connections
MongoDB is
you start Mor

Contributing to th
Qualified volu

Contributing to th
easiest way t
help code the

Contributors
10gen Contri

Conventions for
Interface Cor
and when the
drivers is des

cookbook.mongo

Copy Database
MongoDB inc
database fro

createCollection
Use the crea
collections. >
helper metho

Creating and De

CSharp Commu

Community S
simplemongo
supported M

CSharp Driver S
Introduction T
(and deserial
object to a B

CSharp Driver T
C# Driver ver
Driver for Mo
used indepen

CSharp getLastE
C# driver Saf
"mongodb://h
database lev

CSharp Languag
MongoDB C#
CSharp Drive
http://api.mon

Cursors

D

Data Center Awareness
Simple Data Center Awareness In version 1.6, 1.8, and when more sophisticated setups are not necessary, basic configuration choices can be sufficient to ensure good performance across multiple data centers. Primary plus DR site Use one ...

Data Processing Manual
DRAFT TO BE COMPLETED. This guide provides instructions for using MongoDB batch data processing oriented features including map/reduce DOCS:MapReduce. By "data processing", we generally mean operations performed on large sets of data, rather than small ...

Data Types and Conventions
MongoDB (BSON) Data Types Mongo uses special data types in addition to the basic JSON types of string, integer, boolean, double, null, array, and object. These types include date, object id Object IDs, binary data, regular ...

Database Internals
section provides information for developers who want to write drivers or tools for MongoDB, \ contribute code to the MongoDB codebase itself, and for those who are just curious how it works internally. Subsections of this section

Database Profiler
Mongo includes a profiling tool to analyze the performance of database operations. See also the currentOp DOCS:Viewing and Terminating Current Operation command. Enabling Profiling Through the profile command You can enable and disable profiling from the mongo shell ...

Database References
MongoDB is nonrelational (no joins), references ("foreign keys") between documents are generally resolved clientside by additional queries to the server. Two conventions are common for references in MongoDB: first simple manual references, and second, the DBRef standard, which many drivers support ...

Databases
Each MongoDB server can support multiple databases. Each database is independent, and the data for each database is stored separately, for security and ease of management. A database consists of one or more collections, the documents (objects) in those collections, and an optional set ...

DBA Operations from the Shell
page lists common DBAclass operations that one might perform from the MongoDB shell DOCS:mongo The Interactive Shell. Note one may also create .js scripts to run in the shell for administrative purposes. help show help show ...

dbshell Reference
Command Line {{\help}} Show command line options {{\nodb}} Start without a db, you can connect later with {{new Mongo()}} or {{connect()}} {{\shell}} After running a .js file from the command line, stay in the shell rather than ...

Demo App in Python
From an Interop 2009 presentation Code: http://github.com/mdirolf/simplemessagingservice/tree/master

Design Overview

Developer FAQ
Also check out Markus Gattol's excellent FAQ on his website http://www.markusgattol.name/ws/mongodb.html. What's a "namespace"? MongoDB stores BSON objects in collections. The concatenation of the database name and the collection name (with a period in between) is called a namespace. For example ...

Developer Zone
Tutorial Shell mongo The Interactive Shell Manual Databases Collections Indexes Data Types and Conventions GridFS Inserting Updating Querying Removing Optimization Developer FAQ Cookbook

E

EC2 Backup & R
Overview Thi
http://aws.am
1.8 (or above

Emacs tips for M
You can edit
Change the d
the default sp

Erlang Language
Driver Downl
Driver http://b

Error Codes
list is HIGHL
grow 11000 d

Error Handling in
an error occu
first field gua

Events
MongoDB Us
http://www.m
and Confere

Excessive Disk S
Understandin
the data set i
DOCS:Replic

Explain
great way to
display "expl
Shell, you ...

http://cookbook.mongodb.org If you have a comment or question about anything, please ...

Diagnostic Tools

Directory Per DB

Overview MongoDB supports a "directory per DB" option. By default data files for MongoDB are all created in a single directory. This directory is defined by the {{dbpath}} variable. The "directory per DB" option ({{directoryperdb}}) allows for a separate directory for the files of each database ...

Django and MongoDB

Do I Have to Worry About SQL Injection

Generally, with MongoDB we are not building queries from strings, so traditional SQL Injection http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/SQLinjection attacks are not a problem. More details and some nuances are covered below. MongoDB queries are represented as BSON objects. Typically the programming ...

Doc Index

Document-Oriented Datastore

Documentation

Dot Notation

Dot Notation

Dot Notation (Reaching into Objects)

MongoDB is designed for store JSONstyle objects. The database understands the structure of these objects and can reach into them to evaluate query expressions. Let's suppose we have some objects of the form: > db.persons.findOne() { name: "Joe", address: , likes: 'scuba', 'math ...

Downloads

table id="downloads"> <thead> <tr> <td></td> <td class="tabletop tableleft odd">OS X 32bit
note</td> <td class="tabletop even">OS X 64bit</td ...

Driver and Integration Center

Driver Syntax Table

wiki generally gives examples in JavaScript, so this chart can be used to convert those examples to any language. JavaScript Python PHP Ruby Java C\ C# Perl \ \ \\ {{array()}} \\ {{BasicDBList}} {{BSONObj or bson::bo}} {{BsonArray}} \ \ {} {} {{new stdClass ...

Driver Testing Tools

Object IDs driverOIDTest for testing toString > db.runCommand

Drivers

MongoDB currently has client support for the following programming languages: mongodb.org Supported C C Language Center C# and .NET CSharp Language Center C\ C Language Center Erlang Erlang Language Center Haskell Haskell Language ...

Durability and Repair

Journaling and Recovery v1.7.5 of MongoDB supports durability with recovery (via write ahead log a journal) in the storage engine as an option. See the Journaling page. When enabled, repairs are not required on a hard crash. The {{dur}} option was used before 1.8 ...

Durability Internals

main durability page (not the internals page) is the Journaling page. Files The data file format is unchanged. Journal files are placed in /data/db/journal/. Running Run with {{journal}} to enable journaling/durable storage. Both {{mongod}} and {{test}} support this option ...

F

FAQ

FAQ answers basic questions for new evaluators of MongoDB. See also: Developer FAQ DOCS:Sharding FAQ MongoDB Intro FAQ What kind of database is the Mongo database? MongoDB is an documentoriented DBMS. Think of it as MySQL but JSON (actually ...

Feature Checklist for Mongo Drivers

Functionality Checklist This section lists tasks the driver author might handle. Essential BSON serialization/deserialization Basic operations: {{query}}, {{insert}}, {{update}}, {{remove}}, {{ensureIndex}}, {{findOne}}, {{limit}}, {{sort}} Fetch more data from a cursor when necessary ...

File Based Configuration

addition to accepting command line parameters, MongoDB can also be configured using a configuration file. A configuration file to use can be specified using the {{\f}} or {{\config}} command line options. On some packaged installs of MongoDB (for example Ubuntu & Debian ...

findAndModify Command

Find and Modify (or Remove) v1.3.0 and higher MongoDB 1.3\ supports a "find, modify, and return" command. This command can be used to atomically modify a document (at most one) and return it. Note that, by default, the document returned will not include the modifications made on the update ...

Forcing a Member to be Primary

Replica sets automatically negotiate which member of the set is primary and which are secondaries. If you want a certain member to be primary, there are a couple ways to force this. Version 1.9.0 In version 1.9.0 and higher, you can set the priority of the preferred primary to be higher ...

G

Geospatial Hays
addition to or
indexing", the
For example,

Geospatial Index
v1.3.3\ Mong
"find me the
museums to

getLastError Cor
MongoDB do
that operatio
saving and u

getLastError_old

Getting Started

Getting the Softw
Placeholder

Git Commit Rule
commit mess
glance can te

Frequently Asked Questions - Ruby
list of frequently asked questions about using Ruby with MongoDB. If you have a question you'd like to have answered here, please add it in the comments. Can I run \insert command name here\ from the Ruby driver? Yes ...

fsync Command
fsync Command Version 1.3.1 and higher The fsync command allows us to flush all pending writes to datafiles. More importantly, it also provides a lock option that makes backups easier. The fsync command forces the database to flush all ...

Full Text Search in Mongo
Introduction Mongo provides some functionality that is useful for text search and tagging. Multikeys (Indexing Values in an Array) The Mongo multikey feature can automatically index arrays of values. Tagging is a good example of where this feature is useful. Suppose you ...

GridFS
GridFS is a s
DOCS:GridF
objects.&nbs

GridFS in Ruby
GridFS, whic
manageable
this: one coll

GridFS Specifica
Introduction
chunks, usua
including the

GridFS Tools
File Tools {{n
./mongofiles
connected to

H

Halted Replication
instructions are for master/slave replication. For replica sets, see DOCS:Resyncing a Very Stale Replica Set Member instead. If you're running mongod with masterslave replication DOCS:Master Slave, there are certain scenarios where the slave will halt replication because ...

Haskell Language Center
Haskell driver and its API documentation reside on Hackage http://hackage.haskell.org/package/mongoDB

Home
Getting Started Quickstart \ Downloads \ Tutorial \ Features http://www.mongodb.org SQL to Mongo Mapping Chart Development Manual C http://github.com/mongodb/mongocdriver \ C# CSharp Language Center \ C\ C Language Center \ C# & .NET CSharp ...

Hosting Center
DatabaseasaService MongoLab https://mongolab.com/home/ PlatformasaService alwaysdata http://blog.alwaysdata.com/en/2011/04/26/officialsupportofmongodb/ cloudControl http://cloudcontrol.com/ offers a fully managed platformasaservice solution with MongoDB as one of their powerful addons. Read the blog post MongoDB Setup at cloudControl http://cloudcontrol.de ...

How does concurrency work
mongos For sharded DOCS:Sharding environments, mongos can perform any number of operations concurrently. This results in downstream operations to mongod instances. Execution of operations at each mongod is independent; that is, one mongod does not block another. mongod The original mongod ...

How MongoDB is Used in Media and Publishing
We see growing usage of MongoDB in both traditional and new media organizations. In these areas, the challenges for application developers include effectively managing rich content (including usergenerated content) at scale, deriving insight into how content is consumed and shared in realtime ...

How to do Snapshotted Queries in the Mongo Database
document refers to query snapshots. For backup snapshots of the database's datafiles, see the fsync lock page fsync Command. MongoDB does not support full pointintime snapshotting. However, some functionality is available which is detailed below. Cursors A MongoDB query ...

How to Make an Auto Incrementing Field
Generally in MongoDB, one does not use an autoincrement pattern for \id's (or other fields), as this does not scale up well on large database clusters. Instead one typically uses Object IDs. Side counter method One can keep ...

HowTo

Http Interface
REST Interfaces Sleepy Mongoose (Python) Sleepy Mongoose http://www.snailinaturtleneck.com/blog/2010/02/22/sleepymongooseamongodbrestinterface/ is a full featured REST interface for MongoDB which is available as a separate project. MongoDB Rest (Node.js) MongoDB Rest http://github.com/tdegrunt/mongodbrest is an alpha ...

I

Implementing Au
current versi
context of a
question. The

Import Export To
you just want
instead of the
they do not s

Index-Related C
Create Index
{{system.inde
db.system.in

Indexes
Indexes enha
need so that
Indexes in M

Indexes in Mong

Indexing Advice
We get a lot
in mind, thou
building effici

Indexing as a Ba
Slaves and r
using backgr
By default th

Inserting
When we ins
JSON, Pytho
and describe

Installing the PH

Internal Comma
Most comma
internal and
admindb.$cm

Internals
Cursors Taila
OptionCurso
when ...

International Doc
Most docume
other langua
com. Langua

International Doc

Internationalized
MongoDB su
UTF8.) Gene
serializing an

Introduction
MongoDB wa
systems. We

Introduction - Ho

iostat
Linux, use th
work well. (U

J

Java - Saving Objects Using DBObject
Java driver provides a DBObject interface to save custom objects to the database. For example, suppose one had a class called Tweet that they wanted to save: public class Tweet implements DBObject Then you can say: Tweet myTweet = new Tweet ...

Java Driver Concurrency
Java MongoDB driver is thread safe. If you are using in a web serving environment, for example, you should create a single Mongo instance, and you can use it in every request. The Mongo object maintains an internal pool of connections to the database ...

Java Language Center
Java Driver Basics Download the Java Driver http://github.com/mongodb/mongojavadriver/downloads Tutorial http://www.mongodb.org/display/DOCS/JavaTutorial API Documentation http://api.mongodb.org/java/index.html Release Notes https://github.com/mongodb/mongojavadriver/wiki ...

Java Tutorial
Introduction This page is a brief overview of working with the MongoDB Java Driver. For more information about the Java API, please refer to the online API Documentation for Java Driver http://api.mongodb.org/java/index.html A Quick Tour Using the Java driver is very ...

Java Types
Object Ids {{com.mongodb.ObjectId}} http://api.mongodb.org/java/0.11/com/mongodb/ObjectId.html is used to autogenerate unique ids. ObjectId id = new ObjectId(); ObjectId copy = new ObjectId(id); Regular Expressions The Java driver uses {{java.util.regex.Pattern}} http://java.sun.com ...

Javascript Language Center
MongoDB can be Used by clients written in Javascript; Uses Javascript internally serverside for certain options such as map/reduce; Has a shell DOCS:mongo The Interactive Shell that is based on Javascript for administrative purposes. node.JS and V8 See the node.JS page. node.JS ...

Job Board
Redirecting

Journaling
MongoDB v1.7.5 supports writeahead journaling of operations to facilitate fast crash recovery and durability in the storage engine. Enabling To enable, use the mongod {{journal}} command line option. # mongod journal MongoDB may determine that it is faster to preallocate journal files ...

Journaling Administration Notes
Journal Files (e.g. journal/j.0) Journal files are appendonly and are written to the {{journal/}} directory under the dbpath directory (which is {{/data/db/}} by default). Journal files are named {{j.0}}, {{j.1}}, etc. When a journal file reached 1GB in size ...

Joyent
installing MongoDB on a Joyent Node Smart Machine, see this article http://wiki.joyent.com/display/node/InstallingMongoDBonaNodeSmartMachine The prebuilt DOCS:Downloads MongoDB Solaris 64 binaries work with Joyent accelerators. Some newer gcc libraries are required to run ...

JS Benchmarking Harness
CODE: db.foo.drop(); db.foo.insert( ) ops = { op : "findOne" , ns : "test.foo" , query : } , { op : "update" , ns : "test.foo" , query : , update : { $inc : } } for (x = 1; x<=128; x=2){ res = benchRun( ) print("threads: " x "\t queries/sec: " res.query ...

JVM Languages
moved to Java Language Center

K

Kernel class rule
Design guide
many lines o
one line but c

Kernel code styl
case Use ca
comments W
As for style, v

Kernel concurren
All concurren
listed below.

Kernel exception
several differ
However, ma
preferred. {{n

Kernel logging
Basic Rules
warnings rec

Kernel string ma
string manipu
these basic p
not libs ...

L

Language Support

Legal Key Names
Key names in inserted documents are limited as follows: The '$' character must not be the first character in the key name. The '.' character must not appear anywhere in the key name

Licensing
you are using a vanilla MongoDB server from either source or binary packages you have NO obligations. You can ignore the rest of this page. MongoDB Database Free Software Foundation's GNU AGPL v3.0 http://www.fsf.org/licensing/licenses/agpl3.0 ...

List of Database Commands
iframe src ="http://api.mongodb.org/internal/current/commands.html" width="100%" height="1000px"

M

Manual
MongoDB ma
The Interacti

MapReduce
Map/reduce i
something lik
would have u

Master Slave
Configuratior
need to start

frameborder="0"> List of MongoDB Commands </iframe> See the Commands page for details on how to invoke a command ...

- Locking
- Locking in Mongo
- Logging

  MongoDB outputs some important information to stdout while its running. There are a number of things you can do to control this Command Line Options {{\quiet}} less verbose output (more details DOCS:Command Line quiet) {{v}} more ...

explicitly spe

- Memory manage

  Overall guide
  class such as
  new/malloc ..

- min and max Qu

  min()}} and {{
  keys betwee
  conjunction.

- Misc
- mongo - The Inte

  MongoDB dis
  allows you to
  https://develo

- Mongo Administ
- Mongo Concepts

  See the Man
  files and very
  logging for cr

- Mongo Database
- Mongo Develope
- Mongo Documer

  page provide
  Writing Style
  Writing Style

- Mongo Driver Re

  highlevel list
  should be tak
  to learn abou

- Mongo Extendec

  Mongo's RES
  types that do
  interface sup

- Mongo Metadata

  dbname>.sys
  include: {{sys
  metadata exi

- Mongo Query La

  Queries in M
  clause: > db.

- Mongo Usage Ba
- Mongo Wire Pro

  Introduction
  database ser
  should conne

- Mongo-Based Ap

  Please list ap
  here\!
  Center Applic

- MongoDB - A De
- MongoDB Comm

  Note: if you p
  Support Com
  MongoDB su

- MongoDB Data I

  tutorial discu
  mapper.&nbs
  end, we'll be

- MongoDB kerne

  Coding conv
  http://google
  can't change

- MongoDB Langu
- MongoDB on Az

Mongo Azure
http://groups.
MongoDB da

MongoDB User
MongoDB Us
to network, a
http://www.m

MongoDB, Couc
pending... Co
DocumentOr
string,numbe

mongoexport
mongoexport
fields to outp

mongosniff
Unix release
fairly low leve
mongosniff h

mongostat
Use the mon
mongostat he
of updates ...

Monitoring

Monitoring and D
Admin UIs M
issues it is a
queries. db.c

Moving Chunks
any given tim
automatically
http://www.m

Moving or Repla
shell you can
the set. See

Multikeys
MongoDB pr
is tagging. Su
We can ...

Munin configurat
Overview Mu
mini tutorial t
and plugins .

N

node.JS
Node.js is used to write eventdriven, scalable network programs in serverside JavaScript. It is similar in purpose to Twisted, EventMachine, etc. It runs on Google's V8. Web Frameworks ExpressJS http://expressjs.com Mature web framework with MongoDB session support. Connect http ...

Notes on Pooling for Mongo Drivers
Note that with the db write operations can be sent asynchronously or synchronously (the latter indicating a getlasterror request after the write). When asynchronous, one must be careful to continue using the same connection (socket). This ensures that the next operation will not begin until after ...

O

Object IDs
Documents i
MongoDB do
...

Old Pages

Older Downloads

Online API Docu
MongoDB AP
http://api.mon
http://api.mon

Optimization
Additional Ar
This section
is to display t

Optimizing Mong

Optimizing Objec
id field in Mo
collections 'n

Optimizing Stora
MongoDB re
overhead is r

be. Be

OR operations in
Query object
expression.&
operator lets

Out of Memory C
Linux out of r
the system lo

Overview - The M
Running the
directory of th
you can just

Overview - Writin
section conta
drivers and h
document for

P

Padding Factor
When you update an object in MongoDB, the update occurs inplace if the object has not grown in size. This is good for insert performance if the collection has many indexes. Mongo adaptively learns if objects in a collection tend to grow, and if they do, it adds some ...

Pairing Internals
Policy for reconciling divergent oplogs pairing is deprecated In a paired environment, a situation may arise in which each member of a pair has logged operations as master that have not been applied to the other server. In such a situation, the following procedure will be used to ensure consistency ...

Parsing Stack Traces
addr2line addr2line e mongod ifC <offset> cfilt You can use {{cfilt}} to demangle function names by pasting the whole stack trace to stdin. Finding the right binary To find the binary you need: Get the commit at the header of any ...

Perl Language Center
Installing Start a MongoDB server instance ({{mongod}}) before installing so that the tests will pass. The {{mongod}} cannot be running as a slave for the tests to pass. Some tests may be skipped, depending on the version of the database you are running. CPAN $ sudo cpan MongoDB ...

Perl Tutorial

Philosophy
Design Philosophy !featuresPerformace.png align=right! Databases are specializing the "one size fits all" approach no longer applies. By reducing transactional semantics the db provides, one can still solve an interesting set of problems where performance is very ...

PHP - Storing Files and Big Data

PHP Language Center
Using MongoDB in PHP To access MongoDB from PHP you will need: The MongoDB server running the server is the "mongo{}d" file, not the "mongo" client (note the "d" at the end) The MongoDB PHP driver installed Installing the PHP Driver \NIX Run ...

PHP Libraries, Frameworks, and Tools
PHP community has created a huge number of libraries to make working with MongoDB easier and integrate it with existing frameworks. CakePHP MongoDB datasource https://github.com/ichikaway/cakephpmongodb for CakePHP. There's also an introductory blog post http://markstory.com/posts ...

Production Deployments
you're using MongoDB in production, we'd love to list you here\! Please complete this web form https://www.10gen.com/weusemongodb or email meghan@10gen.com and we will add you. <DIV mcestyle="textalign:center;margin:0" style="margin ...

Production Notes
Backups Import Export Tools Backups Doc Page DOCS:Backups TCP Port Numbers Default TCP port numbers for MongoDB processes: Standalone mongod : 27017 mongos : 27017 shard server ({{mongod \shardsvr}}) : 27018 config server ...

Project Ideas
you're interested in getting involved in the MongoDB community (or the open source community in general) a great way to do so is by starting or contributing to a MongoDB related project. Here we've listed some project ideas for you to get started on. For some of these ideas ...

PyMongo and mod_wsgi

Python Language Center

Python Tutorial

Q

Queries and Cur
Queries to M
driver. Detail
process). Th

Query Optimizer
MongoDB qu
return results
...

Querying
One of Mong
require any s

Querying and nu
null}} value in
the following
Query #2 > d

Quickstart
Quickstart OS
DOCS:SQL t

Quickstart OS X
Install Mongo
managers If y
mongodb If y

Quickstart Unix
Download If y
"legacy static
users ...

Quickstart Windo
Download Th
recommende
to run that ve

R

S

Rails - Getting Started
Using Rails 3? See Rails 3 Getting Started This tutorial describes how to set up a simple Rails application with MongoDB, using MongoMapper as an object mapper. We assume you're using Rails versions prior to 3.0 ...

Rails 3 - Getting Started
difficult to use MongoDB with Rails 3. Most of it comes down to making sure that you're not loading ActiveRecord and understanding how to use Bundler http://github.com/carlhuda/bundler/blob/master/README.markdown, the new Ruby dependency manager. Install the Rails ...

Recommended Configurations
Replica sets support quite a few options, and it can be confusing determining the best configuration. Here following a few good suggestions. One data center If you have just one data center, then the most economical setup is a threenode replica ...

Recommended Production Architectures

Reconfiguring a replica set when members are down
One can easily reconfigure a replica set when some members are down as long as a majority is still up. In that case, simply send the reconfig command to the current primary. DOCS:Reconfiguring when Members are Up If there is no primary (and this condition is not transient), you ...

Reconfiguring when Members are Up
Version 1.7.1 Use the rs.reconfig() helper in the shell (version 1.7.1). (Run "rs.reconfig" in the shell with no parenthesis to see what it does.) $ mongo > // shell v1.7.x: > // example : give 1st set member 2 votes > cfg = rs.conf() > cfg.members0.votes = 2 > rs.reconfig ...

RedHat OpenShift
MongoDB is a supported service on the RedHat http://redhat.com OpenShift Flex https://openshift.redhat.com/app/flex platform This blog post https://www.redhat.com/openshift/blogs/nosqlinthecloudnoproblemdeployingmongodbonopenshiftflex describes how to get a MongoDB application up and running on OpenShift

Removing
Removing Objects from a Collection To remove objects from a collection, use the {{remove()}} function in the mongo shell mongo The Interactive Shell. (Other drivers offer a similar function, but may call the function "delete". Please check your driver's documentation ...

Replica Pairs
Replica pairs should be migrated to their replacement, Replica Sets. Setup of Replica Pairs Mongo supports a concept of replica pairs. These databases automatically coordinate which is the master and which is the slave at a given point in time. At startup, the databases will negotiate which is master ...

Replica Set Admin UI
mongod}} process includes a simple administrative UI for checking the status of a replica set. To use, first enable {{\rest}} from the {{mongod}} command line. The rest port is the db port plus 1000 (thus, the default is 28017). Be sure this port is secure ...

Replica Set Authentication
Authentication was added in 1.7.5 Replica set authentication works a little differently from singleserver authentication, so that each member can automatically authenticate itself to the other members of the set. See the main docs on authentication Security and Authentication#Replica Set ...

Replica Set Commands
Shell Helpers rs.help() show help rs.status() rs.initiate() initiate with default settings rs.initiate(cfg) rs.add(hostportstr) add a new member to the set rs.add(membercfgobj) add a new member to the set rs.addArb(hostportstr) add a new member which ...

Replica Set Configuration
Command Line Each {{mongod}} participating in the set should have a {{\replSet}} parameter on its command line. The syntax is mongod replSet setname rest {}setname is the logical name of the set. Use the {{rest}} command line parameter when using replica ...

Replica Set Design Concepts
replica set has at most one primary at a given time. If a majority of the set is up, the most uptodate secondary will be elected primary. If a majority of the set is not up or reachable, no member will be elected primary. There is no way to tell (from the set's point of view) the difference ...

Replica Set FAQ
How long does replica set failover take? It may take 1030 seconds for the primary to be declared down by the other members and a new primary elected. During this window of time, the cluster is down for "primary" operations that is, writes and strong consistent reads ...

Replica Set Internals
Design Concepts Check out the Replica Set Design Concepts for some of the core concepts underlying MongoDB Replica Sets. Configuration Command Line We specify \replSet setname/seedhostnamelist on the command line. seedhostnamelist is a (partial) list of some members ...

Replica Set Semantics
MongoDB Java driver handles failover in replicated setups with tunable levels of transparency to the user. By default, a {{Mongo}} connection object will ignore failures of secondaries, and only reads will throw {{MongoExceptions}} when the primary node is unreachable. The level of exception reporting ...

Replica Set Tutorial

Schema Design
Introduction \
are no serve

scons
Use scons ht
details. Run
...

Scripting the she
MongoDB sh
(.js) you can

Searching and R

Security and Aut
MongoDB in
is not availab
trusted envir

Server-side Cod
Mongo supp
to the regula
containing a

Server-Side Pro

serverStatus Co
serverStatus
db.command
Field Exampl

Shard Ownershi
shard owner
copy of the o
shard ...

Sharding
MongoDB sc
data distribut
failover Getti

Sharding Admini
Here we pre
see the docs
mongos proc

Sharding and Fa
properlyconfi
failure scena
routing proce

Sharding Config
Sharding cor
current meta
(chunkSize)

Sharding Design
concepts cor
be either a si
region ...

Sharding FAQ
Should I star
and quick sta
seamless, sc

Sharding Interna
section inclu
documentati

Sharding Introdu
MongoDB su
applications
managing fai

Sharding Limits
Security Sec
Differences f
DOCS:Secur

Sharding Use Ca
What specific
here for disc

tutorial will guide you through the basic configuration of a replica set. Given the tutorial is an example and should be easy to try, it runs several mongod processes on a single machine (in the real world one would use several machines). If you are attempting ...

Replica Set Versions and Compatibility
Features Feature Version Syncing from secondaries v1.8.0 replSetFreeze and replSetStepDown v1.7.3 Fastsync v1.8.0 Slave delay v1.6.3 Hidden v1.7 Replicated ops in {{mongostat}} v1.7.3 Authentication v1.8.0 Syncing 1.8.x slaves can replicate from 1.6.x ...

Replica Sets
Overview Replica sets are basically asynchronous master/slave replication DOCS:Master Slave, adding automatic failover and automatic recovery of member nodes. A replica set consists of two or more nodes that are copies of each other. (i.e.: replicas) The replica ...

Replica Sets - Basics
Minimum Configuration For production use you will want a minimum of three nodes in the replica set. Either: 2 full nodes and 1 arbiter 3 full nodes To avoid a single point of failure, these nodes must be on different computers. It is standard to have ...

Replica Sets - Oplog
Replication of data between nodes is done using a special collection known as the {{oplog}}. See also : DOCS:Replication Oplog Length. The basic replication process # All write operations are sent to the server (Insert, Update, Remove, DB/Collection/Index ...

Replica Sets - Priority
default, all full nodes in a replica set have equal priority. If a primary steps down, all other full nodes are equally likely to be elected as the new primary. Put differently, each node has {{priority:1}}. Arbiters are an ...

Replica Sets - Voting
Each replica sets contains only one primary node. This is the only node in the set that can accept write commands (insert/update/delete). The primary node is elected by a consensus vote of all reachable nodes. Consensus Vote For a node to be elected ...

Replica Sets in Ruby
Here follow a few considerations for those using the Ruby driver Ruby Tutorial with MongoDB and replica sets DOCS:Replica Sets. Setup First, make sure that you've configured and initialized a replica set. Connecting to a replica set from the Ruby ...

Replica Sets Limits
v1.6 Authentication mode not supported. JIRA http://jira.mongodb.org/browse/SERVER1469 Limits on config changes to sets at first. Especially when a lot of set members are down. Map/reduce writes new collections to the server. Because of this, for now it may only ...

Replica Sets Troubleshooting
can't get local.system.replset config from self or any seed (EMPTYCONFIG) Set needs to be initiated. Run {{rs.initiate()}} from the shell. If the set is already initiated and this is a new node, verify it is present in the replica set's configuration and there are no typos in the host names: > // send ...

Replication
MongoDB supports asynchronous replication of data between servers for failover and redundancy. Only one server (in the set/shard) is active for writes (the primary, or master) at a given time. With a single active master at any point in time, strong consistency semantics are available ...

Replication Internals
master mongod instance, the {{local}} database will contain a collection, {{oplog.$main}}, which stores a highlevel transaction log. The transaction log essentially describes all actions performed by the user, such as "insert this object into this collection." Note that the oplog is not a lowlevel redo log ...

Replication Oplog Length
Replication uses an operation log ("oplog") to store write operations. These operations replay asynchronously on other nodes. The length of the oplog is important if a secondary is down. The larger the log, the longer the secondary can be down and still recover. Once the oplog has ...

Resyncing a Very Stale Replica Set Member
Error RS102 MongoDB writes operations to an oplog. For replica sets this data is stored in collection local.oplog.rs. This is a capped collection and wraps when full "RRD"style. Thus, it is important that the oplog collection is large enough to buffer ...

Retrieving a Subset of Fields
default on a find operation, the entire object is returned. However we may also request that only certain fields be returned. This is somewhat analogous to the list of \column specifiers in a SQL SELECT statement (projection). // select z from things where x ...

Roadmap
Please see jira https://jira.mongodb.org/browse/SERVER#selectedTab=com.atlassian.jira.plugin.system.project%3Aroadmappanel

Ruby External Resources
number of good resources appearing all over the web for learning about MongoDB and Ruby. A useful selection is listed below. If you know of others, do let us know. Screencasts Introduction to MongoDB Part I http://www.teachmetocode.com/screencasts ...

Ruby Language Center
an overview of the available tools and suggested practices for using Ruby with MongoDB. Those wishing to skip to

videos ...

Simple Initial Sh
Overview Th
(East=primar

Slide Gallery
present, the
http://www.m
events and p

Slides and Videc
Table of Con
MongoDB, fe
and video fro

Smoke Tests
Running all t
startMongod
smokeDur sc

Sorting and Natu
Natural orde
parameters,
because, alt

Source Code
Source for M
Mongo Datab
http://github.

Spec, Notes and
Assume that
time. See Als

Splitting Chunks
Normally, spl
transparent).
moved imme

SQL to Mongo M
page not don
{{mongod}} \\
collection DC

SQL to Shell to
MongoDB qu
as SQL, Mon
index key ...

Starting and Sto
MongoDB is
on those opti
{{mongod}} is

Storing Data

Storing Files

Structuring Data

more detailed discussion should check out the Ruby Driver Tutorial http://api.mongodb.org/ruby/current/file.TUTORIAL.html, Getting started with Rails Rails ...

Ruby Tutorial
tutorial gives many common examples of using MongoDB with the Ruby driver. If you're looking for information on data modeling, see MongoDB Data Modeling and Rails. Links to the various object mappers are listed on our object mappers page http://www.mongodb.org ...

T

Tailable Cursors
Tailable cursors are only allowed on capped collections and can only return objects in natural order http://www.mongodb.org/display/DOCS/SortingandNaturalOrder. If the field you wish to "tail" is indexed, simply requerying for \{ field : \ } is already quite efficient. Tailable ...

Technical Support
Free Support Forum http://groups.google.com/group/mongodbuser IRC Chat and Support irc://irc.freenode.net/#mongodb Commercial Support http://www.10gen.com/support

Timestamp Data Type
BSON http://bsonspec.org/ includes a timestamp data type with special semantics in MongoDB. Timestamps are stored as 64 bit values which, on a single {{mongod}}, are guaranteed unique. The first 32 bits are a timet value (seconds since the UTC epoch). The second ...

Too Many Open Files
you receive the error "too many open files" or "too many open connections" in the mongod log, there are a couple of possible reasons for this. First, to check what file descriptors are in use, run lsof (some variations shown below): lsof grep ...

Tools and Libraries
Talend Adapters https://github.com/adrienmogenet

TreeNavigation
Follow @mongodb http://www.twitter.com/mongodb Mongo Sao Paulo http://www.mongosp.com/ July 22

Trees in MongoDB
best way to store a tree usually depends on the operations you want to perform; see below for some different options. In practice, most developers find that one of the "Full Tree in Single Document", "Parent Links", and "Array of Ancestors" patterns ...

Troubleshooting
mongod process "disappeared" Scenario here is the log ending suddenly with no error or shutdown messages logged. On Unix, check /var/log/messages: $ sudo grep mongod /var/log/messages $ sudo grep score /var/log/messages See ...

Troubleshooting MapReduce
Tips on troubleshooting map/reduce. Troubleshooting the {{map}} function We can troubleshoot the map function in the shell by defining a test {{emit}} function in the shell and having it print out trace information. For example suppose we have some data: > db.articles.find ...

Troubleshooting the PHP Driver

Tutorial
Getting the Database First, run through the Quickstart guide for your platform to get up and running. Getting A Database Connection Let's now try manipulating the database with the database shell DOCS:mongo The Interactive Shell . (We could perform similar ...

two-phase commit
common problem with nonrelational database is that it is not possible to do transactions across several documents. When executing a transaction composed of several sequential operations, some issues arise: Atomicity: it is difficult to rollback changes by previous operations if one fails. Isolation: changes ...

U

Ubuntu and Deb
Please read
generally fre
mongodb10g

UI
Spec/require
indexsize, cl
...

Updates

Updating
MongoDB su
{{update()}} r
use ...

Updating Data i
Updating a D
to save a ne
with the exar

Upgrading from
mongod}} pr
so yet, feel fr
familiarize yo

Upgrading to 1.8
First, upgrad
primaries. 1.

Upgrading to Re
Upgrading F
idea\!). First,

Use Case - Sess
MongoDB is
store the ses
updates fast,

Use Cases
See also the
Shutterfly, fo
very good ...

User Feedback
I just have to
get a long co
mongodbuse

Using a Large N
technique on
single collect
that key may

Using Multikeys
One way to v
feature wher
db.foo.insert(

V

v0.8 Details
Existing Core Functionality Basic Mongo database functionality: inserts, deletes, queries, indexing. Master / Slave Replication Replica Pairs Serverside javascript code execution New to v0.8 Drivers for Java, C, Python, Ruby. db shell utility ...

Validate Command
Use this command to check that a collection is valid (not corrupt) and to get various statistics. This command scans the entire collection and its indexes and will be very slow on large datasets. From the {{mongo}} shell: > db.foo.validate() From a driver one might invoke the driver's equivalent ...

Verifying Propagation of Writes with getLastError

W

What is the Com
MongoDB all
from differen
...

What's New by V
summary of
details. 1.4 G
directoryperd

When to use Gri

v1.5. A client can block until a write operation has been replicated to N servers. Use the getlasterror getLastErrorold command with the parameter {{w}}: db.runCommand( ) If {{w}} is not set, or equals 1, the command returns immediately, implying the data is on 1 server ...

Version Numbers

MongoDB uses the oddnumbered versions for development releases http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Softwareversioning#Oddnumberedversionsfordevelopmentreleases. There are 3 numbers in a MongoDB version: A.B.C A is the major version. This will rarely change and signify very large changes B is the release number. This will include many changes ...

Video & Slides from Recent Events and Presentations

Table of Contents: MongoDB Conferences Oneday conferences hosted by 10gen http://www.10gen.com/. 10gen develops and supports MongoDB. MongoUK Video (June 2010) http://skillsmatter.com/event/cloudgrid/mongouk MongoFR Video (June 2010) http://lacantine.ubicast.eu/categories ...

Viewing and Terminating Current Operation

View Current Operation(s) in Progress > db.currentOp(); > // same as: db.$cmd.sys.inprog.findOne() { inprog: { "opid" : 18 , "op" : "query" , "ns" : "mydb.votes" , "query" : " " , "inLock" : 1 } } Fields: opid an incrementing operation number. Use with killOp(). op the operation type ...

Visit the 10gen Offices

Bay Area 10gen's West Coast office is located on the Peninsula in Redwood Shores. 100 Marine Parkway, Suite 175 Redwood City, CA 94065 \\ <iframe width="475" height="375" frameborder="0" scrolling="no" marginheight="0" marginwidth ...

VMware CloudFoundry

MongoDB is a supported service on VMware's Cloud Foundry http://www.cloudfoundry.com/. Starting a MongoDB service {{vmc createservice mongodb name MyMongoDB}} Once you create a MongoDB service, you can bind and use it inside of Cloud Foundry applications. Developing ...

page is unde
better than m

Why are my data

Why Replica Set

Replica sets
features shou

Why so many "C

Windows

Windows Qu
Windows for
page. The M

Windows Service

windows mor
service relate
following opti

Wireshark Suppo

Wireshark ht
http://wiki.wir
on specific va

Working with Mo

Writing Drivers a

See Also DO

Writing tests

We have thre
the code ther

X

Y

Z

!@#$